TECHNICKÁ UNIVERZITA V LIBERCI
Fakulta mechatroniky, informatiky a mezioborových studií

BAKALÁŘSKÁ PRÁCE

Liberec 2009 **Tomáš Marek**

TECHNICKÁ UNIVERZITA V LIBERCI
Fakulta mechatroniky, informatiky a mezioborových studií

Studijní program: B2612 – Elektrotechnika a informatika
Studijní obor: 2612R011 – Elektronické informační a řídicí systémy

Digitálně řízený frekvenční filtr

Digitally controlled frequency filter

Bakalářská práce

Autor: **Tomáš Marek**

Vedoucí práce: Ing. Lubomír Slavík

V Liberci 20. 5. 2009

Prohlášení

Byl(a) jsem seznámen(a) s tím, že na mou bakalářskou práci se plně vztahuje zákon č. 121/2000 o právu autorském, zejména § 60 (školní dílo).

Beru na vědomí, že TUL má právo na uzavření licenční smlouvy o užití mé bakalářské práce a prohlašuji, že **s o u h l a s í m** s případným užitím mé bakalářské práce (prodej, zapůjčení apod.).

Jsem si vědom(a) toho, že užít své bakalářské práce či poskytnout licenci k jejímu využití mohu jen se souhlasem TUL, která má právo ode mne požadovat přiměřený příspěvek na úhradu nákladů, vynaložených univerzitou na vytvoření díla (až do jejich skutečné výše).

Bakalářskou práci jsem vypracoval(a) samostatně s použitím uvedené literatury a na základě konzultací s vedoucím bakalářské práce a konzultantem.

Datum: 20.5.2009

Podpis:

Poděkování

Za pomoc a cenné rady při realizaci bych rád poděkoval vedoucímu práce Ing. Lubomíru Slavíkovi, dále pak rodičům za veškerou podporu.

Anotace

Cílem práce je návrh přípravku s filtry pro praktická cvičení předmětu Měřicí technika 1. Úkolem bylo nastudovat běžné typy filtrů, porovnat jejich vlastnosti a navrhnout univerzální strukturu filtru tak, aby byla umožněna změna parametrů filtru pomocí mikrokontroléru.

Na začátku práce jsou popsány vlastnosti filtrů a porovnány jejich specifické výhody a nevýhody. Jelikož dosud hojně užívané operační zesilovače s napěťovou zpětnou vazbou již neposkytují tak dobré výsledky především na vysokých frekvencích, byly vyvinuty zesilovače s proudovou zpětnou vazbou. Jinými typy zesilovačů, avšak také pracující s proudovou zpětnou vazbou, jsou operační transkonduktanční zesilovače (OTA), které jsem také zvolil pro moji práci. Tyto zesilovače pracují spolehlivě i na vysokých frekvencích (stovky Mhz). Další předností těchto zesilovačů je jejich snadná řiditelnost transkonduktance pomocí malého stejnosměrného proudu do řídicí elektrody. K ovládání těchto proudů slouží digitálně analogový převodník (D/AC). Změna typu filtru je také možná, a to pomocí analogových multiplexerů. Veškeré digitální řídicí signály pro jednotlivé součástky poskytuje mikrokontrolér PIC18F452 od firmy Microchip. Procesor z řady 18xxx je zvolen díky jeho podpoře kompilátorem v jazyce C a pro množství periferií potřebných pro tuto aplikaci. Komunikace mezi uživatelem a procesorem se děje pomocí klávesnice se čtyřmi tlačítky a LCD s šestnácti znaky.

Klíčová slova:

Frekvenční filtr, řízený filtr, filtr s transkonduktory

Annotation

Design of the measuring device with frequency filters for practical training of the subject Measuring Technique 1 is the main aim of the bachelor thesis. The task was to study all ordinary used types of filters, compare them and choose one multi-purpose structure, which can be easily controlled by digital device (microcontroller).

At the beginning commonly used types frequency filters are reviewed including comparision their own specific advantages and disadvantages. For new and fast filter applications were developed current feedback amplifiers, which are much faster than older voltage feedback amplifiers. Another variant of amplifiers, but based on current feedback, are operational transconductance amplifiers (OTAs), which I chose for realization of active filter. These amplifiers have modern structure and can operate on high frequencies (hundreds of MHz). Transconductance amplifiers are also very good tunable by setting direct control current. Digital to analog converter (D/AC) is used for setting this current. Changing type of filter is possible with analog multiplexers (MUXs). Digital control is done by microcontroller PIC18F452 by Microchip. Type PIC from the 18xxx series was chosen because of the C18 Compiler support and many peripherals, which are needed for this application. Interface between microcontroller and user is realised by four button keyboard and LCD with sixteen characters.

Key words:

Frequency filter, controlled filter, filter with transconductors

Obsah

Seznam použitých zkratek a symbolů 10
Úvod 11
1 Frekvenční filtry 12
1.1 Definice filtru 12
1.2 Popis filtrů 12
1.3 Rozdělení filtrů 13
1.3.1 Dle tvaru amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky 13
1.3.2 Dle typu použité aproximace 15
1.3.3 Dle způsobu realizace 17
1.3.4 Dle spojitosti signálu v čase 18
1.3.5 Dle typu přenosové funkce 18
1.4 Číslicové filtry 19
1.5 Analogové filtry 22
1.5.1 Butterworthův filtr 22
1.5.2 Besselovy (Thomsonovy) filtry 24
1.5.3 Čebyševovy filtry 26
1.5.4 Cauerovy (eliptické filtry) 28
1.5.5 Jiné aproximace: 30
2 Využití moderních aktivních prvků 32
2.1 Možnosti nových prvků 32
2.2 Prvky OTA 33
2.2.1 Princip funkce 33
2.3 Způsob návrhu 35
2.3.1 Autonomní obvody 35
2.3.2 Sestavení úplné admitanční sítě 36
3 Navržená struktura 38
3.1 Konkrétní autonomní obvod 38
3.2 Odvození přenosu 38
3.2.1 Dolní propust 38
3.2.2 Horní propust 40

3.2.3 Pásmová propust 41
3.2.4 Pásmová zádrž 43
3.3 Řízení navržené struktury filtru 44
4 Řídicí části 46
4.1 Procesor 46
4.2 Nahrání programu do procesoru 47
4.3 LCD displej 49
4.4 AD8403 52
4.5 Multiplexer 54
4.6 Vzájemné propojení jednotlivých součástek 55
4.6.1 Propojení na analogové úrovni 55
4.6.2 Propojení digitálních signálů 57
4.7 Schéma zapojení 58
5 Programování 59
5.1 Hlavní program 59
5.2 Obsluha klávesnice 59
5.3 Naprogramování koeficientů filtru 59
5.4 Vytvoření uživatelského menu 61
5.5 Přerušení 62
6 Ověření funkčnosti filtru 64
6.1 Simulace filtru v programu LTSPICE 64
6.2 Měření charakteristik na přípravku 67
Závěr 73
Literatura 74
Příloha A – deska plošných spojů 75
Příloha B – naměřená data 78

Seznam použitých zkratek a symbolů

DP	dolní propust
HP	horní propust
PP	pásmová propust
PZ	pásmová zádrž
OZ	operační zesilovač
ZV	zpětná vazba
R	základní prvek rezistor
L	základní prvek indukčnost (cívka)
C	základní prvek kondenzátor
RC	filtr tvořený z R a C
RL	filtr tvořený z R a L
RLC	filtr tvořený z R, L a C
ARC	aktivní filtr RC
FIR	číslicový filtr s konečnou odezvou
IIR	číslicový filtr s nekonečnou odezvou
DSP	digitální signálový procesor
VFA	zesilovač s napěťovou zpětnou vazbou
CFA	zesilovač s proudovou zpětnou vazbou)
OTA	transkonduktanční zesilovač
TIA	transimpedanční zesilovač
GVC	zobecněný proudový konvejor
CCII+	pozitivní proudový konvejor druhé generace
A/DC	převodník analogového signálu na číslicový
D/AC	převodník číslicového signálu na analogový
MUX	multiplexer
f_c	mezní frekvence
f_d	dolní mezní frekvence
f_h	horní mezní frekvence
Y	obecně admitance
K_u, K_i	přenos napětí, proudu
φ	fázový posuv
G	obecně přenos
g	přenosová vodivost
B_3	šířka pásma
ω	úhlová frekvence

Úvod

Jednoduché typy filtrů jsou známy více než sto let. Jejich důležitost vyvstala zejména s nástupem radiotechniky v minulém století. Stejně tak našly filtry uplatnění i v ostatních oborech. Např. v elektroakustice se hojně užívají reproduktorové výhybky či ekvalizéry, v regulační technice se filtruje rušení od užitečného signálu stejně jako v silnoproudé elektrotechnice, kde se zabraňuje např. pronikání rušení ze spotřebiče do rozvodné sítě.

V dnešní době trend digitalizace umožnil rozmach hlavně číslicových filtrů díky stále výkonnějším signálovým procesorům. Ani však tyto procesory nejsou zatím schopny plně nahradit dosud užívané analogové filtry hlavně v oblasti vysokých kmitočtů. Analogové filtry samozřejmě také prošly vývojem. Z běžných pasivních filtrů s cívkami, kondenzátory a rezistory přes filtry s elektronkami a tranzistory se vyvinuly aktivní filtry s využitím velmi rychlých operačních zesilovačů. Od operačních zesilovačů s napěťovou zpětnou vazbou se postupně přechází na ty se zpětnou vazbou proudovou a dále pak se vyvíjejí speciální typy jako např. transkonduktanční nebo transimpedanční zesilovače.

Na začátku práce jsem nastínil vlastnosti filtrů a porovnal jejich specifické výhody s nevýhodami. Jelikož dosud hojně užívané operační zesilovače s napěťovou zpětnou vazbou již neposkytují tak dobré výsledky především na vysokých frekvencích, byly vyvinuty zesilovače s proudovou zpětnou vazbou. Jinými typy zesilovačů, avšak také pracující s proudovou zpětnou vazbou, jsou operační transkonduktanční zesilovače (OTA), které jsem také zvolil pro moji práci. Tento typ zesilovačů má velmi velké přenosové pásmo (stovky MHz). Mezi další nesporné výhody patří zejména snadné řízení transkodnuktance pomocí malého stejnosměrného proudu. Toto řízení je umožněno díky čtyřkanálovému digitálně analogovému převodníku (D/AC), který je předřazen řídicím vstupům. Typ filtru je možno také měnit, což se děje za pomoci analogových multiplexerů. Jádrem veškerého digitálního řízení je výkonný mikrokontrolér PIC18F452 od firmy Microchip. Tento procesor byl zvolen pro jeho hardwarovou podporu kompilátoru jazyka C a jeho čtyřiceti pinová verze plně vystačí svými periferiemi pro tuto aplikaci. Pro indikaci parametrů je v obvodu zařazen LCD s klasickým řadičem standardu Hitachi spolu s jednoduchou klávesnicí.

1 Frekvenční filtry

1.1 Definice filtru

Frekvenční filtr je selektivní lineární obvod nacházející uplatnění v mnoha oblastech elektroniky (sdělovací technika, regulace, ...). Ideální filtr se vyznačuje dvěma oblastmi zesílení v závislosti na frekvenci. V jednom případě je zesílení nějaká konstantní (námi přednastavená) hodnota a v druhém je to $-\infty$. První oblast se nazývá propustné pásmo, druhá pak nepropustné pásmo.

1.2 Popis filtrů

Filtr lze samozřejmě popsat jako každý jiný obecný lineární komplexní dvojbran tj. komplexní přenosovou funkcí, ať už se jedná o přenos napětí (1.1) nebo proudu (1.2).

$$\vec{K}_u = K_u \cdot e^{j\varphi} = \frac{U_2 \cdot e^{j\varphi_2}}{U_1 \cdot e^{j\varphi_1}} \tag{1.1}$$

$$\vec{K}_i = K_i \cdot e^{j\varphi} = \frac{I_2 \cdot e^{j\varphi_2}}{I_1 \cdot e^{j\varphi_1}} \tag{1.2}$$

Přenosy můžeme rozdělit na reálnou a imaginární část, častěji se však rozdělují na modul $K_u = \frac{U_2}{U_1}$ a argument $\varphi = \varphi_2 - \varphi_1$. Chování filtru popisuje také diferenciální rovnice, ze které pomocí Laplaceovy transformace vyvodíme přenos (1.3).

$$G(s) = \frac{b_m s^m + \ldots + b_1 s + b_0}{a_n s^n + \ldots + a_1 s + a_0} \tag{1.3}$$

Pokud ve výrazu (1.3) nahradíme Laplaceův operátor výrazem jω, získáme pro popis filtrů výhodnější lomenou funkci tj. frekvenční přenos ve tvaru (1.4).

$$G(j\omega) = \frac{b_m (j\omega)^m + b_{m-1} (j\omega)^{m-1} + \ldots + b_1 j\omega + b_0}{a_n (j\omega)^n + a_{n-1} (j\omega)^{n-1} + \ldots + a_1 j\omega + a_0} \tag{1.4}$$

Z tohoto vztahu je už přímo vidět závislost přenosu na kmitočtu. Frekvenční přenos lze také získat dosazením funkce budicího signálu do diferenciální rovnice systému nebo Fourierovou transformací impulsní funkce systému. Frekvenční přenos lze opět rozdělit na

reálnou a imaginární část stejně jako na modul a argument. Po vynesení závislosti modulu na kmitočtu získáme modulovou (amplitudovou) frekvenční charakteristiku a závislost argumentu na kmitočtu bude fázová frekvenční charakteristika. Osa x bývá většinou logaritmická, pak přenos na osu y vynášíme v dB $|K_u|_{dB} = 20 \cdot \log K_u$. Fázová charakteristika mívá logaritmickou osu x, úhel se vynáší např. v úhlových stupních. Často se využívá substituce, kde p = jω nebo někdy také p = jω/ω$_c$. Pokud frekvenční přenos rozložíme do tvaru (1.5), pak kořeny v čitateli ($n_1 \ldots n_m$) se nazývají nuly přenosu a kořeny jmenovatele ($p_1 \ldots p_n$) póly přenosu.

$$G(p) = k \frac{(p-n_1)(p-n_2)\cdot\ldots\cdot(p-n_m)}{(p-p_1)(p-p_2)\cdot\ldots\cdot(p-p_n)} \tag{1.5}$$

Z polohy pólů a nul lze vyčíst podstatu chování takového systému (filtru). To je výhodné zejména u filtru vyšších řádů, neboť v podstatě rozložíme polynomy vyšších řádů na polynomy řádu jedna.

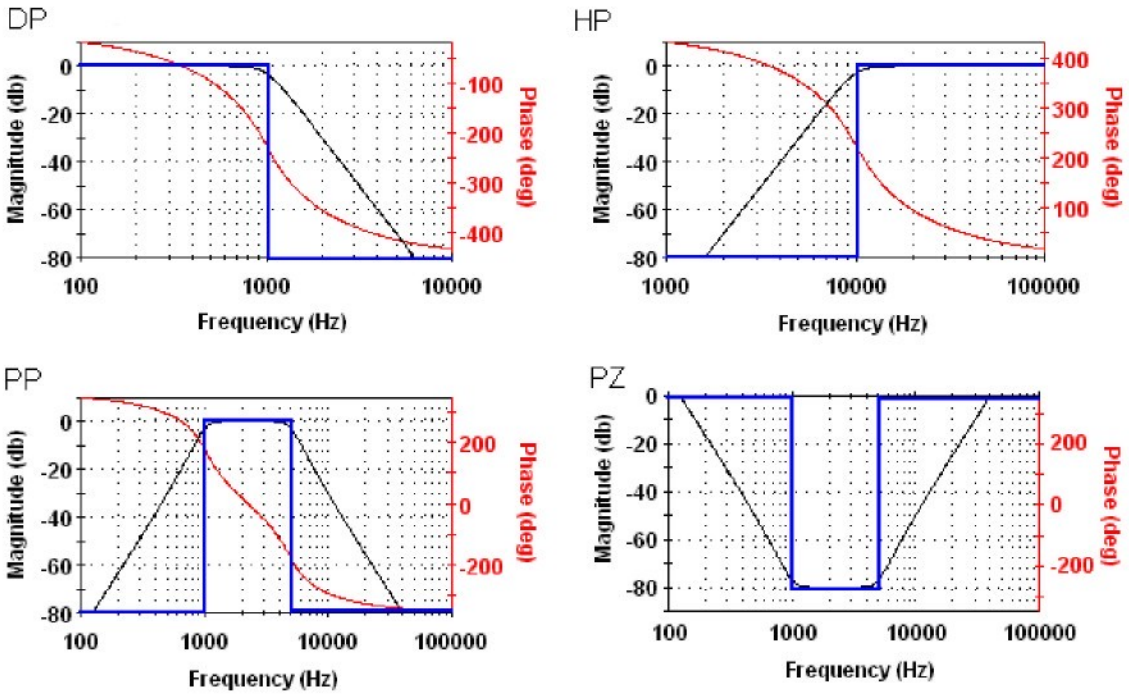
1.3 Rozdělení filtrů

1.3.1 Dle tvaru amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky

Jedná se vůbec o nejzákladnější dělení filtrů.

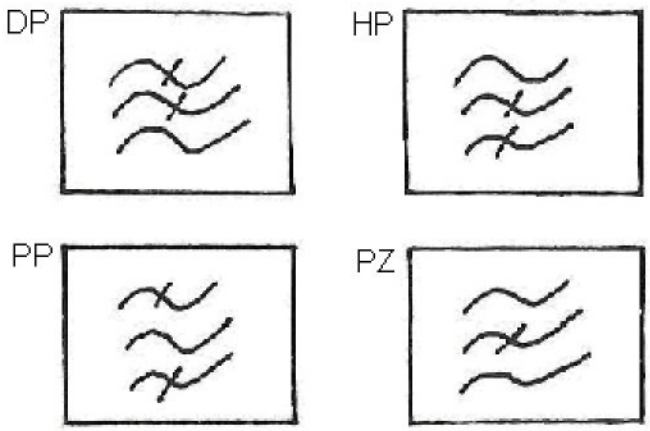
- dolní propust – DP (low-pass)
- horní propust – HP (high-pass)
- pásmová propust – PP (band-pass)
- pásmová zádrž – PZ (band-stop, notch filter)

Vše je patrné z Obr. 1.1. Černá křivka zobrazuje amplitudovou frekvenční charakteristiku reálného filtru, modrá



Obr. 1.1: Rozdělení filtrů dle amplitudové charakteristiky

zobrazuje filtr v jeho ideální podobě, avšak jeho zesílení (útlum) v nepropustném pásmu by mělo být přímo $-\infty$ namísto uvedených –80 dB. Skoková změna zesílení u DP a HP probíhá při frekvenci značené f_c (corner nebo také cut-off frequency), pro PP a PZ se



Obr. 1.2: Značení filtrů v blokových schématech

značí obě frekvence např. f_d a f_h. Na Obr. 1.2 jsou patrné symboly užívané v blokových schématech pro tyto filtry.

1.3.2 Dle typu použité aproximace

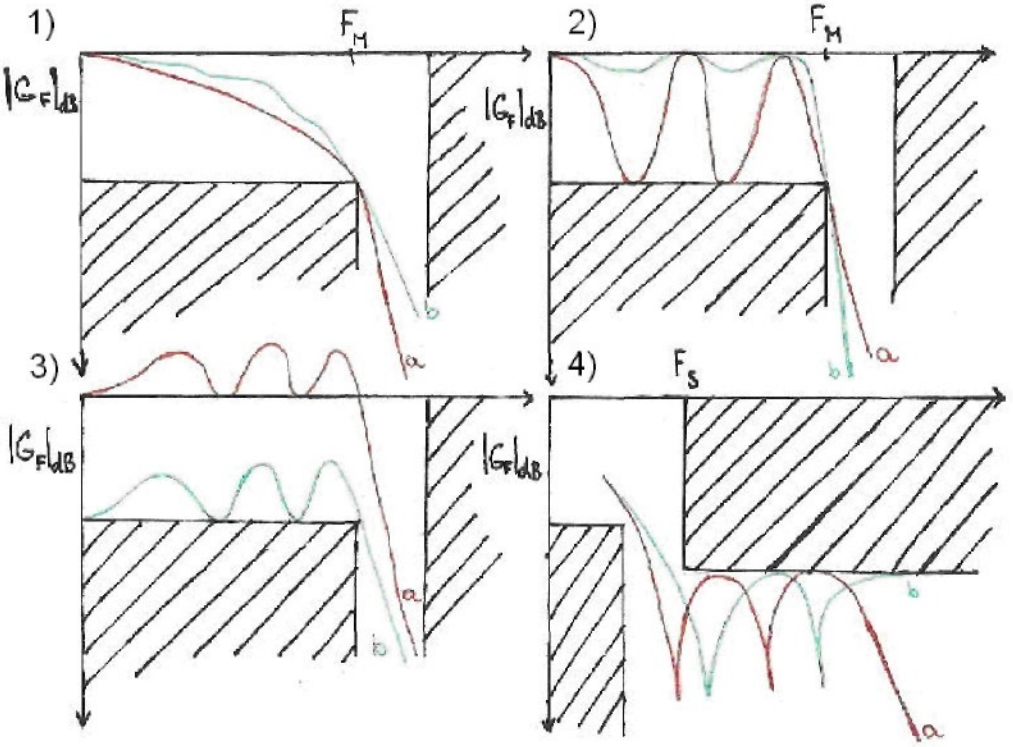
Určitý problém představuje nalezení koeficientů přenosové funkce filtru. I při splnění požadovaných vlastností při návrhu filtru (tolerance v amplitudové charakteristice), existuje teoreticky nekonečně mnoho řešení, jak mohou koeficienty přenosové funkce (a tedy amplitudová charakteristika) vypadat. Existuje však několik běžně používaných typů aproximací těchto charakteristik. Každá z těchto charakteristik je optimalizována pro trochu jiné nároky na filtr. Základní typy aproximací podle [1] jsou:

- Butterworthova
- Besselova (Thomsonova)
- Čebyševova
- Cauerova (eliptické filtry)
- inverzní Čebyševova

Obecně lze ještě tyto typy aproximací začlenit do skupin podle vlastností jejich křivek. Lze rozlišit např.:

- v propustném pásmu:
    - monotónní aproximace mohou být maximálně ploché (Butterworth) nebo se zvlněním
    - izoextremální aproximace (Čebyševova, Cauerova) s velkým či malým zvlněním (aproximace s menším zvlněním mívají větší strmost přechodu mezi propustným a nepropustným pásmem). Dále se dají rozlišovat podle řádu filtru. Filtry se sudým řádem mají umístěno zvlnění nad osou, zatímco filtry s lichým řádem pod osou (osa je umístěna v hodnotě 0 dB pokud není nastaveno jinak stejnosměrné zesílení filtru, což je poměr koeficientů b_0 a a_0)
- v nepropustném pásmu:
    - aproximace pouze s póly přenosu – mají charakteristiku monotónně klesající s asymptotou n * 20dB, takže se zvyšuje útlum

- aproximace s nulami přenosu lichého řádu – po zvlnění průběhu bude koncová část charakteristiky klesat monotónně (obsahuje maximálně (n-1)/2 nul)
- aproximace s nulami přenosu sudého řádu – koncová část charakteristiky neklesá monotónně (obsahuje maximálně n/2 nul)



Obr. 1.3: Přehled typů aproximací 1) maximálně hladká (a) a monotónní se zvlněním (b); 2) izoextremální aproximace s velkým (a) a malým (b) tolerančním polem; 3) izoextremální aproximace sudého řádu (b) a její posunutá varianta (a); 4) průběhy v nepropustném pásmu s nulami přenosu lichého (a) a sudého (b) řádu

1.3.3 Dle způsobu realizace

- klasické filtry z diskrétních součástek
    - RC – levné, jednoduché filtry s malým činitelem jakosti (používají se asi jen do druhého řádu pro nenáročné aplikace)
    - RLC – lze s nimi realizovat teoreticky libovolný filtr, ten je ale omezen na spodní straně pásma velikostí cívek (pro nízké frekvence jsou nutné rozměrné cívky – malý činitel jakosti) a na horní straně zase parazitními vlastnostmi např. také cívek (mezizávitová kapacita apod.)
    - RL
- ARC – aktivní filtry využívají většinou operační zesilovač, ke kterému jsou připojeny odpory a kapacity. Tím se odstraní použití (na výrobu náročných) cívek. Vlastnosti cívek jsou v určitém ohledu zachovány, neboť s použitím kapacit spolu s aktivním prvkem lze při vhodném uspořádání zapojení dosáhnout toho, že se část obvodu chová jako cívka (jen z hlediska výstupních svorek). Pak se tato indukčnost nazývá syntetickou. Speciálním případem filtrů ARC jsou filtry se spínanými kapacitami (někdy označované zkratkou ASC). Jedná se o zapojení s aktivními prvky, které však namísto rezistorů v klasické podobě využívají speciální spínací obvod, ke kterému je připojen kondenzátor. Ten se při určité frekvenci spínání chová jako rezistor. Výhodou těchto filtrů je jejich snadná přeladitelnost, kde mezní frekvence je závislá na frekvenci spínací. To však na druhou stranu omezuje kmitočtový rozsah shora, neboť frekvence spínání musí být mnohonásobně vyšší než frekvence užitečného signálu (obvykle 50× až 100×). Čím více by se frekvence spínání blížila frekvenci užitečného signálu, tím více by se užitečný signál v časové oblasti diskretizoval (měl by více schodovitý průběh) a mohl by nastat aliasingový efekt. O možnostech spínaných kapacitorů a více pojednává tzv. Brutonova transformace.

1.3.4 Dle spojitosti signálu v čase

- analogové – ty se dají ještě dělit podle toho, zda signál pouze tlumí (tzv. pasivní filtry) nebo určitou část i zesilují (aktivní filtry)
- číslicové – dále je lze dělit na filtry s konečnou a nekonečnou impulsní odezvou

U číslicových filtrů nezávisí funkce na obvodovém řešení, ale na softwaru. Tím jsou dány jejich specifické vlastnosti oproti filtrům analogovým:

- výhody:
  - snadná opakovatelnost ve výrobě (nahrání příslušného softwaru)
  - vysoká stabilita parametrů – vlastnosti filtru nejsou závislé na součástkách, které mají proměnné vlastnosti (např. teplotní drift nebo změny vlivem jejich stárnutí)
  - malé rozměry
  - možnost výroby adaptivních filtrů (ty dokáží za provozu měnit své parametry)
- nevýhody:
  - složitý návrh – výpočtová náročnost
  - nedají se použít pro vysoké kmitočty – to je dáno mezními kmitočty jednotlivých obvodů
  - v nepropustném pásmu mají omezený útlum

1.3.5 Dle typu přenosové funkce

- polynomiálního typu tj. bez nul přenosu ve tvaru:

$$G(j\omega) = \frac{b_0}{a_n(j\omega)^n + a_{n-1}(j\omega)^{n-1} + \ldots + a_1 j\omega + a_0} \tag{1.6}$$

- s nulami přenosu ve tvaru (1.7), kde z podmínky fyzikální realizovatelnosti platí $m \leq n$

$$G(j\omega) = \frac{b_m(j\omega)^m + b_{m-1}(j\omega)^{m-1} + \ldots + b_1 j\omega + b_0}{a_n(j\omega)^n + a_{n-1}(j\omega)^{n-1} + \ldots + a_1 j\omega + a_0} \tag{1.7}$$

1.4 Číslicové filtry

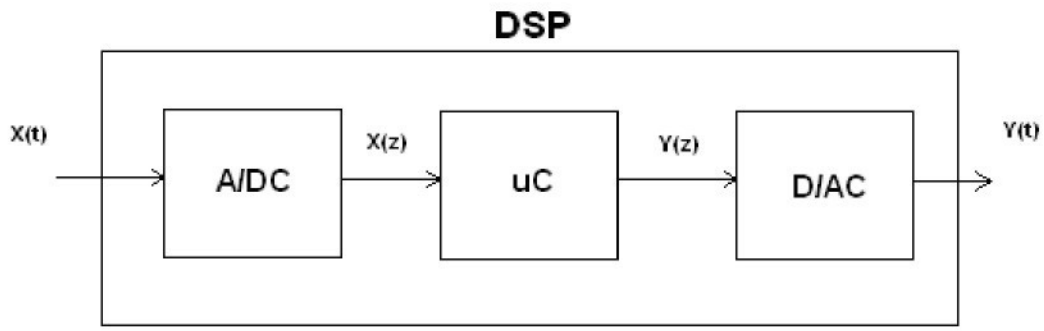
Jedná se v podstatě o jedny z novějších typů filtrů, neboť jejich doba mohla přijít až s nástupem digitální techniky, avšak tyto filtry nejsou stále schopny plně nahradit analogové filtry hlavně na vyšších kmitočtech (ačkoli se rychlost zpracování signálů neustále zvětšuje). V aplikacích s nižšími frekvencemi např. zpracování zvuku poskytují vynikající výsledky. Blokové schéma číslicového filtru je vidět na Obr. 1.4. První blok (a/d převodník) zabezpečuje navzorkování vstupního analogového signálu. Tento signál se dále již jako posloupnost číselných hodnot zpracovává v mikrokontroléru – provádějí se výpočty. Nakonec se signál musí převézt zpět do analogové podoby v tzv. d/a převodníku. V moderních rychlých mikrokontrolérech bývají již všechny bloky integrovány v jediném čipu. Tyto mikrokontroléry tzv. DSP (Digital Signal Processors) jsou speciálně konstruovány, aby v nich byly velice rychle prováděny hlavně operace spojené se zpracováním signálů např. konvoluce. Kvalita filtru je dána zejména rozlišením a/d a d/a převodníku:

- 8 bitů – je vhodné jen pro ověření principu činnosti filtru
- 12 bitů – minimální hodnota pro zpracování signálu
- 16 bitů – využívá např. CD, jeví se jako postačující pro dobrou kvalitu zvuku
- 20 a více bitů – velmi kvalitní

Při návrhu číslicových filtrů se s výhodou užívá Z-transformace. Tento nástroj převádí časový popis do komplexní roviny, kde je popis filtru frekvenčními charakteristikami názornější. Diferenciální rovnice se transformují na diferenční. Příklad zápisu přenosu v Z oblasti je v (1.8), kde z^{-1} představuje zpoždění o jeden vzorek.

$$H(z)=\frac{Y(z)}{X(z)}=\frac{b_0+b_1z^{-1}+b_2z^{-2}+\ldots b_mz^{-m}}{1+a_1z^{-1}+a_2z^{-2}+\ldots a_nz^{-n}} \tag{1.8}$$

Návrh a práce s filtry v Z-oblasti plně podporuje Matlab (např. funkce cheby1, cheby2, butter, ellip pro návrh koeficientů filtru a filter, filter2 pro návrh řádu a typu filtru). Číslicové filtry se v podstatě dělí do dvou skupin. Jedná se o filtry FIR a IIR.

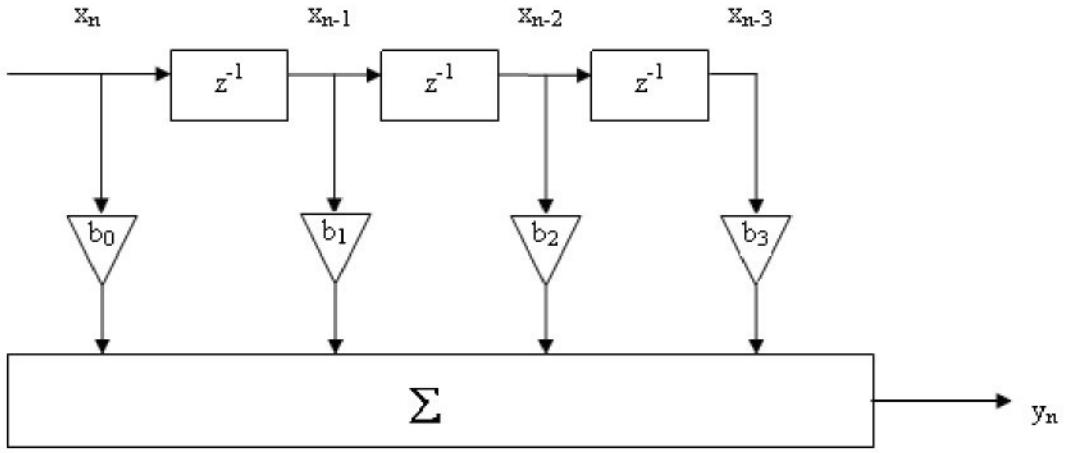


Obr. 1.4: Blokové schéma číslicového filtru

FIR (Finite Impulse Response) jsou filtry s konečnou impulsní odezvou. Reálný analogový filtr tohoto nemůže nikdy dosáhnout. Aktuální hodnota výstupu filtru je závislá na historii vstupních vzorků násobených koeficienty. Proto jsou tyto filtry složitější oproti filtrům s konečnou impulsní odezvou (při stejné strmosti amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky musí být FIR filtr 5 až 10krát vyššího řádu než filtr IIR). Naproti tomu jsou ale tyto filtry rychlejší, mohou mít lineární průběh fázové charakteristiky a jsou z principu stabilní. Přenos FIR filtru (1.9) má jednotkový jmenovatel.

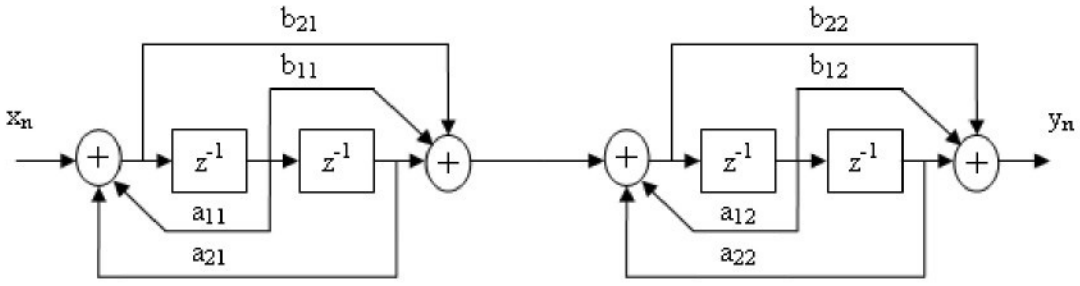
$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} + \ldots b_m z^{-m}}{1} = \sum_{n=0}^{m} b_n z^{-n} \qquad (1.9)$$

Nejužívanější struktura se nazývá transverzální filtr. Jedná se vlastně o zpožďovací vedení, kde aktuální hodnota na výstupu závisí na m předchozích vzorcích vynásobených koeficientem (vážený průměr předchozích vzorků). Koeficienty, kterými se násobí minulé vzorky, jsou hodnoty impulsní odezvy, tedy $b_n = h_n$. Jako příklad je na obrázku Obr. 1.5 uveden transverzální filtr třetího řádu.



Obr. 1.5: Transverzální filtr třetího řádu

IIR (Infinite Impulse Response) filtry mají nekonečnou impulsní odezvu. Toho docilují použitím zpětných vazeb (rekursivní filtry), které jsou samozřejmě záporné, ale z principu mohou při špatném návrhu být i kladné, což by filtr mohlo činit nestabilním (obvod by se sám rozkmital jako oscilátor). Stabilitu filtru lze samozřejmě určit podle polohy pólů a nul přenosu v komplexní rovině stejně jako u ostatních typů filtrů. Stabilní IIR filtr má všechny póly uvnitř jednotkové kružnice. IIR filtry lze realizovat v různých formách. Rozlišují se dvě přímé formy, dále pak formy kaskádní a paralelní. V praxi nejpoužívanější je forma kaskádní, která je vyobrazena na obrázku Obr. 1.6. Podrobnější informace o číslicových filtrech lze nalézt např. ve [2].



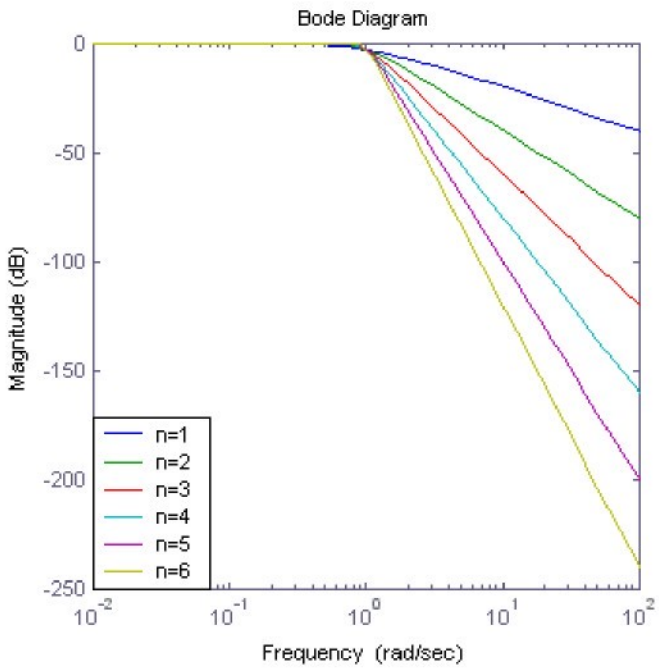
Obr. 1.6: IIR filtr v kaskádní formě

1.5 Analogové filtry

1.5.1 Butterworthův filtr

Je jedním z nejpoužívanějších filtrů pro jeho příznivé vlastnosti – linearita fázové charakteristiky a dobrý útlum amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky při nízkém řádu filtru. Maximální zvlnění amplitudové charakteristiky při mezní frekvenci fc se volí 3 dB. Butterworthův filtr je navržen tak, aby měl maximálně plochý průběh amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky v propustném pásmu (viz Graf 1.1). V grafu (Graf 1.2) je patrné rozložení pólů v komplexní rovině. Jedná se o Butterworthův filtr typu DP, proto se v daném rozložení nevyskytují žádné nuly. V Graf 1.2 je za a) zobrazeno rozvržení pólů pro lichý řád (zde konkrétně pátý řád) a je zde vidět jeden kořen umístěný přímo v bodě –1 oproti případu b), kde je zobrazen filtr sudého řádu. Všechny kořeny leží na jednotkové kružnici a samozřejmě leží v levé polorovině, proto je filtr stabilní (dle pravidla užívaného v regulační technice).

Obecně je rozestup mezi póly na jednotkové kružnici úhel závislý na řádu filtru tedy π/n. Mezi krajními póly a osami pak $\pi/(2*n)$.



Graf 1.1: Průběh amplitudové charakteristiky Butterworthova filtru v závislosti na řádu n

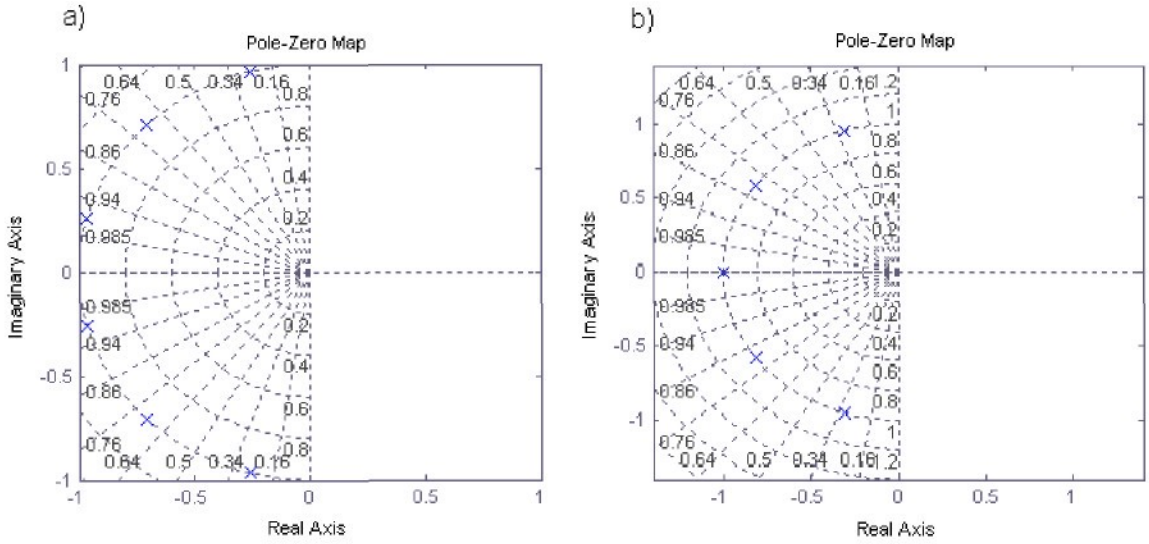
Rozložení je zobrazeno pro normované Butterworthovy polynomy (polynomy s kterými dosahuje filtr zlomové frekvence $\omega_c = 1$ rad/sec). Při tomto rozložení kořenů lze popsat amplitudovou frekvenční charakteristiku vztahem (1.10).

$$|G(j\omega)| = \frac{b_0}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_c}\right)^{2n}}} \qquad (1.10)$$

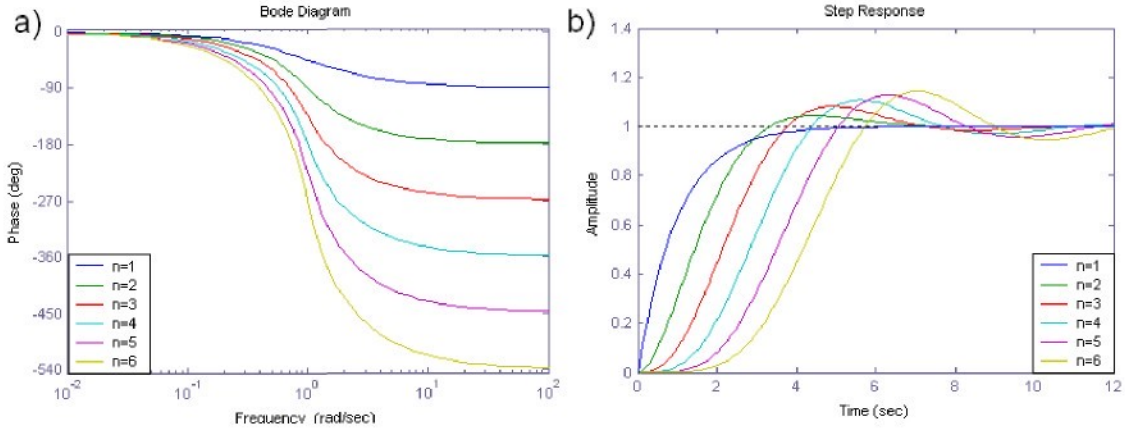
Vztah (1.10) lze zjednodušit na vztah (1.11), který platí pro libovolný řád filtru a vyznačuje útlum filtru oproti idealizovanému asymptotickému průběhu.

$$|G(j\omega)| = \frac{b_0}{\sqrt{2}} \qquad (1.11)$$

Pokud v (1.11) za b_0 dosadíme jedničku, zlogaritmujeme a vynásobíme dvacetkrát, vyjde nám po zaokrouhlení typické zesílení (zeslabení) –3 dB. V grafu (Graf 1.1) je vidět, jak se mění vlastnosti filtru v závislosti na volbě jeho řádu (n). Strmost přechodu mezi propustným a nepropustným pásmem se samozřejmě zvětšuje s rostoucím řádem filtru. Tím samozřejmě roste také složitost daného zapojení filtru. Pokles zesílení (zvyšování útlumu) se děje rychlostí 20 dB na dekádu (popř. 6 dB na oktávu) pro filtr prvního řádu (pro řád n je to n*20dB/dek.). Lepší vlastnosti filtrů vyšších řádů ve frekvenční oblasti jsou vykoupeny horšími vlastnostmi v oblasti časové – se zvyšujícím se řádem filtru se prodlužuje doba odezvy. Je to demonstrováno v odezvě na jednotkový skok (přechodová charakteristika viz Graf 1.3b). Chování v časové oblasti má význam v regulační technice, kde potřebujeme, aby filtr reagoval s relativně malou prodlevou (např. při potlačování rušivých signálů na přívodech od snímače). Přechodová charakteristika má určitý překmit, maximálně však do 20 %. Na dalším grafu (Graf 1.3a) je vidět fázová frekvenční charakteristika. Křivka se asymptoticky blíží k hodnotě n*90 °, přičemž při mezní frekvenci je fázové zpoždění přesně polovina zpoždění maximálního.



Graf 1.2: Rozmístění pólů v komplexní rovině pro Butterworthův filtr typu DP lichého řádu (a) a sudého řádu (b)



Graf 1.3: a) průběh fázové charakteristiky, b) přechodová charakteristika pro Butterworthův filtr řádu n

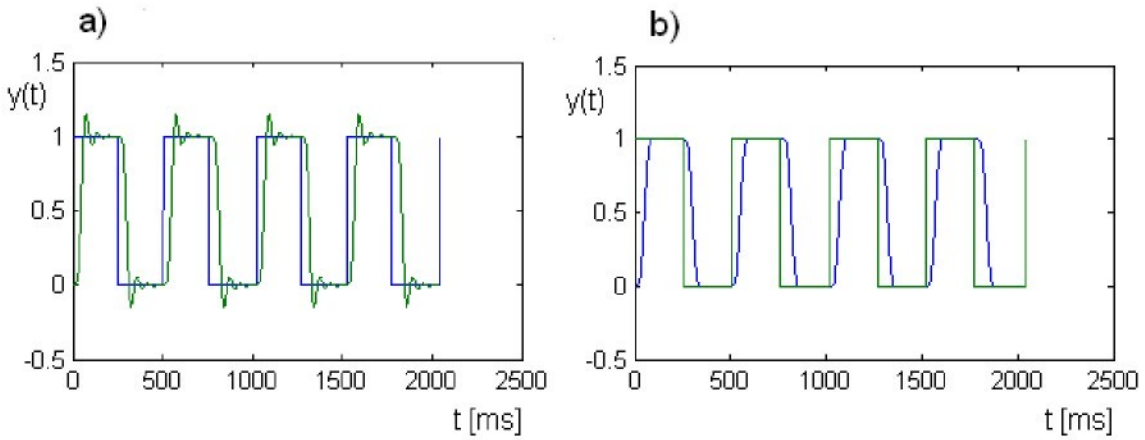
1.5.2 Besselovy (Thomsonovy) filtry

Besselovy filtry jsou optimalizovány z hlediska tzv. skupinového zpoždění tak, aby mělo maximálně plochý průběh. Skupinové zpoždění se značí obvykle τ_g a je definováno

jako $\tau_g(\omega) = -\frac{d\varphi(\omega)}{d\omega}$. Průběh tohoto zpoždění tedy vznikne derivací funkce fázového zpoždění. Aby bylo skupinové zpoždění maximálně ploché (maximálně konstantní), pak musí být fázová charakteristika co nejvíce lineární. To by znamenalo, že fázové zpoždění je lineární funkcí frekvence, což samozřejmě souvisí s tvarem přechodové charakteristiky (ta má jen velmi malé překmity asi do jednoho procenta). Tyto vlastnosti jsou důležité hlavně pokud má filtr nezkresleně přenášet neharmonické periodické signály (např. obdélníkový). Každý neharmonický periodický signál lze rozložit do tzv. Fourierovy řady (1.12). Obdélníkový signál se tedy teoreticky skládá z nekonečného

$$x(t) = A_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{k\to\infty} A_k \sin(k\omega_0 t + \varphi_k) \qquad (1.12)$$

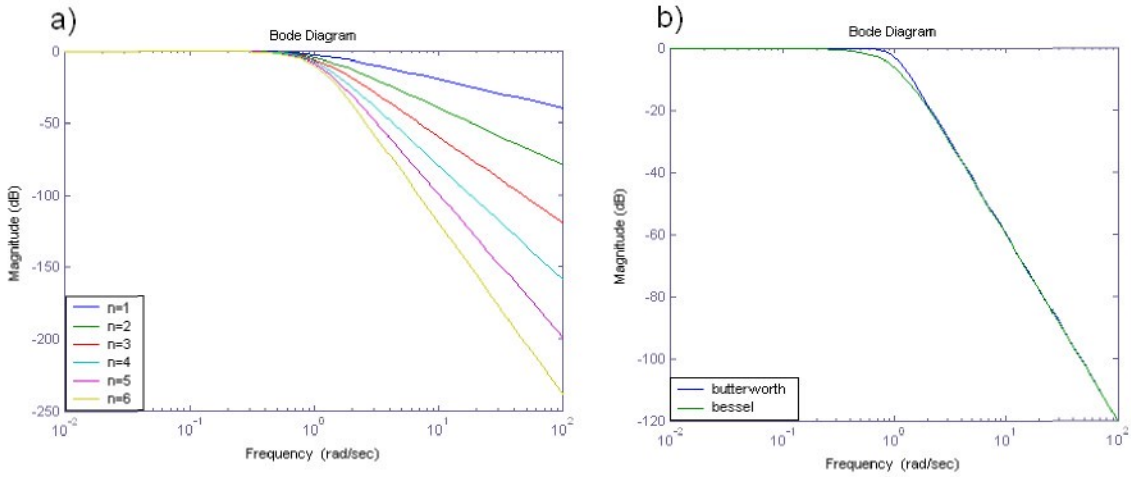
množství sinusových a kosinusových signálů (kosinus je sinus posunutý o 90 °) s různými amplitudami. Z toho vyplývá, že filtr vždy potlačí nějakou část užitečného signálu – u DP potlačí filtr všechny harmonické s vyšší frekvencí než f_c. Ke zkreslení signálu tedy dojde vždy, a tak musíme stanovit, které vyšší harmonické v užitečném signálu potřebujeme a ty počítat ještě do propustného pásma – u DP musí být menší než f_c. U Butterworthova filtru i přesto dojde k dalšímu zkreslení signálu, neboť skupinové zpoždění není maximálně ploché. Výhodné vlastnosti v tomto ohledu má filtr Besselův, který zkreslí užitečný signál mnohem méně (to je patrné i z jeho přechodové charakteristiky).



Graf 1.4: Porovnání Butterworthova (a) a Besselova filtru (b)

Porovnání přenosu obdélníkového signálu Butterworthovým filtrem a Besselovým filtrem je vidět z grafu (Graf 1.4). Zkreslení signálu filtrem je rozhodně menší u Besselova

filtru (b) oproti Butterworthovu filtru (a) (drobná nespojitost signálu na grafech je způsobena diskretizací v Matlabu). Na dalším grafu (Graf 1.5) jsou patrné amplitudové charakteristiky Besselových filtrů v závislosti na řádu (a) a porovnání amplitudové charakteristiky Butterworthova a Besselova filtru třetího řádu (b). Besselův filtr má počátek útlumu již na nižší frekvenci, ale přechod mezi propustným a nepropustným pásmem není tak ostrý jako u jiných filtrů. U Butterworthova filtru se počítá s útlumem na kritické frekvenci 3 dB. Besselovy filtry lze takto také navrhovat, ale častěji se navrhují tak, aby skupinové zpoždění τ_g bylo rovno jedné při nulové frekvenci. Takto navržené filtry dosahují útlumu 3 dB až na vyšší frekvenci. Dále se používá mnoho jiných normalizací pro Besselovy filtry (zmínka byla o dvou nejčastějších).

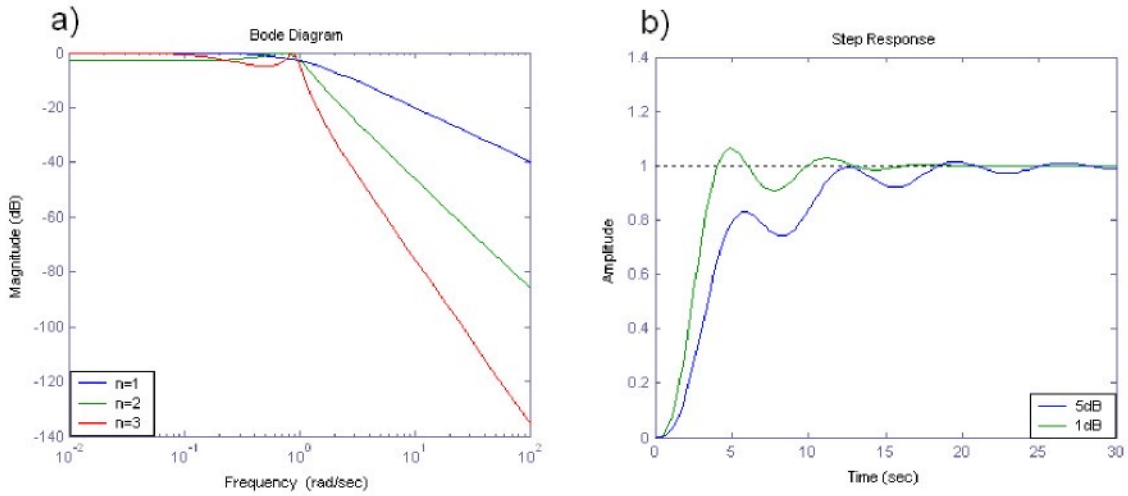


Graf 1.5: a) Amplitudové charakteristiky Besselova filtru v závislosti na řádu n; b) Porovnání amplitudových charakteristik Besselova a Butterworthova filtru třetího řádu

1.5.3 Čebyševovy filtry

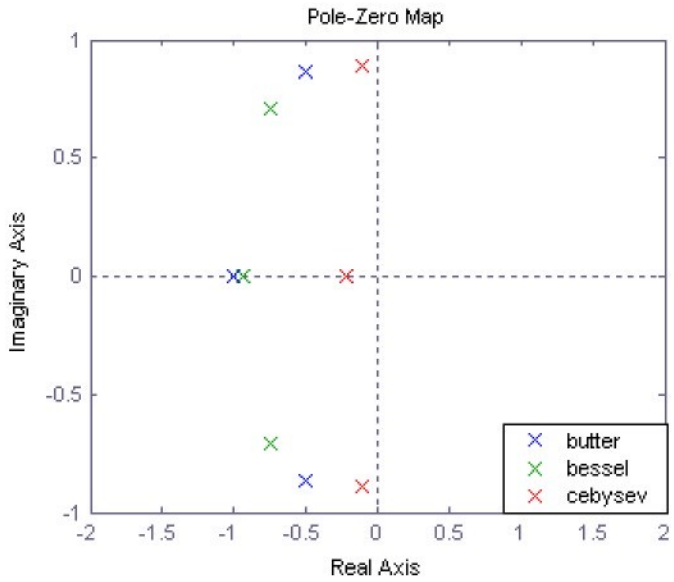
Čebyševovy filtry oproti předchozím mají mnohem ostřejší přechod mezi propustným a nepropustným pásmem. Je to zřejmě nejstrmější aproximace bez nul přenosu. To však také přináší určité zvlnění amplitudové charakteristiky v propustném pásmu jak je vidět z obr. Zde je přípustné zvlnění 3 dB, ale lze nastavit libovolně. Obecně platí čím vyšší přípustné zvlnění tím větší strmost charakteristiky, ale horší chování v časové oblasti (viz

Graf 1.6., kde je znázorněna odezva na jednotkový skok filtrů s různým zvlněním). Ustálení odezvy pro filtr s 1 dB přípustného zvlnění trvá déle. U Čebyševových filtrů se obvykle nevolí mezní frekvence f_c jako frekvence na níž je zesílení menší o 3 dB oproti stejnosměrnému, ale jako f_c se označuje frekvence, kde poprvé zvlnění vybočí z přípustných mezí. Jak je vidět z grafu (Graf 1.6), řád filtru souvisí s průběhem zvlnění (filtr řádu n má n–1 výchylek, přičemž první výchylka směřuje dolů pro n liché a nahoru pro n sudé). Rozložení pólů filtru v komplexní rovině potvrzuje jeho vlastnosti – v grafu (Graf 1.7) je znázorněno rozložení pólů tří typů filtrů třetího řádu. Čím jsou blíže póly imaginární ose, tím je filtr méně stabilní (filtr má menší relativní tlumení).



Graf 1.6: a)Vliv řádu filtru na průběh amplitudové charakteristiky Čebyševova filtru; b) Přechodová charakteristika pro různé hodnoty f_c

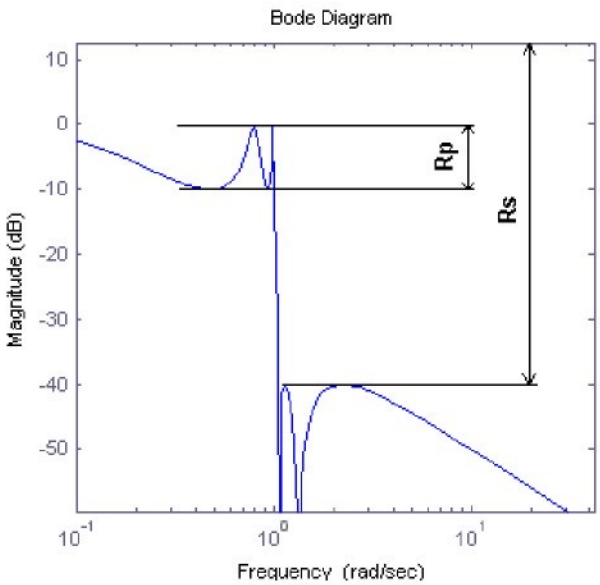
To znamená, že přechodová charakteristika bude vykazovat větší překmity a doba ustálení bude větší např. oproti Butterworthovu filtru. Póly u Čebyševova filtru se prokládají elipsou, u Butterworthova je možno je proložit kružnicí.



Graf 1.7: Porovnání rozložení pólů a nul pro různé typy filtrů třetího řádu

1.5.4 Cauerovy (eliptické filtry)

Tyto filtry obsahují pro všechny konfigurace (DP, HP, PP, PZ) nuly v čitateli přenosu. Ve výpočtu pólů a nul přenosu se objevují Jacobiho eliptické integrály, proto se tyto integrály označují eliptické. Tyto nuly způsobují větší strmost přechodu mezi propustným a nepropustným pásmem.



Graf 1.8: Amplitudová charakteristika Cauerova filtru pátého řádu

Dosud zmiňované filtry měly průběh v propustném pásmu buď monotónní nebo se zákmity, ale v nepropustném pásmu měly charakteristiku jen monotónní s asymptotou n*20dB/dek. Amplitudová charakteristika Cauerových filtrů však obsahuje určité zvlnění i v nepropustném pásmu. Při návrhu filtru např. pomocí nástrojů Matlabu je potřeba zadat mimo řádu filtru a zlomových frekvencí také maximální zvlnění v propustném pásmu A_{max} (v Matlabu R_p) a minimální požadovaný útlum v nepropustném pásmu A_{min} (R_s). Vše je patrné z grafu (Graf 1.8), na kterém je zachycena amlitudová frekvenční charakteristika eliptického filtru pátého řádu s max. zvlněním Rp = 10 dB a s min. útlumem Rs = 40 dB. Na dalším grafu (Graf 1.9) jsou vidět odezva na jednotkový skok (a) a amplitudová frekvenční charakteristika (b). Na přechodové charakteristice je zajímavá odezva filtrů sudých řádů, kdy se charakteristika ustálí na jiné (nižší) hodnotě než jedna. Pro určení minimálního potřebného řádu Cauerova filtru tak, jak je uvedeno v [3], se nejprve vypočítá tzv. činitel selektivity k, dále pak modulární činitel q. $k = \frac{\omega_p}{\omega_s}$, kde ω_p je úhlová frekvence, při níž amplitudová charakteristika poprvé vybočí z tolerančního pásma v propustném pásmu a ω_s je frekvence, při níž začíná nepropustné pásmo. Dále musíme vypočíst modulární činitel q viz rovnice (1.13) a tzv. útlumový činitel (diskriminační faktor) D (1.15).

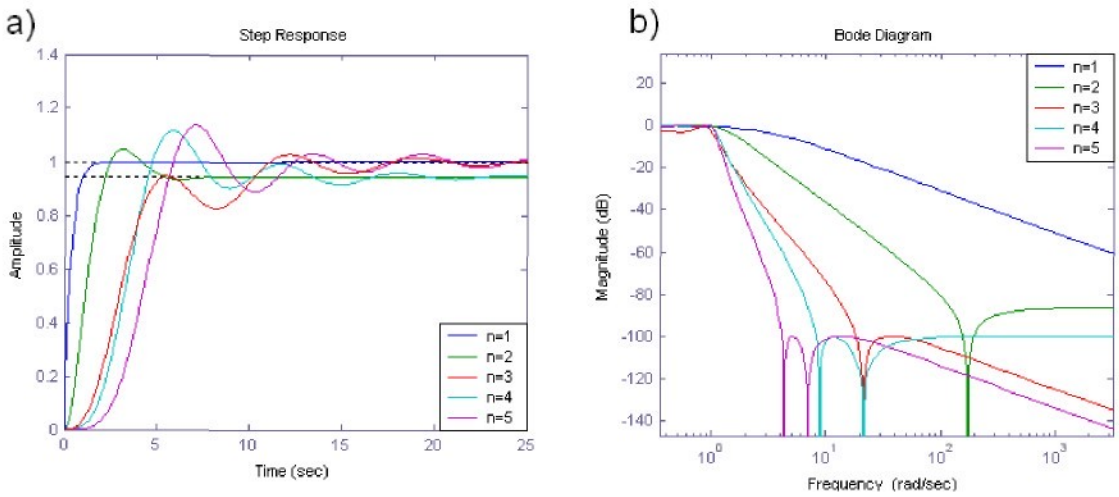
$$q = u + 2u^2 + 15u^9 + 150u^{13} \tag{1.13}$$

$$u = \frac{1 - \sqrt[4]{1 - k^2}}{2(1 + \sqrt[4]{1 - k^2})} \tag{1.14}$$

$$D = \frac{10^{0,1Rs} - 1}{10^{0,1Rp} - 1} \tag{1.15}$$

Z těchto hodnot již umíme stanovit min. řád filtru (1.16).

$$n = \frac{\log(16 * D)}{\log\left(\frac{1}{q}\right)} \tag{1.16}$$



Graf 1.9: Závislost amplitudové (a) a přechodové (b) charakteristiky Cauerova filtru na řádu n

U eliptických filtrů opět existuje větší množství normalizací. Při jedné z nich platí vztah $\sqrt{\omega_p \omega_s} = 1$. V Matlabu se naopak normuje tak, že platí $\omega_p = 1$. Podrobnější informace o normování filtrů lze nalézt např. v [3].

1.5.5 Jiné aproximace:

- Inverzní Čebyševova aproximace:

Tato aproximace je v propustném pásmu monotónní a v nepropustném obsahuje zvlnění, což je přesný opak, než jak tomu bylo u Čebyševovy aproximace typu 1. Má také výhodnější tvar fázové charakteristiky a lepší odezvu na jednotkový skok (ta se přibližuje Butterworthově aproximaci). Daných vlastností se dosáhne přidáním nul přenosu do přenosu Butterworthovy aproximace.

- Feistelova-Unbehauenova aproximace:

Tato aproximace opět vznikne přidáním nul v nepropustném pásmu do přenosu, tentokráte do přenosu Besselova filtru. Přidáním nul se samozřejmě zvýší strmost amplitudové charakteristiky. Přechodová charakteristika je téměř bez překmitů. Nevýhodou těchto filtrů je neklesající přenos v nepropustném pásmu.

• Gaussova aproximace:

Aproximace je optimalizována z hlediska časových charakteristik tak, že přechodová i impulzní charakteristika jsou bez překmitů. Amplitudová frekvenční char. je velmi podobná Besselově s menší strmostí přechodu a fázová charakteristika je zcela lineární. Proto filtr není přímo fyzikálně realizovatelný – je tzv. nepolynomiálního typu. Proto se používají upravené polynomiální aproximace, které se k této ideální přibližují.

• Legendrova aproximace:

Aproximace odpovídá strmější amplitudové charakteristice oproti Butterworthově, avšak nemá zcela hladký průběh. Doba ustálení přechodové charakteristiky je delší a s překmity do 20 %.

• Tranzitivní Besselova-Butterworthova aproximace:

Aproximace využívá dobré vlastnosti obou dílčích aproximací. Míra přiblížení k jedné či druhé se volí hodnotou koeficientu m, kde m = 0 znamená Butterworthovu aproximaci a m = 1 Besselovu aproximaci => $0<m<1$. Tento typ filtru lze navrhnout jednoduše např. programem NAF, který je volně šiřitelný.

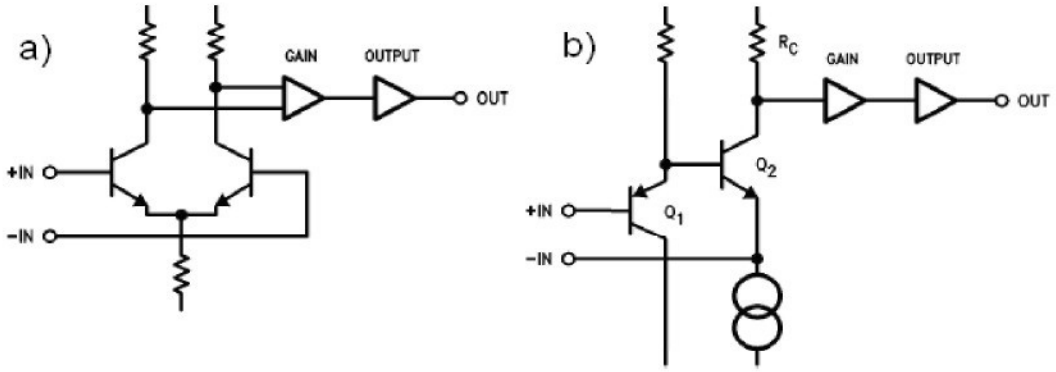
2 Využití moderních aktivních prvků

2.1 Možnosti nových prvků

Ve filtrech ARC může být použit jako aktivní prvek např. tranzistor (popř. tranzistorový stupeň), operační zesilovač s napěťovou zpětnou vazbou (VFA – Voltage Feedback Amplifier), operační zesilovač s proudovou zpětnou vazbou (CFA – Current Feedback Amplifier) nebo moderní transkonduktanční (OTA – Operational Transconductance Amplifier) popř. transimpedanční zesilovač (TIA – TransImpedance Amplifier). Zesilovač slouží především ke krytí ztrát v pasivním obvodu RC.

Filtry s využitím tranzistorových zesilovačů jsou bezesporu nejstarším řešením z výše uvedených. Filtr s jednostupňovým zesilovačem obvykle nedosahuje vyššího činitel kvality Q (maximálně kolem 2). Při dnešních cenách integrovaných obvodů se již ani nevyplatí použít klasický tranzistorový zesilovač namísto OZ.

Nejpoužívanějším aktivním prvkem byly doposud OZ s napěťovou zpětnou vazbou. Výrobci integrovaných obvodů se neustále snaží snižovat napájecí napětí (tím samozřejmě i spotřebu) a zároveň zvyšovat hustotu integrace, čímž se neustále snižuje odstup signálu od šumu. Signál je potom náchylnější na nejrůznější rušení, což se projevuje především u součástek pracujících v napěťovém módu a omezuje to mezní kmitočet obvodu (u klasických OZ maximálně řády MHz). OZ je v podstatě zdroj napětí řízený napětím (diferenčním napětím na vstupu) se zesílením A_U. Pomocí tzv. přidružené transformace je možné považovat OZ za zdroj proudu řízený proudem se zesílením A_I, přičemž platí, že $A_U = A_I$. Takto provozovaný OZ je nutno zapojit jako invertující popř. neinvertující zesilovač s jednotkovým zesílením, což nás do jisté míry při návrhu filtru omezuje. Porovnání klasického OZ a OZ s proudovou zpětnou vazbou je na Obr. 2.1. Ve vstupním obvodu je zapojen emitorový sledovač. Tím se dosahuje mnohem rychlejší odezvy, neboť vstupní obvod má jednotkové zesílení, a tak i malou Millerovu kapacitu.



Obr. 2.1: Porovnání OZ s napěťovou (a) a proudovou (b) zpětnou vazbou

Výstupní obvod je buffer poskytující proudové zesílení s jednotkovým napěťovým zesílením. Podrobněji je porovnání jednotlivých typů OZ uvedeno např. v [4].

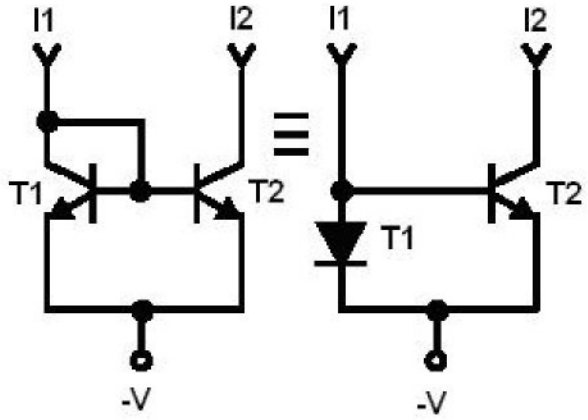
2.2 Prvky OTA

2.2.1 Princip funkce

První operační transkonduktanční zesilovač (Operational Transconductance Amplifier – OTA) přišel na svět ve druhé polovině šedesátých let ve firmě RCA. OTA je v podstatě zesilovač s proměnnou rezistancí, která je řízena proudovým vstupem. Dále obsahuje dva napěťové vstupy (diferenční). Stejně jako v klasickém operačním zesilovači je řídící proud modulován rozdílem vstupních napětí. Výstup ovšem není napěťový, ale proudový. Pro pochopení činnosti OTA je nejpodstatnější pochopit jeho základní stavební prvek, čímž je proudové zrcadlo (current mirror).

Základní princip proudového zrcadla je patrný z obrázku Obr. 2.2. Proud I1 tekoucí tranzistorem T1 se zrcadlí do druhé větve v poměru ploch emitorů tranzistorů T1 a T2 (proud I2 bude shodný s I1). U tranzistoru T1 je báze přímo propojená s kolektorem, a tak je napětí mezi kolektorem a emitorem pouze asi 0,6 V (úbytek na otevřeném přechodu báze-emitor). Napětí báze ovlivňuje samo sebe tak, aby součet proudu báze a kolektoru (tj. přibližně βkrát proud báze) byl roven proudu definovaného rezistorem. Volbou rezistoru tedy můžeme nastavit požadovaný proud ($(U_{CC}$-0,6)/R). Pokud jsou tranzistory naprosto shodné, poteče nyní tranzistorem T2 téměř ten samý proud (proud I2 sleduje I1). Jelikož je

z proudu I1 napájena i báze tranzistoru T2, proud I2 bude o něco menší. Pokud např. zesílení tranzistorů β bude 100, pak proud emitorem T1 bude větší o dvojnásobek proudu báze než proud emitorem T2. Odchylka proudu I2 bude tedy asi 2 % oproti proudu I1. Na Obr. 2.2 je vylepšená verze proudového zrcadla, které využívá namísto rezistoru tranzistor jako zdroj proudu. Pro vytvoření zrcadla tak není potřeba jediný rezistor, což v dnešní době usnadňuje výrobu integrovaných obvodů.



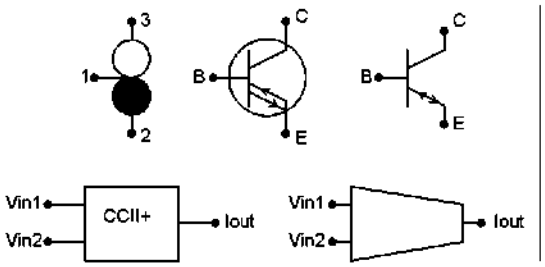
Obr. 2.2: Základní princip proudového zrcadla

Původní výrobce OTA firma RCA byla odkoupena firmou Intersil, pak firmou GE a ta nakonec firmou Harris. Ta dodnes vyrábí ještě typ CA3080, který má strukturu velmi podobnou prvním OTA od firmy RCA.

Oproti proudovým zrcadlům s NPN tranzistory jsou v CA3080 použity zrcadla s tranzistory PNP, protože je velmi obtížné vyrobit PNP tranzistory s velkým zesílením na stejném substrátu spolu s NPN tranzistory, a tak jsou potřebné PNP Darlingtonovy stupně.

Na prvek OTA se můžeme podívat i z jiné strany. Existují schématické značky, které mají pro něj podobnou značku jako pro tranzistor (viz Obr. 2.3). Tranzistor je v podstatě také napětím řízený zdroj proudu. Rozdíl ve schématické značce je patrný u šipky na emitoru, která je obousměrná. To naznačuje, že smysl proudu kolektorem se bude dát změnit. Pokud je napětí B vůči E kladné, pak proud směřuje ven z kolektoru. Při záporné polaritě B k E vtéká proud do kolektoru. Oproti tranzistoru má OTA samozřejmě řadu výhod – např. nepotřebuje žádné nastavení předpětí, je mnohem více lineární a ve větším rozsahu, nepotřebuje tolik vnějších součástek. Co největší linearita je zajištěna konstantní

transkonduktancí ve velkém rozsahu. V průběhu let se pro OTA prvky objevilo mnoho označení, což vždy záleželo na autorovi článku. Používalo se označení diamantový tranzistor, napětím řízený zdroj proudu (Voltage Controlled Current Source), transkonduktor, makro tranzistor nebo také pozitivní proudový konvejor druhé generace (CCII+).



Obr. 2.3: Značení prvků obdobných OTA

2.3 Způsob návrhu

2.3.1 Autonomní obvody

I přes množství literatury o moderních aktivních prvcích nejsou příliš známy metody návrhu struktur s těmito prvky. Autoři většinou poukazují na samotné obvodové řešení, ale nějaké ucelené algoritmy návrhu schází. Většinou jde také o intuitivní návrh struktury a její následné praktické ověření či simulace. Kvůli výše zmíněným aspektům byla vytvořena tzv. Metoda zobecněných autonomních obvodů na VUT v Brně.

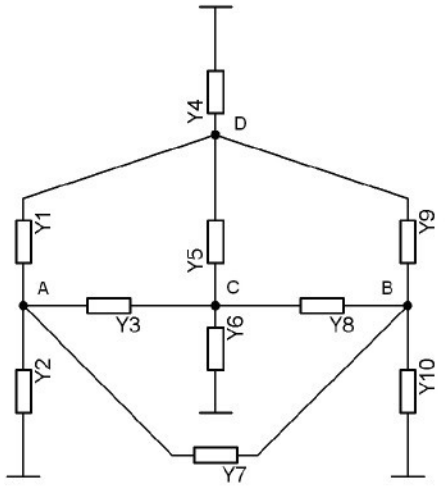
Autonomní obvod je podle základem této metody. Autonomní obvod je složen ze struktury pasivních a aktivních prvků, která není připojená na zdroj signálu (nemá buzení) a ani nemá přesně definováno umístění výstupu. Tím pádem sice zatím neznáme přenos tohoto obvodu, ale můžeme určit charakteristickou rovnici obvodu. Charakteristická rovnice pak bude odpovídat determinantu admitanční matice řešené struktury jak je známo např. z Masonova vzorce používaného v regulační technice. Z této rovnice lze vyčíst řád filtru, který bude daný autonomní obvod realizovat.

Základním úkolem se tedy stává nalezení vhodné struktury autonomního obvodu. Jednou, avšak ne jedinou, možností je využití vlastností úplné admitanční sítě. Tato síť umožňuje postihnout veškeré možné kombinace zapojení jednobranů mezi uzly sítě. Možnosti struktury tedy máme všechny, což bývá výhodou, ale u struktur s větším počtem

aktivních prvků bude tato metoda především časově náročná. V těchto případech lze využít metodu rozšiřování autonomních obvodů. Úplné informace o této metodě je možné nalézt např. v článku [5].

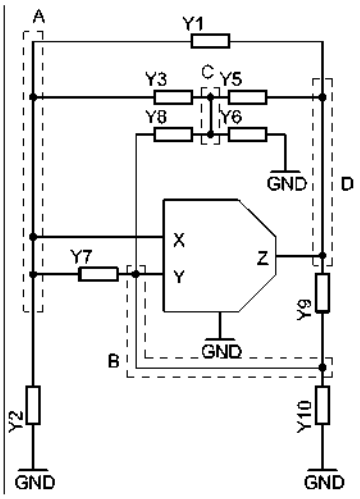
2.3.2 Sestavení úplné admitanční sítě

Úplná admitanční síť byla definována v [6] jako síť, která má m*(n+1) uzlů, přičemž m vyjadřuje počet aktivních prvků a n počet jejich vstupů a výstupů (tj. počet bran). Jako příklad je na Obr. 2.4 uvedena úplná síť pro jeden aktivní prvek se třemi branami. (Představíme-li si jednotlivé uzly jako rohy čtverce, pak admitance leží na všech jeho stranách (Y1, Y5, Y7, Y8) a úhlopříčkách (Y3, Y9)).



Obr. 2.4: Úplná admitanční síť se čtyřmi uzly

Zbylé čtyři admitance jsou připojeny mezi uzly a zem (Y2, Y4, Y6, Y10). Na dalším obrázku (Obr. 2.5) je patrné připojení této sítě ke GVC (zobecněný napěťový konvejor). To způsobilo redukci sítě o admitanci Y3. Jelikož je GVC „tvrdý“ zdroj napětí, tato admitance na výstupu Z byla pouze další zátěží napěťového konvejoru. S takto zapojeným jedním aktivním prvkem lze dosáhnout filtrů druhého řádu. Většinou se však snažíme o „multifunkčnost“ filtru (aby realizoval DP, PP, HP, PZ), čehož dosáhneme už při zapojení dvou aktivních prvků do struktury. Takovýto filtr může pracovat v napěťovém, proudovém či kombinovaném režimu.



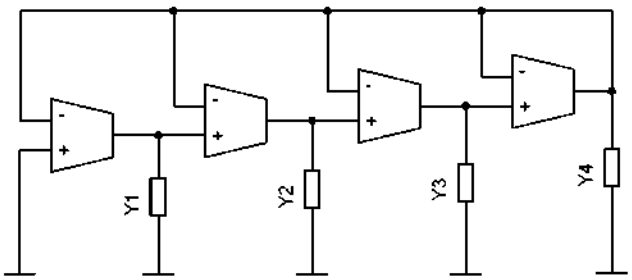
Obr. 2.5: Způsob připojení GVC k úplné síti

Z úplné admitanční sítě si vybereme pouze tu část struktury (autonomní obvod), která odpovídá našim požadavkům. Přitom se snažíme minimalizovat počet pasivních součástek kvůli jejich nepříznivým s časem nebo teplotou proměnných parametrů (např. teplotní drift, stárnutí dielektrika u kapacit ap.). Zároveň se snažíme využít spíše admitance, které mají jeden z pólů přizemněn kvůli snazší integrovatelnosti při výrobě.

3 Navržená struktura

3.1 Konkrétní autonomní obvod

Pro realizaci multifunkčního filtru jsem zvolil autonomní obvod se čtyřmi aktivními prvky a čtyřmi pasivními. Jako aktivní prvky jsou použity obecné OTA zesilovače s diferenčním napěťovým vstupem a proudovým výstupem. Daný autonomní obvod (3.1) vznikl redukcí úplné admitanční sítě.



Obr. 3.1: Zvolený autonomní obvod

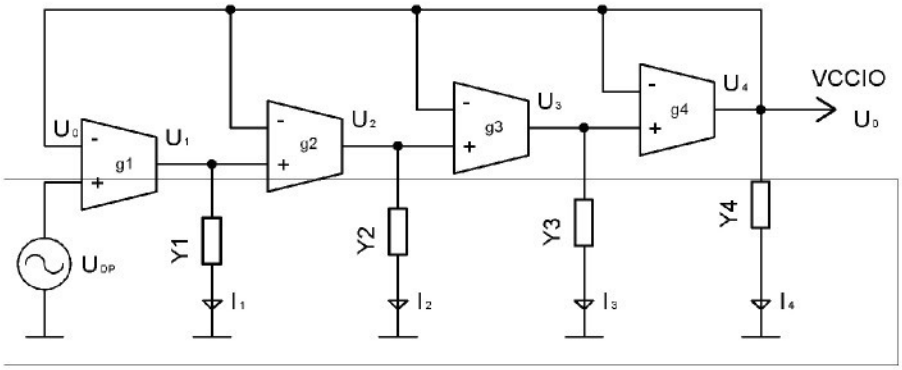
Pokud stanovíme vstupy do obvodu (pro jednotlivé typy filtru bude vstup v jiné větvi) a výstup z obvodu, pak můžeme odvodit pro jednotlivé typy filtru jejich přenosy.

3.2 Odvození přenosu

3.2.1 Dolní propust

V následujících rovnicích (3.2) až (3.59) jsou odvozeny přenosy struktury pro jednotlivé typy filtrů. Postupoval jsem postupným vyjadřováním jednotlivých proudů a napětí s využitím Kirchhoffových zákonů a vztahu pro výstupní proud OTA zesilovače. Výstupní proud (3.1) je tedy přímo úměrný vodivosti (tu jsme nastavili pomocí řídicího proudu I_{SET}) a také velikosti napětí na diferenčním vstupu zesilovače.

$$I_0 = g_m \cdot (U_p - U_n) \tag{3.1}$$



Obr. 3.2: Schéma obvodu typu DP

$$I_1 = g_1(U_{DP} - U_0) \tag{3.2}$$

$$U_1 = \frac{I_1}{Y_1} = \frac{g_1(U_{DP} - U_0)}{Y_1} \tag{3.3}$$

$$I_2 = g_2(U_1 - U_0) \tag{3.4}$$

$$U_2 = \frac{I_2}{Y_2} = \frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} \tag{3.5}$$

$$I_3 = g_3(U_2 - U_0) = g_3\left(\frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} - U_0\right) = g_3\left(\frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2}{Y_2}\right) \tag{3.6}$$

$$I_3 = \frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3}{Y_2} \tag{3.7}$$

$$U_3 = \frac{I_3}{Y_3} = \frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3}{Y_2 Y_3} \tag{3.8}$$

$$I_4 = g_4(U_3 - U_0) = g_4\left(\frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3}{Y_2 Y_3} - U_0\right) \tag{3.9}$$

$$I_4 = g_4\left(\frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3 - U_0 Y_2 Y_3}{Y_2 Y_3}\right) \tag{3.10}$$

$$U_0 = \frac{I_4}{Y_4} = \frac{g_2 g_3 g_4(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3 g_4 - U_0 Y_2 Y_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \cdot \frac{Y_1}{Y_1} \tag{3.11}$$

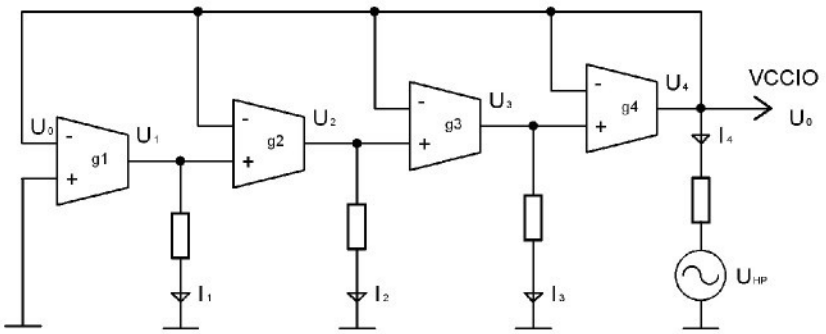
$$U_0 = \frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 U_{DP} - g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4 U_0}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.12}$$

$$U_0 = \frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} U_{DP} - U_0 \frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.13}$$

$$G_{DP} = \frac{U_0}{U_{DP}} = \frac{\frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}}{\frac{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4 + g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}} \tag{3.14}$$

$$G_{DP} = \frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4}{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.15}$$

3.2.2 Horní propust



Obr. 3.3: Schéma obvodu typu HP

$$I_0 = g_m (U_+ - U_-) \tag{3.16}$$

$$I_1 = g_1 (0 - U_0) = -U_0 g_1 \tag{3.17}$$

$$U_1 = \frac{I_1}{Y_1} = \frac{-U_0 g_1}{Y_1} \tag{3.18}$$

$$I_2 = g_2 (U_1 - U_0) = g_2 \left(\frac{-U_0 g_1}{Y_1} - U_0 \right) = -U_0 g_2 \left(\frac{g_1}{Y_1} + 1 \right) = \frac{-U_0 g_2 (g_1 + Y_1)}{Y_1} \tag{3.19}$$

$$U_2 = \frac{I_2}{Y_2} = \frac{-U_0 g_2 (g_1 + Y_1)}{Y_1 Y_2} \tag{3.20}$$

$$I_3 = g_3 (U_2 - U_0) = g_3 \left(\frac{-U_0 g_2 (g_1 + Y_1)}{Y_1 Y_2} - U_0 \right) = -U_0 g_3 \left(\frac{g_2 (g_1 + Y_1) + Y_1 Y_2}{Y_1 Y_2} \right) \tag{3.21}$$

$$I_3 = \left(\frac{-U_0 g_3 (g_1 g_2 + Y_1 g_2 + Y_1 Y_2)}{Y_1 Y_2} \right) \tag{3.22}$$

$$U_3 = \frac{I_3}{Y_3} = \left(\frac{-U_0 g_3 (g_1 g_2 + Y_1 g_2 + Y_1 Y_2)}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3} \right) \tag{3.23}$$

$$U_0 = U_{HP} + \frac{I_4}{Y_4} \tag{3.24}$$

$$I_4 = g_4 (U_3 - U_0) = -g_4 U_0 \left(\frac{g_3 (g_1 g_2 + Y_1 g_2 + Y_1 Y_2) + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3} \right) \tag{3.25}$$

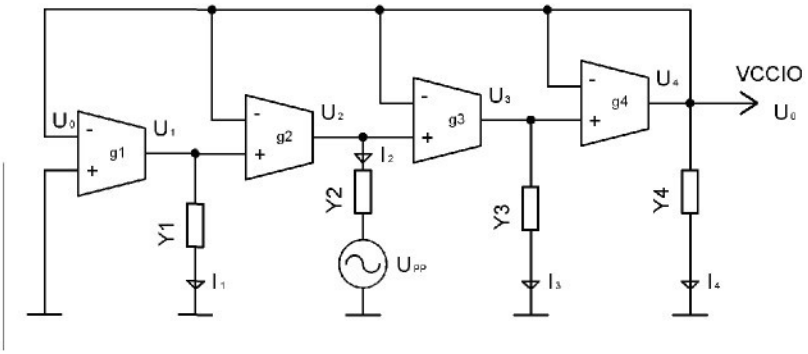
$$I_4 = \frac{-U_0 g_4 (g_1 g_2 g_3 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3)}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3} \tag{3.26}$$

$$U_{HP} = U_0 - \frac{I_4}{Y_4} = U_0 - \frac{-U_0 (g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4)}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.27}$$

$$U_{HP} = U_0 \frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.28}$$

$$G_{HP} = \frac{U_0}{U_{HP}} = \frac{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.29}$$

3.2.3 Pásmová propust



Obr. 3.4: Schéma obvodu typu PP

$$I_1 = g_1 (0 - U_0) = -g_1 U_0 \tag{3.30}$$

$$U_1 = \frac{I_1}{Y_1} = \frac{-g_1 U_0}{Y_1} \tag{3.31}$$

$$I_2 = g_2 (U_1 - U_0) \tag{3.32}$$

$$U_2 = U_{PP} + U_{Y_2} \tag{3.33}$$

$$U_{Y_2} = \frac{I_2}{Y_2} = \frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} \tag{3.34}$$

$$U_2 = U_{PP} + \frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} = \frac{U_{PP}Y_2 + g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} \tag{3.35}$$

$$I_3 = g_3(U_2 - U_0) = g_3\left(\frac{U_{PP}Y_2 + g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} - \frac{U_0 Y_2}{Y_2}\right) \tag{3.36}$$

$$I_3 = g_3\frac{U_{PP}Y_2 + g_2(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2}{Y_2} \tag{3.37}$$

$$U_3 = \frac{I_3}{Y_3} = g_3\frac{U_{PP}Y_2 + g_2(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2}{Y_2 Y_3} \tag{3.38}$$

$$I_4 = g_4(U_3 - U_0) = g_3 g_4\frac{U_{PP}Y_2 + g_2(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2}{Y_2 Y_3} - \frac{U_0 Y_2 Y_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3} \tag{3.39}$$

$$I_4 = \frac{U_{PP}Y_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3} + \frac{-g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4\frac{U_0}{Y_1} - g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_2 Y_3 g_4 U_0}{Y_2 Y_3} \tag{3.40}$$

$$U_0 = \frac{I_4}{Y_4} = \frac{U_{PP}Y_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} + \frac{-g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4\frac{U_0}{Y_1} - g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 - Y_2 Y_3 g_4 U_0}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.41}$$

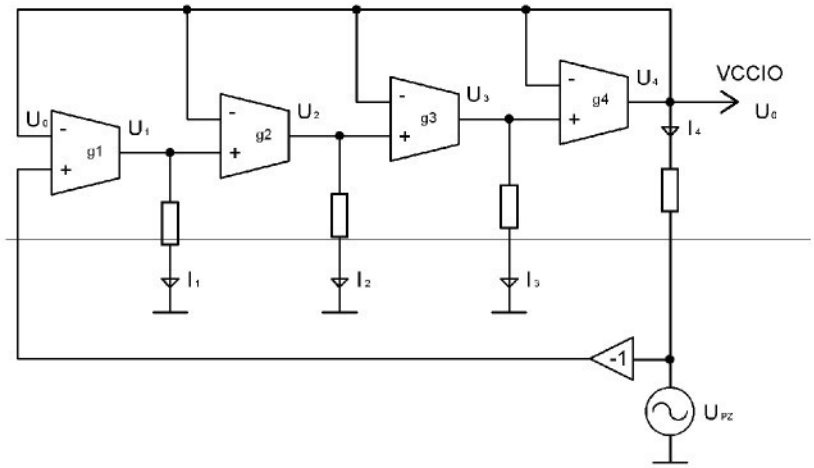
$$U_0 + U_0\frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4\frac{1}{Y_1} + g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 + Y_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 + Y_2 Y_3 g_4 U_0}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} = \frac{U_{PP}Y_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.42}$$

$$U_0\left(1 + \frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4\frac{1}{Y_1} + g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 + Y_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 + Y_2 Y_3 g_4 U_0}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}\right) = U_{PP}\frac{Y_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.43}$$

$$G_{PP} = \frac{U_0}{U_{PP}} = \frac{\frac{Y_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}}{\frac{g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4\frac{1}{Y_1} + g_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 + Y_2 g_3 g_4 U_0 + Y_2 Y_3 g_4 U_0}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4}} \cdot \frac{Y_1}{Y_1} \tag{3.44}$$

$$G_{PP} = \frac{Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4}{Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 Y_4 + Y_1 Y_2 Y_3 g_4 + Y_1 Y_2 g_3 g_4 + Y_1 g_2 g_3 g_4 + g_1 g_2 g_3 g_4} \tag{3.45}$$

3.2.4 Pásmová zádrž



Obr. 3.5: Schéma obvodu typu PZ

$$I_1 = g_1(-U_{PZ} - U_0) \tag{3.46}$$

$$U_1 = \frac{I_1}{Y_1} = \frac{g_1(-U_{PZ} - U_0)}{Y_1} \tag{3.47}$$

$$I_2 = g_2(U_1 - U_0) \tag{3.48}$$

$$U_2 = \frac{I_2}{Y_2} = \frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0)}{Y_2} \tag{3.49}$$

$$I_3 = g_3(U_2 - U_0) = g_3\left(\frac{g_2(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2}{Y_2}\right) = \frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3}{Y_2} \tag{3.50}$$

$$U_3 = \frac{I_3}{Y_3} = \frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3}{Y_2 Y_3} \tag{3.51}$$

$$I_4 = g_4(U_3 - U_0) = g_4\left(\frac{g_2 g_3(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3 - U_0 Y_2 Y_3}{Y_2 Y_3}\right) \tag{3.52}$$

$$(U_0 - U_{PZ}) = \frac{I_4}{Y_4} = \frac{g_2 g_3 g_4(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3 g_4 - U_0 Y_2 Y_3 g_4}{Y_2 Y_3 Y_4} \tag{3.53}$$

$$(U_0 - U_{PZ}) Y_2 Y_3 Y_4 = g_2 g_3 g_4(U_1 - U_0) - U_0 Y_2 g_3 g_4 - U_0 Y_2 Y_3 g_4 \tag{3.54}$$

$$(U_0 - U_{PZ})Y_2Y_3Y_4 = g_2g_3g_4\left(\frac{g_1(-U_{PZ} - U_0) - U_0Y_1}{Y_1}\right) - U_0Y_2g_3g_4 - U_0Y_2Y_3g_4 \tag{3.55}$$

$$(U_0 - U_{PZ})Y_2Y_3Y_4 = \frac{-g_1g_2g_3g_4U_{PZ}}{Y_1} - \frac{U_0g_1g_2g_3g_4}{Y_1} - \frac{U_0Y_1g_2g_3g_4}{Y_1} - U_0Y_2g_3g_4 - U_0Y_2Y_3g_4 \tag{3.56}$$

$$U_0Y_1Y_2Y_3Y_4 - U_{PZ}Y_1Y_2Y_3Y_4 = -g_1g_2g_3g_4U_{PZ} - U_0g_1g_2g_3g_4 - U_0Y_1g_2g_3g_4 - U_0Y_1Y_2g_3g_4 - U_0Y_1Y_2Y_3g_4 \tag{3.57}$$

$$U_0(Y_1Y_2Y_3Y_4 + g_1g_2g_3g_4 + Y_1Y_2g_3g_4 + Y_1g_2g_3g_4 + Y_1Y_2Y_3g_4) = U_{PZ}(Y_1Y_2Y_3Y_4 - g_1g_2g_3g_4) \tag{3.58}$$

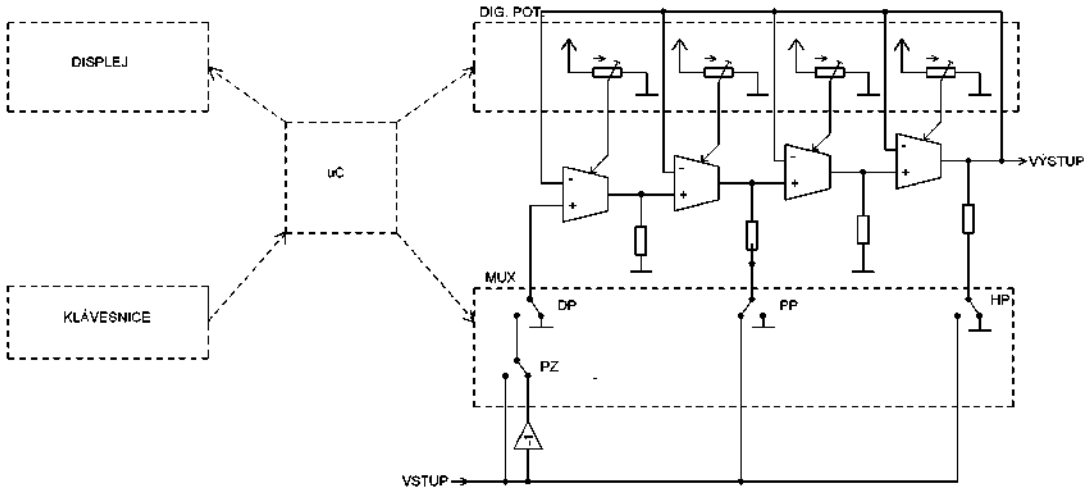
$$G_{PZ} = \frac{U_0}{U_{PZ}} = \frac{Y_1Y_2Y_3Y_4 - g_1g_2g_3g_4}{Y_1Y_2Y_3Y_4 + Y_1Y_2Y_3g_4 + Y_1Y_2g_3g_4 + Y_1g_2g_3g_4 + g_1g_2g_3g_4} \tag{3.59}$$

Z výsledného vztahu pro přenos PZ je vidět, že je pouze prostým součtem přenosů dolní a horní propusti (záporné znaménko pouze vyjadřuje, že vstupní signál do DP je fázově posunut o 180 ° oproti signálu do HP). Y_1, Y_2, Y_3, Y_4 jsou obecné admitance, místo kterých se při realizaci dosadí pasivní prvky tedy indukčnosti nebo kapacity. Z důvodu snazší realizovatelnosti (menší rozměry a dostupnost součástek) byly samozřejmě zvoleny kapacity.

3.3 Řízení navržené struktury filtru

Vybraná struktura autonomního obvodu umožňovala volbu mezi jednotlivými typy filtrů (DP, HP, PP, PZ) pouze volbou umístění vstupu zdroje signálu do autonomního obvodu. K tomuto účelu jsem do obvodu zařadil multiplexery AD8182. Dále pak bylo možno měnit parametry filtru za pomocí řízení stejnosměrných proudů I_{set} jednotlivých transkonduktančních zesilovačů. Tím lze měnit např. typ aproximace amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky (volbou aproximace též měníme i strmost amplitudové charakteristiky kolem mezní frekvence). Další otázkou byla přeladitelnost filtru, tedy posuv amplitudové charakteristiky po frekvenční ose. Té se dá docílit dvěma způsoby. Buď vhodnou kombinací hodnot výše zmíněných stejnosměrných proudů nebo umístěním přeladitelných kapacit (nejvhodnější by bylo použití napětím řízených kapacit tzv. varikapů). Úkolem bylo digitální řízení filtru, a proto jsem zvolil variantu s přelaďováním

proudů. Řídicí proud je regulován D/A převodníkem AD8403 taktéž od firmy Analog Devices. Jako další možnost se jevilo využití dalších multiplexorů pro přepínání všech kapacit pro mnohem větší přeladitelnost filtru nebo přepínání pouze některých kapacit. Blokové schéma výsledné struktury filtru s řízením mikroprocesorem je zřejmé z Obr. 3.66.



Obr. 3.6: Návrh řízení filtru

4 Řídicí části

4.1 Procesor

Pro ovládání displeje, řízení multiplexorů a digitálních potenciometrů jsem zvolil mikroprocesor od firmy Microchip. Microchip vyrábí několik řad mikroprocesorů počínaje nejmenšími a nejjednoduššími PIC10xxx, přes PIC12xxx, PIC16xxx, PIC18xxx až po 32b procesory včetně moderních a rychlých signálových procesorů.

Procesory PIC (zkratka znamená Programmable Interface Controller později pak také Programmable Intelligent Computer) mají Harvardskou architekturu a prosadily se zejména díky jejich univerzálnosti, malé spotřebě, snadnému programování a nízké ceně. Pro svoji aplikaci jsem zvolil rodinu PIC18xxx díky tomu, že je to nejjednodušší řada, která umožňuje programování v jazyku C, což je podporováno přímo výrobcem. K vývoji aplikací firma Microchip poskytuje zdarma vývojové prostředí MPLAB a jeho nástavbu pro vývoj aplikací v jazyce C MPLAB C18.

Jako konkrétní typ jsem vybral mikrokontrolér PIC18F452. Přehled jeho vlastností je zde:

velmi výkonný procesor RISC:

- architektura a instrukční sada optimalizovány pro použití překladače v jazyce C
- zdrojový kód kompatibilní s instrukčními sadami rodin PIC16 a PIC17
- lineární adresování programové paměti do 32 KB
- lineární adresovaní datové paměti do 1,5 KB

vlastnosti periférií:

- zdroj proudu (25mA)
- 3 externí zdroje přerušení
- modul časovače Timer0: mód 8/16 bitů, výběr čítač/časovač s 8b programovatelnou předděličkou
- modul časovače Timer1: 16ti bitový čítač/časovač
- modul časovače Timer2: 8mi bitový čítač/časovač s 8b registrem periody (časová základny pro PWM)
- modul časovače Timer3: 16ti bitový čítač/časovač
- možnost sekundárního hodinového oscilátoru - připojení k Timer1 nebo Timer3

- 2 jednotky CCP (Capture/Compare/PWM)
- piny CCP mohou být nakonfigurovány následovně:
    - vstup Capture (záchyt) - záchyt je 16ti bitový s maximálním rozlišením 6,25 ns (Tcy/16)
    - Compare (porovnání) je 16ti bitové s maximálním rozlišením 100ns (Tcy)
    - výstup PWM (pulzně šířkové modulace) s rozlišením 1-10 bitů a maximální frekvencí 156 kHz při 8mi bitovém rozslišení (39 kHz při 10ti bitovém rozlišení)
- modul MSSP (Master Synchronous Serial Port) pracuje ve 2 módech:
    - 3 vodičová SPI (podpora všech 4 typů)
    - I2C Master a Slave mód
- adresovatelný modul USART (Universal Synchronnus Asynchronnus Receiver Transmitter)
    - podpora RS-485 i RS-232
- modul PSP (Parallel Slave Port)

analogové vlastnosti:

- 10b A/D převodník:
    - velká vzorkovací frekvence
    - konverze je možná i během režimu SLEEP
- PLVD - programově nastavitelná detekce nízkého napětí
    - podporuje přerušení při detekci nízkého napětí
- BOR - programovatelný Brown-out Reset

4.2 Nahrání programu do procesoru

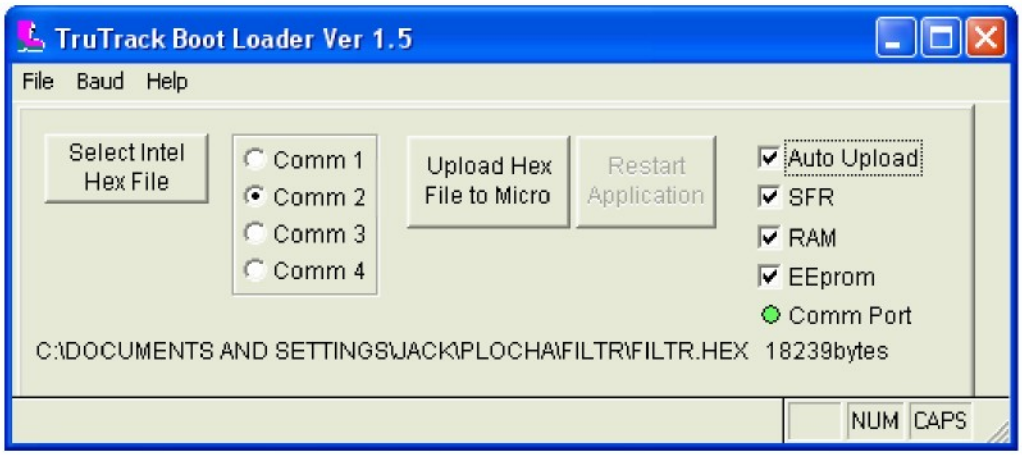
Některé procesory firmy Microchip (např. v řadách 16Fxxx a 18Fxxx) s flash pamětí umožňují přepsat tuto paměť programově. Jinými slovy program může teoreticky přepsat „sám sebe". Tímto byl umožněn vznik tzv. bootloaderů (zavaděčů). Tyto programy malých velikostí jsou umístěny na začátku programové flash paměti, kde většinou odkazují na další část jejich programu. Ten bývá umístěn až na konci této paměti a obsahuje obsluhu a nastavení sériového portu včetně režie zápisu přijatých dat do flash paměti. Zavaděč se

aktivuje po resetu mikrokontroléru tím, že provede základní komunikaci s počítačem (posílá dohodnutý znak a čeká na odpověď). Pokud přijde do sjednaného času odpověď od počítače, tak začne přijímat postupně data a zapisovat je do programové paměti mikroprocesoru, čímž se procesor vlastně naprogramuje. Jestliže se počítač v daném čase neozve, zavaděč skončí svoji činnost a začne provádět hlavní program nahraný v paměti.

Bootloader je výhodný zejména pro jednoduchost použití a rychlost nahrání programu do mikrokontroléru. Oproti klasickému programování se také procesor nemusí vyjímat ze zařízení a vkládat do patice programátoru. Tím se urychlí jak nahrání samotného programu, tak i ladění programu na vývojovém kitu. Problém nastává pouze při prvním programování, kdy se samotný zavaděč musí do paměti naprogramovat klasickým programátorem. Prvotní naprogramování bootloaderu jsem provedl pomocí postaveného zjednodušeného JDM programátoru (schéma bylo uveřejněno např. v KTE 6/2005). Tento programátor využívá tzv. ICSP programování (In Circuit Serial Programming), které dovoluje programovat procesor přímo v zařízení za použití dvouvodičové sběrnice (DAT a CLK).

Volně šiřitelných bootloaderů pro nekomerční použití existuje celá řada. Na internetu lze nalézt např. Tiny Bootloader, bootloader od Shane Tolmiese nebo bootloadery přímo od firmy Microchip (problém bootloaderů řeší zpráva Application Note č. 851). Tiny Bootloader je zajímavý tím, že jde o velmi úsporný bootloader, který v paměti zabere jen přibližně 100 instrukcí. Toho dosahuje tím, že většinu režie (řízení přenosu) přenechává počítači, čímž zase obslužný software v počítači nabírá na velikosti. Já jsem pro svoji práci zvolil již vyzkoušený TruTrack Bootloader Ver. 1.5 od Shane Tolmiese (ten lze volně stáhnout). Uvolněný je bohužel jen potřebný .hex soubor, ale ne zdrojový kód.

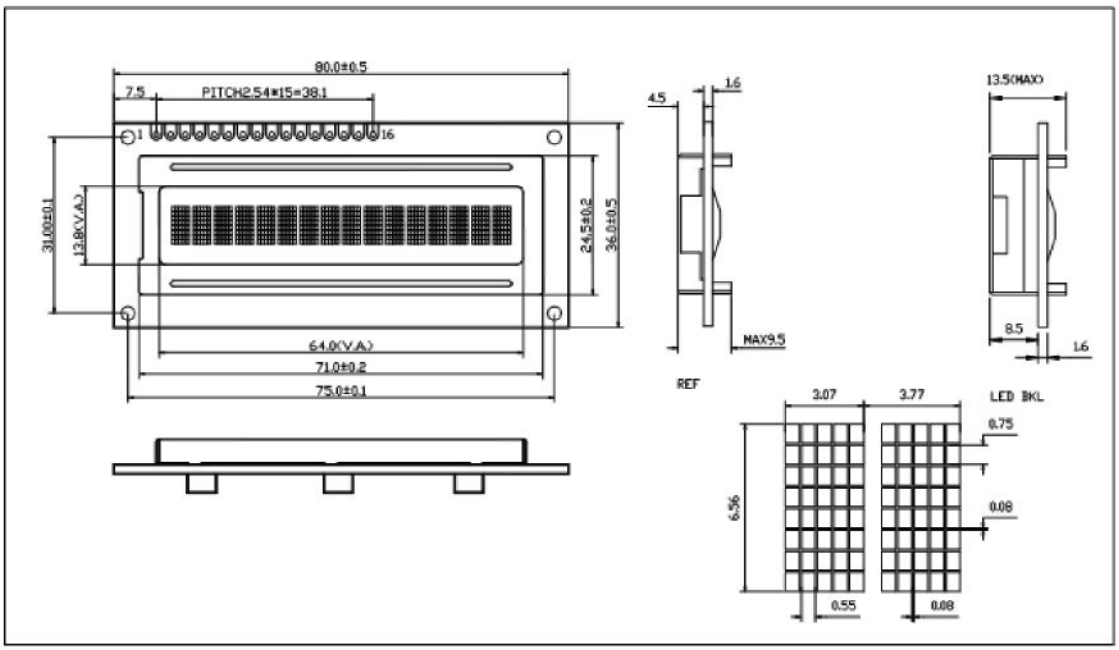
Prostředí TruTrack Bootloaderu je vidět na Obr. Obr. 4.1. Nutné je zvolit soubor, který chceme nahrát do procesoru (soubor s příponou .hex vygenerovaný vývojovým prostředím MPLAB). Dále je nutné nastavit sériový port, ke kterému je připojen vývojový kit a pro automatické nahrání zaškrtnout Auto Upload. Nyní ručně provedeme reset mikrokontroléru a program se do něj za několik vteřin přehraje.



Obr. 4.1: Ukázka obsluhy zavaděče pro mikroprocesor

4.3 LCD displej

Pro možnost zobrazování parametrů filtru jsem vybral displej ATM1601A. Displej má jeden řádek se šestnácti znaky. Každý znak sestává z matice bodů 5x8 viz Obr. 4.2.



Obr. 4.2: Vzhled displeje

Pro zjednodušení zapojení je tento displej vybaven řadičem S6A0069, který je kompatibilní se standardním řadičem Hitachi HD44780. Konektor displeje celkem obsahuje šestnáct pinů.

Rozmístění pinů

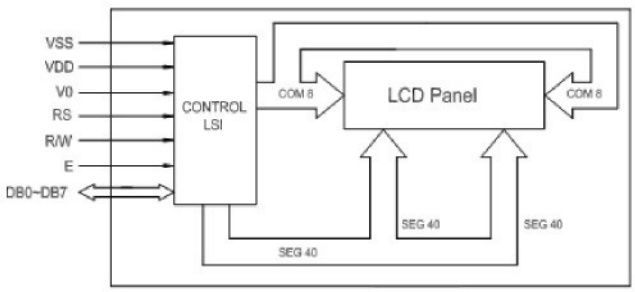
Tabulka 4.1: Název pinů LCD

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Vss	Vdd	V0	R/S	R/W	E	DB0	DB1	DB2	DB3	DB4	DB5	DB6	DB7	A	K

Význam jednotlivých pinů:

Tabulka 4.2: Vlastnosti pinů LCD

Vss	0 V	
Vdd	+ 5 V	napájení pro logické obvody
V0		napětí pro řízení kontrastu
R/S	H	data
	L	instrukce
R/W	H	čtení dat
	L	zápis dat
E	H	
	H-L	sestupná hrana povolí signál
DB0 - DB7	H, L	datové bity
A	+ 4,2 V	podsvícení displeje – anoda
K	0V	podsvícení displeje – katoda



Obr. 4.3: Vnitřní uspořádání LCD

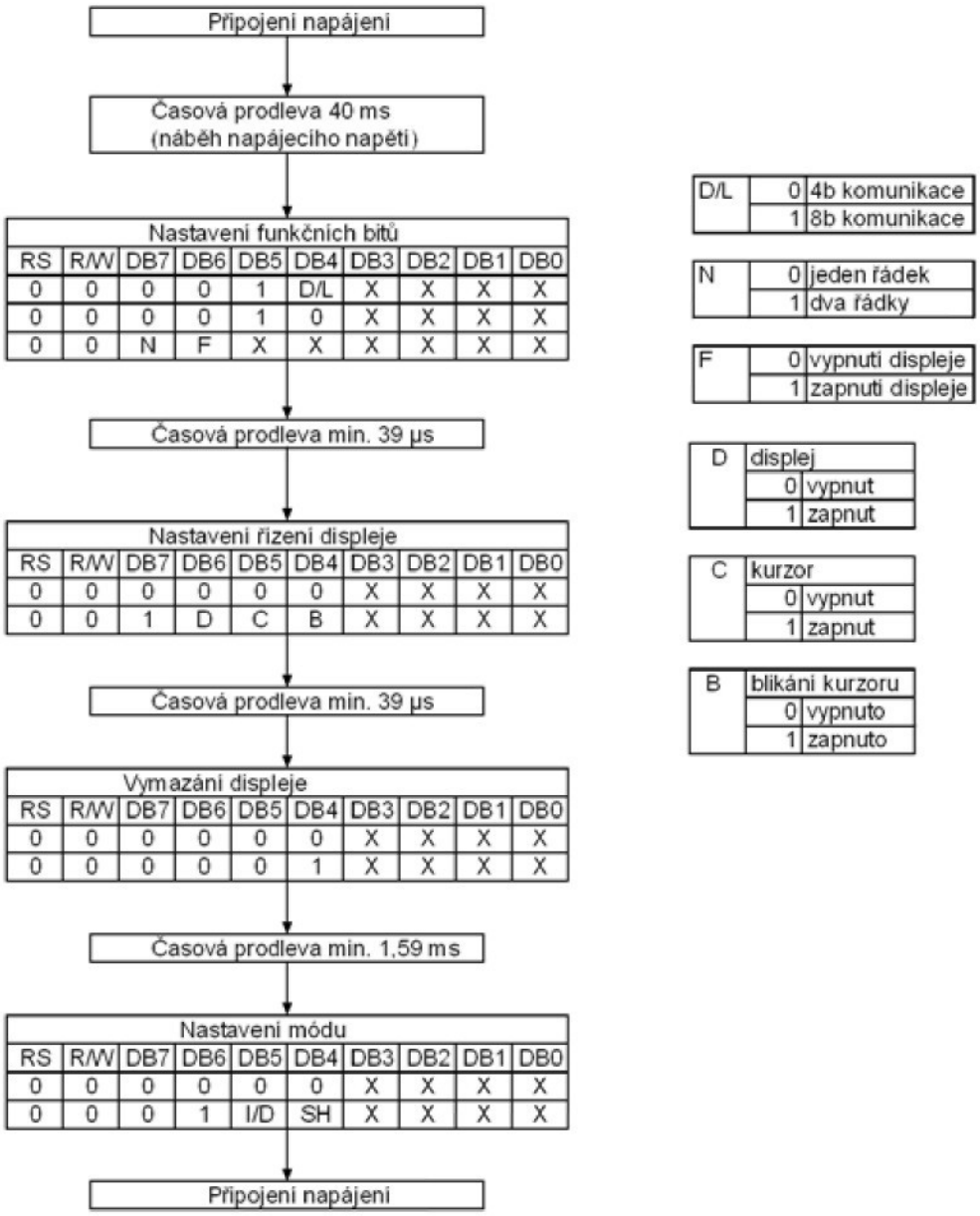
Po zapnutí napájení displeje je nutné displej nejdříve inicializovat. Postup inicializace je uveden na Obr. 4.4.

Jednotlivé kroky inicializace:

- zvolil jsem 4b mód (použity jsou pouze čtyři datové bity)
- displej se musí inicializovat jako dvouřádkový, aby fungovalo všech šestnáct znaků (to je způsobeno tím, že výrobce používá kvůli úspoře stejný řadič pro displej se dvěma řádky po osmi znacích)
- zvolil jsem zapnutý displej, zapnutý kurzor a blikání vypnuto
- inkrementální mód určuje, že po každém zápisu znaku na displej se adresa displeje zvětší o jedničku (v decrement módu by se zmenšila o jedničku)
- posuvy jsou vypnuty

Pro ovládání displeje jsem vytvořil knihovnu s názvem mlcd, která obsahuje následující podprogramy:

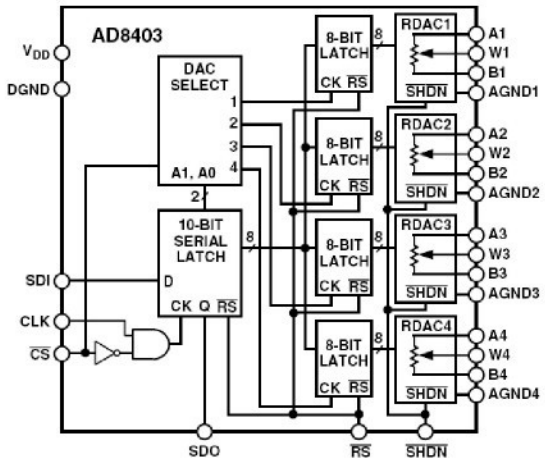
- inlcd – jedná se o proceduru (nevrací žádnou hodnotu) bez vstupních parametrů, která postupně provede všechny čtyři bloky inicializace displeje dle vývojového diagramu s příslušnými prodlevami (ty jsou odladěny pro taktovací frekvenci procesoru 20 MHz)
- smlcd – další procedura bez vstupních parametrů – smaže displej
- ddlcd – procedura zapíše do ddram lcd displeje adresu, která je vstupním parametrem s názvem adr
- ramlcd – zapíše znak z proměnné data na displej
- zaplcdzn – zapíše posloupnost znaků, které jsou uloženy v programové paměti jako konstanty – na první z nich ukazuje pointer pchar a dalším vstupem funkce je adresa pozice, od které se má začít zapisovat
- zaplcdznz – shodné s zaplcdzn, ale pro displej s decrement mode (adresa se snižuje o jedničku)



Obr. 4.4: Postup inicializace displeje

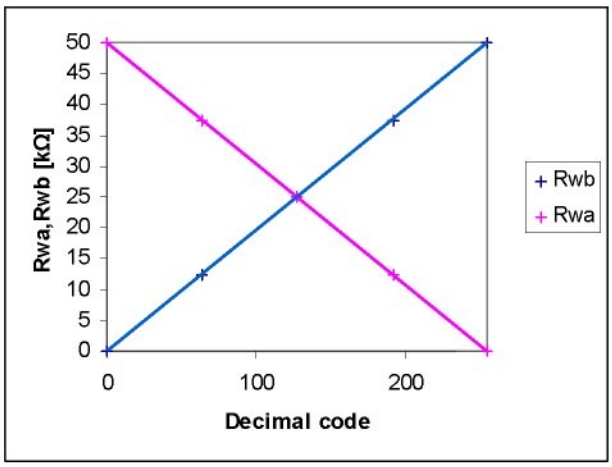
4.4 AD8403

AD8403 je čtyř kanálový D/A převodník, který je řízen pomocí SPI sběrnice (blokové schéma viz Obr. 4.5). Tento typ D/A převodníku se někdy též nazývá digitální rezistor (anglicky variable resistor).



Obr. 4.5: Blokové schéma D/A převodníku

Vyrábí se celkem ve čtyřech provedeních s maximální hodnotou odporu 1, 10, 50 nebo 100 kΩ. Každý kanál je v podstatě samostatně řízený potenciometr. Ten obsahuje standardně čtyři vývody – vývody A a B jsou konce rezistorové dráhy, W (z angl. Wiper) je jezdec a AGND analogová zem. AGND minimalizuje rušení signálů, které potenciometrem procházejí, neboť stíní každý potenciometr samostatně a co nejkratší cestou. V AD8403 má každý rezistor 256 diskrétních nastavitelných hodnot odporu. Tyto hodnoty jsou lineárně rozloženy do celého rozsahu D/A převodníku, přičemž záleží vůči kterým vývodům odpor vztahujeme (viz Graf 4.1).



Graf 4.1: Rozložení dekadického kódu vzhledem k odporu D/A převodníku

Přestavení odporu potenciometru se provádí přes sběrnici SPI. Po úvodní sekci inicializace sběrnice se nejprve zapíše logická 0 na CS, pak se zapíše číslo kanálu (0 až 3) a následuje číselná interpretace odporu. Volba kanálu se zapíše do registru DAC Select, číselná interpretace odporu nejprve do společného deseti bitového sériového latche, později do latche konkrétního kanálu.

SPI (Serial Peripheral Interface – standard byl pojmenován firmou Motorola) sběrnice používá synchronní sériovou linku pro komunikaci mezi zařízeními. Jedno zařízení je typu master a další (může být jedno nebo i více) jsou typu slave. Komunikace je plně duplexní. Master vždy řídí přenos, vysílá synchronizační impulzy po vodiči CLK. Další dva vodiče sběrnice se většinou označují MISO (Master In, Slave Out) a MOSI (Master Out, Slave In). Pokud je zapojeno více zařízení slave, je použit další vodič pro výběr konkrétního slave. Vodič bývá označován SSEL (Slave Select) nebo také CS (Chip Select).

Význam dalších pinů obvodu je následující:

- CS – výběr tohoto konkrétního zařízení připojeného na sběrnici SPI
- RS – nastaví jezdec W do poloviny dráhy potenciometru (tj. zapíše číslo 80 hexadecimálně do VR latch registru)
- SHDN – připojí jezdec W přímo na konec dráhy B, přitom se přepne do stavu shutdown s malou spotřebou. Po opětovném přivedení logické jedničky na SHDN se jezdec nastaví do pozice uložené v latch registru. I během shutdown stavu může obvod stále komunikovat po SPI, takže lze změnit stav v latch registru.

4.5 Multiplexer

Pro změnu typu filtru (DP, HP, PP, PZ) je nutno přepínat zdroj signálu do různých větví autonomního obvodu. K tomuto účelu jsem použil kvalitní analogové multiplexery AD8182 od firmy Analog Devices. Obvod AD8182 obsahuje dva nezávislé analogové multiplexery 2:1 tj. každý se dvěma vstupy a jedním výstupem. Přepínání kanálů multiplexeru je realizováno s časovou konstantou 10 ms a šířka přenášeného pásma (–3 dB) je 750 MHz (doba přeběhu přitom činí 750 V/μs), čímž je multiplexer primárně určen pro použití u přepínačů pixelů např. v plazmových televizorech. Multiplexer jsem vybral

především pro jeho rychlost, výhodné napájecí napětí (±5 V) a v neposlední řadě pro nízký přechodový odpor kanálu v sepnutém stavu – typicky 27 Ω. Pro srovnání jsem vyzkoušel analogové multiplexery ze standardní řady CMOS hradel 40xx, konkrétně multiplexer HCF4053. Technologie HCF (i HC) umožňuje napájet obvody napětím 0 až 10 V (respektive ±5 V), což by pro použití v tomto filtru bylo optimální. Zásadní nevýhodou se jevil především velký odpor průchozího kanálu (typicky 180 Ω, maximálně 400 Ω při napájecím napětí 10 V) a velký útlum signálu už na frekvencích lehce převyšujících 1 MHz.

AD8182 zároveň na vstupech obsahuje kvalitní zesilovače s jednotkovým zesílením. Tím sice vylepšuje vlastnosti vstupního signálu, ale zároveň neumožňuje přenos signálu v opačném směru jako je tomu např. u výše zmíněného standardního HCF4053.

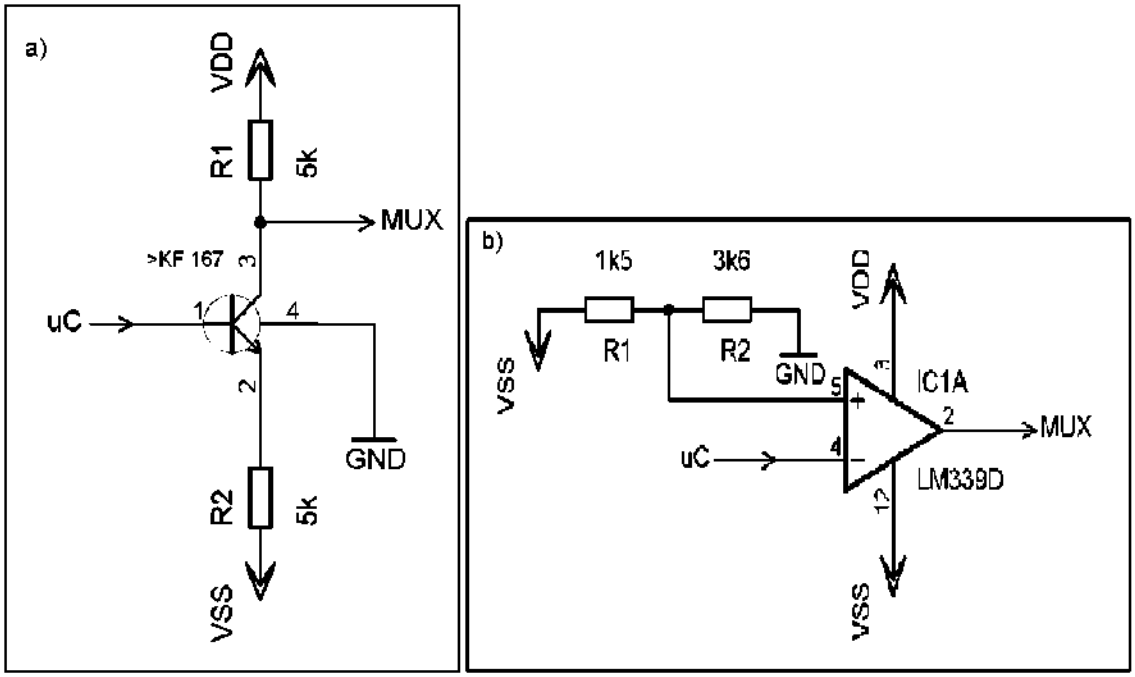
4.6 Vzájemné propojení jednotlivých součástek

4.6.1 Propojení na analogové úrovni

Jako zásadní problém se jevila kompatibilita napájecích napětí jednotlivých součástek. Zatímco analogové prvky jako např. OTA nebo multiplexery vyžadují symetrické napájení, procesor, digitální rezistor a displej napájení nesymetrické. V tabulce Tabulka 4.3 je vidět porovnání napájecích napětí jednotlivých komponent. Za nejvhodnější variantu jsem zvolil symetrické napájení ±5 V. Tím bylo napájení analogových součástí vyřešeno. Nesymetricky napájené součástky jsem se rozhodl připojit na dolní polovinu napětí tedy na −5 V a 0 V (zem). Nový problém vyvstal v řízení multiplexorů procesorem, neboť multiplexory se řídí pomocí dvou pinů úrovněmi TTL logiky. To znamená, že by se logické úrovně vzhledem k MUXu měly pohybovat v rozmezí 0 až 5 V. Procesor však pracuje v dolní polovině napájecího napětí, a tak je zapotřebí logické napěťové úrovně z procesoru „posunout o 5 V nahoru". Pro ověření činnosti jsem nejprve vyzkoušel posunutí pomocí tranzistoru (konkrétně vf. tranzistoru KF167 viz Obr. 4.6 a).

Tabulka 4.3: Mezní napěťové úrovně jednotlivých součástek

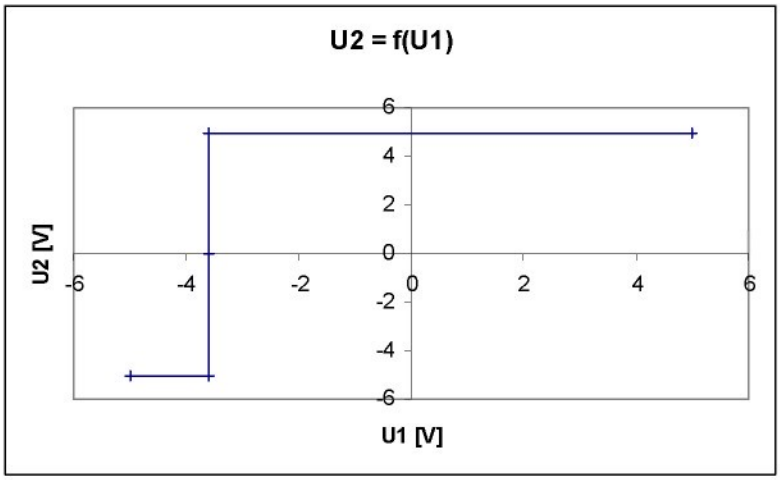
součástka	LT1228	AD8403	AD8182	LCD	PIC18F452
U_{min} [V]	± 2	2,7	± 4	4,5	2
U_{max} [V]	± 18	5,5	± 6	5,5	5,5



Obr. 4.6: Posunutí napěťových úrovní pomocí tranzistoru (a) a komparátoru (b)

Tranzistor je v zapojení se společným emitorem. Pokud je výstup z procesoru v logické jedničce, tranzistor je otevřený a napěťový dělič je aktivní. Jelikož je napěťový dělič symetrický, do MUXu vstupuje úroveň 0 V. Napětí −5 V na výstupu z procesoru způsobí uzavření báze tranzistoru a díky velkému vstupnímu odporu řídicích vstupů MUXu je na nich napětí shodné s napájením tranzistoru tedy potřebných +5 V. Zásadní nevýhodou tohoto způsobu je především rozměrnost tranzistorů a nutnost dvou rezistorů pro každý tranzistor. Nevýhody tranzistorů plně odstranilo použití komparátorů LM339 (Obr. 4.6 b). Komparátor porovnává napětí přicházející z procesoru do neinvertujícího vstupu s napěťovou referencí, která je vytvořena děličem napětí. Dělič poskytuje cca 3,6 V vůči zemi, což je prostředek zakázaného pásma mezi logickou nulou a jedničkou pro technologii

TTL. Princip je zřejmý z převodní charakteristiky tohoto zapojení (viz Graf 4.2). Převodní charakteristika je idealizovaná, neboť se nejedná o rail to rail komparátor, a proto budou saturační napětí o málo nižší. Komparátor i přesto poskytuje dostatečná napětí pro zachování TTL logických úrovní.



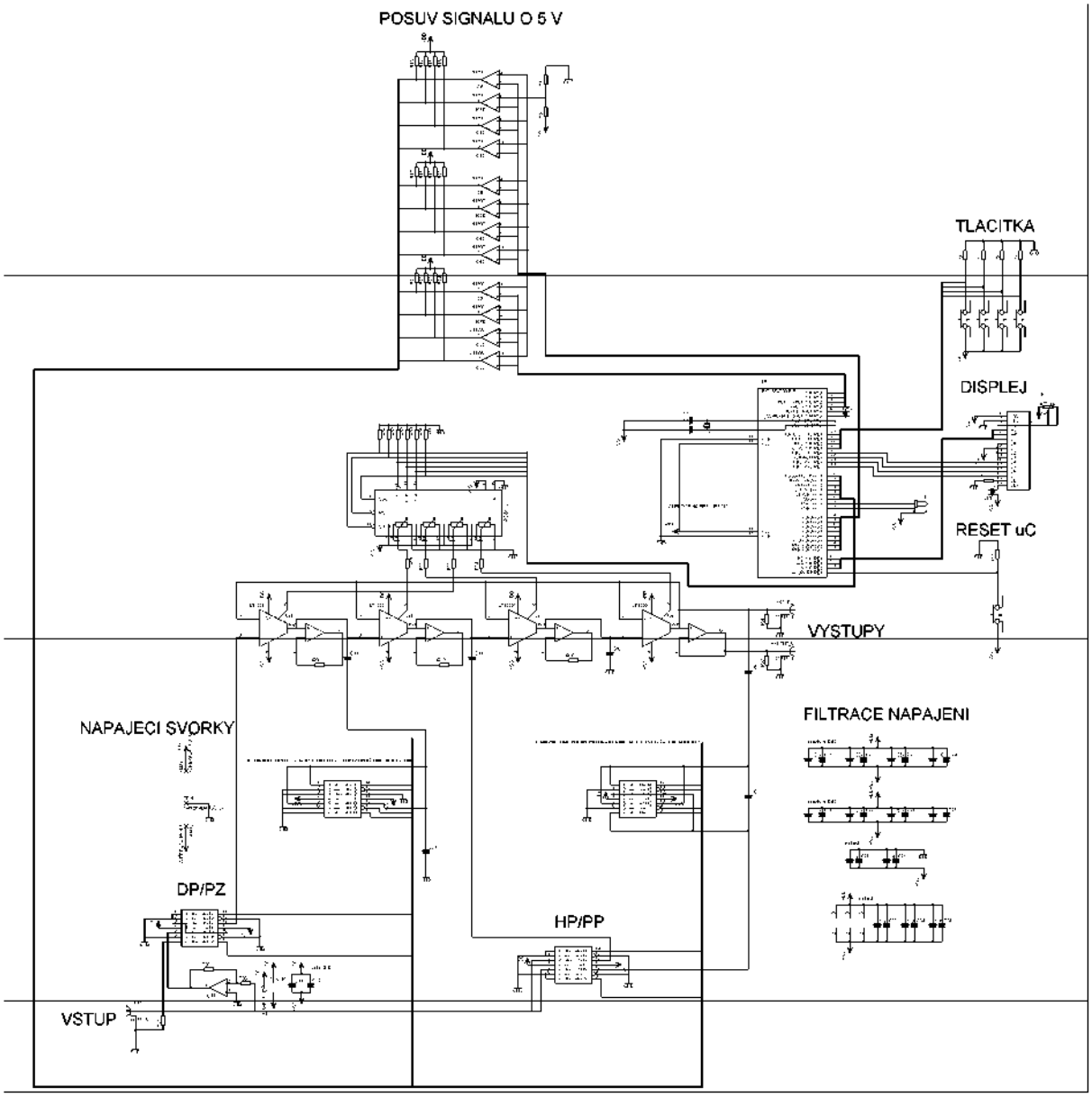
Graf 4.2: Úrovně překlápění komparátorů

4.6.2 Propojení digitálních signálů

Po srovnání napěťových úrovní již stačilo jen propojit jednotlivé porty (brány) mikroprocesoru s jednotlivými součástmi. Brány procesoru PIC jsou obousměrné, volba vstupu či výstupu se provede nastavením příslušných bitů v TRIS registru příslušného portu. Logická jednička znamená vstupní pin a nula pin výstupní. Sběrnice SPI je standardně přednastavena na portu C, což jsem zachoval. Pro sběrnici SPI jsou výrobcem doporučeny pull-up rezistory na řídicích signálech v řádu několika kΩ, které slouží především k rychlejšímu náběhu a doběhu hran impulzů. Další řídicí signály z AD8403 (SHDN a RS) jsou taktéž řízeny portem C. Multiplexery jsou ovládány z portu D a z poloviny portu A.

4.7 Schéma zapojení

Schéma zapojení i návrh desky plošných spojů jsem provedl v programu Eagle.



Obr. 4.7: Celkové schéma obvodu

5 Programování

5.1 Hlavní program

Po úvodní inicializaci (konfigurační slovo, TRIS registry, čítač/časovač, displej) běží program v nekonečné smyčce, která neustále čeká na stisk tlačítka enter. Přitom je na displeji zobrazen aktuální stav filtru tedy nastavený typ, aproximace a mezní frekvence. Obnova displej probíhá každých 200 ms v přerušovací rutině aktivované čítačem/časovačem TMR0. Po resetu mikroprocesoru jsou pomocné proměnné vynulovány, což značí první konfiguraci filtru tj. DP s Besselovou aproximací a základní frekvencí.

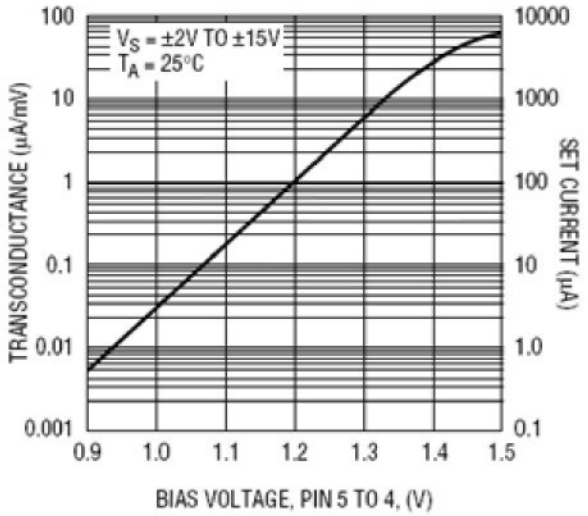
5.2 Obsluha klávesnice

Jelikož tlačítka jsou mechanickou záležitostí, přepnutí stavu proběhne spojitě, nikoli skokově (nespojitě). Díky akumulaci energie např. v pružině, která vrací spínač do stálé polohy, dojde k elektrickým zákmitům na spínacím prvku. Tyto zákmity mívají délku řádu milisekund, a tak při velmi rychlém zpracování signálů mikroprocesorem by takové zákmity znamenaly opakovaný stisk tlačítka. To je potřeba ošetřit, tedy zákmity odfiltrovat. Můžeme to provést hardwarově např. použitím RS klopného obvodu nebo Schmittova klopného obvodu na vstupech do procesoru. Další možností je prostě softwarově přečkat čas zákmitů a poté znovu přečíst stav tlačítka. Kvůli úspoře součástek a jednoduchosti jsem použil druhou zmíněnou možnost. Čekání probíhá v čekací smyčka, která je odladěna zhruba na 10 ms.

5.3 Naprogramování koeficientů filtru

Aby filtr mohl mít přeladitelnou mezní frekvenci při dané aproximaci amplitudové charakteristiky, je potřeba do něj nahrát koeficienty pro různé mezní frekvence, neboť algoritmus návrhu koeficientů je složitější záležistostí. Koeficienty se dají vygenerovat např. v Matlabu. Jelikož jmenovatele přenosových funkcí jednotlivých typů filtrů jsou stejné a čitatel přenosu je dán především hardwarovým uspořádáním filtru, stačí generovat pouze koeficienty pro jeden typ filtru (např. pro DP). Pro ostatní typy filtrů (HP, PZ, PP) budou transkonduktance stejné. Změna frekvence je možná pouze po diskrétních krocích, neboť jemnější dělení by stejně nevedlo k odlišným hodnotám na výstupu (velikost kroku

je omezena rozlišením D/A převodníku). Při výpočtech je dále nutno počítat s napětím na řídicím vstupu I_{SET}, které se pohybuje v rozmezí od 0,9 do 1,5 V. Napětí je závislé na nastaveném proudu, přičemž roste s logaritmem I_{SET} rychlostí 120 mV na dekádu tak jak je uvedeno v datasheetu [8] a jak je vidět z grafu Graf 5.1.



Graf 5.1: Závislost proudu Iset a transkonduktance na napětí řídicího vstupu

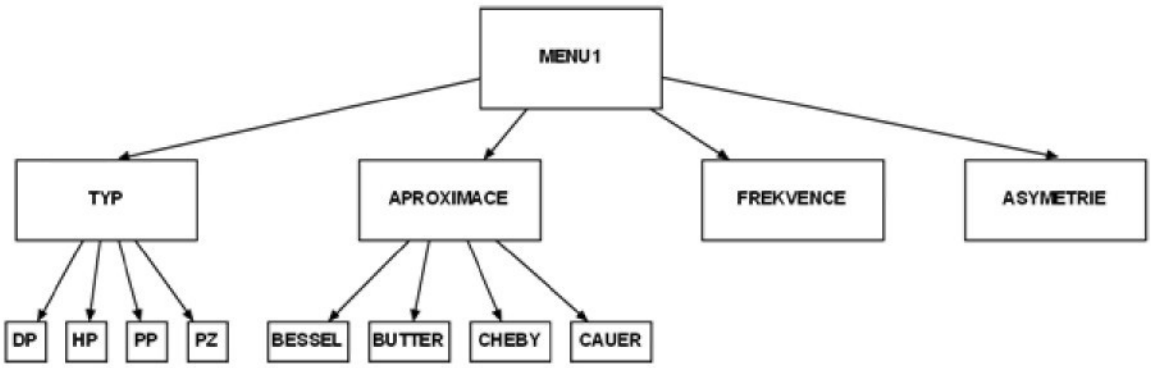
Při simulaci s ohledem na změnu napětí se výsledky pouze málo odlišovaly od předchozích, což je způsobeno využíváním omezeného rozsahu změny transkonduktance (jen v rozmezí řídicího proudu 76 až 1000 µA tj. jedné dekády).

Koeficienty jsou vypočítávány v samostatných podprogramech (cauer, bessel, butter, cheby), kde vstupní hodnotou je požadovaná mezní frekvence (proměnná typu float). Podprogramy jsou pouze procedury, tedy bez návratové hodnoty. Podprogramy vypočtou koeficienty a transkonduktance, které dále předají jako parametr procedury rezistor. Ta provede přepočet transkonduktancí na rezistory a jim příslušející kód pro D/A převodník. Následně inicializuje SPI sběrnici (nastaven mód nula, rychlost přenosu je odvozena od hlavního oscilátoru dělená číslem 64) a přenese po ní data do D/A převodníku. Podprogramy cauer, bessel, butter, cheby a rezistor jsou umístěny v hlavičkovém souboru (filtr.h).

5.4 Vytvoření uživatelského menu

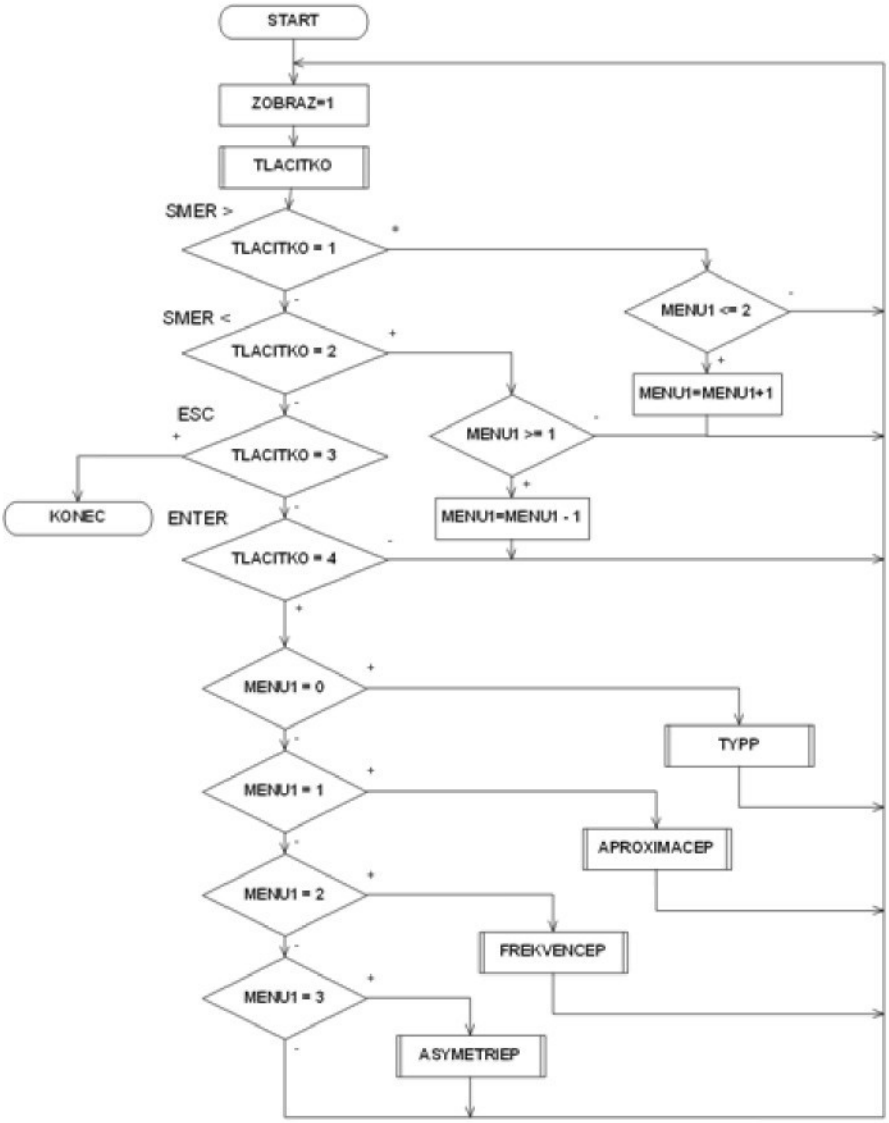
Pro zadávání parametrů filtru jsem vytvořil menu, které má tři úrovně. Celá struktura je snadno pochopitelná z

Obr. 5.1. Nejvýše stojí MENU1, které aktivujeme stiskem tlačítka enter. Další ovládání je již intuitivní – posuv vlevo (<), vpravo (>), vstup do další úrovně tlačítkem enter a o úroveň výše tlačítkem esc.



Obr. 5.1: Struktura ovládacího menu

Výběr frekvence je pouze s malým krokem, a tak pro rychlý posuv stačí tlačítko podržet (po šesti cyklech bude vynechána čekací smyčka, čímž se posun zrychlí). Každá položka menu, která se dále větví, má svojí pomocnou proměnnou pro uchování současného stavu a pro zobrazení na displeji. Podrobná struktura MENU1 je na Obr. 5.2. Pro vícenásobné větvení jsem mnohokrát s výhodou použil příkaz switch.



Obr. 5.2: Podrobná struktura ovládacího menu

5.5 Přerušení

Přerušení je využito pro obnovu dat na displeji. Nastaven je 16b časovač TMR0 tak, aby generoval přerušení po 200 ms. Procesor je taktován 20MHz krystalem a frekvence provádění instrukčních cyklů je čtvrtinová tedy 5 MHz. Tomu odpovídá čas 0,2 µs. Pro čas 200 ms bychom tedy potřebovali 100 000/0,2 instrukčních cyklů, což je hodnota větší než 16b číslo. Proto použijeme vestavěnou předděličku s dělicím poměrem 1:256. Počet instrukčních cyklů se tak zmenší 256krát. Přerušení je vyvoláno při přetečení čítače tedy při

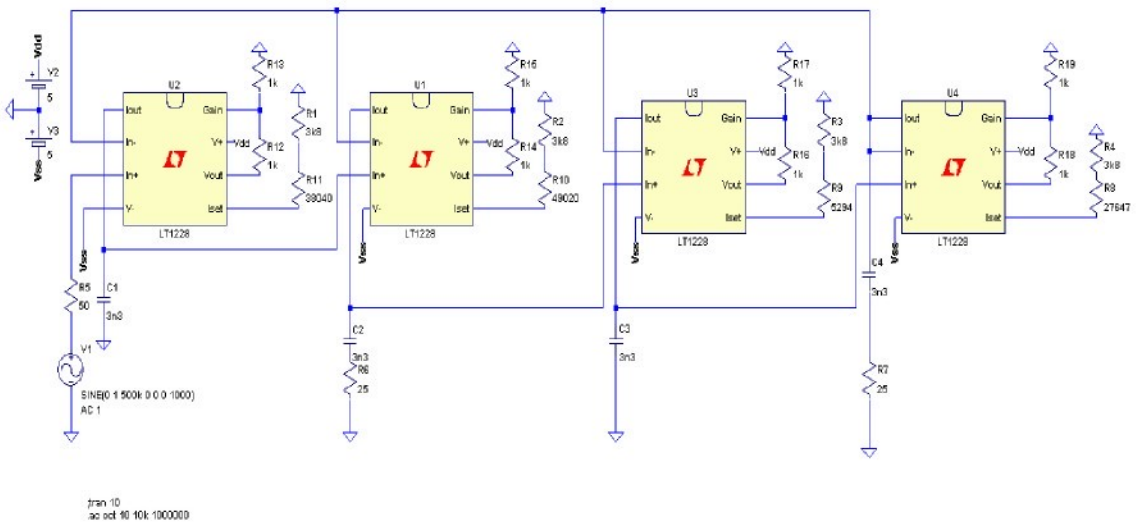
přechodu z 0xFFFF do 0x0000. Proto je nutné naší konstantu odečíst od 65536 a tuto hodnotu zapsat do registrů časovače (TMR0H a TMR0L). Celý výpočet vypadá následovně: $K = 65536 - \frac{200000}{0{,}2 \cdot 256} \cong 61630$. Priorita přerušení je nastavena jako vysoká, čemuž odpovídá vektor 0x08 v paměti. Po vyvolání přerušení je nutné oproti jiným procesorům softwarově vynulovat jeho příznak tedy bit TMR0IF v registru INTCON. Stav displeje musí odpovídat aktuálnímu stavu hlavního programu. To je zajištěno přes pomocné globálně definované proměnné (aproximace, typ ap.). Textové řetězce, které mají být při stavech zobrazovány jsou uloženy v programové flash paměti. Zobrazení znaků provádí procedura s názvem zaplcdzn, které předáme pointer na první znak v paměti a pozici prvního znaku. Tato procedura využívá další procedury, především ddlcd a ramlcd. Procedura ramlcd zapisuje znaky v ascii kódu a ddlcd zase adresu, na kterou se má posunout kurzor do paměti DDRAM (Display Data RAM).

6 Ověření funkčnosti filtru

6.1 Simulace filtru v programu LTSPICE

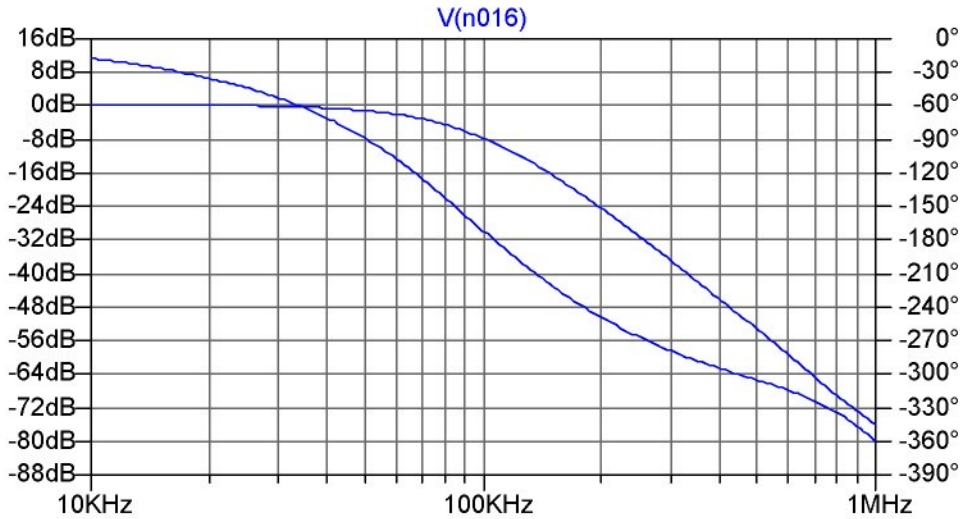
Jako velmi účinný nástroj pro odladění obvodů s filtry jsem použil simulátor obvodů LTSPICE. Ten je jakousi zjednodušenou variantou velmi známého a propracovaného simulátoru SPICE (Simulation Program with Integrated Circuit Emphasis), jehož základ byl vyvinut univerzitou v Berkeley. LTSPICE je volně šiřitelnou verzí poskytovanou firmou Linear, čímž je samozřejmě dáno jeho hlavní omezení tj. že při návrhu lze využít jen součástky jejich výroby. Program poskytuje pro diagnostiku obvodů několik typů analýz. Nejvíce jsem využil především analýzu v časové oblasti (transient) a střídavou analýzu (AC analysis). Střídavá analýza umožňuje naměření amplitudové frekvenční a fázové charakteristiky popř. skupinového zpoždění v rozsahu, který nastavíme. Při této analýze se provede přiřazení kmitočtu všem nezávislým střídavým zdrojům a vypočtou se veličiny (amplitudy, fáze) napětí a proudů ve všech uzlech a větvích obvodu. Nevýhody simulace a její rozdíl oproti realitě se dají samozřejmě snížit např. nastavením parazitních vlastností součástek v jednotlivých makromodelech, ale nikdy úplně realitě odpovídat nebudou. Na

Obr. **6.1** je vidět simulační schéma samotné struktury filtru pro DP. Odpory 25 Ω mají představovat odpor kanálů multiplexorů, které jsou ve větvi zařazeny (někde jsou řazeny dva za sebou, proto 50 Ω).

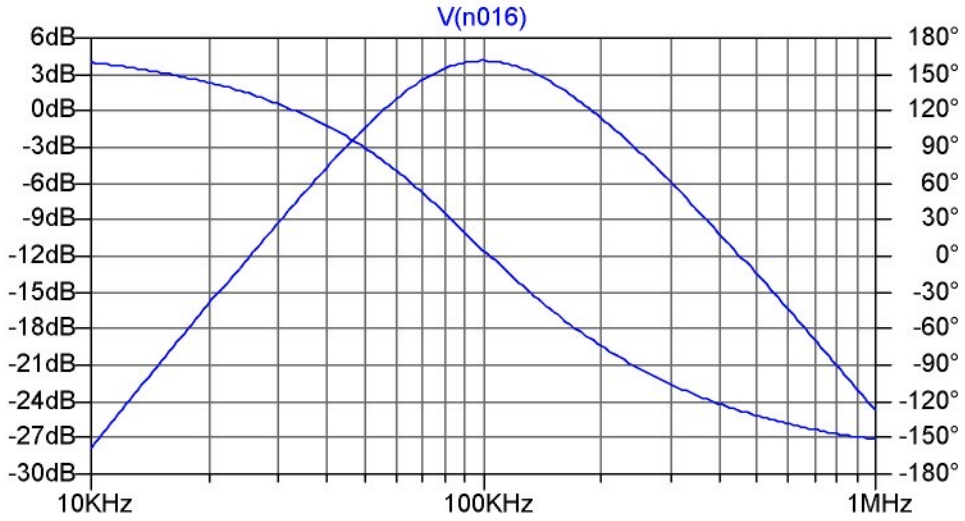


Obr. 6.1: Simulační schéma pro filtr typu DP

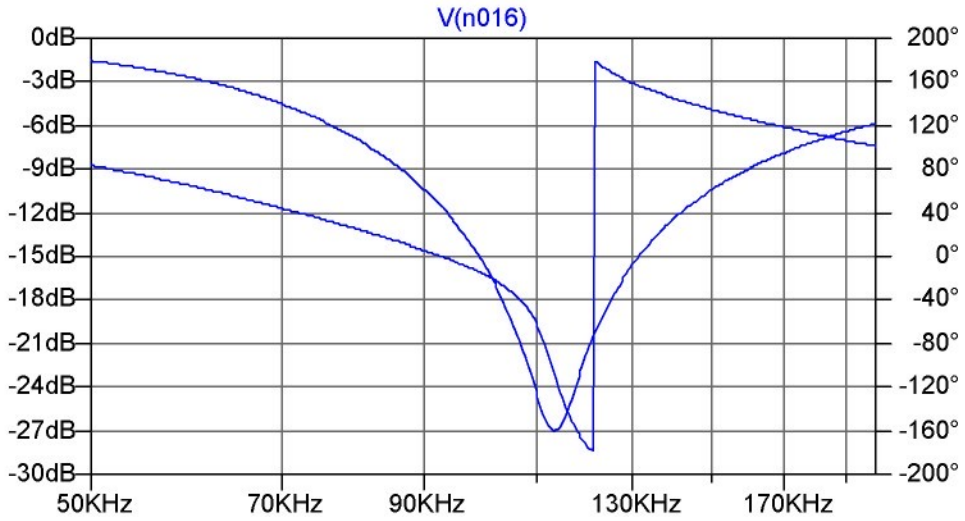
Na následujících grafech jsou vidět některé modulové i fázové frekvenční charakteristiky pocházející ze simulace.



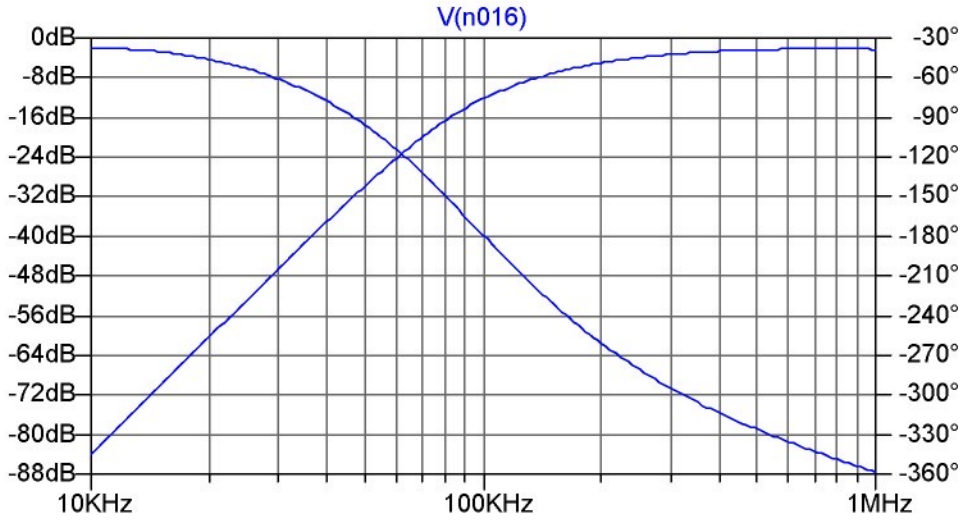
Graf 6.1: Besselův filtr typu DP (amplitudová a fázová charakteristika)



Graf 6.2: Besselův filtr typu PP (amplitudová a fázová charakteristika)

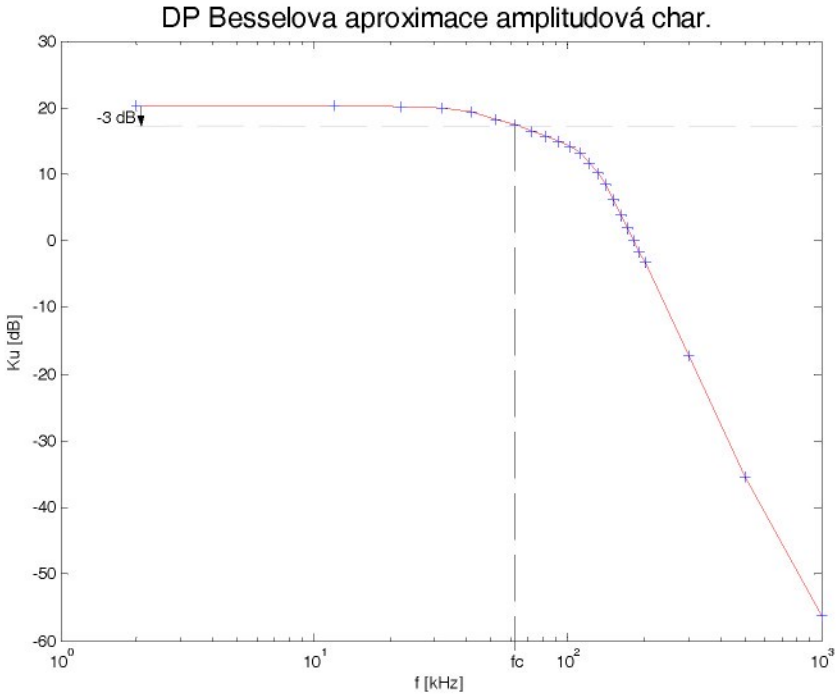


Graf 6.3: Besselův filtr typu PZ (amplitudová a fázová charakteristika)

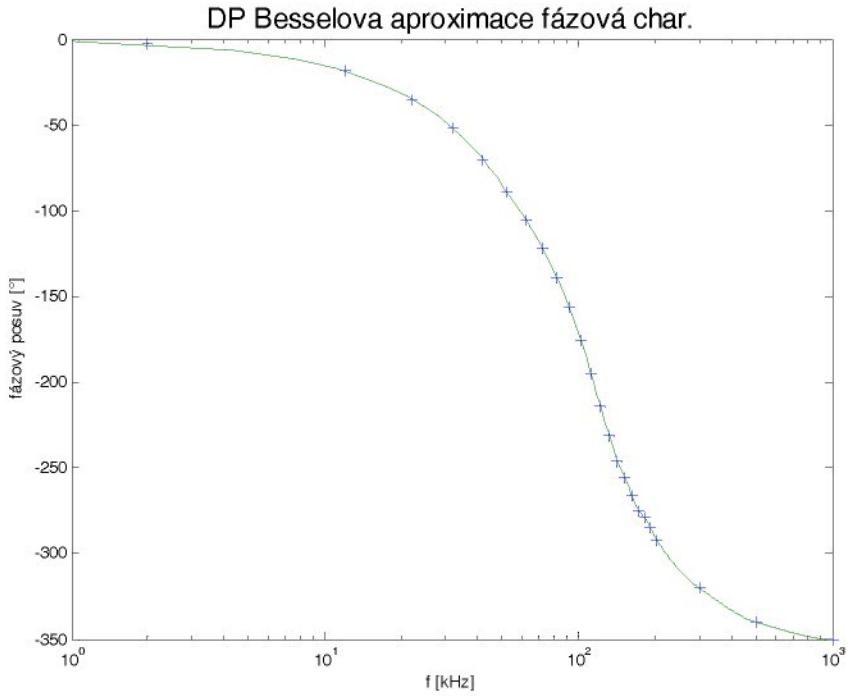


Graf 6.4: Besselův filtr typu HP (amplitudová a fázová charakteristika)

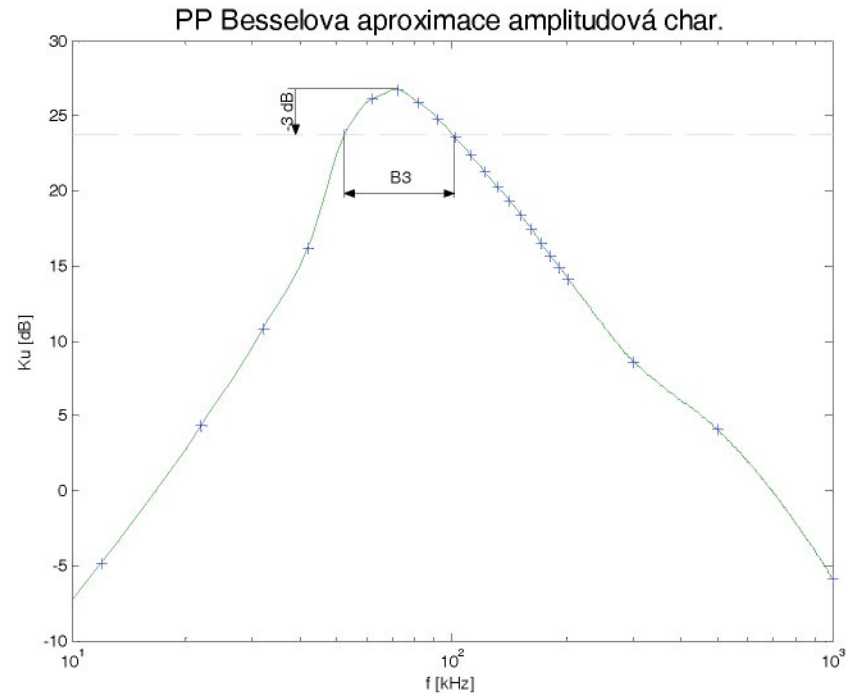
6.2 Měření charakteristik na přípravku



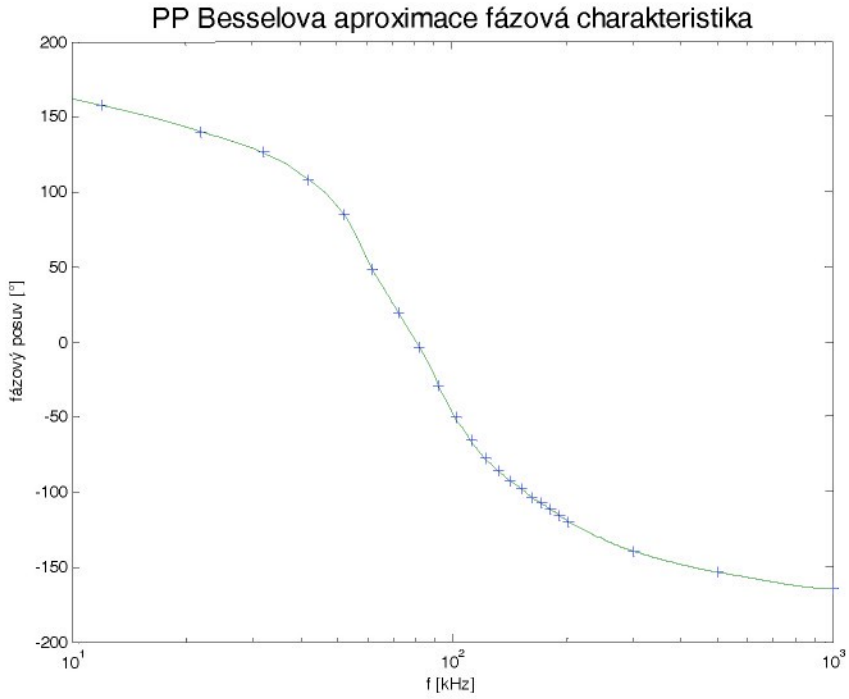
Graf 6.5: Besselův filtr typu DP (amplitudová charakteristika)



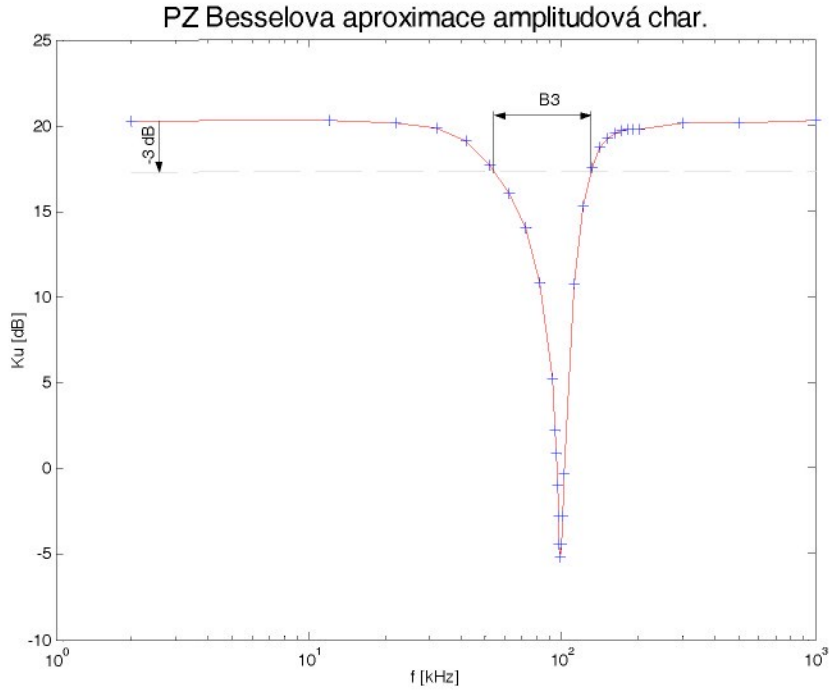
Graf 6.6: Besselův filtr typu DP (fázová charakteristika)



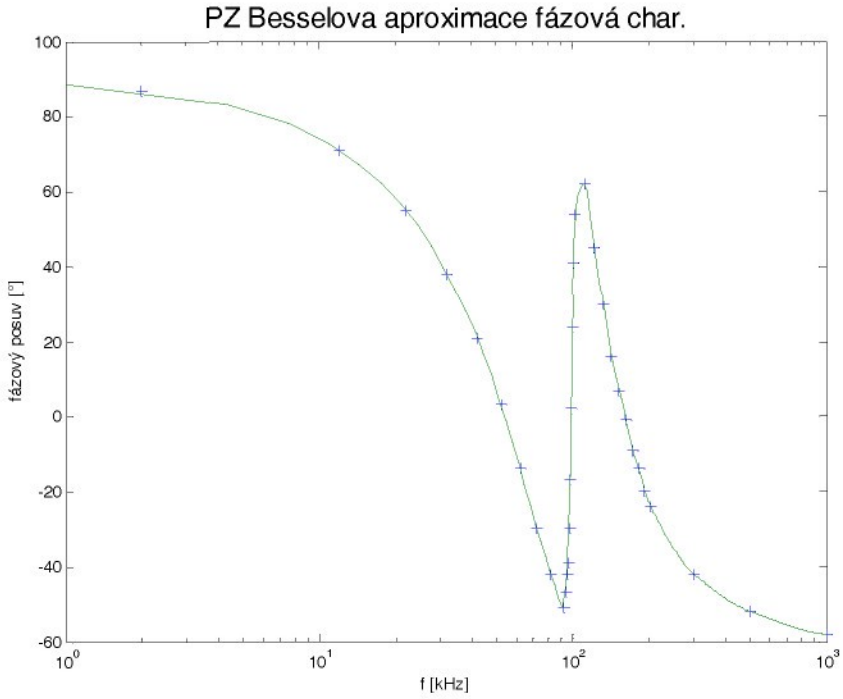
Graf 6.7: Besselův filtr typu PP (amplitudová charakteristika)



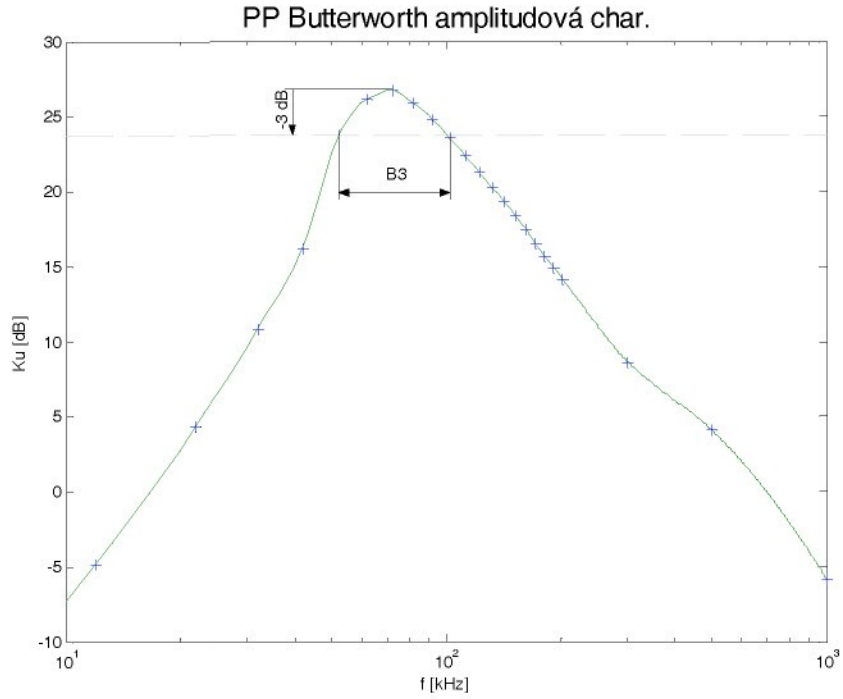
Graf 6.8: Besselův filtr typu PP (fázová charakteristika)



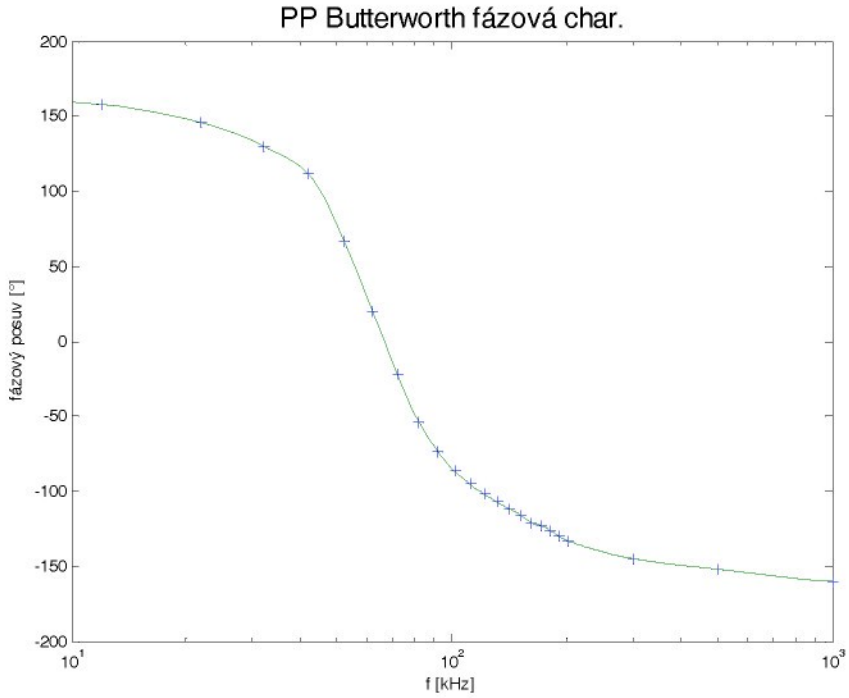
Graf 6.9: Besselův filtr typu PZ (amplitudová charakteristika)



Graf 6.10: Besselův filtr typu PZ (fázová charakteristika)



Graf 6.11: Butterworthův filtr typu PP (amplitudová charakteristika)



Graf 6.12: Butterworthův filtr typu PP (fázová charakteristika)

Tabulka 6.1: Porovnání vlastností naměřených charakteristik

		fd	fh	B3	Q	f0
		[kHz]	[kHz]	[kHz]	[1]	[kHz]
PP	Bessel	58,10	128,30	70,20	1,24	87,00
	Butterworth	52,04	101,06	49,02	1,43	70,00
PZ	Bessel	97,00	101,00	4,00	24,75	99,00

V tabulce (Tabulka 6.1) jsou znázorněny základní parametry naměřené na pásmové zádrži a propusti. Na pásmové propusti je vidět rozdíl ve strmosti charakteristik Besselovy a Butterworthovy aproximace (ta je strmější a má tedy menší šířku pásma zhruba o 20 dB). Navržená struktura je čtvrtého řádu, a tak by se měl spád amplitudové charakteristiky asymptoticky blížit 80 dB na dekádu pro dolní a horní propust. Reálně byl naměřen útlum 75 dB na dekádu. Pro pásmovou propust by měla být strmost poloviční (tedy 40 dB) a naměřeno bylo cca 35 dB. Rozsah hodnot fázové charakteristiky by měl být pro filtr čtvrtého řádu 360 ° (4 * 90 °). U dolní propusti se se zvyšující frekvencí zvětšuje fázové

zpoždění (blíží se asymptoticky ke 360 °). Pro pásmovou propust se fáze přesouvá z kladných hodnot (180 °) do hodnot záporných (-180 °), přičemž při mezní frekvenci je posuv nulový. Průběh fázové charakteristiky Besselova filtru má více lineární průběh než u filtru Butterworthova. Fázová charakteristika s Besselovou aproximací obsahuje skokovou změnu fáze při mezní frekvenci, což je dáno pouze zobrazením na osciloskopu, který měří fázi jen do 180 °. Mezní frekvence zobrazené v tabulce (Tabulka 6.1) se liší od simulace díky nepřesnostem především při zaokrouhlování hodnoty odporu a její následné diskretizaci na 256 hodnot (počet kroků digitálního potenciometru). Data byla naměřena na napěťovém výstupu, tedy až za výstupním bufferem. Stejných výsledků by se dosáhlo i na proudovém výstupu, ten se však nesmí příliš zatěžovat a kapacita vstupu osciloskopu (cca 15 pF) by zde nebyla žádoucí. Veškeré měření probíhalo při vstupním napětí 200 mV_{PP}, avšak filtr spolehlivě pracoval i při 1 V_{PP}. Poloha amplitudové charakteristiky na ose y je dána pouze nastavením zesílení výstupního zesilovače.

Závěr

Úkolem práce bylo vytvoření funkčního vzorku filtru s řiditelnou mezní frekvencí a strmostí. Přípravek se podařilo realizovat, přičemž navíc bylo umožněno u filtru měnit typ aproximace amplitudové frekvenční charakteristiky. Je tedy umožněna změna jak strmosti filtru v nepropustném pásmu, tak i strmosti v okolí mezní frekvence. Dále bylo za pomoci univerzální struktury a analogových multiplexerů umožněno přepínání mezi dolní, horní a pásmovou propustí a pásmovou zádrží. Z běžných aproximací bylo experimentováno s Besselovou, Butterworthovou, Čebyševovou a Cauerovou. Na grafech v kapitole šest jsou ukázky naměřených charakteristik pro Besselovu a Butterworthovu charakteristiku. Tyto charakteristiky jsou srovnatelné s grafy pocházející ze simulace v programu LTSPICE, ve kterém byla celá struktura odzkoušena a odladěna. Bohužel simulace vykazovala pouze idealizované průběhy, a tak při realizaci se musely řešit problémy s rušením. Obvod se totiž sám rozkmitával na vysokých kmitočtech (kolem 100 MHz) a amplituda těchto kmitů velmi zkreslovala výstupní signál. Oscilace obvodu byly přidáním externích kondenzátorů ke každému integrovanému obvodu a dále potom změnou zesílení výstupního zesilovače (bufferu).

Při návrhu obvodu byly použity moderní aktivní prvky OTA, které vykazují výhody zejména na vyšších frekvencích. S ohledem na větší náročnost návrhu plošných spojů pro vysoké frekvence (impedanční přizpůsobení, zahrnutí impedance vodičů ap.) byly voleny mezní frekvence filtru na nižších frekvencích tedy kolem 100 kHz. To samozřejmě nevadí, neboť funkce lze velmi dobře ověřit i na těchto frekvencích.

Literatura

[1] HÁJEK, Karel, SEDLÁČEK, Jiří. Kmitočtové filtry. Praha : BEN-technická literatura, 2002. 656 s. ISBN 80-7300-023-7.

[2] SMÉKAL, Zdeněk, VÍCH, Robert. Číslicové filtry. 1. vyd. Praha : Academia, 2000. 218 s. Česká matice technická. ISBN 80-200-0761-5.

[3] HLAVA, Jaroslav. Prostředky automatického řízení II. [online]. Praha : 2000 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://www.fm.tul.cz/~jaroslav.hlava/par/Skripta_PAR.pdf>

[4] PALOUDA, Hans. Current feedback amplifiers : Application Note 597 [online]. National Semiconductor, 1989 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://www.national.com/an/AN/AN-597.pdf>.

[5] HERENCSÁR, Norbert, VRBA, Kamil. Obecný přístup k návrhu kmitočtových filtrů pomocí autonomních obvodů. Elektrorevue [online]. 2006 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://www.elektrorevue.cz/cz/clanky/communication-technology-5/0/obecny-pristup-k-navrhu-kmitoctovych-filtru-pomoci-autonomnich-obvodu/>. ISSN 1213-1539.

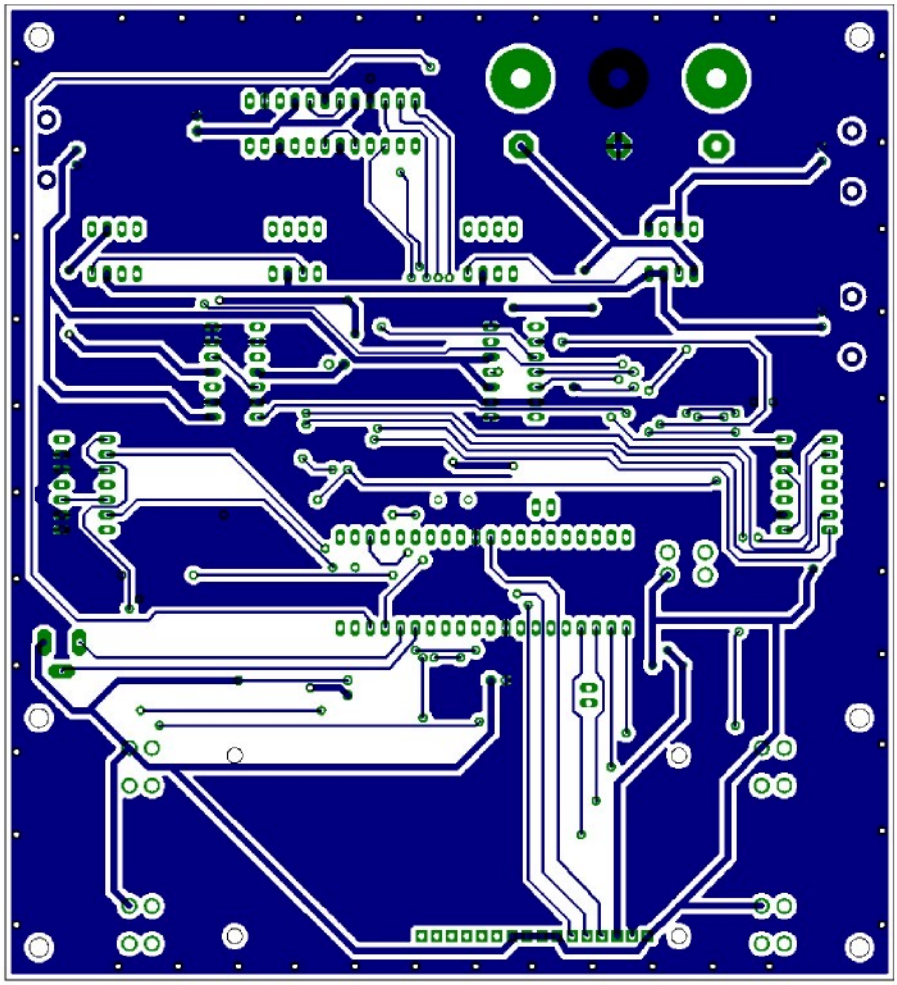
[6] KOTON, Jaroslav, VRBA, Kamil. Zobecněné metody návrhu kmitočtových filtrů. Elektrorevue [online]. 2008 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://www.elektrorevue.cz/file.php?id=200000230-d3e88d4e27>. ISSN 1213-1539.

[7] FOSLER, Ross, RICHEY, Rodger. A FLASH Bootloader for PIC16 and PIC18 Devices : Application Note 851 [online]. Microchip, 2002 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://ww1.microchip.com/downloads/en/AppNotes/00851b.pdf>.

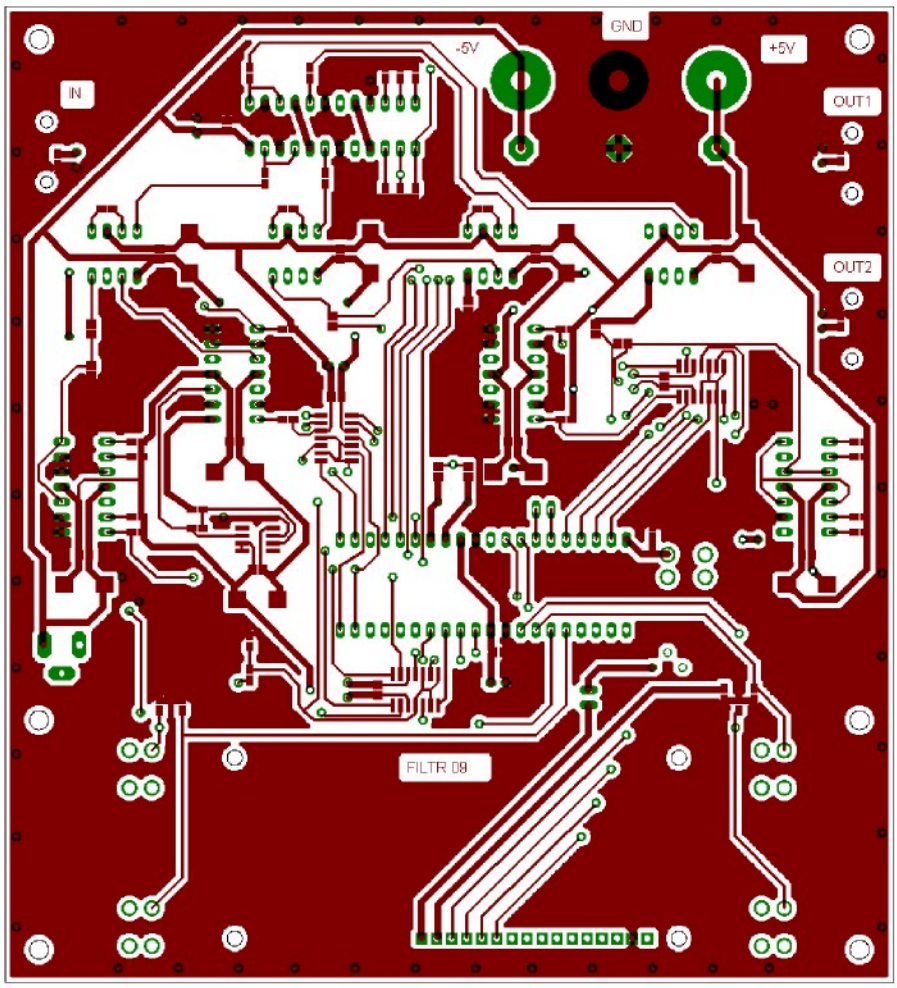
[8] LT1228 : 100MHz Current Feedback Amplifier with DC Gain Control [online]. Linear Technology Corporation, 2003 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://cds.linear.com/docs/Datasheet/1228fc.pdf>.

[9] Alldatasheet [online]. 2003-2009 [cit. 2009-05-20]. Dostupný z WWW: <http://www.alldatasheet.com/>.

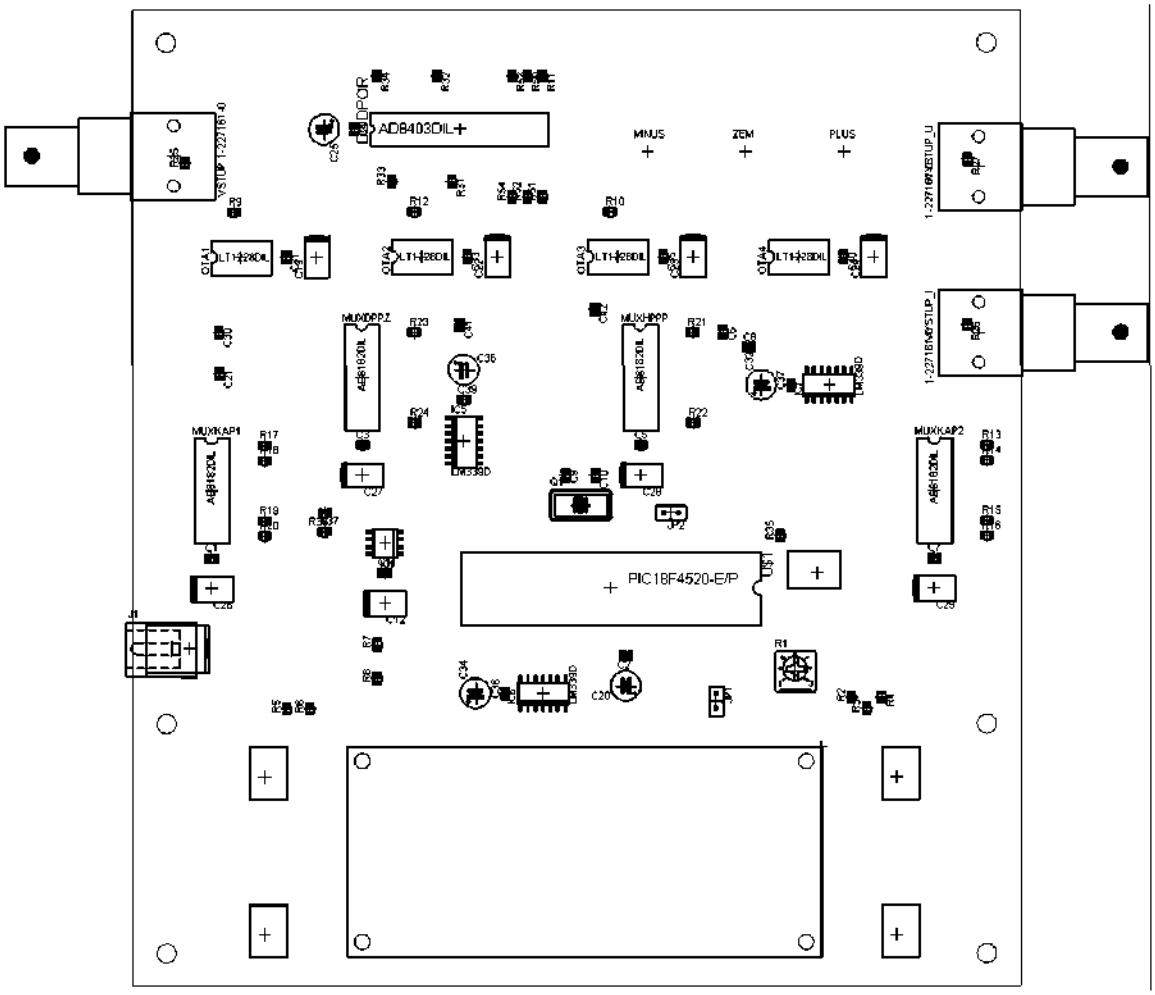
Příloha A – deska plošných spojů



Obr. 0.1: Deska plošných spojů – strana bottom



Obr. 0.2: Deska plošných spojů – strana TOP



Obr. 0.3: Rozmístění součástek na desce plošných spojů

Příloha B – naměřená data

DP Bessel

f	φ	Ku
[kHz]	[°]	[dB]
2	-2,5	20,26
12	-18,6	20,26
22	-35	20,09
32	-52	19,96
42	-70	19,33
52	-89	18,3
62	-105	17,38
72	-122	16,55
82	-139	15,71
92	-156	15,02
102	-175	14,24
112	-195	13,2
122	-214	11,79
132	-231	10,24
142	-246	8,37
152	-256	6,13
162	-266	3,95
172	-275	2,01
182	-279	0
192	-285	-1,67
202	-292	-3,22
300	-320	-17,25
500	-340	-35,36
1000	-350	-56,34

PP Bessel

f	φ	Ku
[kHz]	[°]	[dB]
2	x	-26,94
12	158	-5,27
22	140	4,69
32	126	10,93
42	108	15,48
52	85	20,03
62	48	23,68
72	19,5	24,96
82	-4	25,58
92	-29	25,58
102	-51	24,91
112	-66	24,03
122	-78	22,92
132	-86	22,34
142	-93	21,43
152	-98	20,53
162	-104	19,68
172	-108	18,79
182	-112	17,95
192	-116	17,21
202	-120	16,52
300	-140	11,48
500	-154	4,86
1000	-165	-6,02

PZ Bessel

f	φ	Ku
[kHz]	[°]	[dB]
2	87	20,29
12	71	20,29
22	55	20,1
32	38	19,83
42	21	19,08
52	3	17,64
62	-14	16,02
72	-30	14,02
82	-42	10,81
92	-51	5,2
94	-47	2,18
95	-42	0,83
96	-39	-1,04
97	-30	-2,85
98	-17	-4,44
99	2	-5,19
100	24	-4,44
101	41	-2,79
102	54	-0,35
112	62	10,71
122	45	15,31
132	30	17,54
142	16	18,69
152	7	19,23
162	-1	19,51
172	-9	19,67
182	-14	19,74
192	-20	19,78
202	-24	19,78
300	-42	20,1
500	-52	20,15
1000	-58	20,24

PP Butterworth

f	φ	Ku
[kHz]	[°]	[dB]
2	x	-20
12	158	-4,88
22	146	4,35
32	130	10,79
42	112	16,18
52	67	23,72
62	20,3	26,15
72	-22	26,73
82	-54	25,89
92	-73,3	24,79
102	-86,7	23,58
112	-95	22,39
122	-102	21,28
132	-107	20,26
142	-112	19,3
152	-116	18,37
162	-121	17,45
172	-123	16,48
182	-126	15,65
192	-130	14,9
202	-133	14,12
300	-145	8,63
500	-152	4,08
1000	-160	-5,85

750 MHz, 3.8 mA 10 ns Switching Multiplexers

AD8180/AD8182*

FEATURES

Fully Buffered Inputs and Outputs
Fast Channel Switching: 10 ns
High Speed
> 750 MHz Bandwidth (–3 dB)
750 V/μs Slew Rate
Fast Settling Time of 14 ns to 0.1%
Low Power: 3.8 mA (AD8180), 6.8 mA (AD8182)
Excellent Video Specifications ($R_L \geq 1$ kΩ)
Gain Flatness of 0.1 dB Beyond 100 MHz
0.02% Differential Gain Error
0.02° Differential Phase Error
Low Glitch: < 35 mV
Low All-Hostile Crosstalk of –80 dB @ 5 MHz
High "OFF" Isolation of –90 dB @ 5 MHz
Low Cost
Fast Output Disable Feature for Connecting Multiple Devices

APPLICATIONS

Pixel Switching for "Picture-In-Picture"
Switching in LCD and Plasma Displays
Video Switchers and Routers

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM

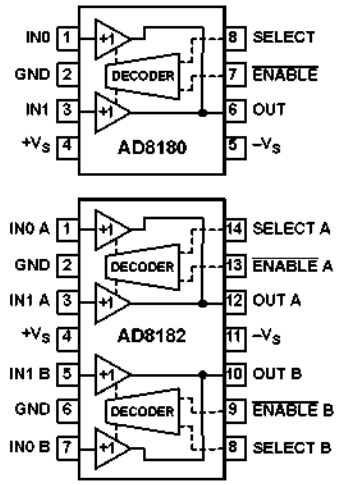


Table I. Truth Table

SELECT	$\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$	OUTPUT
0	0	IN0
1	0	IN1
0	1	High Z
1	1	High Z

PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

The AD8180 (single) and AD8182 (dual) are high speed 2-to-1 multiplexers. They offer –3 dB signal bandwidth greater than 750 MHz along with slew rate of 750 V/μs. With better than 80 dB of crosstalk and isolation, they are useful in many high speed applications. The differential gain and differential phase error of 0.02% and 0.02°, along with 0.1 dB flatness beyond 100 MHz make the AD8180 and AD8182 ideal for professional video multiplexing. They offer 10 ns switching time making them an excellent choice for pixel switching (picture-in-picture) while consuming less than 3.8 mA (per 2:1 mux) on ±5 V supply voltages.

Both devices offer a high speed disable feature allowing the output to be configured into a high impedance state. This allows multiple outputs to be connected together for cascading stages while the "OFF" channels do not load the output bus. They operate on voltage supplies of ±5 V and are offered in 8- and 14-lead plastic DIP and SOIC packages.

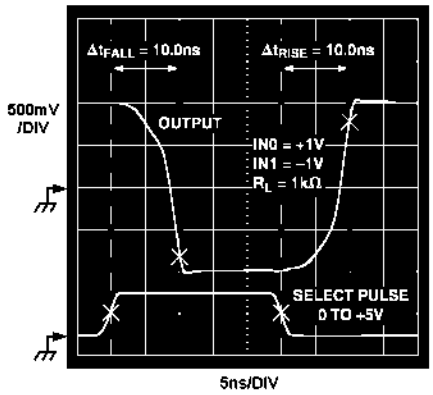


Figure 1. AD8180/AD8182 Switching Characteristics

*Protected under U.S. Patent Number 5,955,908.

REV. B

Information furnished by Analog Devices is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by Analog Devices for its use, nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent or patent rights of Analog Devices.

One Technology Way, P.O. Box 9106, Norwood, MA 02062-9106, U.S.A.
Tel: 781/329-4700 World Wide Web Site: http://www.analog.com
Fax: 781/326-8703
© Analog Devices, Inc., 2000

AD8180/AD8182–SPECIFICATIONS (@ T_A = +25°C, V_S = ±5 V, R_L = 2 kΩ unless otherwise noted)

Parameter		Conditions	AD8180A/AD8182A Min	Typ	Max	Units
SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS						
Channel Switching Time[1]		Channel-to-Channel				
50% Logic to 10% Output Settling		IN0 = +1 V, IN1 = –1 V; R_L = 1 kΩ		5		ns
50% Logic to 90% Output Settling		IN0 = +1 V, IN1 = –1 V; R_L = 1 kΩ		10		ns
50% Logic to 99.9% Output Settling		IN0 = +1 V, IN1 = –1 V; R_L = 1 kΩ		14		ns
$\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ to Channel ON Time[2]		SEL = 0 or 1				
50% Logic to 90% Output Settling		IN0 = +1 V, –1 V or IN1 = –1 V, +1 V; R_L = 1 kΩ		10.5		ns
$\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ to Channel OFF Time[2]		SEL = 0 or 1				
50% Logic to 90% Output Settling		IN0 = +1 V, –1 V or IN1 = –1 V, +1 V; R_L = 1 kΩ		11		ns
Channel Switching Transient (Glitch)[3]		All Inputs Are Grounded, R_L = 1 kΩ		±25 /±35		mV
DIGITAL INPUTS						
Logic "1" Voltage		SEL and $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ Inputs	2.0			V
Logic "0" Voltage		SEL and $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ Inputs			0.8	V
Logic "1" Input Current		SEL, $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ = +4 V		10	200	nA
Logic "0" Input Current		SEL, $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ = +0.4 V		2	3	µA
DYNAMIC PERFORMANCE						
–3 dB Bandwidth (Small Signal)[4]	AD8180R	V_{IN} = 50 mV rms, R_L = 5 kΩ	750	930		MHz
	AD8182R	V_{IN} = 50 mV rms, R_L = 5 kΩ	640	780		MHz
–3 dB Bandwidth (Large Signal)	AD8180R	V_{IN} = 1 V rms, R_L = 5 kΩ	120	150		MHz
	AD8182R	V_{IN} = 1 V rms, R_L = 5 kΩ	110	135		MHz
0.1 dB Bandwidth[4, 5]		V_{IN} = 50 mV rms, R_L = 5 kΩ, R_S = 0 Ω		100		MHz
	AD8180R	V_{IN} = 50 mV rms, R_L = 1 kΩ–5 kΩ, R_S = 150 Ω		210		MHz
	AD8182R	V_{IN} = 50 mV rms, R_L = 1 kΩ–5 kΩ, R_S = 125 Ω		210		MHz
Slew Rate		2 V Step		750		V/µs
Settling Time to 0.1%		2 V Step		14		ns
DISTORTION/NOISE PERFORMANCE						
Differential Gain		f = 3.58 MHz, R_L = 1 kΩ		0.02	0.04	%
Differential Phase		f = 3.58 MHz, R_L = 1 kΩ		0.02	0.04	Degrees
All Hostile Crosstalk[6]	AD8180R	f = 5 MHz, R_L = 1 kΩ		–80		dB
		f = 30 MHz, R_L = 1 kΩ		–65		dB
	AD8182R	f = 5 MHz, R_L = 1 kΩ		–78		dB
		f = 30 MHz, R_L = 1 kΩ		–63		dB
OFF Isolation[7]	AD8180R	f = 5 MHz, R_L = 30 Ω		–89		dB
	AD8182R	f = 5 MHz, R_L = 30 Ω		–93		dB
Voltage Noise		f = 10 kHz–30 MHz		4.5		nV/√Hz
Total Harmonic Distortion		f_C = 10 MHz, V_O = 2 V p-p, R_L = 1 kΩ		–78		dBc
DC/TRANSFER CHARACTERISTICS						
Voltage Gain[8]		V_{IN} = ±1 V, R_L = 2 kΩ		0.982		V/V
		V_{IN} = ±1 V, R_L = 10 kΩ	0.986	0.993		V/V
Input Offset Voltage				1	12	mV
		T_{MIN} to T_{MAX}			15	mV
Input Offset Voltage Matching		Channel-to-Channel		0.5	4	mV
Input Offset Drift				11		µV/°C
Input Bias Current				1	5	µA
		T_{MIN} to T_{MAX}			7	µA
Input Bias Current Drift				12		nA/°C
INPUT CHARACTERISTICS						
Input Resistance			1	2.2		MΩ
Input Capacitance		Channel Enabled (R Package)		1.5		pF
		Channel Disabled (R Package)		1.5		pF
Input Voltage Range				±3.3		V
OUTPUT CHARACTERISTICS						
Output Voltage Swing		R_L = 500 Ω[9]	±3.0	±3.1		V
Short Circuit Current				30		mA
Output Resistance		Enabled		27		Ω
		Disabled	1	10		MΩ
Output Capacitance		Disabled (R Package)		1.7		pF
POWER SUPPLY						
Operating Range			±4		±6	V
Power Supply Rejection Ratio	+PSRR	$+V_S$ = +4.5 V to +5.5 V, $–V_S$ = –5 V	54	57		dB
	–PSRR	$–V_S$ = –4.5 V to –5.5 V, $+V_S$ = +5 V	45	51		dB
Quiescent Current		All Channels "ON"		3.8/6.8	4.5/8	mA
		T_{MIN} to T_{MAX}			4.75/8.5	mA
		All Channels "OFF"		1.3/2	2/3	mA
		T_{MIN} to T_{MAX}			2/3	mA
		AD8182, One Channel "ON"		4		mA
OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE			–40		+85	°C

NOTES
[1]$\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ pin is grounded. IN0 = +1 V dc, IN1 = –1 V dc. SELECT input is driven with 0 V to +5 V pulse. Measure transition time from 50% of the SELECT input value (+2.5 V) and 10% (or 90%) of the total output voltage transition from IN0 channel voltage (+1 V) to IN1 (–1 V), or vice versa.
[2]$\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ pin is driven with 0 V to +5 V pulse (with 3 ns edges). State of $\overline{\text{SELECT}}$ input determines which channel is activated (i.e., if SELECT = Logic 0, IN0 is selected). Set IN0 = +1 V dc, IN1 = –1 V dc, and measure transition time from 50% of $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ pulse (+2.5 V) to 90% of the total output voltage change. In Figure 5, Δt_{OFF} is the disable time, Δt_{ON} is the enable time.
[3]All inputs are grounded. SELECT input is driven with 0 V to +5 V pulse. The outputs are monitored. Speeding the edges of the SELECT pulse increases the glitch magnitude due to coupling via the ground plane. Removing the SELECT input termination will lower glitch, as does increasing R_L.
[4]Decreasing R_L lowers the bandwidth slightly. Increasing C_L lowers the bandwidth considerably (see Figure 19).
[5]A resistor (R_S) placed in series with the mux inputs serves to optimize 0.1 dB flatness, but is not required. Increasing output capacitance will increase peaking and reduce bandwidth (see Figure 20.)
[6]Select input which is not being driven (i.e., if SELECT is Logic 1, input activated is IN1); drive all other inputs with V_{IN} = 0.707 V rms and monitor output at f = 5 and 30 MHz. R_L = 1 kΩ (see Figure 13).
[7]Mux is disabled (i.e., $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ = Logic 1) and all inputs are driven simultaneously with V_{IN} = 0.446 V rms. Output is monitored at f = 5 and 30 MHz. R_L = 30 Ω to simulate R_{ON} of one enabled mux within a system (see Figure 14). In this mode the output impedance is very high (typ 10 MΩ), and the signal couples across the package; the load impedance determines the crosstalk.
[8]Voltage gain decreases for lower values of R_L. The resistive divider formed by the mux enabled output resistance (27 Ω) and R_L causes a gain which decreases as R_L decreases (i.e., the voltage gain is approximately 0.97 V/V (3% gain error) for R_L = 1 kΩ).
[9]Larger values of R_L provide wider output voltage swings, as well as better gain accuracy. See Note 8.

Specifications subject to change without notice.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS[1]

Supply Voltage ..... 12.6 V
Internal Power Dissipation[2]
AD8180 8-Lead Plastic DIP (N) ..... 1.3 Watts
AD8180 8-Lead Small Outline (R) ..... 0.9 Watts
AD8182 14-Lead Plastic DIP (N) ..... 1.6 Watts
AD8182 14-Lead Small Outline (R) ..... 1.0 Watts
Input Voltage ..... $\pm V_S$
Output Short Circuit Duration ..... Observe Power Derating Curves
Storage Temperature Range
N and R Package ..... –65°C to +125°C
Lead Temperature Range (Soldering 10 sec) ..... +300°C

NOTES
[1]Stresses above those listed under Absolute Maximum Ratings may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only; functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational section of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.
[2]Specification is for device in free air: 8-Lead Plastic DIP Package: θ_{JA} = 90°C/W; 8-Lead SOIC Package: θ_{JA} = 155°C/W; 14-Lead Plastic Package: θ_{JA} = 75°C/W; 14-Lead SOIC Package: θ_{JA} = 120°C/W, where $P_D = (T_J - T_A)/\theta_{JA}$.

ORDERING GUIDE

Model	Temperature Range	Package Description	Package Option
AD8180AN	–40°C to +85°C	8-Lead Plastic DIP	N-8
AD8180AR	–40°C to +85°C	8-Lead SOIC	SO-8
AD8180AR-REEL	–40°C to +85°C	13" Reel SOIC	SO-8
AD8180AR-REEL7	–40°C to +85°C	7" Reel SOIC	SO-8
AD8182AN	–40°C to +85°C	14-Lead Plastic DIP	N-14
AD8182AR	–40°C to +85°C	14-Lead Narrow SOIC	R-14
AD8182AR-REEL	–40°C to +85°C	13" Reel SOIC	R-14
AD8182AR-REEL7	–40°C to +85°C	7" Reel SOIC	R-14
AD8180-EB		Evaluation Board	
AD8182-EB		Evaluation Board	

MAXIMUM POWER DISSIPATION

The maximum power that can be safely dissipated by the AD8180 and AD8182 is limited by the associated rise in junction temperature. The maximum safe junction temperature for plastic encapsulated devices is determined by the glass transition temperature of the plastic, approximately +150°C. Exceeding this limit temporarily may cause a shift in parametric performance due to a change in the stresses exerted on the die by the package. Exceeding a junction temperature of +175°C for an extended period can result in device failure.

While the AD8180 and AD8182 are internally short circuit protected, this may not be sufficient to guarantee that the maximum junction temperature (+150°C) is not exceeded under all conditions. To ensure proper operation, it is necessary to observe the maximum power derating curves shown in Figures 2 and 3.

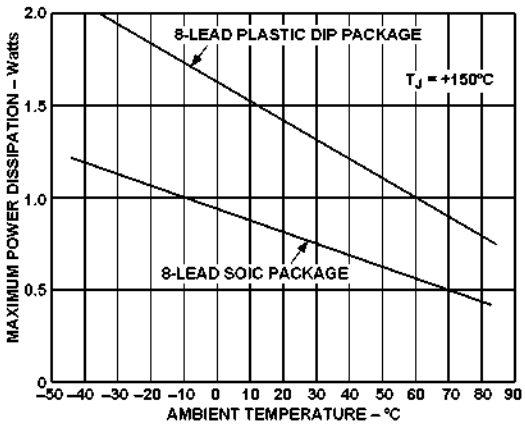


Figure 2. AD8180 Maximum Power Dissipation vs. Temperature

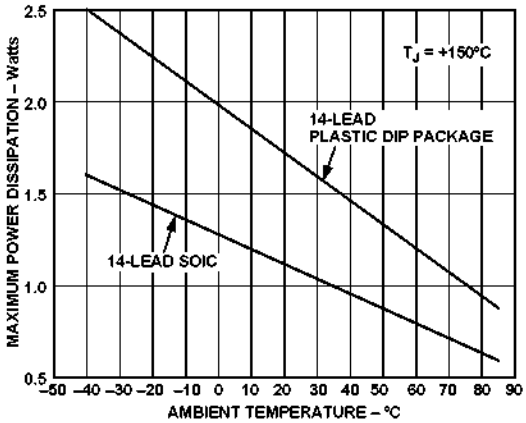


Figure 3. AD8182 Maximum Power Dissipation vs. Temperature

CAUTION

ESD (electrostatic discharge) sensitive device. Electrostatic charges as high as 4000 V readily accumulate on the human body and test equipment and can discharge without detection. Although the AD8180/AD8182 feature proprietary ESD protection circuitry, permanent damage may occur on devices subjected to high energy electrostatic discharges. Therefore, proper ESD precautions are recommended to avoid performance degradation or loss of functionality.

AD8180/AD8182–Typical Performance Curves

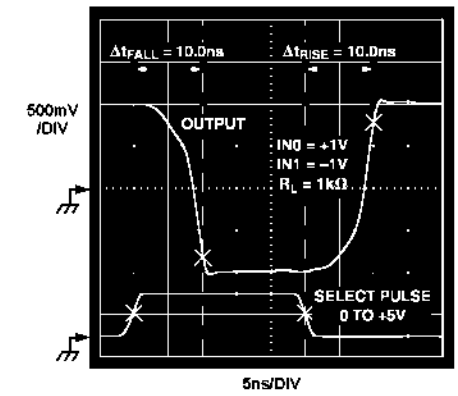


Figure 4. Channel Switching Characteristics

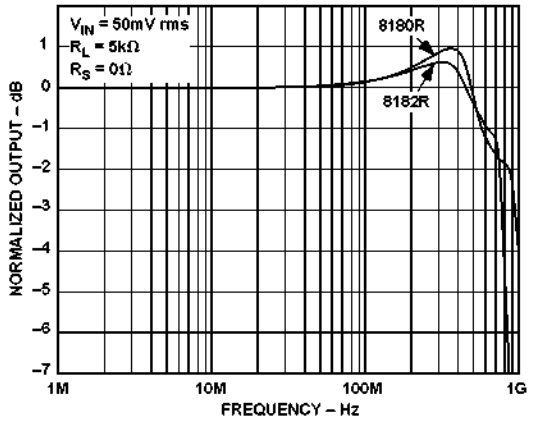


Figure 7. Small Signal Frequency Response

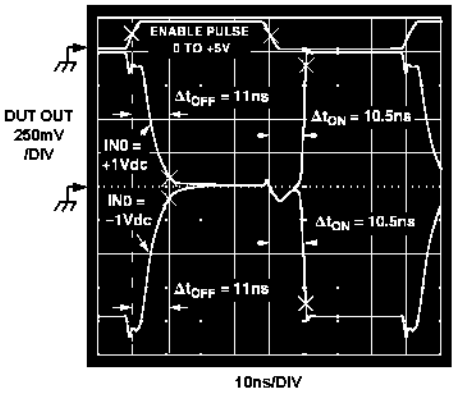


Figure 5. Enable and Disable Switching Characteristics

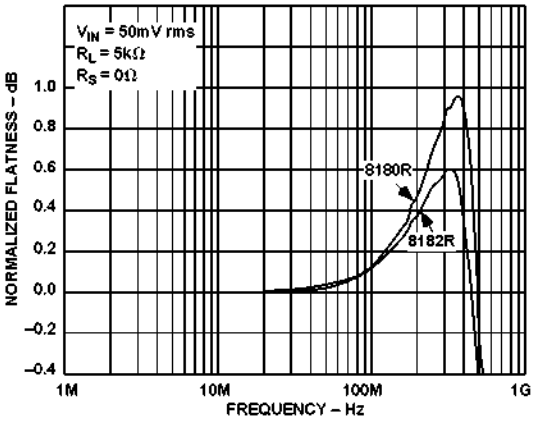


Figure 8. Gain Flatness vs. Frequency

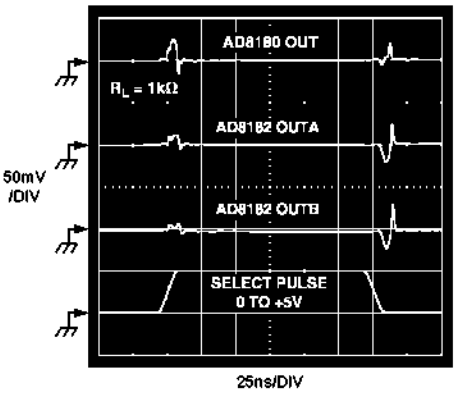


Figure 6. Channel Switching Transient (Glitch)

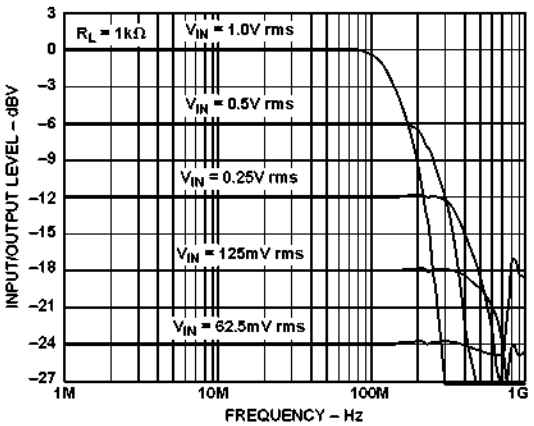


Figure 9. Large Signal Frequency Response

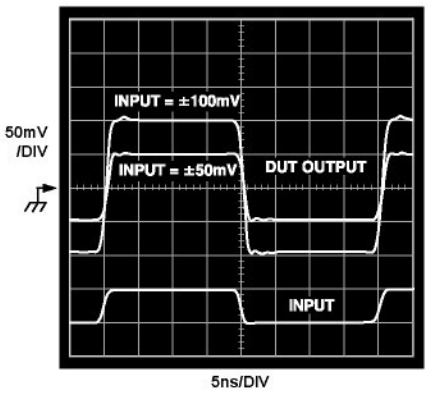


Figure 10. Small Signal Transient Response

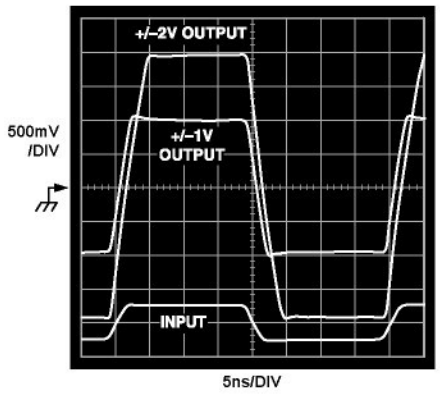


Figure 11. Large Signal Transient Response

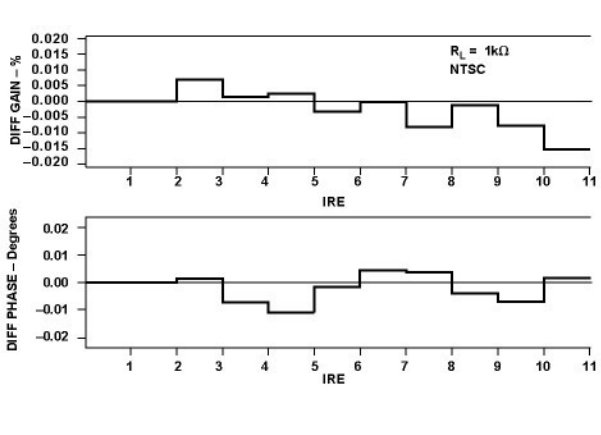


Figure 12. Differential Gain and Phase Error

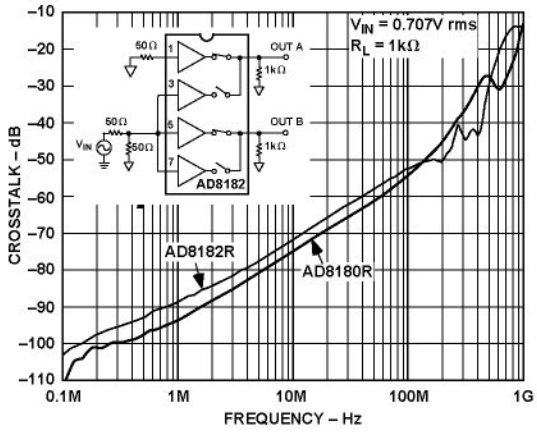


Figure 13. All-Hostile Crosstalk vs. Frequency

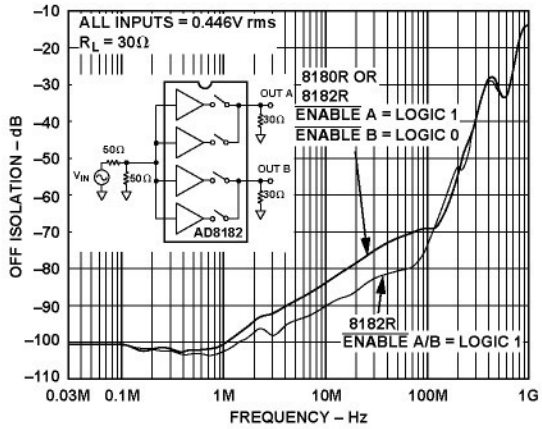


Figure 14. "OFF" Isolation vs. Frequency

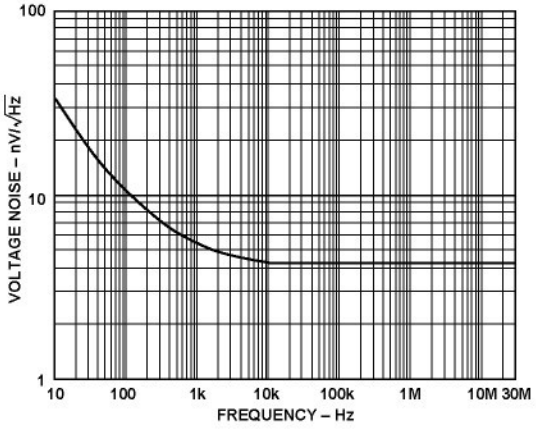


Figure 15. Voltage Noise vs. Frequency

AD8180/AD8182–Typical Performance Curves

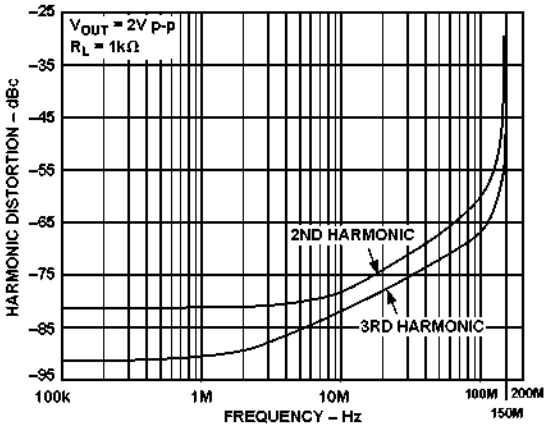


Figure 16. Harmonic Distortion vs. Frequency

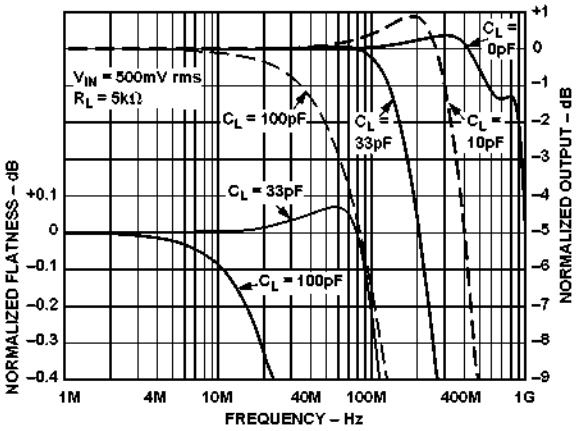


Figure 19. Frequency Response vs. Capacitive Load

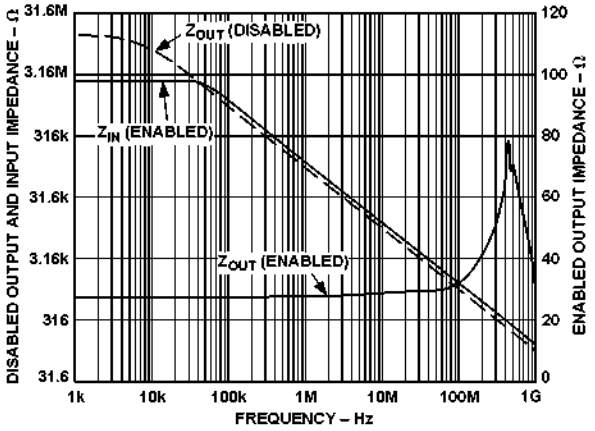


Figure 17. Disabled Output and Input Impedance vs. Frequency

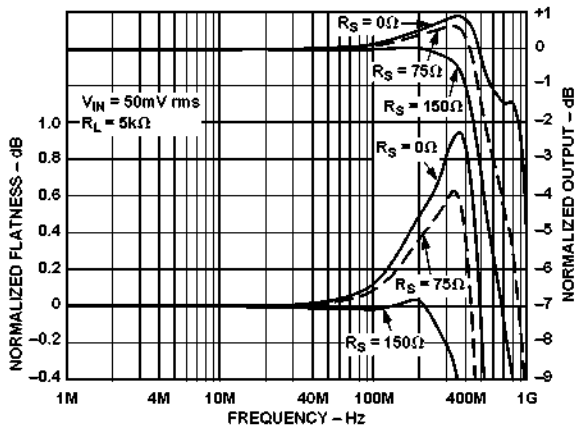


Figure 20. Frequency Response vs. Input Series Resistance

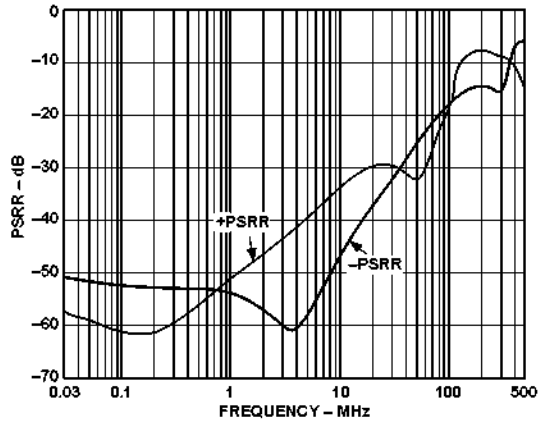


Figure 18. Power Supply Rejection vs. Frequency

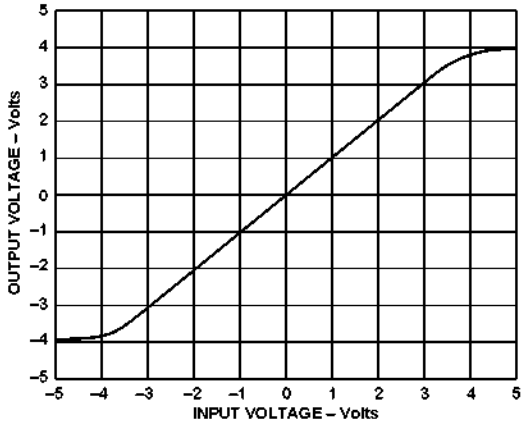


Figure 21. Output Voltage vs. Input Voltage, R_L = 1 kΩ

THEORY OF OPERATION

The AD8180 and AD8182 video multiplexers are designed for fast-switching (10 ns) and wide bandwidth (> 750 MHz). This performance is attained with low power dissipation (3.8 mA per active channel) through the use of proprietary circuit techniques and a dielectrically-isolated complementary bipolar process. These devices have a fast disable function that allows the outputs of several muxes to be wired in parallel to form a larger mux with little degradation in switching time. The low disabled output capacitance (1.7 pF) of these muxes helps to preserve the system bandwidth in larger matrices. Unlike earlier CMOS switches, the switched open-loop buffer architecture of the AD8180 and AD8182 provides a unidirectional signal path with minimal switching glitches and constant, low input capacitance. Since the input impedance of these muxes is nearly independent of the load impedance and the state of the mux, the frequency response of the ON channels in a large switch matrix is not affected by fanout.

Figure 22 shows a block diagram and simplified schematic of the AD8180, which contains two switched buffers (S0 and S1) that share a common output. The decoder logic translates TTL-compatible logic inputs (SELECT and $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$) to internal, differential ECL levels for fast, low-glitch switching. The SELECT input determines which of the two buffers is enabled, unless the $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ input is HIGH, in which case both buffers are disabled and the output is switched to a high impedance state.

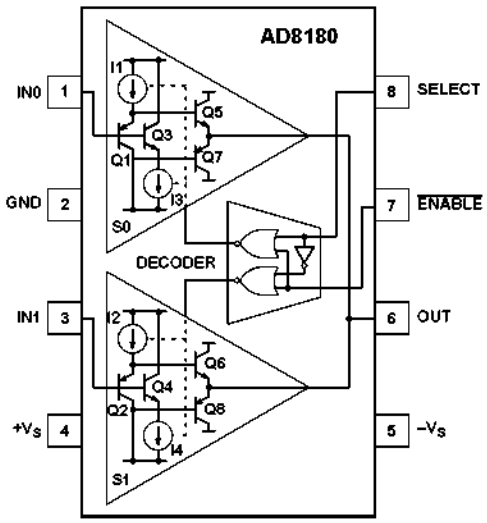


Figure 22. Block Diagram and Simplified Schematic of the AD8180 Multiplexer

Each open-loop buffer is implemented as a complementary emitter follower that provides high input impedance, symmetric slew rate and load drive, and high output-to-input isolation due to its β^2 current gain. The selected buffer is biased ON by fast switched current sources that allow the buffer to turn on quickly. Dedicated flatness circuits, combined with the open-loop architecture of the AD8180 and AD8182, keep peaking low (typically < 1 dB) when driving high capacitive loads, without the need for external series resistors at the input or output. If better flatness response is desired, an input series resistance (R_S) may be used (refer to Figure 20), although this will increase crosstalk. The dc gain of the AD8180 and AD8182 is almost independent of load for R_L > 10 kΩ. For heavier loads, the dc gain is approximately that of the voltage divider formed by the output impedance of the mux (typically 27 Ω) and R_L.

High speed disable clamp circuits at the bases of Q5–Q8 (not shown) allow the buffers to turn off quickly and cleanly without dissipating much power once off. Moreover, these clamps shunt displacement currents flowing through the junction capacitances of Q1–Q4 away from the bases of Q5–Q8 and to ac ground through low impedances. The two-pole high pass frequency response of the T switch formed by these clamps is a significant improvement over the one-pole high pass response of a simple series CMOS switch. As a result, board and package parasitics, especially stray capacitance between inputs and outputs may limit the achievable crosstalk and off isolation.

LAYOUT CONSIDERATIONS:

Realizing the high speed performance attainable with the AD8180 and AD8182 requires careful attention to board layout and component selection. Proper RF design techniques and low parasitic component selection are mandatory.

Wire wrap boards, prototype boards, and sockets are not recommended because of their high parasitic inductance and capacitance. Instead, surface-mount components should be soldered directly to a printed circuit board (PCB). The PCB should have a ground plane covering all unused portions of the component side of the board to provide a low impedance ground path. The ground plane should be removed from the area near input and output pins to reduce stray capacitance.

Chip capacitors should be used for supply bypassing. One end of the capacitor should be connected to the ground plane and the other within 1/4 inch of each power pin. An additional large (4.7 µF–10 µF) tantalum capacitor should be connected in parallel with each of the smaller capacitors for low impedance supply bypassing over a broad range of frequencies.

Signal traces should be as short as possible. Stripline or microstrip techniques should be used for long signal traces (longer than about 1 inch). These should be designed with a characteristic impedance of 50 Ω or 75 Ω and be properly terminated at the end using surface mount components.

Careful layout is imperative to minimize crosstalk. Guards (ground or supply traces) must be run between all signal traces to limit direct capacitive coupling. Input and output signal lines should fan out away from the mux as much as possible. If multiple signal layers are available, a buried stripline structure having ground plane above, below, and between signal traces will have the best crosstalk performance.

Return currents flowing through termination resistors can also increase crosstalk if these currents flow in sections of the finite-impedance ground circuit that is shared between more than one input or output. Minimizing the inductance and resistance of the ground plane can reduce this effect, but further care should be taken in positioning the terminations. Terminating cables directly at the connectors will minimize the return current flowing on the board, but the signal trace between the connector and the mux will look like an open stub and will degrade the frequency response. Moving the termination resistors close to the input pins will improve the frequency response, but the terminations from neighboring inputs should not have a common ground return.

APPLICATIONS

Multiplexing two RGB Video Sources

A common video application requires two RGB sources to be multiplexed together before the selected signal is applied to a monitor. Typically one source would be the PC's normal output, the second source might be a specialized source such as MPEG video. Figure 23 shows how such a circuit could be realized using the AD8180 and AD8182 and three current feedback op amps. The video inputs to the multiplexers are terminated with 75 Ω resistors. This has the effect of halving the signal amplitude of the applied signals.

Because all three multiplexers are permanently active, the $\overline{\text{ENABLE}}$ pins are tied permanently low. The three SELECT pins are tied together and this signal is used to select the source. In order to drive a 75 Ω back terminated load (R_L = 150 Ω), the multiplexer outputs are buffered using the AD8001 current feedback op amp. A gain of two compensates for the signal halving by the AD8001 output back termination resistor so that the system has an overall gain of unity.

If lower speed and crosstalk can be tolerated, either of the triple op amps, AD8013 or AD8073, can replace the three AD8001 op amps in the above circuit. Because both devices have bandwidths in the 100 MHz to 140 MHz range at a gain of +2, these amplifiers will dominate the frequency response of the circuit.

With no signal present, the total quiescent current of the circuit in Figure 23 is 25.6 mA (3.8 mA + 6.8 mA + 3 × 5 mA), or about 8.5 mA per channel. If either the AD8013 or AD8073 are used, the quiescent current will decrease to about 6.5 mA per channel.

To reduce power consumption further, three AD8011 single op amps can be used. With a quiescent current of 1 mA, this will reduce the per channel quiescent current to about 4.5 mA.

Table II. Amplifier Options for RGB Multiplexer

Op Amp	Comments
AD8001	Highest Bandwidth, 440 MHz (G = +2), I_{SY} = 5 mA
AD8011	Lower Power Consumption, Bandwidth (G = +2) = 210 MHz, I_{SY} = 1 mA
AD8013	Triple Op Amp, Bandwidth (G = +2) = 140 MHz, I_{SY} = 3.4 mA
AD8073	Lower Power Triple Op Amp, Bandwidth (G = +2) = 100 MHz, I_{SY} = 3.5 mA

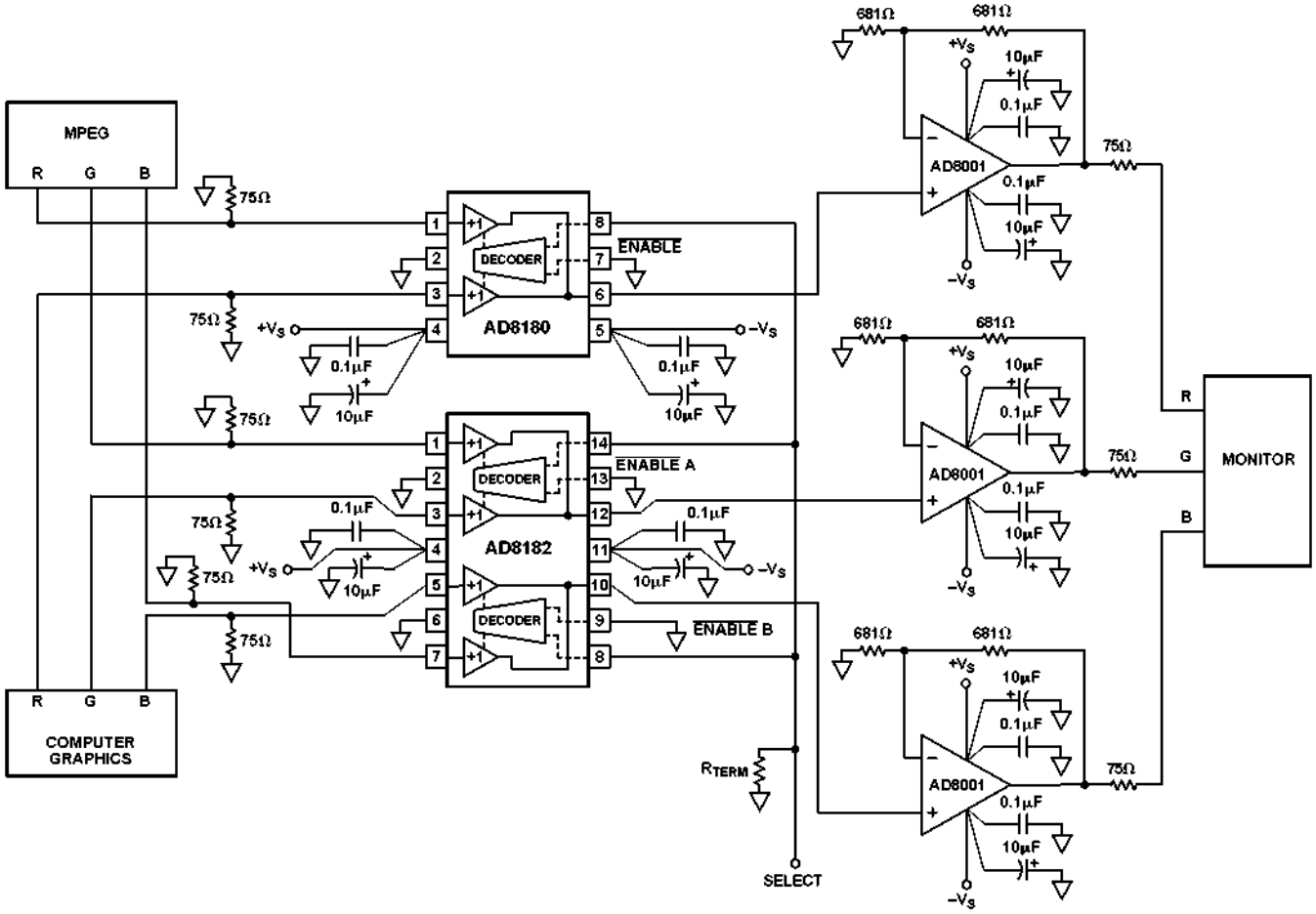


Figure 23. Multiplexing Two Component Video Sources

Picture-in-Picture or Pixel Switching

Many high end display systems require simultaneous display of two video pictures (from two different sources) on one screen. Video conferencing is one such example. In this case the remote site might be displayed as the main picture with a picture of the local site "inset" for monitoring purposes. The circuit in Figure 23 could also be used to implement this "picture-in-picture" application.

Implementing a picture-in-picture algorithm is difficult for several reasons. Both sources are being displayed simultaneously (i.e., during the same frame), both sources are in real time, and both must be synchronized. Figure 24 shows the raster scanning that takes place in all monitors. During every horizontal scan that includes part of the inset, the source must be switched twice (i.e., from main to inset and from inset to main). To avoid screen artifacts, it is critical that switching is clean and fast. The AD8180 and AD8182, in the above application, switch and settle to 0.1% accuracy in 14 ns. We quadratically add this value to the 10 ns settling time of the AD8001, and get an overall settling time of 17.2 ns. This yields a sharp, artifact-free border between the inset and the main video.

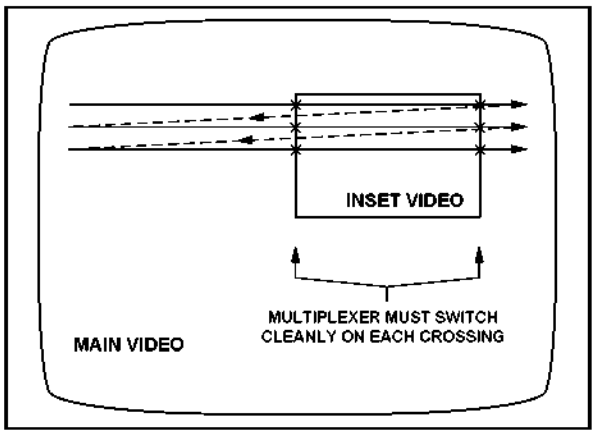
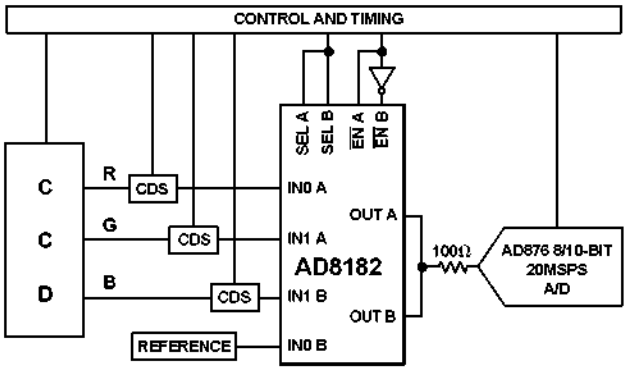


Figure 24. "Picture-in-Picture," Pixel Switching

Color Document Scanner

Figure 25 shows a block diagram of a Color Document Scanner. Charge Coupled Devices (CCDs) find widespread use in scanner applications. A monochrome CCD delivers a serial stream of voltage levels, each level being proportional to the light shining on that cell. In the case of the color image scanner shown, there are three output streams, representing red, green and blue. Interlaced with the stream of voltage levels is a voltage representing the reset level (or black level) of each cell. A Correlated Double Sampler (CDS) subtracts these two voltages from each other in order to eliminate the relatively large offsets which are common with CCDs.



4:1 MUX TRUTH TABLE

SEL A, SEL B	$\overline{ENA}$, $\overline{ENB}$	OUTA, OUTB
0	0	IN0A
0	1	IN0B
1	0	IN1A
1	1	IN1B

Figure 25. Color Document Scanner

The next step in the data acquisition process involves digitizing the three signal streams. Assuming that the analog to digital converter chosen has a fast enough sample rate, multiplexing the three streams into a single ADC is generally more economic than using one ADC per channel. In the example shown, we use the two 2-to-1 multiplexers in the AD8182 to create a 4-to-1 multiplexer. The enable control pins on the multiplexers allow the outputs to be wired directly together.

Because of its high bandwidth, the AD8182 is capable of driving the switched capacitor input stage of the AD876 without additional buffering. In addition to having the required the bandwidth, it is necessary to consider the settling time of the multiplexer. In this case, the ADC has a sample rate of 20 MHz which corresponds to a sampling period of 50 ns. Typically, one phase of the sampling clock is used for conversion (i.e., all levels are held steady) and the other phase is used for switching and settling to the next channel. Assuming a 50% duty cycle, the signal chain must settle within 25 ns. With a settling time to 0.1% of 14 ns, the multiplexer easily satisfies this criterion.

In the example shown, the fourth (spare) channel of the AD8182 is used to measure a reference voltage. This voltage would probably be measured less frequently than the R, G and B signals. Multiplexing a reference voltage offers the advantage that any temperature drift effects caused by the multiplexer will equally impact the reference voltage and the to-be-measured signals. If the fourth channel is unused, it is good design practice to tie this input to ground.

EVALUATION BOARD

Evaluation boards for the AD8180R and AD8182R are available which have been carefully laid out and tested to demonstrate the specified high speed performance of the devices. Figure 26 and Figure 27 show the schematics of the AD8180 and AD8182 evaluation boards respectively. For ordering information, please refer to the Ordering Guide.

Because the footprint of the AD8180 fits directly on to that of the AD8182, one board layout can be used for both devices. In the case of the AD8180, only the top half of the board is populated.

Figure 28 shows the silkscreen of the component side and Figure 30 shows the silkscreen of the solder side. Figures 29 and 31 show the layout of the component side and solder side respectively.

The evaluation board is provided with 49.9 Ω termination resistors on all inputs. This is to allow the performance to be evaluated at very high frequencies where 50 Ω termination is most popular. To use the evaluation board in video applications, the termination resistors should be replaced with 75 Ω resistors.

The multiplexer outputs are loaded with 4.99 kΩ resistors. In order to avoid large gain errors, these load resistors should be greater than or equal to 1 kΩ. For connection to external instruments, oscilloscope scope probe adapters are provided. This allows direct connection of FET probes to the board. For verification of data sheet specifications, use of FET probes with a bandwidth > 1 GHz is recommended because of their low input capacitance. The probe adapters used on the board have the same footprint as SMA, SMB and SMC type connectors allowing easy replacement if necessary.

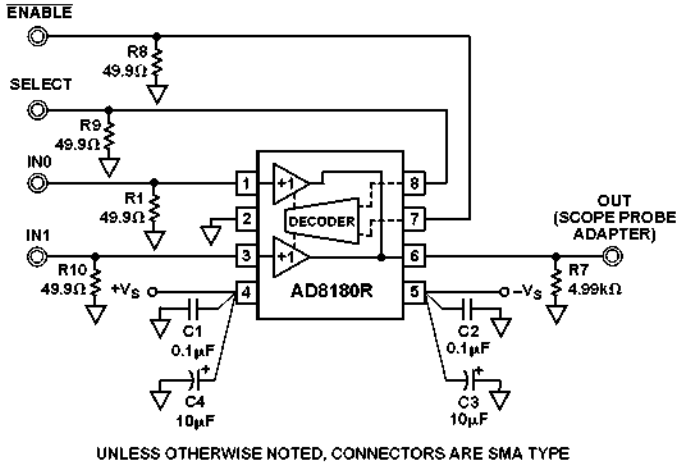


Figure 26. AD8180R Evaluation Board

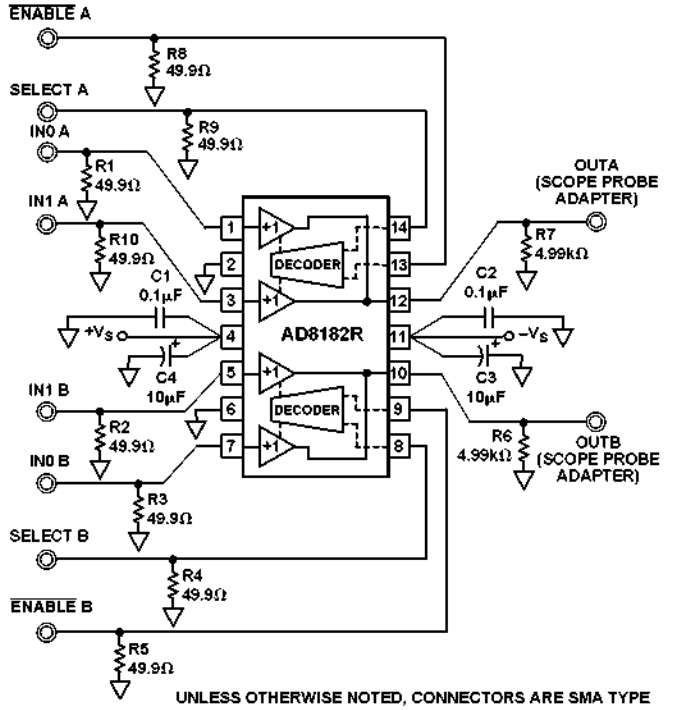


Figure 27. AD8182R Evaluation Board

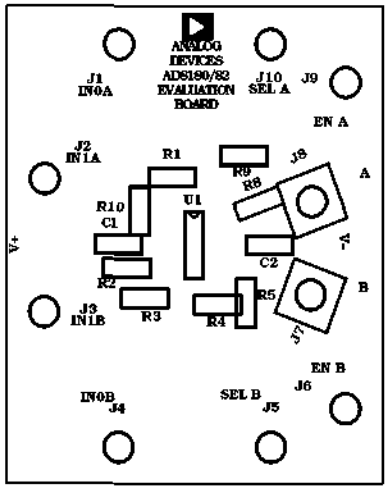


Figure 28. Component Side Silkscreen

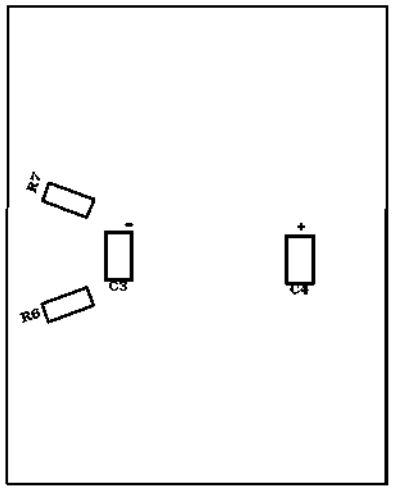


Figure 30. Solder Side Silkscreen

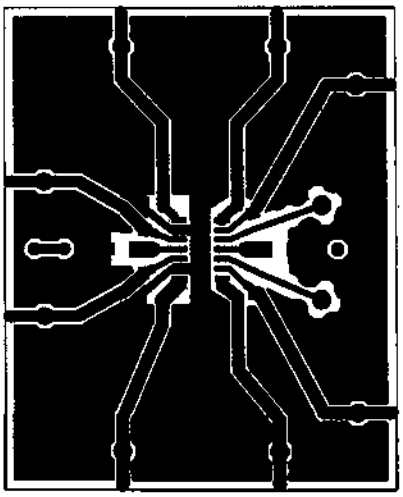


Figure 29. Board Layout (Component Side)

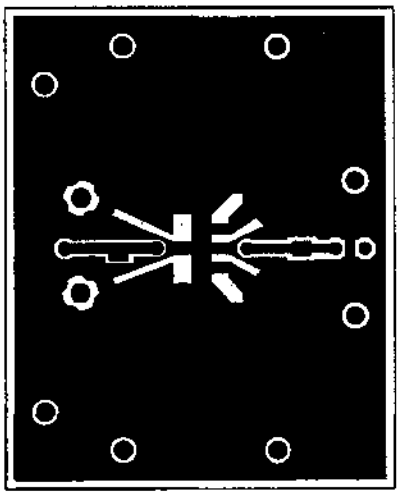


Figure 31. Board Layout (Solder Side)

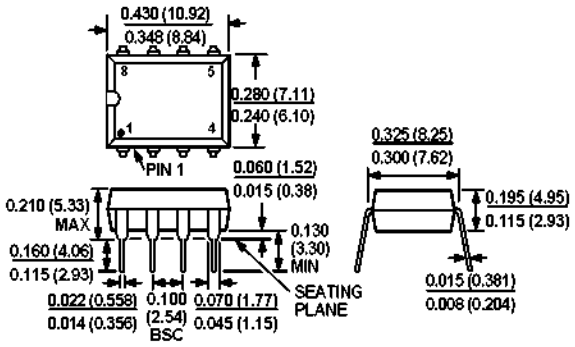
NOTES

1. AD8180R/AD8182R Evaluation Board inputs are configured with 50 Ω impedance striplines. This FR4 board type has the following stripline dimensions: 60-mil width, 12-mil gap between center conductor and outside ground plane "islands," and 62-mil board thickness.
2. Several types of SMA connectors can be mounted on this board: the side-mount type, which can be easily installed at the edges of the board, and the top-mount type, which is placed on top. When using the top-mount SMA connector, it is recommended that the stripline on the outside 1/8" of the board edge be removed with an X-Acto blade as this unused stripline acts as an open stub, which could degrade the small-signal frequency response of the mux.
3. Input termination resistor placement on the evaluation board is critical to reducing crosstalk. Each termination resistor is oriented so that ground return currents flow counterclockwise to a ground plane "island." Although the direction of this ground current flow is arbitrary, it is important that no two input or output termination resistors share a connection to the same ground "island."

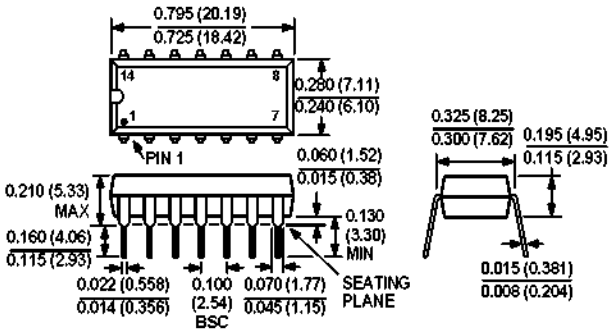
OUTLINE DIMENSIONS

Dimensions shown in inches and (mm).

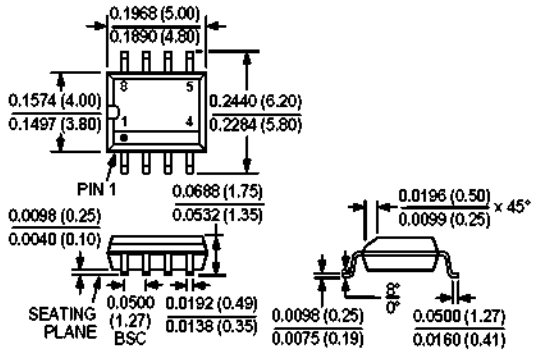
8-Lead Plastic DIP
(N-8)



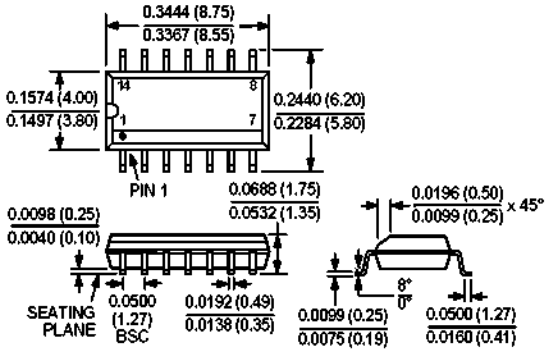
14-Lead Plastic DIP
(N-14)



8-Lead Plastic SOIC
(SO-8)



14-Lead SOIC
(R-14)



C2182a–0–1/00 (rev. B)

PRINTED IN U.S.A.

PIC18FXX2
Data Sheet

High-Performance, Enhanced Flash Microcontrollers with 10-Bit A/D

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

Information contained in this publication regarding device applications and the like is provided only for your convenience and may be superseded by updates. It is your responsibility to ensure that your application meets with your specifications. MICROCHIP MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WRITTEN OR ORAL, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, RELATED TO THE INFORMATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ITS CONDITION, QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR PURPOSE. Microchip disclaims all liability arising from this information and its use. Use of Microchip devices in life support and/or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Microchip from any and all damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. No licenses are conveyed, implicitly or otherwise, under any Microchip intellectual property rights.

Trademarks

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, Accuron, dsPIC, KEELOQ, microID, MPLAB, PIC, PICmicro, PICSTART, PRO MATE, PowerSmart, rfPIC and SmartShunt are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

AmpLab, FilterLab, Migratable Memory, MXDEV, MXLAB, SEEVAL, SmartSensor and The Embedded Control Solutions Company are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Analog-for-the-Digital Age, Application Maestro, CodeGuard, dsPICDEM, dsPICDEM.net, dsPICworks, ECAN, ECONOMONITOR, FanSense, FlexROM, fuzzyLAB, In-Circuit Serial Programming, ICSP, ICEPIC, Linear Active Thermistor, Mindi, MiWi, MPASM, MPLIB, MPLINK, PICkit, PICDEM, PICDEM.net, PICLAB, PICtail, PowerCal, PowerInfo, PowerMate, PowerTool, REAL ICE, rfLAB, rfPICDEM, Select Mode, Smart Serial, SmartTel, Total Endurance, UNI/O, WiperLock and ZENA are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

SQTP is a service mark of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are property of their respective companies.

© 2006, Microchip Technology Incorporated, Printed in the U.S.A., All Rights Reserved.

Printed on recycled paper.

QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CERTIFIED BY DNV
ISO/TS 16949:2002

Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2002 certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona, Gresham, Oregon and Mountain View, California. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PICmicro® 8-bit MCUs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

PIC18FXX2

28/40-pin High Performance, Enhanced FLASH Microcontrollers with 10-Bit A/D

High Performance RISC CPU:

- C compiler optimized architecture/instruction set
  - Source code compatible with the PIC16 and PIC17 instruction sets
- Linear program memory addressing to 32 Kbytes
- Linear data memory addressing to 1.5 Kbytes

Device	On-Chip Program Memory		On-Chip RAM (bytes)	Data EEPROM (bytes)
	FLASH (bytes)	# Single Word Instructions		
PIC18F242	16K	8192	768	256
PIC18F252	32K	16384	1536	256
PIC18F442	16K	8192	768	256
PIC18F452	32K	16384	1536	256

- Up to 10 MIPs operation:
  - DC - 40 MHz osc./clock input
  - 4 MHz - 10 MHz osc./clock input with PLL active
- 16-bit wide instructions, 8-bit wide data path
- Priority levels for interrupts
- 8 x 8 Single Cycle Hardware Multiplier

Peripheral Features:

- High current sink/source 25 mA/25 mA
- Three external interrupt pins
- Timer0 module: 8-bit/16-bit timer/counter with 8-bit programmable prescaler
- Timer1 module: 16-bit timer/counter
- Timer2 module: 8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit period register (time-base for PWM)
- Timer3 module: 16-bit timer/counter
- Secondary oscillator clock option - Timer1/Timer3
- Two Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) modules. CCP pins that can be configured as:
  - Capture input: capture is 16-bit, max. resolution 6.25 ns (TCY/16)
  - Compare is 16-bit, max. resolution 100 ns (TCY)
  - PWM output: PWM resolution is 1- to 10-bit, max. PWM freq. @: 8-bit resolution = 156 kHz
10-bit resolution = 39 kHz
- Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) module, Two modes of operation:
  - 3-wire SPI™ (supports all 4 SPI modes)
  - I^2C™ Master and Slave mode

Peripheral Features (Continued):

- Addressable USART module:
  - Supports RS-485 and RS-232
- Parallel Slave Port (PSP) module

Analog Features:

- Compatible 10-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter module (A/D) with:
  - Fast sampling rate
  - Conversion available during SLEEP
  - Linearity ≤ 1 LSb
- Programmable Low Voltage Detection (PLVD)
  - Supports interrupt on-Low Voltage Detection
- Programmable Brown-out Reset (BOR)

Special Microcontroller Features:

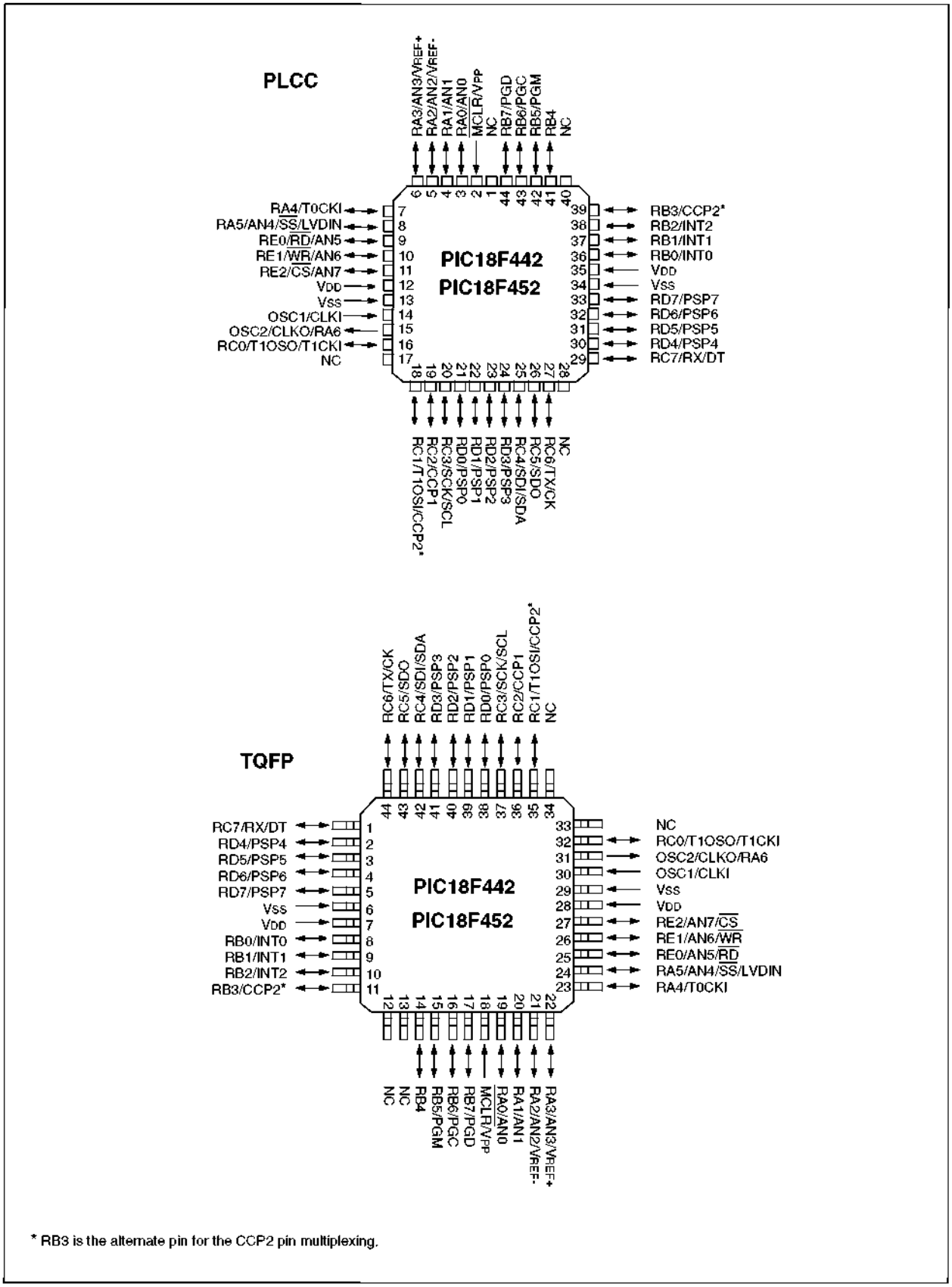
- 100,000 erase/write cycle Enhanced FLASH program memory typical
- 1,000,000 erase/write cycle Data EEPROM memory
- FLASH/Data EEPROM Retention: > 40 years
- Self-reprogrammable under software control
- Power-on Reset (POR), Power-up Timer (PWRT) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Watchdog Timer (WDT) with its own On-Chip RC Oscillator for reliable operation
- Programmable code protection
- Power saving SLEEP mode
- Selectable oscillator options including:
  - 4X Phase Lock Loop (of primary oscillator)
  - Secondary Oscillator (32 kHz) clock input
- Single supply 5V In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) via two pins
- In-Circuit Debug (ICD) via two pins

CMOS Technology:

- Low power, high speed FLASH/EEPROM technology
- Fully static design
- Wide operating voltage range (2.0V to 5.5V)
- Industrial and Extended temperature ranges
- Low power consumption:
  - < 1.6 mA typical @ 5V, 4 MHz
  - 25 µA typical @ 3V, 32 kHz
  - < 0.2 µA typical standby current

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

Pin Diagrams

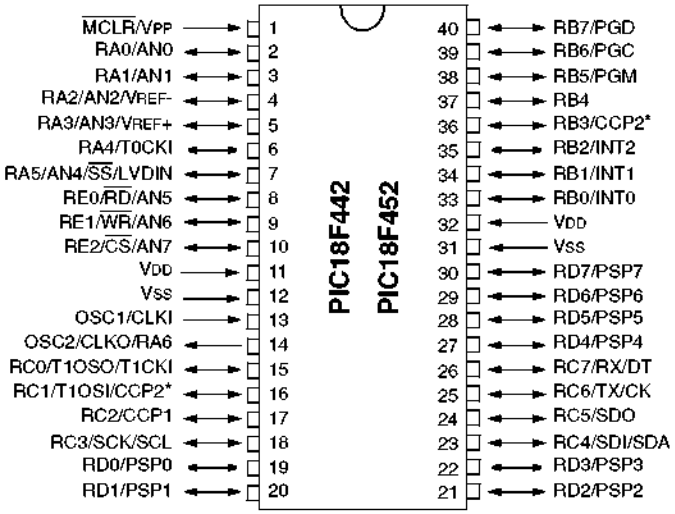


* RB3 is the alternate pin for the CCP2 pin multiplexing.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

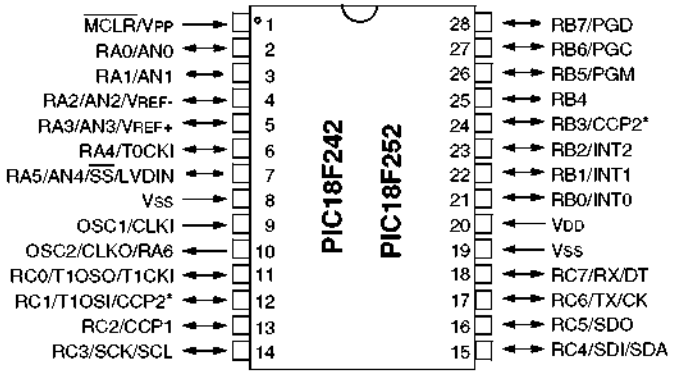
Pin Diagrams (Cont.'d)

DIP



Note: Pin compatible with 40-pin PIC16C7X devices.

DIP, SOIC



* RB3 is the alternate pin for the CCP2 pin multiplexing.

Table of Contents

1.0 Device Overview 7
2.0 Oscillator Configurations 17
3.0 Reset 25
4.0 Memory Organization 35
5.0 FLASH Program Memory 55
6.0 Data EEPROM Memory 65
7.0 8 X 8 Hardware Multiplier 71
8.0 Interrupts 73
9.0 I/O Ports 87
10.0 Timer0 Module 103
11.0 Timer1 Module 107
12.0 Timer2 Module 111
13.0 Timer3 Module 113
14.0 Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) Modules 117
15.0 Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) Module 125
16.0 Addressable Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) 165
17.0 Compatible 10-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter (A/D) Module 181
18.0 Low Voltage Detect 189
19.0 Special Features of the CPU 195
20.0 Instruction Set Summary 211
21.0 Development Support 253
22.0 Electrical Characteristics 259
23.0 DC and AC Characteristics Graphs and Tables 289
24.0 Packaging Information 305
Appendix A: Revision History 313
Appendix B: Device Differences 313
Appendix C: Conversion Considerations 314
Appendix D: Migration from Baseline to Enhanced Devices 314
Appendix E: Migration from Mid-range to Enhanced Devices 315
Appendix F: Migration from High-end to Enhanced Devices 315
Index 317
On-Line Support 327
Reader Response 328
PIC18FXX2 Product Identification System 329

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; http://www.microchip.com
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at **www.microchip.com** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

This document contains device specific information for the following devices:

- PIC18F242
- PIC18F442
- PIC18F252
- PIC18F452

These devices come in 28-pin and 40/44-pin packages. The 28-pin devices do not have a Parallel Slave Port (PSP) implemented and the number of Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converter input channels is reduced to 5. An overview of features is shown in Table 1-1.

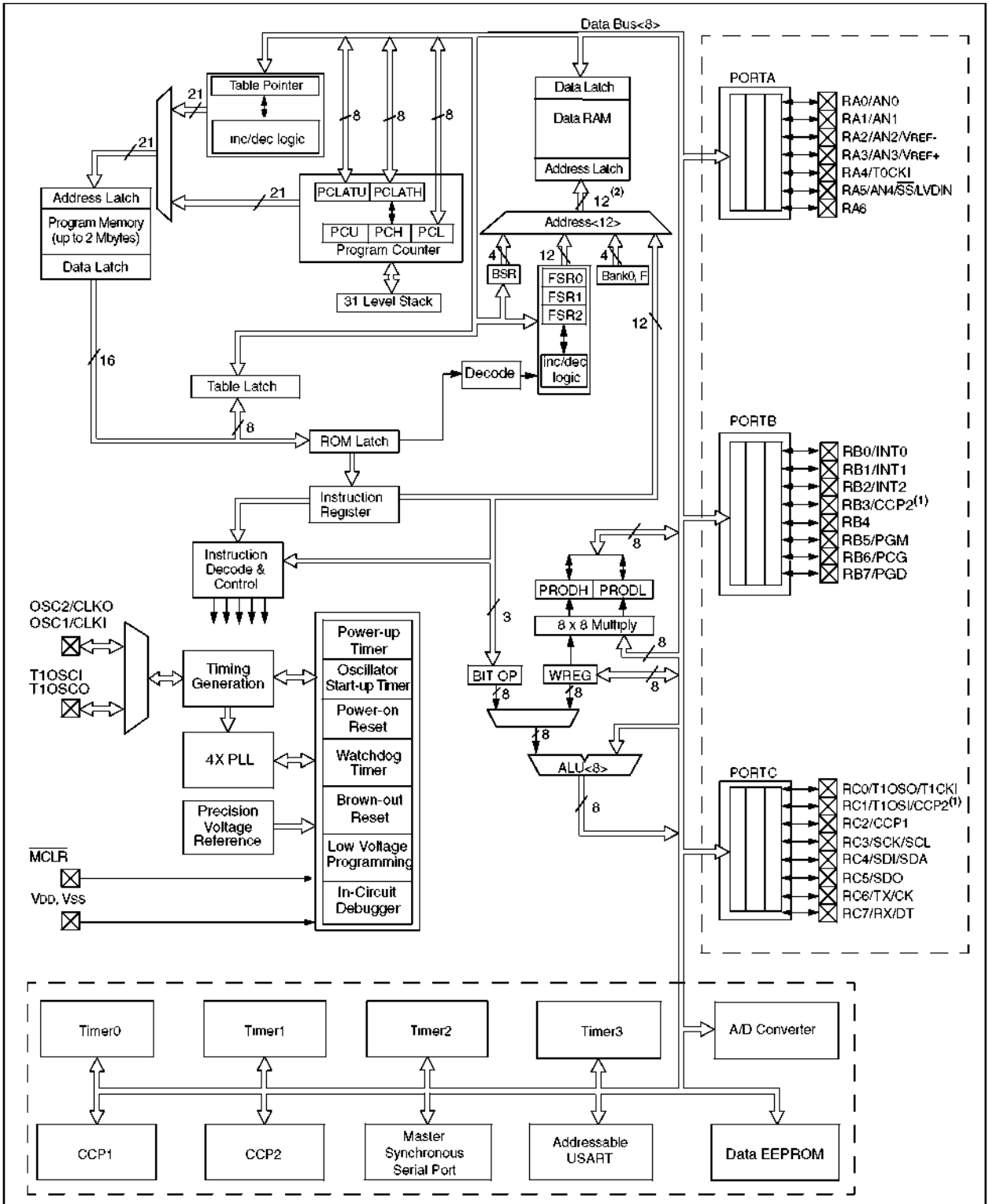
The following two figures are device block diagrams sorted by pin count: 28-pin for Figure 1-1 and 40/44-pin for Figure 1-2. The 28-pin and 40/44-pin pinouts are listed in Table 1-2 and Table 1-3, respectively.

TABLE 1-1: DEVICE FEATURES

Features	PIC18F242	PIC18F252	PIC18F442	PIC18F452
Operating Frequency	DC - 40 MHz	DC - 40 MHz	DC - 40 MHz	DC - 40 MHz
Program Memory (Bytes)	16K	32K	16K	32K
Program Memory (Instructions)	8192	16384	8192	16384
Data Memory (Bytes)	768	1536	768	1536
Data EEPROM Memory (Bytes)	256	256	256	256
Interrupt Sources	17	17	18	18
I/O Ports	Ports A, B, C	Ports A, B, C	Ports A, B, C, D, E	Ports A, B, C, D, E
Timers	4	4	4	4
Capture/Compare/PWM Modules	2	2	2	2
Serial Communications	MSSP, Addressable USART	MSSP, Addressable USART	MSSP, Addressable USART	MSSP, Addressable USART
Parallel Communications	—	—	PSP	PSP
10-bit Analog-to-Digital Module	5 input channels	5 input channels	8 input channels	8 input channels
RESETS (and Delays)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)
Programmable Low Voltage Detect	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Programmable Brown-out Reset	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Instruction Set	75 Instructions	75 Instructions	75 Instructions	75 Instructions
Packages	28-pin DIP 28-pin SOIC	28-pin DIP 28-pin SOIC	40-pin DIP 44-pin PLCC 44-pin TQFP	40-pin DIP 44-pin PLCC 44-pin TQFP

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 1-1: PIC18F2X2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



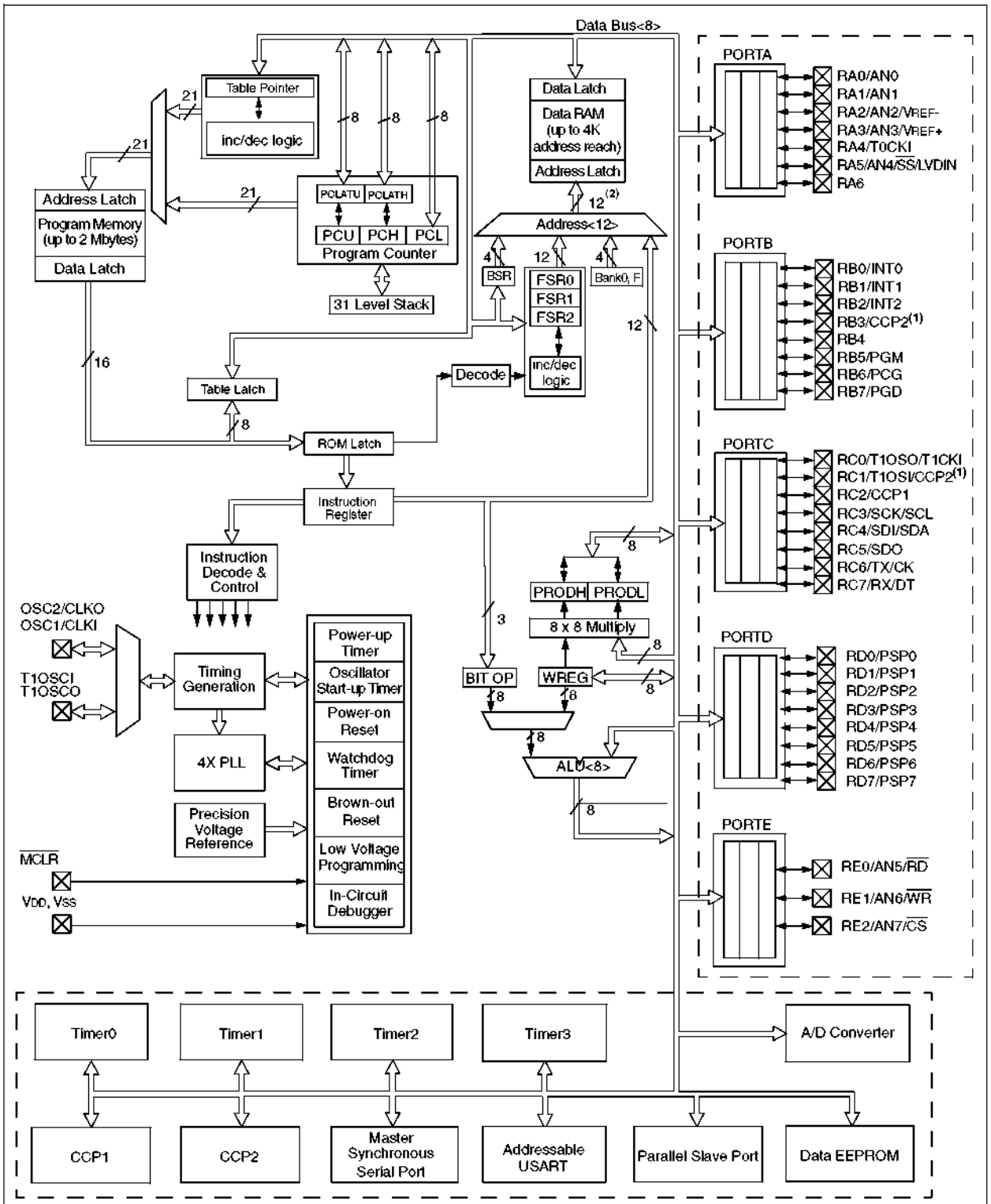
Note 1: Optional multiplexing of CCP2 input/output with RB3 is enabled by selection of configuration bit.

2: The high order bits of the Direct Address for the RAM are from the BSR register (except for the MOVFF instruction).

3: Many of the general purpose I/O pins are multiplexed with one or more peripheral module functions. The multiplexing combinations are device dependent.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 1-2: PIC18F4X2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Optional multiplexing of CCP2 input/output with RB3 is enabled by selection of configuration bit.

2: The high order bits of the Direct Address for the RAM are from the BSR register (except for the `MOVFF` instruction).

3: Many of the general purpose I/O pins are multiplexed with one or more peripheral module functions. The multiplexing combinations are device dependent.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F2X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	SOIC			
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP	1	1			Master Clear (input) or high voltage ICSP programming enable pin.
$\overline{MCLR}$			I	ST	Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active low RESET to the device.
VPP			I	ST	High voltage ICSP programming enable pin.
NC	—	—	—	—	These pins should be left unconnected.
OSC1/CLKI	9	9			Oscillator crystal or external clock input.
OSC1			I	ST	Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input. ST buffer when configured in RC mode, CMOS otherwise.
CLKI			I	CMOS	External clock source input. Always associated with pin function OSC1. (See related OSC1/CLKI, OSC2/CLKO pins.)
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	10	10			Oscillator crystal or clock output.
OSC2			O	—	Oscillator crystal output. Connects to crystal or resonator in Crystal Oscillator mode.
CLKO			O	—	In RC mode, OSC2 pin outputs CLKO which has 1/4 the frequency of OSC1, and denotes the instruction cycle rate.
RA6			I/O	TTL	General Purpose I/O pin.
					PORTA is a bi-directional I/O port.
RA0/AN0	2	2			
RA0			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN0			I	Analog	Analog input 0.
RA1/AN1	3	3			
RA1			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN1			I	Analog	Analog input 1.
RA2/AN2/VREF-	4	4			
RA2			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN2			I	Analog	Analog input 2.
VREF-			I	Analog	A/D Reference Voltage (Low) input.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	5	5			
RA3			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN3			I	Analog	Analog input 3.
VREF+			I	Analog	A/D Reference Voltage (High) input.
RA4/T0CKI	6	6			
RA4			I/O	ST/OD	Digital I/O. Open drain when configured as output.
T0CKI			I	ST	Timer0 external clock input.
RA5/AN4/$\overline{SS}$/LVDIN	7	7			
RA5			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN4			I	Analog	Analog input 4.
$\overline{SS}$			I	ST	SPI Slave Select input.
LVDIN			I	Analog	Low Voltage Detect Input.
RA6					See the OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F2X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	SOIC			
					PORTB is a bi-directional I/O port. PORTB can be software programmed for internal weak pull-ups on all inputs.
RB0/INT0	21	21			
RB0			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT0			I	ST	External Interrupt 0.
RB1/INT1	22	22			
RB1			I/O	TTL	
INT1			I	ST	External Interrupt 1.
RB2/INT2	23	23			
RB2			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT2			I	ST	External Interrupt 2.
RB3/CCP2	24	24			
RB3			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
CCP2			I/O	ST	Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RB4	25	25	I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
RB5/PGM	26	26			
RB5			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGM			I/O	ST	Low Voltage ICSP programming enable pin.
RB6/PGC	27	27			
RB6			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGC			I/O	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming clock pin.
RB7/PGD	28	28			
RB7			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGD			I/O	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming data pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F2X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	SOIC			
					PORTC is a bi-directional I/O port.
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI	11	11			
RC0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
T1OSO			O	—	Timer1 oscillator output.
T1CKI			I	ST	Timer1/Timer3 external clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	12	12			
RC1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
T1OSI			I	CMOS	Timer1 oscillator input.
CCP2			I/O	ST	Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RC2/CCP1	13	13			
RC2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP1			I/O	ST	Capture1 input/Compare1 output/PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	14	14			
RC3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SCK			I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for SPI mode.
SCL			I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for I^2C mode
RC4/SDI/SDA	15	15			
RC4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SDI			I	ST	SPI Data In.
SDA			I/O	ST	I^2C Data I/O.
RC5/SDO	16	16			
RC5			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SDO			O	—	SPI Data Out.
RC6/TX/CK	17	17			
RC6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
TX			O	—	USART Asynchronous Transmit.
CK			I/O	ST	USART Synchronous Clock (see related RX/DT).
RC7/RX/DT	18	18			
RC7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
RX			I	ST	USART Asynchronous Receive.
DT			I/O	ST	USART Synchronous Data (see related TX/CK).
VSS	8, 19	8, 19	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins.
VDD	20	20	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-3: PIC18F4X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	PLCC	TQFP			
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP	1	2	18			Master Clear (input) or high voltage ICSP programming enable pin.
$\overline{MCLR}$				I	ST	Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active low RESET to the device.
VPP				I	ST	High voltage ICSP programming enable pin.
NC	—			—	—	These pins should be left unconnected.
OSC1/CLKI	13	14	30			Oscillator crystal or external clock input.
OSC1				I	ST	Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input. ST buffer when configured in RC mode, CMOS otherwise.
CLKI				I	CMOS	External clock source input. Always associated with pin function OSC1. (See related OSC1/CLKI, OSC2/CLKO pins.)
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	14	15	31			Oscillator crystal or clock output.
OSC2				O	—	Oscillator crystal output. Connects to crystal or resonator in Crystal Oscillator mode.
CLKO				O	—	In RC mode, OSC2 pin outputs CLKO, which has 1/4 the frequency of OSC1 and denotes the instruction cycle rate.
RA6				I/O	TTL	General Purpose I/O pin.
						PORTA is a bi-directional I/O port.
RA0/AN0	2	3	19			
RA0				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN0				I	Analog	Analog input 0.
RA1/AN1	3	4	20			
RA1				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN1				I	Analog	Analog input 1.
RA2/AN2/VREF-	4	5	21			
RA2				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN2				I	Analog	Analog input 2.
VREF-				I	Analog	A/D Reference Voltage (Low) input.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	5	6	22			
RA3				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN3				I	Analog	Analog input 3.
VREF+				I	Analog	A/D Reference Voltage (High) input.
RA4/T0CKI	6	7	23			
RA4				I/O	ST/OD	Digital I/O. Open drain when configured as output.
T0CKI				I	ST	Timer0 external clock input.
RA5/AN4/$\overline{SS}$/LVDIN	7	8	24			
RA5				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN4				I	Analog	Analog input 4.
$\overline{SS}$				I	ST	SPI Slave Select input.
LVDIN				I	Analog	Low Voltage Detect Input.
RA6						(See the OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pin.)

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

TABLE 1-3: PIC18F4X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	PLCC	TQFP			
						PORTB is a bi-directional I/O port. PORTB can be software programmed for internal weak pull-ups on all inputs.
RB0/INT0	33	36	8			
RB0				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT0				I	ST	External Interrupt 0.
RB1/INT1	34	37	9			
RB1				I/O	TTL	
INT1				I	ST	External Interrupt 1.
RB2/INT2	35	38	10			
RB2				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT2				I	ST	External Interrupt 2.
RB3/CCP2	36	39	11			
RB3				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
CCP2				I/O	ST	Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RB4	37	41	14	I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
RB5/PGM	38	42	15			
RB5				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGM				I/O	ST	Low Voltage ICSP programming enable pin.
RB6/PGC	39	43	16			
RB6				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGC				I/O	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming clock pin.
RB7/PGD	40	44	17			
RB7				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O. Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGD				I/O	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming data pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-3: PIC18F4X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	PLCC	TQFP			
						PORTC is a bi-directional I/O port.
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI	15	16	32			
RC0				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
T1OSO				O	—	Timer1 oscillator output.
T1CKI				I	ST	Timer1/Timer3 external clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	16	18	35			
RC1				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
T1OSI				I	CMOS	Timer1 oscillator input.
CCP2				I/O	ST	Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RC2/CCP1	17	19	36			
RC2				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP1				I/O	ST	Capture1 input/Compare1 output/PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	18	20	37			
RC3				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SCK				I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for SPI mode.
SCL				I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for I^2C mode.
RC4/SDI/SDA	23	25	42			
RC4				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SDI				I	ST	SPI Data In.
SDA				I/O	ST	I^2C Data I/O.
RC5/SDO	24	26	43			
RC5				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SDO				O	—	SPI Data Out.
RC6/TX/CK	25	27	44			
RC6				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
TX				O	—	USART Asynchronous Transmit.
CK				I/O	ST	USART Synchronous Clock (see related RX/DT).
RC7/RX/DT	26	29	1			
RC7				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
RX				I	ST	USART Asynchronous Receive.
DT				I/O	ST	USART Synchronous Data (see related TX/CK).

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

TABLE 1-3: PIC18F4X2 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	DIP	PLCC	TQFP			
						PORTD is a bi-directional I/O port, or a Parallel Slave Port (PSP) for interfacing to a microprocessor port. These pins have TTL input buffers when PSP module is enabled.
RD0/PSP0	19	21	38	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD1/PSP1	20	22	39	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD2/PSP2	21	23	40	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD3/PSP3	22	24	41	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD4/PSP4	27	30	2	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD5/PSP5	28	31	3	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD6/PSP6	29	32	4	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
RD7/PSP7	30	33	5	I/O	ST TTL	Digital I/O. Parallel Slave Port Data.
						PORTE is a bi-directional I/O port.
RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5 RE0 $\overline{RD}$ AN5	8	9	25	I/O ST TTL Analog		 Digital I/O. Read control for parallel slave port (see also $\overline{WR}$ and $\overline{CS}$ pins). Analog input 5.
RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6 RE1 $\overline{WR}$ AN6	9	10	26	I/O ST TTL Analog		 Digital I/O. Write control for parallel slave port (see $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{RD}$ pins). Analog input 6.
RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7 RE2 $\overline{CS}$ AN7	10	11	27	I/O ST TTL Analog		 Digital I/O. Chip Select control for parallel slave port (see related $\overline{RD}$ and $\overline{WR}$). Analog input 7.
VSS	12, 31	13, 34	6, 29	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins.
VDD	11, 32	12, 35	7, 28	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.0 OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATIONS

2.1 Oscillator Types

The PIC18FXX2 can be operated in eight different Oscillator modes. The user can program three configuration bits (FOSC2, FOSC1, and FOSC0) to select one of these eight modes:

1. LP — Low Power Crystal
2. XT — Crystal/Resonator
3. HS — High Speed Crystal/Resonator
4. HS + PLL — High Speed Crystal/Resonator with PLL enabled
5. RC — External Resistor/Capacitor
6. RCIO — External Resistor/Capacitor with I/O pin enabled
7. EC — External Clock
8. ECIO — External Clock with I/O pin enabled

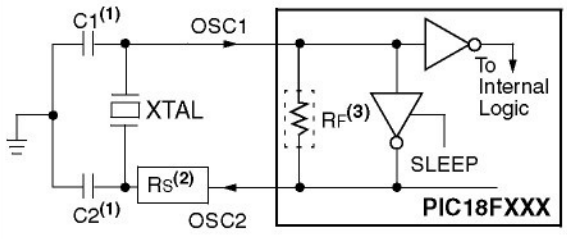
2.2 Crystal Oscillator/Ceramic Resonators

In XT, LP, HS or HS+PLL Oscillator modes, a crystal or ceramic resonator is connected to the OSC1 and OSC2 pins to establish oscillation. Figure 2-1 shows the pin connections.

The PIC18FXX2 oscillator design requires the use of a parallel cut crystal.

Note: Use of a series cut crystal may give a frequency out of the crystal manufacturers specifications.

FIGURE 2-1: CRYSTAL/CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (HS, XT OR LP CONFIGURATION)



Note 1: See Table 2-1 and Table 2-2 for recommended values of C1 and C2.

2: A series resistor (RS) may be required for AT strip cut crystals.

3: RF varies with the Oscillator mode chosen.

TABLE 2-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CERAMIC RESONATORS

Ranges Tested:			
Mode	**Freq**	**C1**	**C2**
XT	455 kHz 2.0 MHz 4.0 MHz	68 - 100 pF 15 - 68 pF 15 - 68 pF	68 - 100 pF 15 - 68 pF 15 - 68 pF
HS	8.0 MHz 16.0 MHz	10 - 68 pF 10 - 22 pF	10 - 68 pF 10 - 22 pF
These values are for design guidance only. See notes following this table.			
Resonators Used:			
455 kHz	Panasonic EFO-A455K04B	± 0.3%	
2.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA2.00MG	± 0.5%	
4.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA4.00MG	± 0.5%	
8.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA8.00MT	± 0.5%	
16.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA16.00MX	± 0.5%	
All resonators used did not have built-in capacitors.			

Note 1: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

2: When operating below 3V VDD, or when using certain ceramic resonators at any voltage, it may be necessary to use high-gain HS mode, try a lower frequency resonator, or switch to a crystal oscillator.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components, or verify oscillator performance.

TABLE 2-2: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

Ranges Tested:			
Mode	**Freq**	**C1**	**C2**
LP	32.0 kHz	33 pF	33 pF
	200 kHz	15 pF	15 pF
XT	200 kHz	22-68 pF	22-68 pF
	1.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	4.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
HS	4.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	8.0 MHz	15-33 pF	15-33 pF
	20.0 MHz	15-33 pF	15-33 pF
	25.0 MHz	15-33 pF	15-33 pF
These values are for design guidance only. See notes following this table.			
Crystals Used			
32.0 kHz	Epson C-001R32.768K-A	± 20 PPM	
200 kHz	STD XTL 200.000KHz	± 20 PPM	
1.0 MHz	ECS ECS-10-13-1	± 50 PPM	
4.0 MHz	ECS ECS-40-20-1	± 50 PPM	
8.0 MHz	Epson CA-301 8.000M-C	± 30 PPM	
20.0 MHz	Epson CA-301 20.000M-C	± 30 PPM	

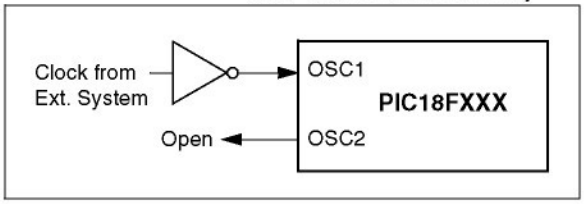
Note 1: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

2: Rs may be required in HS mode, as well as XT mode, to avoid overdriving crystals with low drive level specification.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components., or verify oscillator performance.

An external clock source may also be connected to the OSC1 pin in the HS, XT and LP modes, as shown in Figure 2-2.

FIGURE 2-2: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (HS, XT OR LP OSC CONFIGURATION)



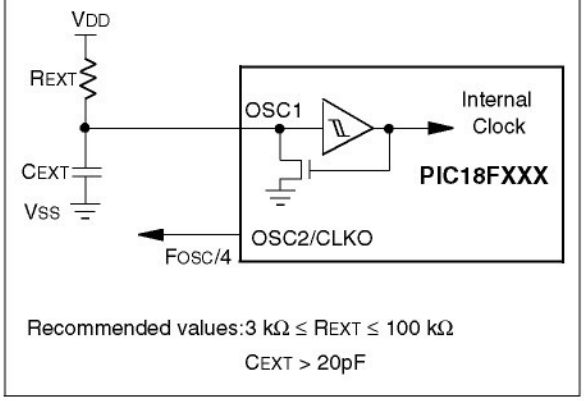
2.3 RC Oscillator

For timing-insensitive applications, the "RC" and "RCIO" device options offer additional cost savings. The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor (REXT) and capacitor (CEXT) values and the operating temperature. In addition to this, the oscillator frequency will vary from unit to unit due to normal process parameter variation. Furthermore, the difference in lead frame capacitance between package types will also affect the oscillation frequency, especially for low CEXT values. The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external R and C components used. Figure 2-3 shows how the R/C combination is connected.

In the RC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic.

Note: If the oscillator frequency divided by 4 signal is not required in the application, it is recommended to use RCIO mode to save current.

FIGURE 2-3: RC OSCILLATOR MODE



The RCIO Oscillator mode functions like the RC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6).

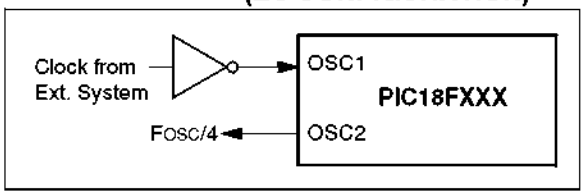
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.4 External Clock Input

The EC and ECIO Oscillator modes require an external clock source to be connected to the OSC1 pin. The feedback device between OSC1 and OSC2 is turned off in these modes to save current. There is no oscillator start-up time required after a Power-on Reset or after a recovery from SLEEP mode.

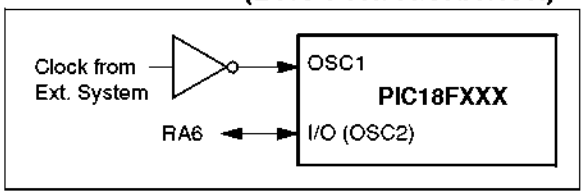
In the EC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic. Figure 2-4 shows the pin connections for the EC Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (EC CONFIGURATION)



The ECIO Oscillator mode functions like the EC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6). Figure 2-5 shows the pin connections for the ECIO Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-5: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (ECIO CONFIGURATION)



2.5 HS/PLL

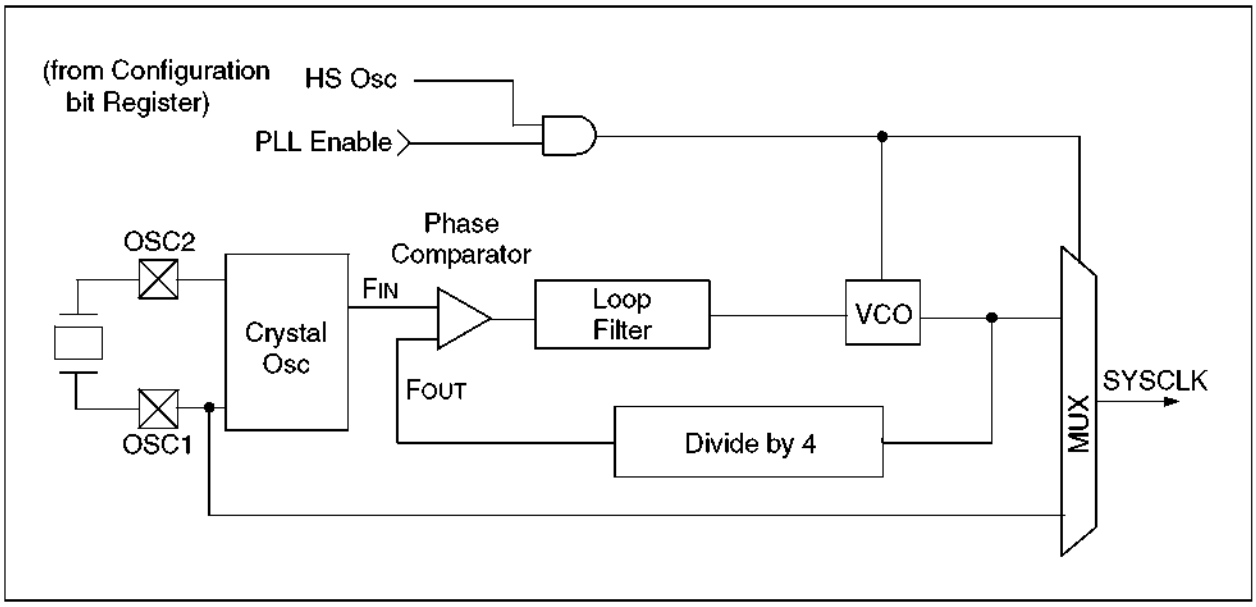
A Phase Locked Loop circuit is provided as a programmable option for users that want to multiply the frequency of the incoming crystal oscillator signal by 4. For an input clock frequency of 10 MHz, the internal clock frequency will be multiplied to 40 MHz. This is useful for customers who are concerned with EMI due to high frequency crystals.

The PLL can only be enabled when the oscillator configuration bits are programmed for HS mode. If they are programmed for any other mode, the PLL is not enabled and the system clock will come directly from OSC1.

The PLL is one of the modes of the FOSC<2:0> configuration bits. The Oscillator mode is specified during device programming.

A PLL lock timer is used to ensure that the PLL has locked before device execution starts. The PLL lock timer has a time-out that is called TPLL.

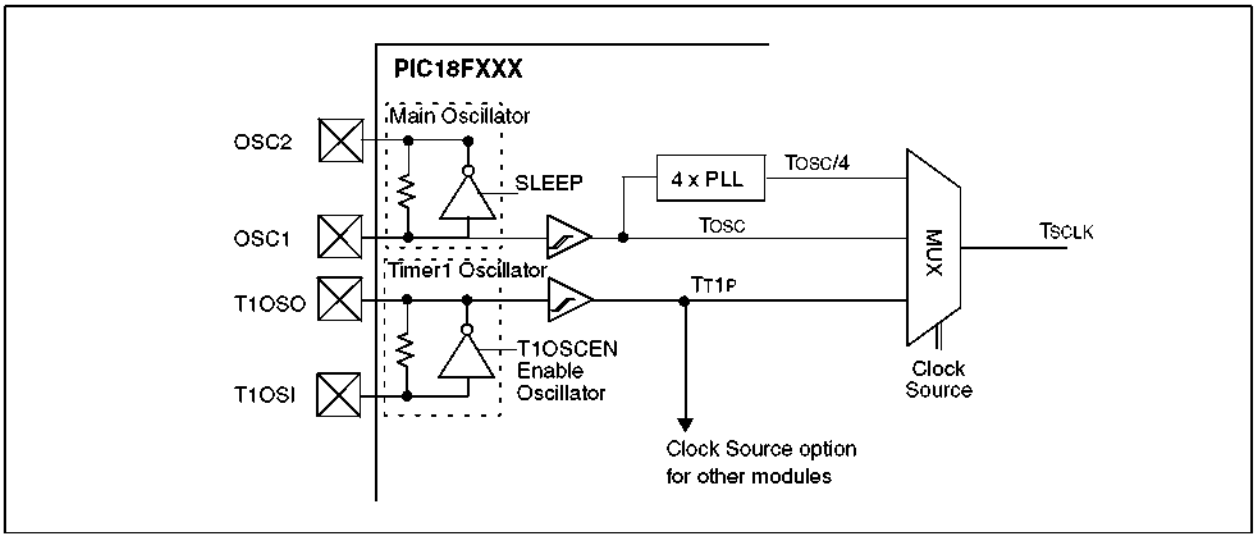
FIGURE 2-6: PLL BLOCK DIAGRAM



2.6 Oscillator Switching Feature

The PIC18FXX2 devices include a feature that allows the system clock source to be switched from the main oscillator to an alternate low frequency clock source. For the PIC18FXX2 devices, this alternate clock source is the Timer1 oscillator. If a low frequency crystal (32 kHz, for example) has been attached to the Timer1 oscillator pins and the Timer1 oscillator has been enabled, the device can switch to a Low Power Execution mode. Figure 2-7 shows a block diagram of the system clock sources. The clock switching feature is enabled by programming the Oscillator Switching Enable (OSCSEN) bit in Configuration Register1H to a '0'. Clock switching is disabled in an erased device. See Section 11.0 for further details of the Timer1 oscillator. See Section 19.0 for Configuration Register details.

FIGURE 2-7: DEVICE CLOCK SOURCES



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.6.1 SYSTEM CLOCK SWITCH BIT

The system clock source switching is performed under software control. The system clock switch bit, SCS (OSCCON<0>) controls the clock switching. When the SCS bit is '0', the system clock source comes from the main oscillator that is selected by the FOSC configuration bits in Configuration Register1H. When the SCS bit is set, the system clock source will come from the Timer1 oscillator. The SCS bit is cleared on all forms of RESET.

Note: The Timer1 oscillator must be enabled and operating to switch the system clock source. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN bit in the Timer1 control register (T1CON). If the Timer1 oscillator is not enabled, then any write to the SCS bit will be ignored (SCS bit forced cleared) and the main oscillator will continue to be the system clock source.

REGISTER 2-1: OSCCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCS
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **SCS:** System Clock Switch bit

When $\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$ configuration bit = '0' and T1OSCEN bit is set:
1 = Switch to Timer1 oscillator/clock pin
0 = Use primary oscillator/clock input pin

When $\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$ and T1OSCEN are in other states:
bit is forced clear

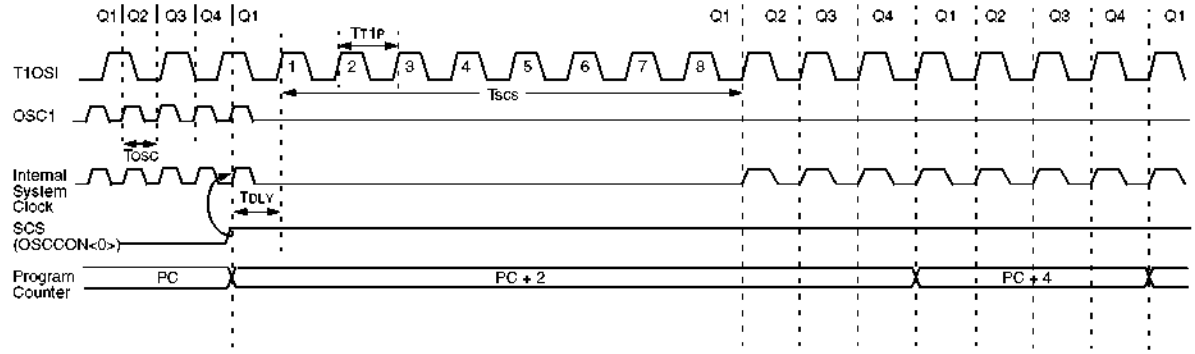
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.6.2 OSCILLATOR TRANSITIONS

The PIC18FXX2 devices contain circuitry to prevent "glitches" when switching between oscillator sources. Essentially, the circuitry waits for eight rising edges of the clock source that the processor is switching to. This ensures that the new clock source is stable and that its pulse width will not be less than the shortest pulse width of the two clock sources.

A timing diagram indicating the transition from the main oscillator to the Timer1 oscillator is shown in Figure 2-8. The Timer1 oscillator is assumed to be running all the time. After the SCS bit is set, the processor is frozen at the next occurring Q1 cycle. After eight synchronization cycles are counted from the Timer1 oscillator, operation resumes. No additional delays are required after the synchronization cycles.

FIGURE 2-8: TIMING DIAGRAM FOR TRANSITION FROM OSC1 TO TIMER1 OSCILLATOR

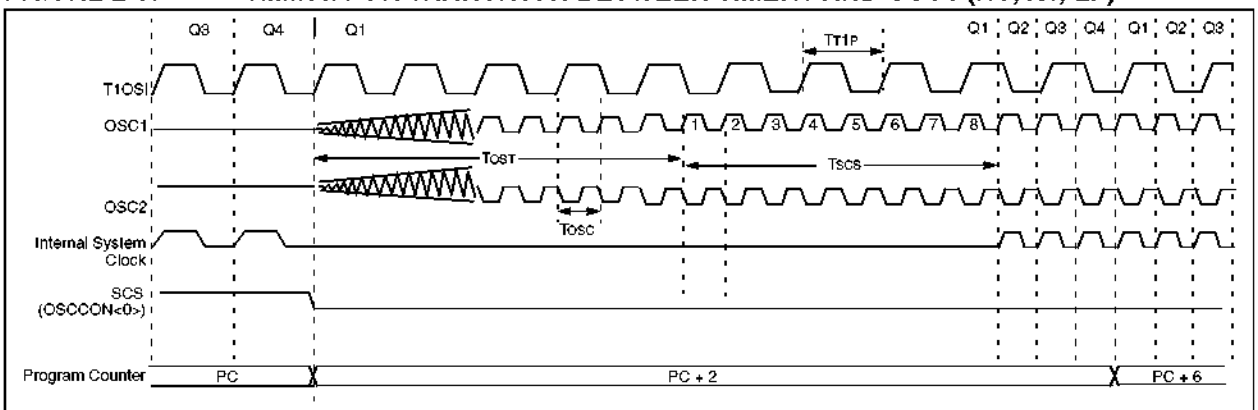


Note 1: Delay on internal system clock is eight oscillator cycles for synchronization.

The sequence of events that takes place when switching from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator will depend on the mode of the main oscillator. In addition to eight clock cycles of the main oscillator, additional delays may take place.

If the main oscillator is configured for an external crystal (HS, XT, LP), then the transition will take place after an oscillator start-up time (TOST) has occurred. A timing diagram, indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for HS, XT and LP modes, is shown in Figure 2-9.

FIGURE 2-9: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (HS, XT, LP)

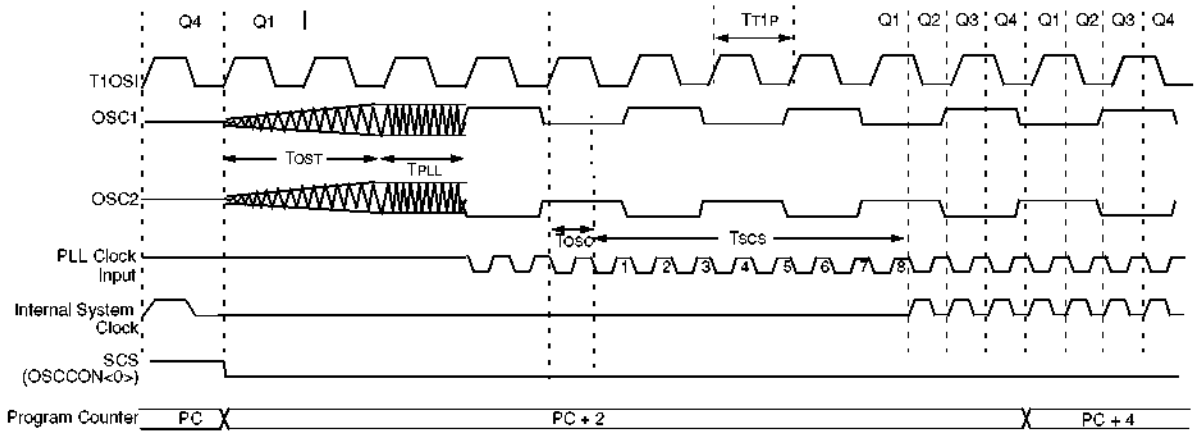


Note 1: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale).

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

If the main oscillator is configured for HS-PLL mode, an oscillator start-up time (TOST) plus an additional PLL time-out (TPLL) will occur. The PLL time-out is typically 2 ms and allows the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. A timing diagram indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for HS-PLL mode is shown in Figure 2-10.

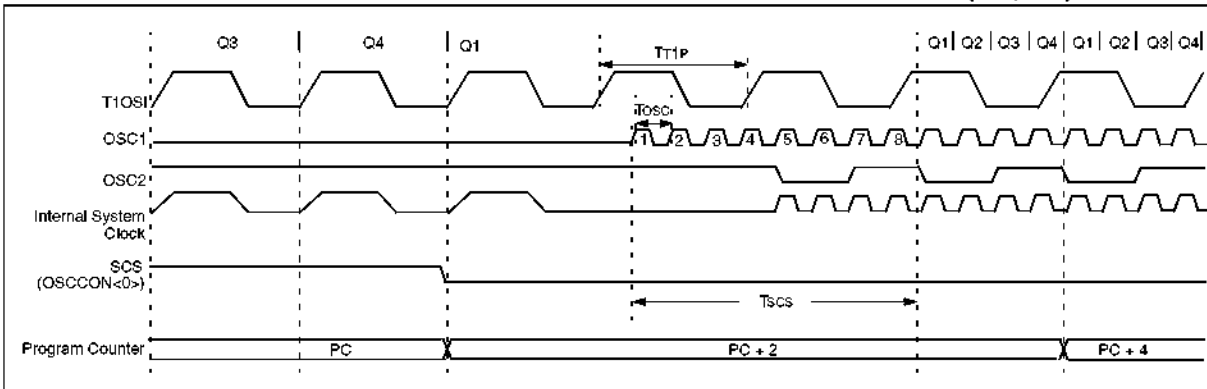
FIGURE 2-10: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (HS WITH PLL)



Note 1: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale).

If the main oscillator is configured in the RC, RCIO, EC or ECIO modes, there is no oscillator start-up time-out. Operation will resume after eight cycles of the main oscillator have been counted. A timing diagram, indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for RC, RCIO, EC and ECIO modes, is shown in Figure 2-11.

FIGURE 2-11: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (RC, EC)



Note 1: RC Oscillator mode assumed.

2.7 Effects of SLEEP Mode on the On-Chip Oscillator

When the device executes a SLEEP instruction, the on-chip clocks and oscillator are turned off and the device is held at the beginning of an instruction cycle (Q1 state). With the oscillator off, the OSC1 and OSC2 signals will stop oscillating. Since all the transistor switching currents have been removed, SLEEP mode achieves the lowest current consumption of the device (only leakage currents). Enabling any on-chip feature that will operate during SLEEP will increase the current consumed during SLEEP. The user can wake from SLEEP through external RESET, Watchdog Timer Reset, or through an interrupt.

TABLE 2-3: OSC1 AND OSC2 PIN STATES IN SLEEP MODE

OSC Mode	OSC1 Pin	OSC2 Pin
RC	Floating, external resistor should pull high	At logic low
RCIO	Floating, external resistor should pull high	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
ECIO	Floating	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
EC	Floating	At logic low
LP, XT, and HS	Feedback inverter disabled, at quiescent voltage level	Feedback inverter disabled, at quiescent voltage level

Note: See Table 3-1, in the **"Reset"** section, for time-outs due to SLEEP and $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

2.8 Power-up Delays

Power up delays are controlled by two timers, so that no external RESET circuitry is required for most applications. The delays ensure that the device is kept in RESET, until the device power supply and clock are stable. For additional information on RESET operation, see Section 3.0.

The first timer is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which optionally provides a fixed delay of 72 ms (nominal) on power-up only (POR and BOR). The second timer is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in RESET until the crystal oscillator is stable.

With the PLL enabled (HS/PLL Oscillator mode), the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is different from other Oscillator modes. The time-out sequence is as follows: First, the PWRT time-out is invoked after a POR time delay has expired. Then, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is invoked. However, this is still not a sufficient amount of time to allow the PLL to lock at high frequencies. The PWRT timer is used to provide an additional fixed 2 ms (nominal) time-out to allow the PLL ample time to lock to the incoming clock frequency.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

3.0 RESET

The PIC18FXXX differentiates between various kinds of RESET:

a) Power-on Reset (POR)
b) $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during normal operation
c) $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during SLEEP
d) Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset (during normal operation)
e) Programmable Brown-out Reset (BOR)
f) RESET Instruction
g) Stack Full Reset
h) Stack Underflow Reset

Most registers are unaffected by a RESET. Their status is unknown on POR and unchanged by all other RESETS. The other registers are forced to a "RESET state" on Power-on Reset, $\overline{MCLR}$, WDT Reset, Brown-out Reset, $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during SLEEP and by the RESET instruction.

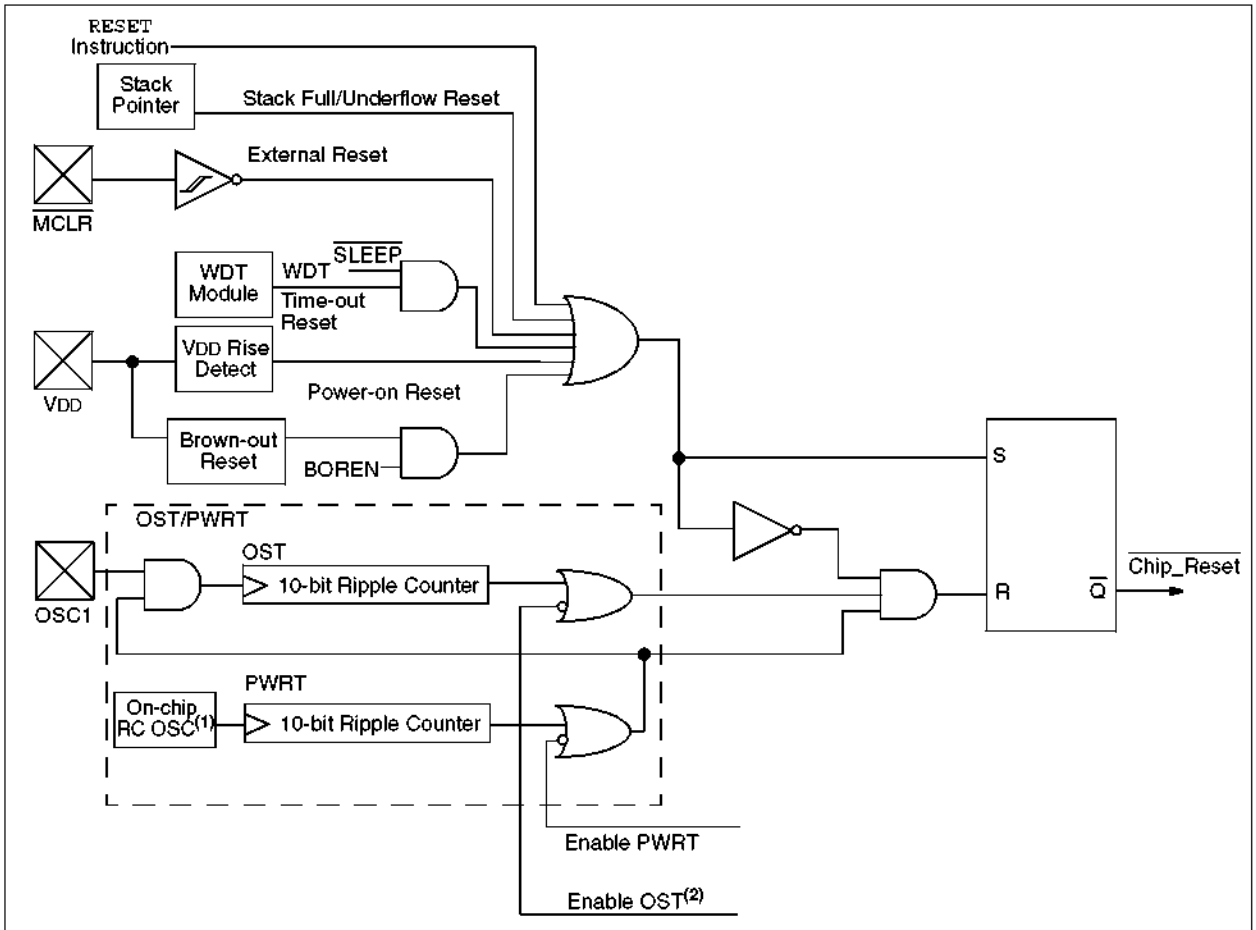
Most registers are not affected by a WDT wake-up, since this is viewed as the resumption of normal operation. Status bits from the RCON register, $\overline{RI}$, $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$, $\overline{POR}$ and $\overline{BOR}$, are set or cleared differently in different RESET situations, as indicated in Table 3-2. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the RESET. See Table 3-3 for a full description of the RESET states of all registers.

A simplified block diagram of the On-Chip Reset Circuit is shown in Figure 3-1.

The Enhanced MCU devices have a $\overline{MCLR}$ noise filter in the $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses.

The $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is not driven low by any internal RESETS, including the WDT.

FIGURE 3-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



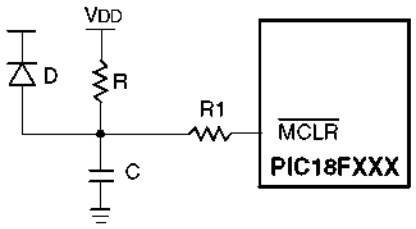
Note 1: This is a separate oscillator from the RC oscillator of the CLKI pin.
2: See Table 3-1 for time-out situations.

3.1 Power-On Reset (POR)

A Power-on Reset pulse is generated on-chip when VDD rise is detected. To take advantage of the POR circuitry, just tie the MCLR pin directly (or through a resistor) to VDD. This will eliminate external RC components usually needed to create a Power-on Reset delay. A minimum rise rate for VDD is specified (parameter D004). For a slow rise time, see Figure 3-2.

When the device starts normal operation (i.e., exits the RESET condition), device operating parameters (voltage, frequency, temperature, etc.) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in RESET until the operating conditions are met.

FIGURE 3-2: EXTERNAL POWER-ON RESET CIRCUIT (FOR SLOW VDD POWER-UP)



Note 1: External Power-on Reset circuit is required only if the VDD power-up slope is too slow. The diode D helps discharge the capacitor quickly when VDD powers down.

2: R < 40 kΩ is recommended to make sure that the voltage drop across R does not violate the device's electrical specification.

3: R1 = 100Ω to 1 kΩ will limit any current flowing into MCLR from external capacitor C, in the event of MCLR/VPP pin breakdown due to Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) or Electrical Overstress (EOS).

3.2 Power-up Timer (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer provides a fixed nominal time-out (parameter 33) only on power-up from the POR. The Power-up Timer operates on an internal RC oscillator. The chip is kept in RESET as long as the PWRT is active. The PWRT's time delay allows VDD to rise to an acceptable level. A configuration bit is provided to enable/disable the PWRT.

The power-up time delay will vary from chip-to-chip due to VDD, temperature and process variation. See DC parameter D033 for details.

3.3 Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) provides a 1024 oscillator cycle (from OSC1 input) delay after the PWRT delay is over (parameter 32). This ensures that the crystal oscillator or resonator has started and stabilized.

The OST time-out is invoked only for XT, LP and HS modes and only on Power-on Reset or wake-up from SLEEP.

3.4 PLL Lock Time-out

With the PLL enabled, the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is different from other Oscillator modes. A portion of the Power-up Timer is used to provide a fixed time-out that is sufficient for the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. This PLL lock time-out (TPLL) is typically 2 ms and follows the oscillator start-up time-out (OST).

3.5 Brown-out Reset (BOR)

A configuration bit, BOREN, can disable (if clear/programmed), or enable (if set) the Brown-out Reset circuitry. If VDD falls below parameter D005 for greater than parameter 35, the brown-out situation will reset the chip. A RESET may not occur if VDD falls below parameter D005 for less than parameter 35. The chip will remain in Brown-out Reset until VDD rises above BVDD. If the Power-up Timer is enabled, it will be invoked after VDD rises above BVDD; it then will keep the chip in RESET for an additional time delay (parameter 33). If VDD drops below BVDD while the Power-up Timer is running, the chip will go back into a Brown-out Reset and the Power-up Timer will be initialized. Once VDD rises above BVDD, the Power-up Timer will execute the additional time delay.

3.6 Time-out Sequence

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows: First, PWRT time-out is invoked after the POR time delay has expired. Then, OST is activated. The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and the status of the PWRT. For example, in RC mode with the PWRT disabled, there will be no time-out at all. Figure 3-3, Figure 3-4, Figure 3-5, Figure 3-6 and Figure 3-7 depict time-out sequences on power-up.

Since the time-outs occur from the POR pulse, if MCLR is kept low long enough, the time-outs will expire. Bringing MCLR high will begin execution immediately (Figure 3-5). This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one PIC18FXXX device operating in parallel.

Table 3-2 shows the RESET conditions for some Special Function Registers, while Table 3-3 shows the RESET conditions for all the registers.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-1: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS

Oscillator Configuration	Power-up(2)		Brown-out	Wake-up from SLEEP or Oscillator Switch
	$\overline{PWRTE}$ = 0	$\overline{PWRTE}$ = 1		
HS with PLL enabled(1)	72 ms + 1024 TOSC + 2ms	1024 TOSC + 2 ms	72 ms(2) + 1024 TOSC + 2 ms	1024 TOSC + 2 ms
HS, XT, LP	72 ms + 1024 TOSC	1024 TOSC	72 ms(2) + 1024 TOSC	1024 TOSC
EC	72 ms	—	72 ms(2)	—
External RC	72 ms	—	72 ms(2)	—

Note 1: 2 ms is the nominal time required for the 4x PLL to lock.
2: 72 ms is the nominal power-up timer delay, if implemented.

REGISTER 3-1: RCON REGISTER BITS AND POSITIONS

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R-1	R-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	—	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

Note 1: Refer to Section 4.14 (page 53) for bit definitions.

TABLE 3-2: STATUS BITS, THEIR SIGNIFICANCE AND THE INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR RCON REGISTER

Condition	Program Counter	RCON Register	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	STKFUL	STKUNF
Power-on Reset	0000h	0--1 1100	1	1	1	0	0	u	u
$\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during normal operation	0000h	0--u uuuu	u	u	u	u	u	u	u
Software Reset during normal operation	0000h	0--0 uuuu	0	u	u	u	u	u	u
Stack Full Reset during normal operation	0000h	0--u uu11	u	u	u	u	u	u	1
Stack Underflow Reset during normal operation	0000h	0--u uu11	u	u	u	u	u	1	u
$\overline{MCLR}$ Reset during SLEEP	0000h	0--u 10uu	u	1	0	u	u	u	u
WDT Reset	0000h	0--u 01uu	1	0	1	u	u	u	u
WDT Wake-up	PC + 2	u--u 00uu	u	0	0	u	u	u	u
Brown-out Reset	0000h	0--1 11u0	1	1	1	1	0	u	u
Interrupt wake-up from SLEEP	PC + 2(1)	u--u 00uu	u	1	0	u	u	u	u

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0'

Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEH or GIEL bits are set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0x000008h or 0x000018h).

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS

Register	Applicable Devices				Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TOSU	242	442	252	452	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 uuuu(3)
TOSH	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
TOSL	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
STKPTR	242	442	252	452	00-0 0000	uu-0 0000	uu-u uuuu(3)
PCLATU	242	442	252	452	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
PCLATH	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCL	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	PC + 2(2)
TBLPTRU	242	442	252	452	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TBLPTRH	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TBLPTRL	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TABLAT	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PRODH	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PRODL	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INTCON	242	442	252	452	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON2	242	442	252	452	1111 -1-1	1111 -1-1	uuuu -u-u(1)
INTCON3	242	442	252	452	11-0 0-00	11-0 0-00	uu-u u-uu(1)
INDF0	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC0	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC0	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC0	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW0	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR0H	242	442	252	452	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
FSR0L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
WREG	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INDF1	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC1	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC1	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC1	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW1	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition.
Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other Oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices				Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
FSR1H	242	442	252	452	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
FSR1L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
BSR	242	442	252	452	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
INDF2	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC2	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC2	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC2	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW2	242	442	252	452	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR2H	242	442	252	452	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
FSR2L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
STATUS	242	442	252	452	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
TMR0H	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR0L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T0CON	242	442	252	452	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
OSCCON	242	442	252	452	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
LVDCON	242	442	252	452	--00 0101	--00 0101	--uu uuuu
WDTCON	242	442	252	452	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
RCON(4)	242	442	252	452	0--q 11qq	0--q qquu	u--u qquu
TMR1H	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR1L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	242	442	252	452	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu	u-uu uuuu
TMR2	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PR2	242	442	252	452	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111
T2CON	242	442	252	452	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
SSPBUF	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
SSPADD	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPSTAT	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON1	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON2	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition.
Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other Oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices				Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
ADRESH	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	242	442	252	452	0000 00-0	0000 00-0	uuuu uu-u
ADCON1	242	442	252	452	00-- 0000	00-- 0000	uu-- uuuu
CCPR1H	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	242	442	252	452	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CCPR2H	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	242	442	252	452	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TMR3H	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR3L	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
SPBRG	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RCREG	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXREG	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXSTA	242	442	252	452	0000 -010	0000 -010	uuuu -uuu
RCSTA	242	442	252	452	0000 000x	0000 000x	uuuu uuuu
EEADR	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEDATA	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EECON1	242	442	252	452	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000	uu-0 u000
EECON2	242	442	252	452	---- ----	---- ----	---- ----

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition.
Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other Oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices				Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
IPR2	242	442	252	452	---1 1111	---1 1111	---u uuuu
PIR2	242	442	252	452	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu(1)
PIE2	242	442	252	452	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
IPR1	242	442	252	452	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
	242	442	252	452	-111 1111	-111 1111	-uuu uuuu
PIR1	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(1)
	242	442	252	452	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu(1)
PIE1	242	442	252	452	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
	242	442	252	452	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
TRISE	242	442	252	452	0000 -111	0000 -111	uuuu -uuu
TRISD	242	442	252	452	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISC	242	442	252	452	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISB	242	442	252	452	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISA(5,6)	242	442	252	452	-111 1111(5)	-111 1111(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)
LATE	242	442	252	452	---- -xxx	---- -uuu	---- -uuu
LATD	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATC	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATB	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATA(5,6)	242	442	252	452	-xxx xxxx(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)
PORTE	242	442	252	452	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
PORTD	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTC	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTB	242	442	252	452	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTA(5,6)	242	442	252	452	-x0x 0000(5)	-u0u 0000(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition.
Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other Oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 3-3: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (MCLR TIED TO VDD)

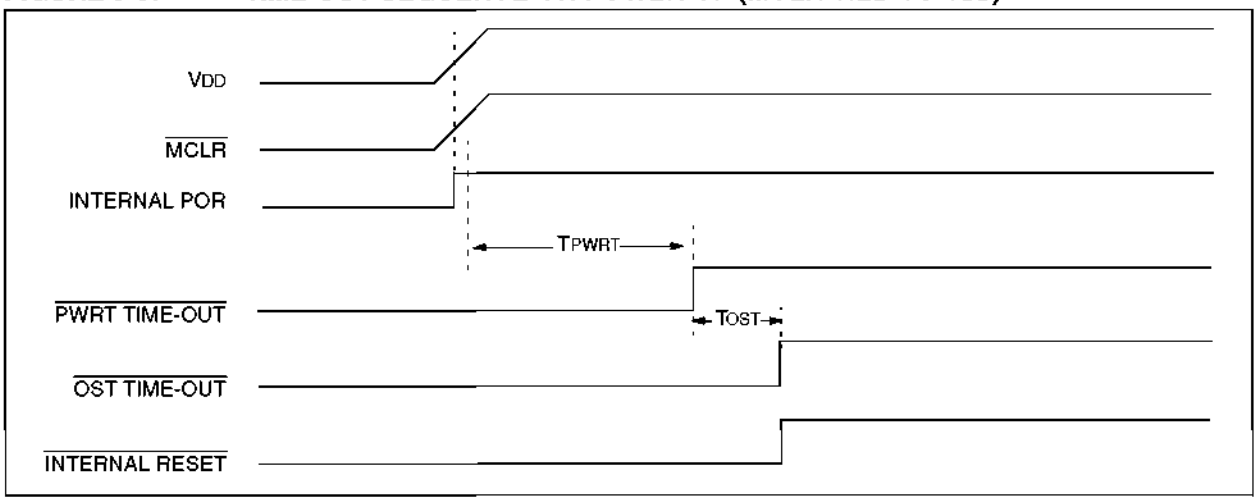


FIGURE 3-4: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (MCLR NOT TIED TO VDD): CASE 1

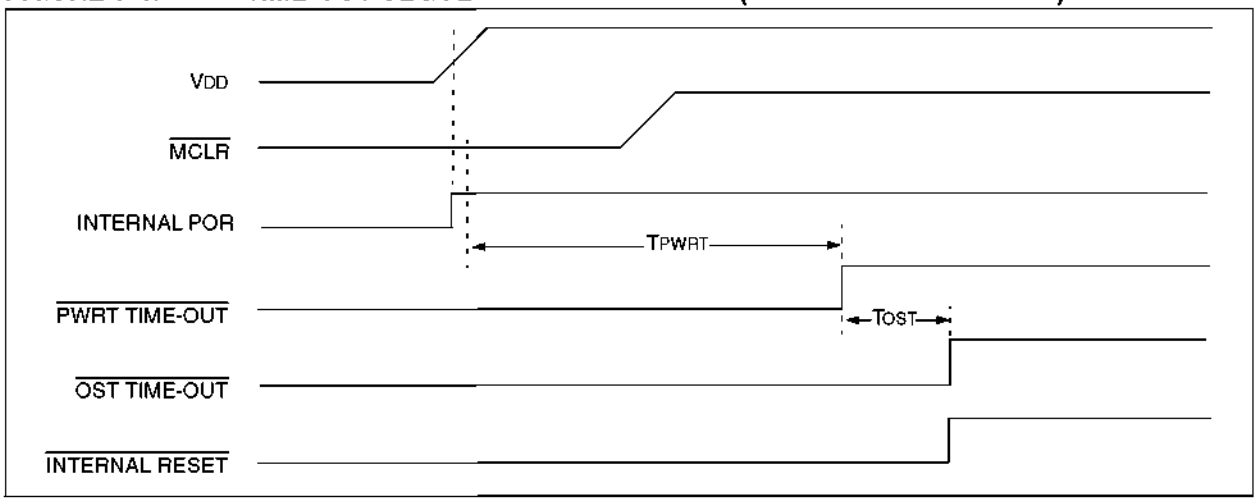
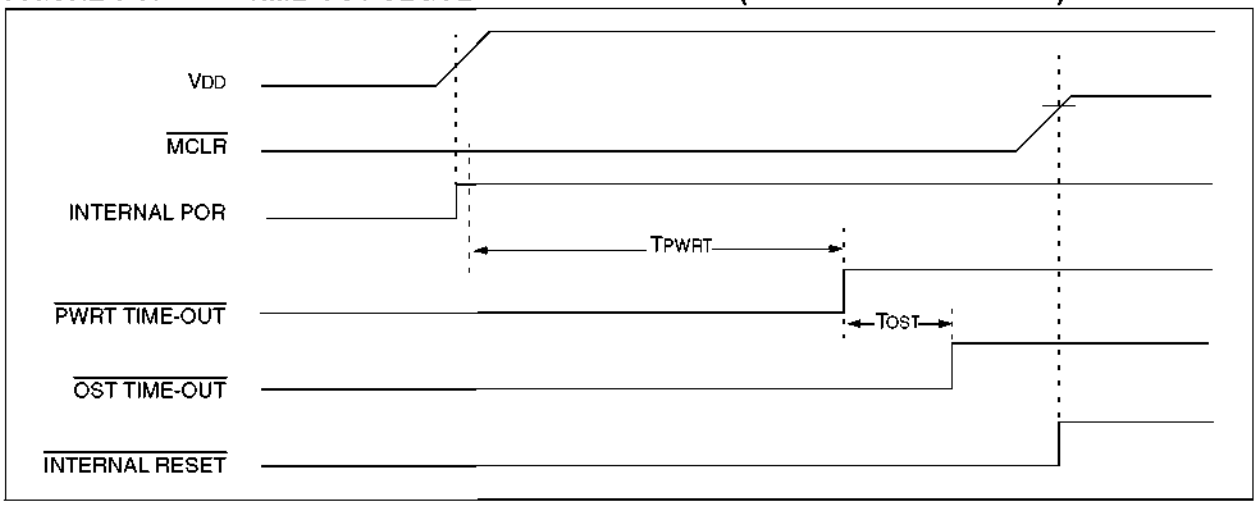


FIGURE 3-5: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (MCLR NOT TIED TO VDD): CASE 2



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 3-6: SLOW RISE TIME ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD)

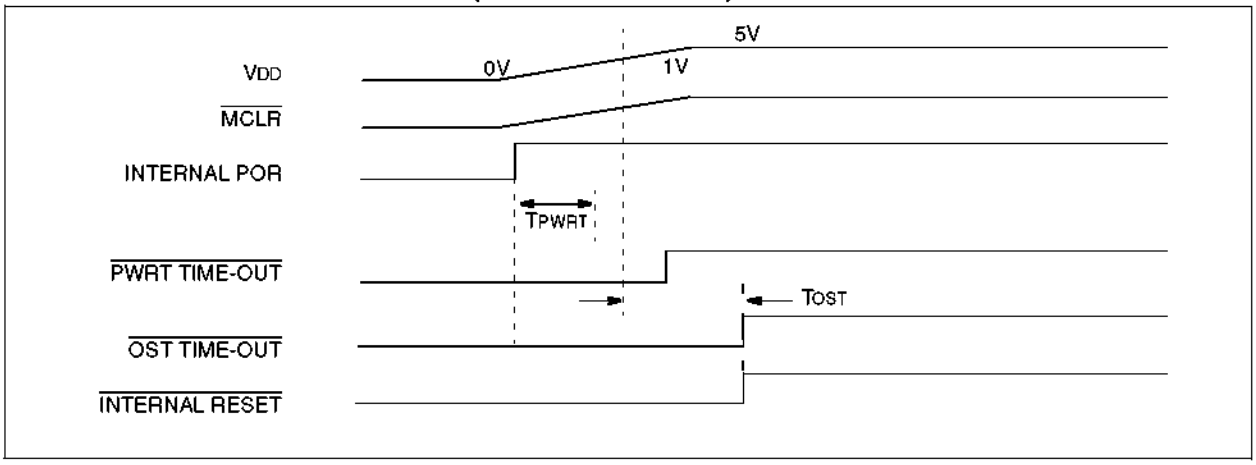
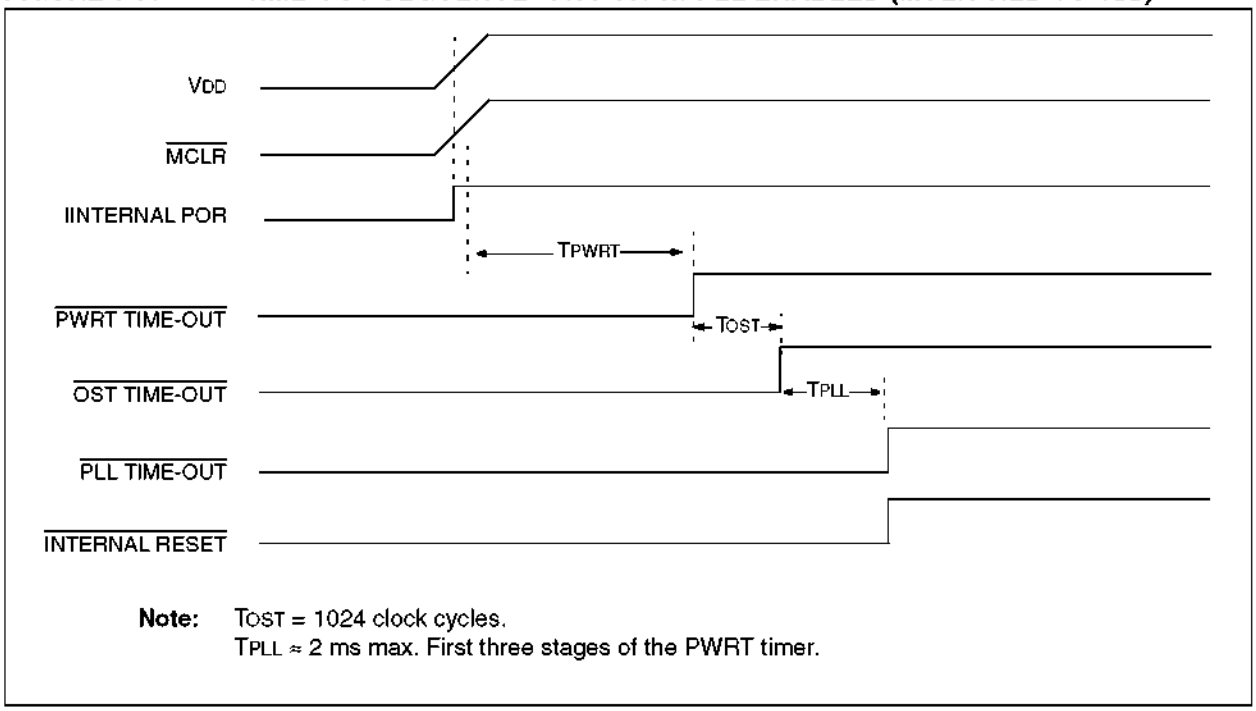


FIGURE 3-7: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POR W/ PLL ENABLED ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD)



Note: TOST = 1024 clock cycles.
TPLL ≈ 2 ms max. First three stages of the PWRT timer.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

There are three memory blocks in Enhanced MCU devices. These memory blocks are:

- Program Memory
- Data RAM
- Data EEPROM

Data and program memory use separate busses, which allows for concurrent access of these blocks.

Additional detailed information for FLASH program memory and Data EEPROM is provided in Section 5.0 and Section 6.0, respectively.

4.1 Program Memory Organization

A 21-bit program counter is capable of addressing the 2-Mbyte program memory space. Accessing a location between the physically implemented memory and the 2-Mbyte address will cause a read of all '0's (a NOP instruction).

The PIC18F252 and PIC18F452 each have 32 Kbytes of FLASH memory, while the PIC18F242 and PIC18F442 have 16 Kbytes of FLASH. This means that PIC18FX52 devices can store up to 16K of single word instructions, and PIC18FX42 devices can store up to 8K of single word instructions.

The RESET vector address is at 0000h and the interrupt vector addresses are at 0008h and 0018h.

Figure 4-1 shows the Program Memory Map for PIC18F242/442 devices and Figure 4-2 shows the Program Memory Map for PIC18F252/452 devices.

FIGURE 4-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC18F442/242

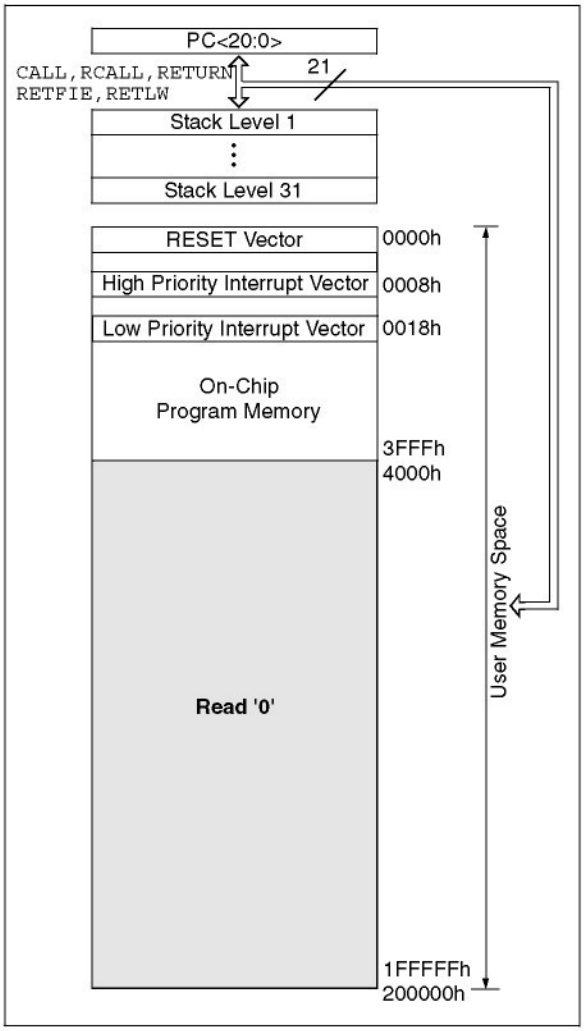
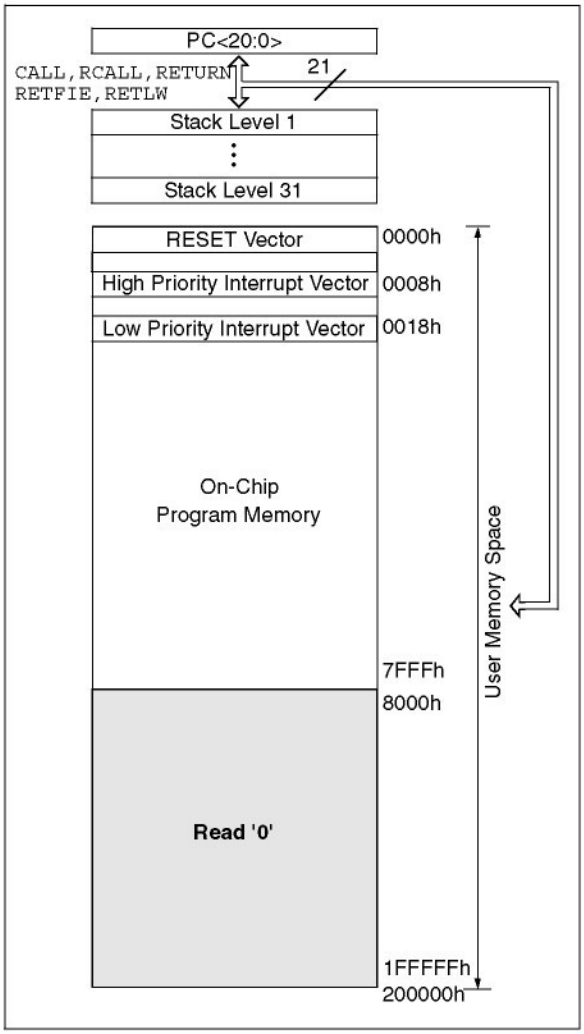


FIGURE 4-2: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC18F452/252



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.2 Return Address Stack

The return address stack allows any combination of up to 31 program calls and interrupts to occur. The PC (Program Counter) is pushed onto the stack when a CALL or RCALL instruction is executed, or an interrupt is acknowledged. The PC value is pulled off the stack on a RETURN, RETLW or a RETFIE instruction. PCLATU and PCLATH are not affected by any of the RETURN or CALL instructions.

The stack operates as a 31-word by 21-bit RAM and a 5-bit stack pointer, with the stack pointer initialized to 00000b after all RESETS. There is no RAM associated with stack pointer 00000b. This is only a RESET value. During a CALL type instruction, causing a push onto the stack, the stack pointer is first incremented and the RAM location pointed to by the stack pointer is written with the contents of the PC. During a RETURN type instruction, causing a pop from the stack, the contents of the RAM location pointed to by the STKPTR are transferred to the PC and then the stack pointer is decremented.

The stack space is not part of either program or data space. The stack pointer is readable and writable, and the address on the top of the stack is readable and writable through SFR registers. Data can also be pushed to, or popped from, the stack using the top-of-stack SFRs. Status bits indicate if the stack pointer is at, or beyond the 31 levels provided.

4.2.1 TOP-OF-STACK ACCESS

The top of the stack is readable and writable. Three register locations, TOSU, TOSH and TOSL hold the contents of the stack location pointed to by the STKPTR register. This allows users to implement a software stack if necessary. After a CALL, RCALL or interrupt, the software can read the pushed value by reading the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL registers. These values can be placed on a user defined software stack. At return time, the software can replace the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL and do a return.

The user must disable the global interrupt enable bits during this time to prevent inadvertent stack operations.

4.2.2 RETURN STACK POINTER (STKPTR)

The STKPTR register contains the stack pointer value, the STKFUL (stack full) status bit, and the STKUNF (stack underflow) status bits. Register 4-1 shows the STKPTR register. The value of the stack pointer can be 0 through 31. The stack pointer increments when values are pushed onto the stack and decrements when values are popped off the stack. At RESET, the stack pointer value will be 0. The user may read and write the stack pointer value. This feature can be used by a Real Time Operating System for return stack maintenance.

After the PC is pushed onto the stack 31 times (without popping any values off the stack), the STKFUL bit is set. The STKFUL bit can only be cleared in software or by a POR.

The action that takes place when the stack becomes full depends on the state of the STVREN (Stack Overflow Reset Enable) configuration bit. Refer to Section 20.0 for a description of the device configuration bits. If STVREN is set (default), the 31st push will push the (PC + 2) value onto the stack, set the STKFUL bit, and reset the device. The STKFUL bit will remain set and the stack pointer will be set to '0'.

If STVREN is cleared, the STKFUL bit will be set on the 31st push and the stack pointer will increment to 31. Any additional pushes will not overwrite the 31st push, and STKPTR will remain at 31.

When the stack has been popped enough times to unload the stack, the next pop will return a value of zero to the PC and sets the STKUNF bit, while the stack pointer remains at 0. The STKUNF bit will remain set until cleared in software or a POR occurs.

Note:	Returning a value of zero to the PC on an underflow has the effect of vectoring the program to the RESET vector, where the stack conditions can be verified and appropriate actions can be taken.

REGISTER 4-1: STKPTR REGISTER

R/C-0	R/C-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
STKOVF	STKUNF	—	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7(1) **STKOVF:** Stack Full Flag bit
1 = Stack became full or overflowed
0 = Stack has not become full or overflowed

bit 6(1) **STKUNF:** Stack Underflow Flag bit
1 = Stack underflow occurred
0 = Stack underflow did not occur

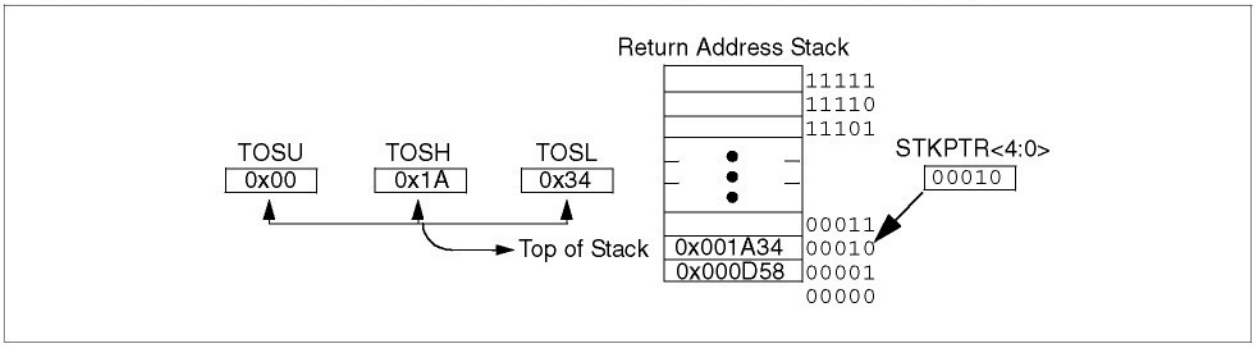
bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **SP4:SP0:** Stack Pointer Location bits

Note 1: Bit 7 and bit 6 can only be cleared in user software or by a POR.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 4-3: RETURN ADDRESS STACK AND ASSOCIATED REGISTERS



4.2.3 PUSH AND POP INSTRUCTIONS

Since the Top-of-Stack (TOS) is readable and writable, the ability to push values onto the stack and pull values off the stack without disturbing normal program execution is a desirable option. To push the current PC value onto the stack, a PUSH instruction can be executed. This will increment the stack pointer and load the current PC value onto the stack. TOSU, TOSH and TOSL can then be modified to place a return address on the stack.

The ability to pull the TOS value off of the stack and replace it with the value that was previously pushed onto the stack, without disturbing normal execution, is achieved by using the POP instruction. The POP instruction discards the current TOS by decrementing the stack pointer. The previous value pushed onto the stack then becomes the TOS value.

4.2.4 STACK FULL/UNDERFLOW RESETS

These resets are enabled by programming the STVREN configuration bit. When the STVREN bit is disabled, a full or underflow condition will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit, but not cause a device RESET. When the STVREN bit is enabled, a full or underflow will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit and then cause a device RESET. The STKFUL or STKUNF bits are only cleared by the user software or a POR Reset.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.3 Fast Register Stack

A "fast interrupt return" option is available for interrupts. A Fast Register Stack is provided for the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers and are only one in depth. The stack is not readable or writable and is loaded with the current value of the corresponding register when the processor vectors for an interrupt. The values in the registers are then loaded back into the working registers, if the `FAST RETURN` instruction is used to return from the interrupt.

A low or high priority interrupt source will push values into the stack registers. If both low and high priority interrupts are enabled, the stack registers cannot be used reliably for low priority interrupts. If a high priority interrupt occurs while servicing a low priority interrupt, the stack register values stored by the low priority interrupt will be overwritten.

If high priority interrupts are not disabled during low priority interrupts, users must save the key registers in software during a low priority interrupt.

If no interrupts are used, the fast register stack can be used to restore the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers at the end of a subroutine call. To use the fast register stack for a subroutine call, a `FAST CALL` instruction must be executed.

Example 4-1 shows a source code example that uses the fast register stack.

EXAMPLE 4-1: FAST REGISTER STACK CODE EXAMPLE

```
CALL SUB1, FAST     ;STATUS, WREG, BSR
                    ;SAVED IN FAST REGISTER
                    ;STACK
        •
        •
SUB1    •
        •
        •
    RETURN FAST     ;RESTORE VALUES SAVED
                    ;IN FAST REGISTER STACK
```

4.4 PCL, PCLATH and PCLATU

The program counter (PC) specifies the address of the instruction to fetch for execution. The PC is 21-bits wide. The low byte is called the PCL register. This register is readable and writable. The high byte is called the PCH register. This register contains the PC<15:8> bits and is not directly readable or writable. Updates to the PCH register may be performed through the PCLATH register. The upper byte is called PCU. This register contains the PC<20:16> bits and is not directly readable or writable. Updates to the PCU register may be performed through the PCLATU register.

The PC addresses bytes in the program memory. To prevent the PC from becoming misaligned with word instructions, the LSB of PCL is fixed to a value of '0'. The PC increments by 2 to address sequential instructions in the program memory.

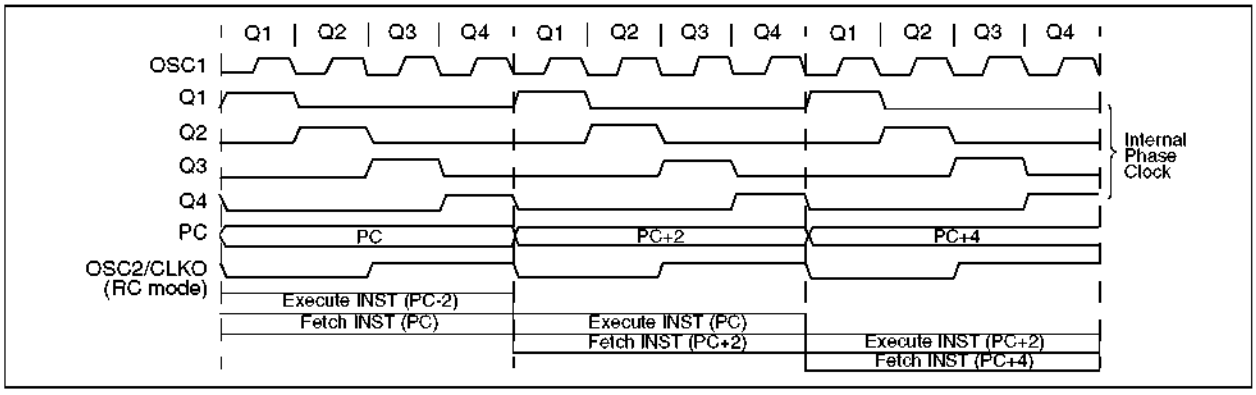
The `CALL`, `RCALL`, `GOTO` and program branch instructions write to the program counter directly. For these instructions, the contents of PCLATH and PCLATU are not transferred to the program counter.

The contents of PCLATH and PCLATU will be transferred to the program counter by an operation that writes PCL. Similarly, the upper two bytes of the program counter will be transferred to PCLATH and PCLATU by an operation that reads PCL. This is useful for computed offsets to the PC (see Section 4.8.1).

4.5 Clocking Scheme/Instruction Cycle

The clock input (from OSC1) is internally divided by four to generate four non-overlapping quadrature clocks, namely Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4. Internally, the program counter (PC) is incremented every Q1, the instruction is fetched from the program memory and latched into the instruction register in Q4. The instruction is decoded and executed during the following Q1 through Q4. The clocks and instruction execution flow are shown in Figure 4-4.

FIGURE 4-4: CLOCK/INSTRUCTION CYCLE



4.6 Instruction Flow/Pipelining

An "Instruction Cycle" consists of four Q cycles (Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4). The instruction fetch and execute are pipelined such that fetch takes one instruction cycle, while decode and execute takes another instruction cycle. However, due to the pipelining, each instruction effectively executes in one cycle. If an instruction causes the program counter to change (e.g., GOTO) then two cycles are required to complete the instruction (Example 4-2).

A fetch cycle begins with the program counter (PC) incrementing in Q1.

In the execution cycle, the fetched instruction is latched into the "Instruction Register" (IR) in cycle Q1. This instruction is then decoded and executed during the Q2, Q3, and Q4 cycles. Data memory is read during Q2 (operand read) and written during Q4 (destination write).

EXAMPLE 4-2: INSTRUCTION PIPELINE FLOW

	TCY0	TCY1	TCY2	TCY3	TCY4	TCY5
1. MOVLW 55h	Fetch 1	Execute 1				
2. MOVWF PORTB		Fetch 2	Execute 2			
3. BRA SUB_1			Fetch 3	Execute 3		
4. BSF PORTA, BIT3 (Forced NOP)				Fetch 4	Flush (NOP)	
5. Instruction @ address SUB_1					Fetch SUB_1	Execute SUB_1

All instructions are single cycle, except for any program branches. These take two cycles since the fetch instruction is "flushed" from the pipeline while the new instruction is being fetched and then executed.

4.7 Instructions in Program Memory

The program memory is addressed in bytes. Instructions are stored as two bytes or four bytes in program memory. The Least Significant Byte of an instruction word is always stored in a program memory location with an even address (LSB ='0'). Figure 4-5 shows an example of how instruction words are stored in the program memory. To maintain alignment with instruction boundaries, the PC increments in steps of 2 and the LSB will always read '0' (see Section 4.4).

The CALL and GOTO instructions have an absolute program memory address embedded into the instruction. Since instructions are always stored on word boundaries, the data contained in the instruction is a word address. The word address is written to PC<20:1>, which accesses the desired byte address in program memory. Instruction #2 in Figure 4-5 shows how the instruction "GOTO 000006h' is encoded in the program memory. Program branch instructions which encode a relative address offset operate in the same manner. The offset value stored in a branch instruction represents the number of single word instructions that the PC will be offset by. Section 20.0 provides further details of the instruction set.

FIGURE 4-5: INSTRUCTIONS IN PROGRAM MEMORY

			Program Memory Byte Locations → LSB = 1	LSB = 0	Word Address ↓
					000000h
					000002h
					000004h
					000006h
Instruction 1:	MOVLW	055h	0Fh	55h	000008h
Instruction 2:	GOTO	000006h	EFh	03h	00000Ah
			F0h	00h	00000Ch
Instruction 3:	MOVFF	123h, 456h	C1h	23h	00000Eh
			F4h	56h	000010h
					000012h
					000014h

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.7.1 TWO-WORD INSTRUCTIONS

The PIC18FXX2 devices have four two-word instructions: MOVFF, CALL, GOTO and LFSR. The second word of these instructions has the 4 MSBs set to 1's and is a special kind of NOP instruction. The lower 12 bits of the second word contain data to be used by the instruction. If the first word of the instruction is executed, the data in the second word is accessed. If the second word of the instruction is executed by itself (first word was skipped), it will execute as a NOP. This action is necessary when the two-word instruction is preceded by a conditional instruction that changes the PC. A program example that demonstrates this concept is shown in Example 4-3. Refer to Section 20.0 for further details of the instruction set.

EXAMPLE 4-3: TWO-WORD INSTRUCTIONS

CASE 1:

Object Code	Source Code
0110 0110 0000 0000	TSTFSZ REG1 ; is RAM location 0?
1100 0001 0010 0011	MOVFF REG1, REG2 ; No, execute 2-word instruction
1111 0100 0101 0110	; 2nd operand holds address of REG2
0010 0100 0000 0000	ADDWF REG3 ; continue code

CASE 2:

Object Code	Source Code
0110 0110 0000 0000	TSTFSZ REG1 ; is RAM location 0?
1100 0001 0010 0011	MOVFF REG1, REG2 ; Yes
1111 0100 0101 0110	; 2nd operand becomes NOP
0010 0100 0000 0000	ADDWF REG3 ; continue code

4.8 Lookup Tables

Lookup tables are implemented two ways. These are:

- Computed GOTO
- Table Reads

4.8.1 COMPUTED GOTO

A computed GOTO is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (ADDWF PCL).

A lookup table can be formed with an ADDWF PCL instruction and a group of RETLW 0xnn instructions. WREG is loaded with an offset into the table before executing a call to that table. The first instruction of the called routine is the ADDWF PCL instruction. The next instruction executed will be one of the RETLW 0xnn instructions, that returns the value 0xnn to the calling function.

The offset value (value in WREG) specifies the number of bytes that the program counter should advance.

In this method, only one data byte may be stored in each instruction location and room on the return address stack is required.

Note:	The ADDWF PCL instruction does not update PCLATH and PCLATU. A read operation on PCL must be performed to update PCLATH and PCLATU.

4.8.2 TABLE READS/TABLE WRITES

A better method of storing data in program memory allows 2 bytes of data to be stored in each instruction location.

Lookup table data may be stored 2 bytes per program word by using table reads and writes. The table pointer (TBLPTR) specifies the byte address and the table latch (TABLAT) contains the data that is read from, or written to program memory. Data is transferred to/from program memory, one byte at a time.

A description of the Table Read/Table Write operation is shown in Section 3.0.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.9 Data Memory Organization

The data memory is implemented as static RAM. Each register in the data memory has a 12-bit address, allowing up to 4096 bytes of data memory. Figure 4-6 and Figure 4-7 show the data memory organization for the PIC18FXX2 devices.

The data memory map is divided into as many as 16 banks that contain 256 bytes each. The lower 4 bits of the Bank Select Register (BSR<3:0>) select which bank will be accessed. The upper 4 bits for the BSR are not implemented.

The data memory contains Special Function Registers (SFR) and General Purpose Registers (GPR). The SFRs are used for control and status of the controller and peripheral functions, while GPRs are used for data storage and scratch pad operations in the user's application. The SFRs start at the last location of Bank 15 (0xFFF) and extend downwards. Any remaining space beyond the SFRs in the Bank may be implemented as GPRs. GPRs start at the first location of Bank 0 and grow upwards. Any read of an unimplemented location will read as '0's.

The entire data memory may be accessed directly or indirectly. Direct addressing may require the use of the BSR register. Indirect addressing requires the use of a File Select Register (FSRn) and a corresponding Indirect File Operand (INDFn). Each FSR holds a 12-bit address value that can be used to access any location in the Data Memory map without banking.

The instruction set and architecture allow operations across all banks. This may be accomplished by indirect addressing or by the use of the `MOVFF` instruction. The `MOVFF` instruction is a two-word/two-cycle instruction that moves a value from one register to another.

To ensure that commonly used registers (SFRs and select GPRs) can be accessed in a single cycle, regardless of the current BSR values, an Access Bank is implemented. A segment of Bank 0 and a segment of Bank 15 comprise the Access RAM. Section 4.10 provides a detailed description of the Access RAM.

4.9.1 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

The register file can be accessed either directly or indirectly. Indirect addressing operates using a File Select Register and corresponding Indirect File Operand. The operation of indirect addressing is shown in Section 4.12.

Enhanced MCU devices may have banked memory in the GPR area. GPRs are not initialized by a Power-on Reset and are unchanged on all other RESETS.

Data RAM is available for use as GPR registers by all instructions. The top half of Bank 15 (0xF80 to 0xFFF) contains SFRs. All other banks of data memory contain GPR registers, starting with Bank 0.

4.9.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers (SFRs) are registers used by the CPU and Peripheral Modules for controlling the desired operation of the device. These registers are implemented as static RAM. A list of these registers is given in Table 4-1 and Table 4-2.

The SFRs can be classified into two sets; those associated with the "core" function and those related to the peripheral functions. Those registers related to the "core" are described in this section, while those related to the operation of the peripheral features are described in the section of that peripheral feature.

The SFRs are typically distributed among the peripherals whose functions they control.

The unused SFR locations will be unimplemented and read as '0's. See Table 4-1 for addresses for the SFRs.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 4-6: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC18F242/442

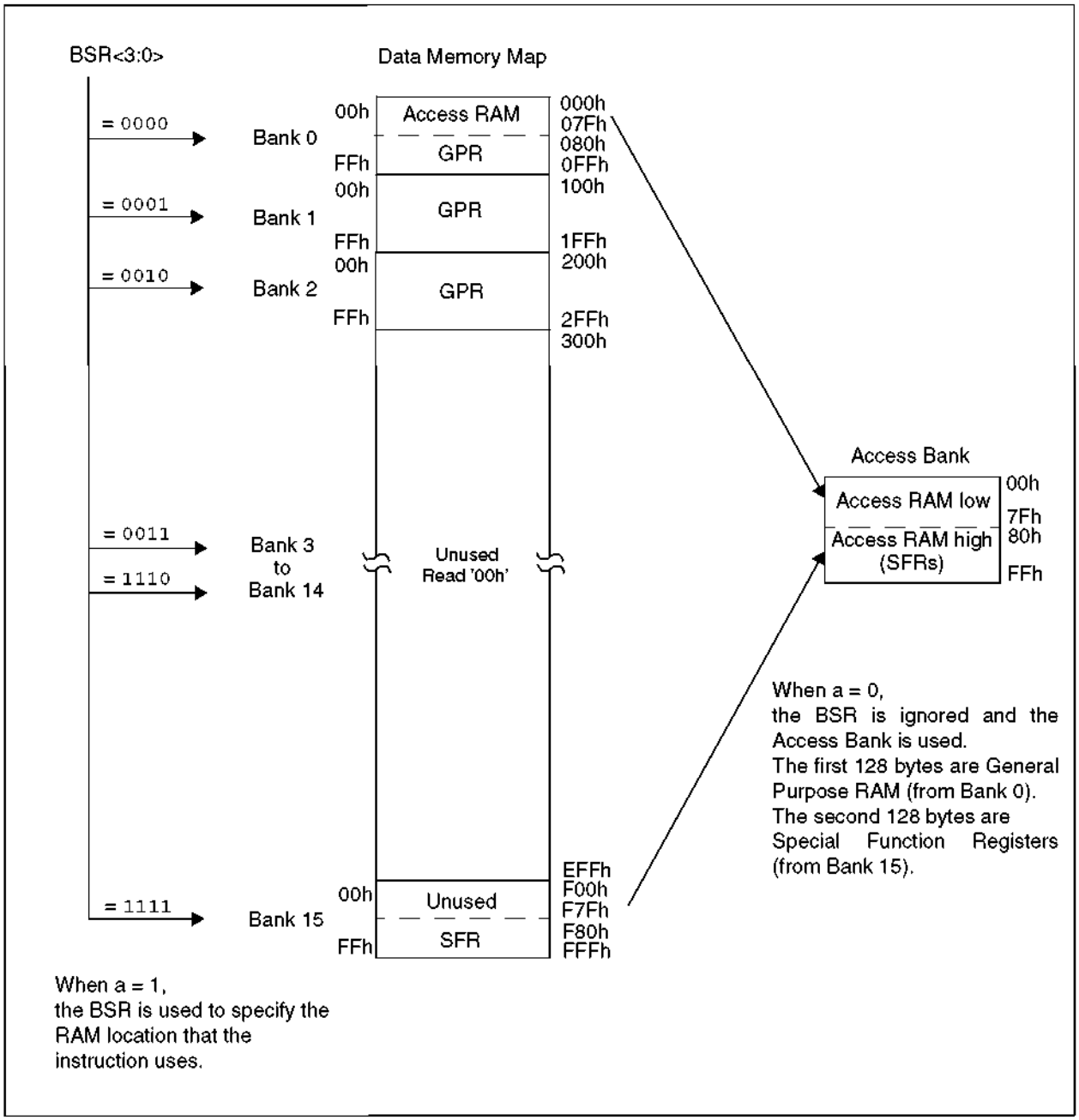
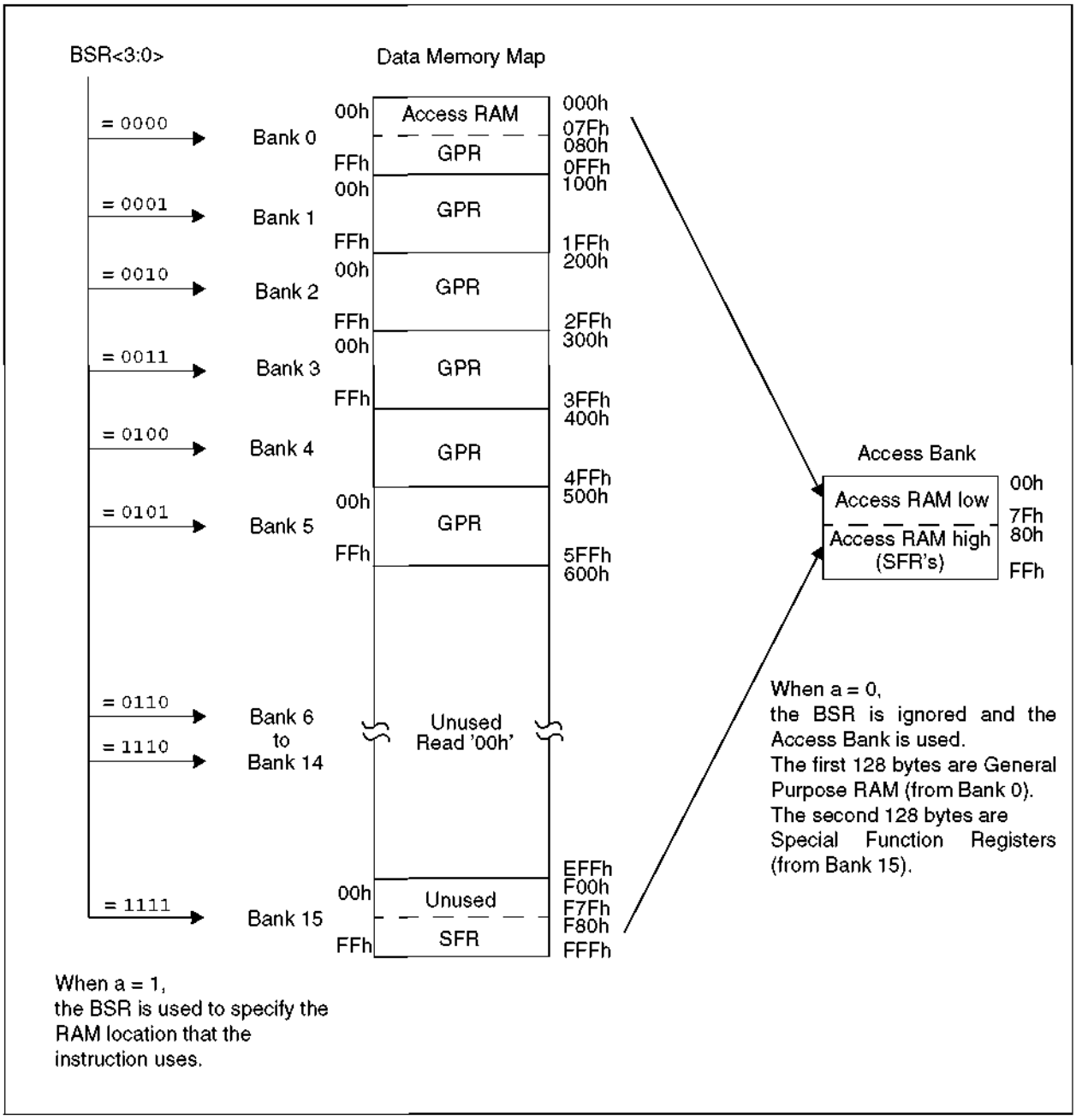


FIGURE 4-7: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC18F252/452



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 4-1: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER MAP

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
FFFh	TOSU	FDFh	INDF2(3)	FBFh	CCPR1H	F9Fh	IPR1
FFEh	TOSH	FDEh	POSTINC2(3)	FBEh	CCPR1L	F9Eh	PIR1
FFDh	TOSL	FDDh	POSTDEC2(3)	FBDh	CCP1CON	F9Dh	PIE1
FFCh	STKPTR	FDCh	PREINC2(3)	FBCh	CCPR2H	F9Ch	—
FFBh	PCLATU	FDBh	PLUSW2(3)	FBBh	CCPR2L	F9Bh	—
FFAh	PCLATH	FDAh	FSR2H	FBAh	CCP2CON	F9Ah	—
FF9h	PCL	FD9h	FSR2L	FB9h	—	F99h	—
FF8h	TBLPTRU	FD8h	STATUS	FB8h	—	F98h	—
FF7h	TBLPTRH	FD7h	TMR0H	FB7h	—	F97h	—
FF6h	TBLPTRL	FD6h	TMR0L	FB6h	—	F96h	TRISE(2)
FF5h	TABLAT	FD5h	T0CON	FB5h	—	F95h	TRISD(2)
FF4h	PRODH	FD4h	—	FB4h	—	F94h	TRISC
FF3h	PRODL	FD3h	OSCCON	FB3h	TMR3H	F93h	TRISB
FF2h	INTCON	FD2h	LVDCON	FB2h	TMR3L	F92h	TRISA
FF1h	INTCON2	FD1h	WDTCON	FB1h	T3CON	F91h	—
FF0h	INTCON3	FD0h	RCON	FB0h	—	F90h	—
FEFh	INDF0(3)	FCFh	TMR1H	FAFh	SPBRG	F8Fh	—
FEEh	POSTINC0(3)	FCEh	TMR1L	FAEh	RCREG	F8Eh	—
FEDh	POSTDEC0(3)	FCDh	T1CON	FADh	TXREG	F8Dh	LATE(2)
FECh	PREINC0(3)	FCCh	TMR2	FACh	TXSTA	F8Ch	LATD(2)
FEBh	PLUSW0(3)	FCBh	PR2	FABh	RCSTA	F8Bh	LATC
FEAh	FSR0H	FCAh	T2CON	FAAh	—	F8Ah	LATB
FE9h	FSR0L	FC9h	SSPBUF	FA9h	EEADR	F89h	LATA
FE8h	WREG	FC8h	SSPADD	FA8h	EEDATA	F88h	—
FE7h	INDF1(3)	FC7h	SSPSTAT	FA7h	EECON2	F87h	—
FE6h	POSTINC1(3)	FC6h	SSPCON1	FA6h	EECON1	F86h	—
FE5h	POSTDEC1(3)	FC5h	SSPCON2	FA5h	—	F85h	—
FE4h	PREINC1(3)	FC4h	ADRESH	FA4h	—	F84h	PORTE(2)
FE3h	PLUSW1(3)	FC3h	ADRESL	FA3h	—	F83h	PORTD(2)
FE2h	FSR1H	FC2h	ADCON0	FA2h	IPR2	F82h	PORTC
FE1h	FSR1L	FC1h	ADCON1	FA1h	PIR2	F81h	PORTB
FE0h	BSR	FC0h	—	FA0h	PIE2	F80h	PORTA

Note 1: Unimplemented registers are read as '0'.
2: This register is not available on PIC18F2X2 devices.
3: This is not a physical register.

TABLE 4-2: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
TOSU	—	—	—	Top-of-Stack upper Byte (TOS<20:16>)					---0 0000	37
TOSH	Top-of-Stack High Byte (TOS<15:8>)								0000 0000	37
TOSL	Top-of-Stack Low Byte (TOS<7:0>)								0000 0000	37
STKPTR	STKFUL	STKUNF	—	Return Stack Pointer					00-0 0000	38
PCLATU	—	—	—	Holding Register for PC<20:16>					---0 0000	39
PCLATH	Holding Register for PC<15:8>								0000 0000	39
PCL	PC Low Byte (PC<7:0>)								0000 0000	39
TBLPTRU	—	—	bit21(2)	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					--00 0000	58
TBLPTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								0000 0000	58
TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								0000 0000	58
TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								0000 0000	58
PRODH	Product Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	71
PRODL	Product Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	71
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	75
INTCON2	RBPU	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	—	TMR0IP	—	RBIP	1111 -1-1	76
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	—	INT2IE	INT1IE	—	INT2IF	INT1IF	11-0 0-00	77
INDF0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	50
POSTINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
POSTDEC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
PREINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
PLUSW0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 (not a physical register). Offset by value in WREG.								n/a	50
FSR0H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 High Byte				---- 0000	50
FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	50
WREG	Working Register								xxxx xxxx	n/a
INDF1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	50
POSTINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
POSTDEC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
PREINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
PLUSW1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 (not a physical register). Offset by value in WREG.								n/a	50
FSR1H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 High Byte				---- 0000	50
FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	50
BSR	—	—	—	—	Bank Select Register				---- 0000	49
INDF2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	50
POSTINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
POSTDEC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
PREINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	50
PLUSW2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 (not a physical register). Offset by value in WREG.								n/a	50
FSR2H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 High Byte				---- 0000	50
FSR2L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	50
STATUS	—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C	---x xxxx	52
TMR0H	Timer0 Register High Byte								0000 0000	105
TMR0L	Timer0 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	105
T0CON	TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	1111 1111	103

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: RA6 and associated bits are configured as port pins in RCIO and ECIO Oscillator mode only and read '0' in all other Oscillator modes.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: These registers and bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 4-2: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
OSCCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCS	---- ---0	21
LVDCON	—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0	--00 0101	191
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTE	---- ---0	203
RCON	IPEN	—	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	0--1 11qq	53, 28, 84
TMR1H	Timer1 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	107
TMR1L	Timer1 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	107
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{T1SYNC}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	107
TMR2	Timer2 Register								0000 0000	111
PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	112
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	111
SSPBUF	SSP Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	125
SSPADD	SSP Address Register in I^2C Slave mode. SSP Baud Rate Reload Register in I^2C Master mode.								0000 0000	134
SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	126
SSPCON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	127
SSPCON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	0000 0000	137
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	187,188
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	187,188
ADCON0	ADCS1	ADCS0	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{DONE}$	—	ADON	0000 00-0	181
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	—	—	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	00-- 0000	182
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	121, 123
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	121, 123
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	117
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	121, 123
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	121, 123
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	117
TMR3H	Timer3 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	113
TMR3L	Timer3 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	113
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{T3SYNC}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	113
SPBRG	USART1 Baud Rate Generator								0000 0000	168
RCREG	USART1 Receive Register								0000 0000	175, 178, 180
TXREG	USART1 Transmit Register								0000 0000	173, 176, 179
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	166
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	167
EEADR	Data EEPROM Address Register								0000 0000	65, 69
EEDATA	Data EEPROM Data Register								0000 0000	69
EECON2	Data EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								---- ----	65, 69
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	66

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: RA6 and associated bits are configured as port pins in RCIO and ECIO Oscillator mode only and read '0' in all other Oscillator modes.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: These registers and bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 4-2: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
IPR2	—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	83
PIR2	—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	79
PIE2	—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	81
IPR1	PSPIP(3)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	1111 1111	82
PIR1	PSPIF(3)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	78
PIE1	PSPIE(3)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	80
TRISE(3)	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	Data Direction bits for PORTE			0000 -111	98
TRISD(3)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTD								1111 1111	96
TRISC	Data Direction Control Register for PORTC								1111 1111	93
TRISB	Data Direction Control Register for PORTB								1111 1111	90
TRISA	—	TRISA6(1)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTA						-111 1111	87
LATE(3)	—	—	—	—	—	Read PORTE Data Latch, Write PORTE Data Latch			---- -xxx	99
LATD(3)	Read PORTD Data Latch, Write PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	95
LATC	Read PORTC Data Latch, Write PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	93
LATB	Read PORTB Data Latch, Write PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	90
LATA	—	LATA6(1)	Read PORTA Data Latch, Write PORTA Data Latch(1)						-xxx xxxx	87
PORTE(3)	Read PORTE pins, Write PORTE Data Latch								---- -000	99
PORTD(3)	Read PORTD pins, Write PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	95
PORTC	Read PORTC pins, Write PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	93
PORTB	Read PORTB pins, Write PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	90
PORTA	—	RA6(1)	Read PORTA pins, Write PORTA Data Latch(1)						-x0x 0000	87

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: RA6 and associated bits are configured as port pins in RCIO and ECIO Oscillator mode only and read '0' in all other Oscillator modes.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: These registers and bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.10 Access Bank

The Access Bank is an architectural enhancement which is very useful for C compiler code optimization. The techniques used by the C compiler may also be useful for programs written in assembly.

This data memory region can be used for:

- Intermediate computational values
- Local variables of subroutines
- Faster context saving/switching of variables
- Common variables
- Faster evaluation/control of SFRs (no banking)

The Access Bank is comprised of the upper 128 bytes in Bank 15 (SFRs) and the lower 128 bytes in Bank 0. These two sections will be referred to as Access RAM High and Access RAM Low, respectively. Figure 4-6 and Figure 4-7 indicate the Access RAM areas.

A bit in the instruction word specifies if the operation is to occur in the bank specified by the BSR register or in the Access Bank. This bit is denoted by the 'a' bit (for access bit).

When forced in the Access Bank (a = 0), the last address in Access RAM Low is followed by the first address in Access RAM High. Access RAM High maps the Special Function registers, so that these registers can be accessed without any software overhead. This is useful for testing status flags and modifying control bits.

4.11 Bank Select Register (BSR)

The need for a large general purpose memory space dictates a RAM banking scheme. The data memory is partitioned into sixteen banks. When using direct addressing, the BSR should be configured for the desired bank.

BSR<3:0> holds the upper 4 bits of the 12-bit RAM address. The BSR<7:4> bits will always read '0's, and writes will have no effect.

A `MOVLB` instruction has been provided in the instruction set to assist in selecting banks.

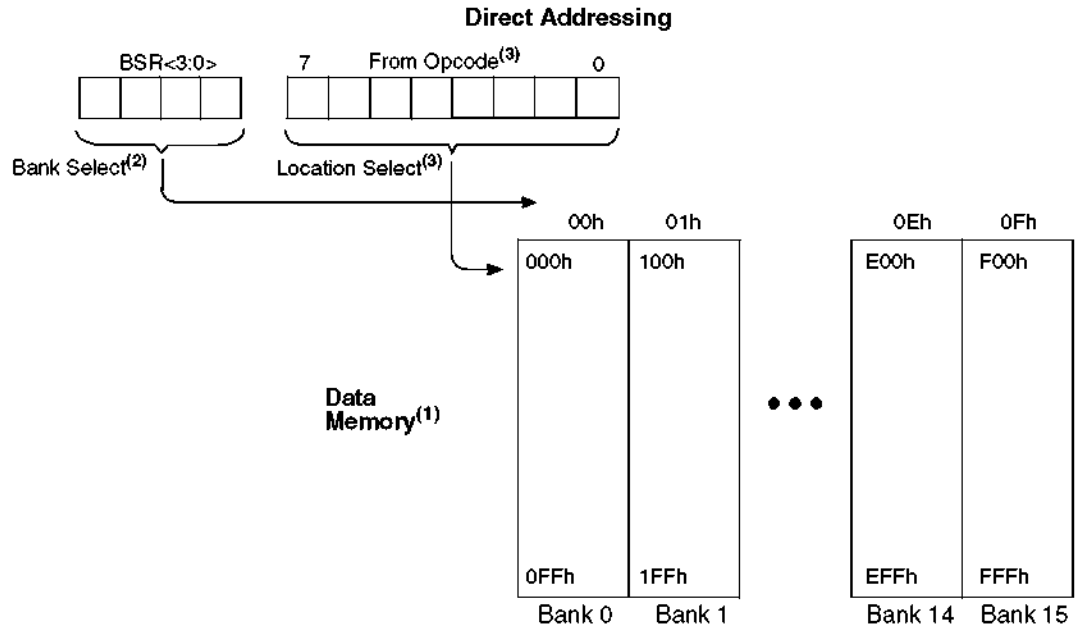
If the currently selected bank is not implemented, any read will return all '0's and all writes are ignored. The STATUS register bits will be set/cleared as appropriate for the instruction performed.

Each Bank extends up to FFh (256 bytes). All data memory is implemented as static RAM.

A `MOVFF` instruction ignores the BSR, since the 12-bit addresses are embedded into the instruction word.

Section 4.12 provides a description of indirect addressing, which allows linear addressing of the entire RAM space.

FIGURE 4-8: DIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Table 4-1.

2: The access bit of the instruction can be used to force an override of the selected bank (BSR<3:0>) to the registers of the Access Bank.

3: The `MOVFF` instruction embeds the entire 12-bit address in the instruction.

4.12 Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers

Indirect addressing is a mode of addressing data memory, where the data memory address in the instruction is not fixed. An FSR register is used as a pointer to the data memory location that is to be read or written. Since this pointer is in RAM, the contents can be modified by the program. This can be useful for data tables in the data memory and for software stacks. Figure 4-9 shows the operation of indirect addressing. This shows the moving of the value to the data memory address specified by the value of the FSR register.

Indirect addressing is possible by using one of the INDF registers. Any instruction using the INDF register actually accesses the register pointed to by the File Select Register, FSR. Reading the INDF register itself, indirectly (FSR = 0), will read 00h. Writing to the INDF register indirectly, results in a no operation. The FSR register contains a 12-bit address, which is shown in Figure 4-10.

The INDFn register is not a physical register. Addressing INDFn actually addresses the register whose address is contained in the FSRn register (FSRn is a pointer). This is indirect addressing.

Example 4-4 shows a simple use of indirect addressing to clear the RAM in Bank1 (locations 100h-1FFh) in a minimum number of instructions.

EXAMPLE 4-4: HOW TO CLEAR RAM (BANK1) USING INDIRECT ADDRESSING

```
        LFSR  FSR0 ,0x100  ;
NEXT    CLRF  POSTINC0     ; Clear INDF
                           ; register and
                           ; inc pointer
        BTFSS FSR0H, 1     ; All done with
                           ; Bank1?
        GOTO  NEXT         ; NO, clear next
CONTINUE                   ; YES, continue
```

There are three indirect addressing registers. To address the entire data memory space (4096 bytes), these registers are 12-bit wide. To store the 12-bits of addressing information, two 8-bit registers are required. These indirect addressing registers are:

1. FSR0: composed of FSR0H:FSR0L
2. FSR1: composed of FSR1H:FSR1L
3. FSR2: composed of FSR2H:FSR2L

In addition, there are registers INDF0, INDF1 and INDF2, which are not physically implemented. Reading or writing to these registers activates indirect addressing, with the value in the corresponding FSR register being the address of the data. If an instruction writes a value to INDF0, the value will be written to the address pointed to by FSR0H:FSR0L. A read from INDF1 reads the data from the address pointed to by FSR1H:FSR1L. INDFn can be used in code anywhere an operand can be used.

If INDF0, INDF1 or INDF2 are read indirectly via an FSR, all '0's are read (zero bit is set). Similarly, if INDF0, INDF1 or INDF2 are written to indirectly, the operation will be equivalent to a NOP instruction and the STATUS bits are not affected.

4.12.1 INDIRECT ADDRESSING OPERATION

Each FSR register has an INDF register associated with it, plus four additional register addresses. Performing an operation on one of these five registers determines how the FSR will be modified during indirect addressing.

When data access is done to one of the five INDFn locations, the address selected will configure the FSRn register to:

- Do nothing to FSRn after an indirect access (no change) - INDFn
- Auto-decrement FSRn after an indirect access (post-decrement) - POSTDECn
- Auto-increment FSRn after an indirect access (post-increment) - POSTINCn
- Auto-increment FSRn before an indirect access (pre-increment) - PREINCn
- Use the value in the WREG register as an offset to FSRn. Do not modify the value of the WREG or the FSRn register after an indirect access (no change) - PLUSWn

When using the auto-increment or auto-decrement features, the effect on the FSR is not reflected in the STATUS register. For example, if the indirect address causes the FSR to equal '0', the Z bit will not be set.

Incrementing or decrementing an FSR affects all 12 bits. That is, when FSRnL overflows from an increment, FSRnH will be incremented automatically.

Adding these features allows the FSRn to be used as a stack pointer, in addition to its uses for table operations in data memory.

Each FSR has an address associated with it that performs an indexed indirect access. When a data access to this INDFn location (PLUSWn) occurs, the FSRn is configured to add the signed value in the WREG register and the value in FSR to form the address before an indirect access. The FSR value is not changed.

If an FSR register contains a value that points to one of the INDFn, an indirect read will read 00h (zero bit is set), while an indirect write will be equivalent to a NOP (STATUS bits are not affected).

If an indirect addressing operation is done where the target address is an FSRnH or FSRnL register, the write operation will dominate over the pre- or post-increment/decrement functions.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 4-9: INDIRECT ADDRESSING OPERATION

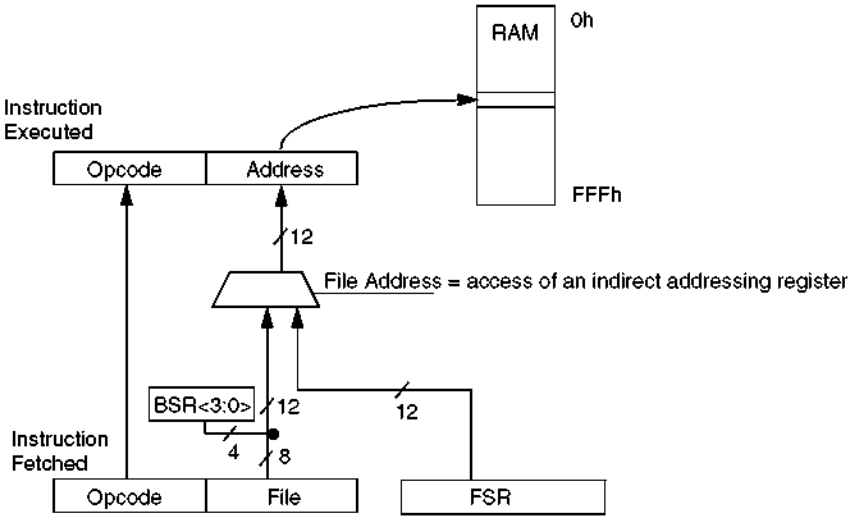
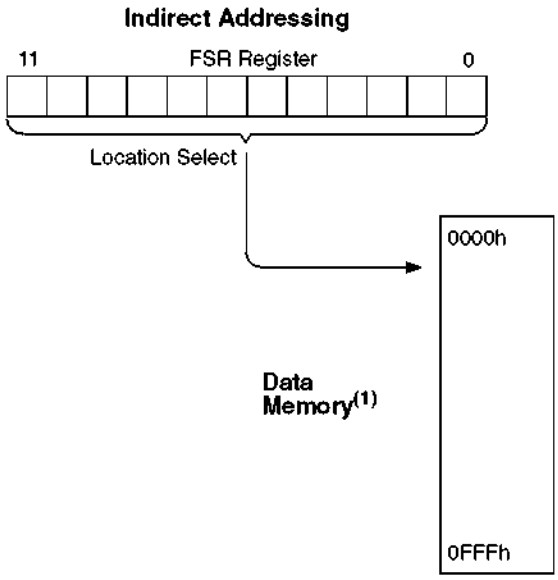


FIGURE 4-10: INDIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Table 4-1.

4.13 STATUS Register

The STATUS register, shown in Register 4-2, contains the arithmetic status of the ALU. The STATUS register can be the destination for any instruction, as with any other register. If the STATUS register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC, C, OV, or N bits, then the write to these five bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the STATUS register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, `CLRF STATUS` will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the STATUS register as `000u u1uu` (where `u` = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only `BCF`, `BSF`, `SWAPF`, `MOVFF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the STATUS register, because these instructions do not affect the `Z`, `C`, `DC`, `OV`, or `N` bits from the STATUS register. For other instructions not affecting any status bits, see Table 20-2.

Note: The C and DC bits operate as a $\overline{\text{borrow}}$ and digit $\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit respectively, in subtraction.

REGISTER 4-2: STATUS REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **N:** Negative bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates whether the result was negative (ALU MSB = 1).
`1` = Result was negative
`0` = Result was positive

bit 3 **OV:** Overflow bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates an overflow of the 7-bit magnitude, which causes the sign bit (bit7) to change state.
`1` = Overflow occurred for signed arithmetic (in this arithmetic operation)
`0` = No overflow occurred

bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit
`1` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero
`0` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC:** Digit carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit
For `ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, and `SUBWF` instructions
`1` = A carry-out from the 4th low order bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the 4th low order bit of the result

Note: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the bit 4 or bit 3 of the source register.

bit 0 **C:** Carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit
For `ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, and `SUBWF` instructions
`1` = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

Note: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high or low order bit of the source register.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.14 RCON Register

The Reset Control (RCON) register contains flag bits that allow differentiation between the sources of a device RESET. These flags include the $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$, $\overline{POR}$, $\overline{BOR}$ and $\overline{RI}$ bits. This register is readable and writable.

Note 1: If the BOREN configuration bit is set (Brown-out Reset enabled), the $\overline{BOR}$ bit is '1' on a Power-on Reset. After a Brown-out Reset has occurred, the BOR bit will be cleared, and must be set by firmware to indicate the occurrence of the next Brown-out Reset.

2: It is recommended that the $\overline{POR}$ bit be set after a Power-on Reset has been detected, so that subsequent Power-on Resets may be detected.

REGISTER 4-3: RCON REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R-1	R-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	—	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (16CXXX Compatibility mode)

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{RI}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
1 = The RESET instruction was not executed
0 = The RESET instruction was executed causing a device RESET
(must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

bit 3 **$\overline{TO}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
1 = After power-up, CLRWDT instruction, or SLEEP instruction
0 = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 2 **$\overline{PD}$:** Power-down Detection Flag bit
1 = After power-up or by the CLRWDT instruction
0 = By execution of the SLEEP instruction

bit 1 **$\overline{POR}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
1 = A Power-on Reset has not occurred
0 = A Power-on Reset occurred
(must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

bit 0 **$\overline{BOR}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
1 = A Brown-out Reset has not occurred
0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred
(must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.0 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

The FLASH Program Memory is readable, writable, and erasable during normal operation over the entire VDD range.

A read from program memory is executed on one byte at a time. A write to program memory is executed on blocks of 8 bytes at a time. Program memory is erased in blocks of 64 bytes at a time. A bulk erase operation may not be issued from user code.

Writing or erasing program memory will cease instruction fetches until the operation is complete. The program memory cannot be accessed during the write or erase, therefore, code cannot execute. An internal programming timer terminates program memory writes and erases.

A value written to program memory does not need to be a valid instruction. Executing a program memory location that forms an invalid instruction results in a NOP.

5.1 Table Reads and Table Writes

In order to read and write program memory, there are two operations that allow the processor to move bytes between the program memory space and the data RAM:

- Table Read (TBLRD)
- Table Write (TBLWT)

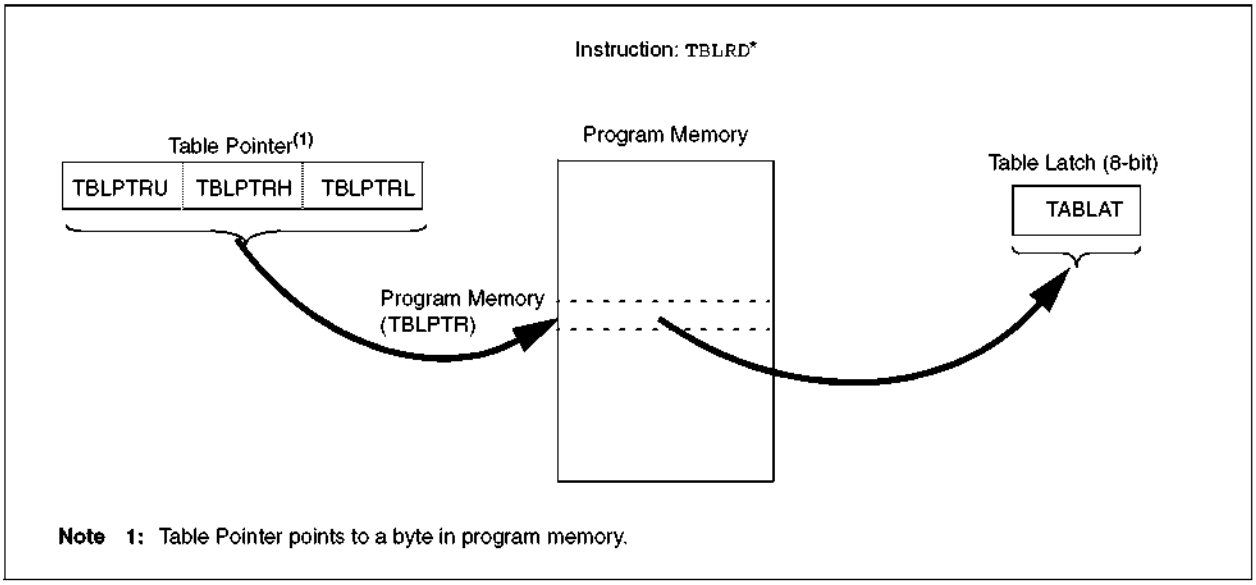
The program memory space is 16-bits wide, while the data RAM space is 8-bits wide. Table Reads and Table Writes move data between these two memory spaces through an 8-bit register (TABLAT).

Table Read operations retrieve data from program memory and places it into the data RAM space. Figure 5-1 shows the operation of a Table Read with program memory and data RAM.

Table Write operations store data from the data memory space into holding registers in program memory. The procedure to write the contents of the holding registers into program memory is detailed in Section 5.5, "Writing to FLASH Program Memory". Figure 5-2 shows the operation of a Table Write with program memory and data RAM.

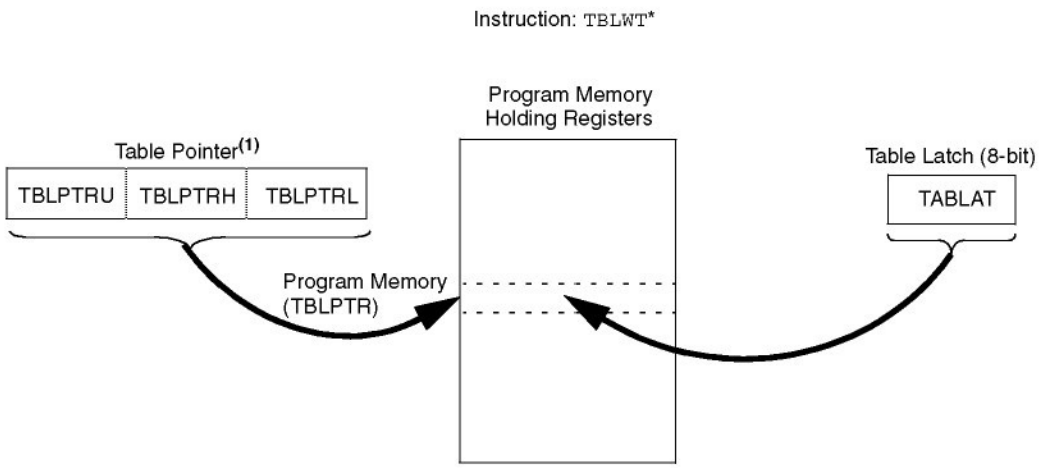
Table operations work with byte entities. A table block containing data, rather than program instructions, is not required to be word aligned. Therefore, a table block can start and end at any byte address. If a Table Write is being used to write executable code into program memory, program instructions will need to be word aligned.

FIGURE 5-1: TABLE READ OPERATION



Note 1: Table Pointer points to a byte in program memory.

FIGURE 5-2: TABLE WRITE OPERATION



Note 1: Table Pointer actually points to one of eight holding registers, the address of which is determined by TBLPTRL<2:0>. The process for physically writing data to the Program Memory Array is discussed in Section 5.5.

5.2 Control Registers

Several control registers are used in conjunction with the TBLRD and TBLWT instructions. These include the:

- EECON1 register
- EECON2 register
- TABLAT register
- TBLPTR registers

5.2.1 EECON1 AND EECON2 REGISTERS

EECON1 is the control register for memory accesses.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the memory write and erase sequences.

Control bit EEPGD determines if the access will be a program or data EEPROM memory access. When clear, any subsequent operations will operate on the data EEPROM memory. When set, any subsequent operations will operate on the program memory.

Control bit CFGS determines if the access will be to the configuration registers or to program memory/data EEPROM memory. When set, subsequent operations will operate on configuration registers, regardless of EEPGD (see "Special Features of the CPU", Section 19.0). When clear, memory selection access is determined by EEPGD.

The FREE bit, when set, will allow a program memory erase operation. When the FREE bit is set, the erase operation is initiated on the next WR command. When FREE is clear, only writes are enabled.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location. It is necessary to reload the data and address registers (EEDATA and EEADR), due to RESET values of zero.

Control bit WR initiates write operations. This bit cannot be cleared, only set, in software. It is cleared in hardware at the completion of the write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental or premature termination of a write operation.

Note:	Interrupt flag bit EEIF, in the PIR2 register, is set when the write is complete. It must be cleared in software.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 5-1: EECON1 REGISTER (ADDRESS FA6h)

R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **EEPGD:** FLASH Program or Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Access FLASH Program memory
0 = Access Data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** FLASH Program/Data EE or Configuration Select bit
1 = Access Configuration registers
0 = Access FLASH Program or Data EEPROM memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **FREE:** FLASH Row Erase Enable bit
1 = Erase the program memory row addressed by TBLPTR on the next WR command (cleared by completion of erase operation)
0 = Perform write only

bit 3 **WRERR:** FLASH Program/Data EE Error Flag bit
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any RESET during self-timed programming in normal operation)
0 = The write operation completed

Note: When a WRERR occurs, the EEPGD and CFGS bits are not cleared. This allows tracing of the error condition.

bit 2 **WREN:** FLASH Program/Data EE Write Enable bit
1 = Allows write cycles
0 = Inhibits write to the EEPROM

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a data EEPROM erase/write cycle or a program memory erase cycle or write cycle. (The operation is self timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.)
0 = Write cycle to the EEPROM is complete

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates an EEPROM read (Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software. RD bit cannot be set when EEPGD = 1.)
0 = Does not initiate an EEPROM read

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

5.2.2 TABLAT - TABLE LATCH REGISTER

The Table Latch (TABLAT) is an 8-bit register mapped into the SFR space. The Table Latch is used to hold 8-bit data during data transfers between program memory and data RAM.

5.2.3 TBLPTR - TABLE POINTER REGISTER

The Table Pointer (TBLPTR) addresses a byte within the program memory. The TBLPTR is comprised of three SFR registers: Table Pointer Upper Byte, Table Pointer High Byte and Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTRU:TBLPTRH:TBLPTRL). These three registers join to form a 22-bit wide pointer. The low order 21 bits allow the device to address up to 2 Mbytes of program memory space. The 22nd bit allows access to the Device ID, the User ID and the Configuration bits.

The table pointer, TBLPTR, is used by the `TBLRD` and `TBLWT` instructions. These instructions can update the TBLPTR in one of four ways based on the table operation. These operations are shown in Table 5-1. These operations on the TBLPTR only affect the low order 21 bits.

5.2.4 TABLE POINTER BOUNDARIES

TBLPTR is used in reads, writes, and erases of the FLASH program memory.

When a `TBLRD` is executed, all 22 bits of the Table Pointer determine which byte is read from program memory into TABLAT.

When a `TBLWT` is executed, the three LSbs of the Table Pointer (TBLPTR<2:0>) determine which of the eight program memory holding registers is written to. When the timed write to program memory (long write) begins, the 19 MSbs of the Table Pointer, TBLPTR (TBLPTR<21:3>), will determine which program memory block of 8 bytes is written to. For more detail, see Section 5.5 ("Writing to FLASH Program Memory").

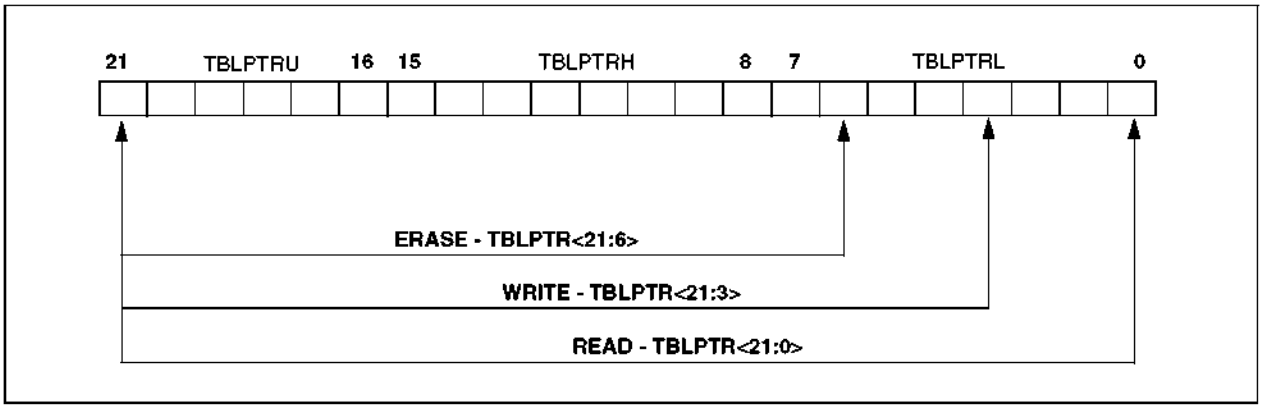
When an erase of program memory is executed, the 16 MSbs of the Table Pointer (TBLPTR<21:6>) point to the 64-byte block that will be erased. The Least Significant bits (TBLPTR<5:0>) are ignored.

Figure 5-3 describes the relevant boundaries of TBLPTR based on FLASH program memory operations.

TABLE 5-1: TABLE POINTER OPERATIONS WITH `TBLRD` AND `TBLWT` INSTRUCTIONS

Example	Operation on Table Pointer
`TBLRD*` `TBLWT*`	TBLPTR is not modified
`TBLRD*+` `TBLWT*+`	TBLPTR is incremented after the read/write
`TBLRD*-` `TBLWT*-`	TBLPTR is decremented after the read/write
`TBLRD+*` `TBLWT+*`	TBLPTR is incremented before the read/write

FIGURE 5-3: TABLE POINTER BOUNDARIES BASED ON OPERATION



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

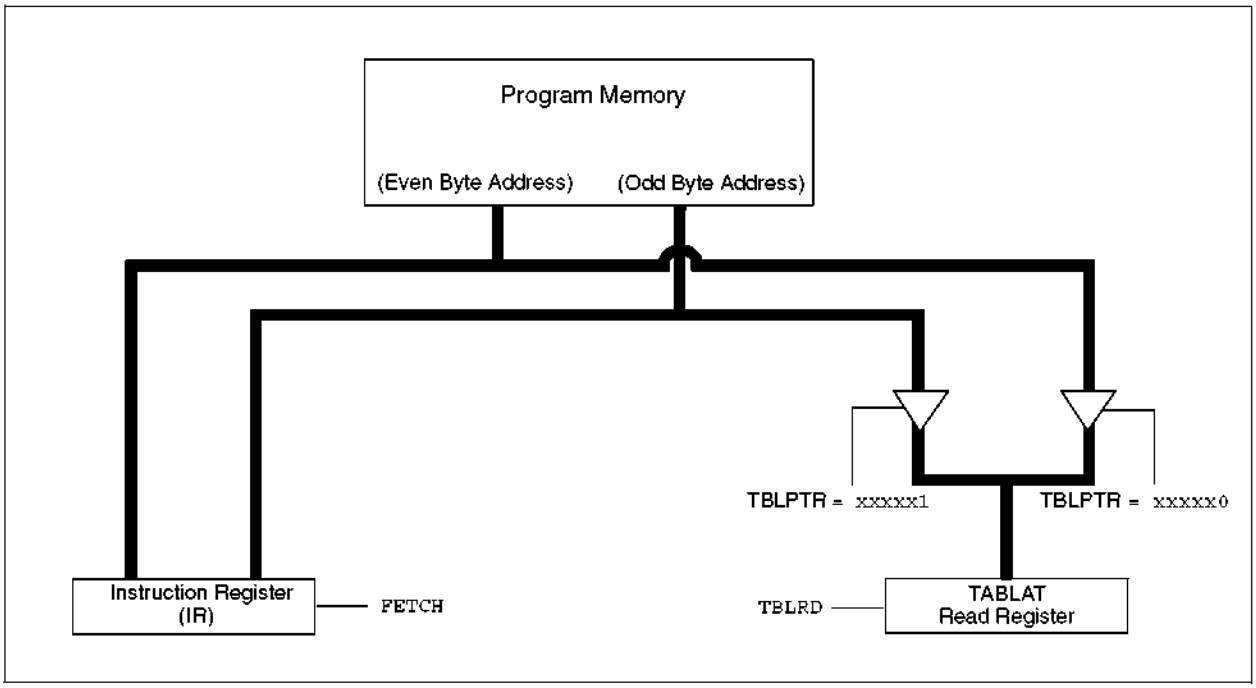
5.3 Reading the FLASH Program Memory

The TBLRD instruction is used to retrieve data from program memory and place into data RAM. Table Reads from program memory are performed one byte at a time.

TBLPTR points to a byte address in program space. Executing TBLRD places the byte pointed to into TABLAT. In addition, TBLPTR can be modified automatically for the next Table Read operation.

The internal program memory is typically organized by words. The Least Significant bit of the address selects between the high and low bytes of the word. Figure 5-4 shows the interface between the internal program memory and the TABLAT.

FIGURE 5-4: READS FROM FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY



EXAMPLE 5-1: READING A FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WORD

```
            MOVLW CODE_ADDR_UPPER          ; Load TBLPTR with the base
            MOVWF TBLPTRU                  ; address of the word
            MOVLW CODE_ADDR_HIGH
            MOVWF TBLPTRH
            MOVLW CODE_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF TBLPTRL
READ_WORD
            TBLRD*+                        ; read into TABLAT and increment
            MOVF TABLAT, W                 ; get data
            MOVWF WORD_EVEN
            TBLRD*+                        ; read into TABLAT and increment
            MOVF TABLAT, W                 ; get data
            MOVWF WORD_ODD
```

5.4 Erasing FLASH Program memory

The minimum erase block is 32 words or 64 bytes. Only through the use of an external programmer, or through ICSP control can larger blocks of program memory be bulk erased. Word erase in the FLASH array is not supported.

When initiating an erase sequence from the microcontroller itself, a block of 64 bytes of program memory is erased. The Most Significant 16 bits of the TBLPTR<21:6> point to the block being erased. TBLPTR<5:0> are ignored.

The EECON1 register commands the erase operation. The EEPGD bit must be set to point to the FLASH program memory. The WREN bit must be set to enable write operations. The FREE bit is set to select an erase operation.

For protection, the write initiate sequence for EECON2 must be used.

A long write is necessary for erasing the internal FLASH. Instruction execution is halted while in a long write cycle. The long write will be terminated by the internal programming timer.

5.4.1 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ERASE SEQUENCE

The sequence of events for erasing a block of internal program memory location is:

1. Load table pointer with address of row being erased.
2. Set EEPGD bit to point to program memory, clear CFGS bit to access program memory, set WREN bit to enable writes, and set FREE bit to enable the erase.
3. Disable interrupts.
4. Write 55h to EECON2.
5. Write AAh to EECON2.
6. Set the WR bit. This will begin the row erase cycle.
7. The CPU will stall for duration of the erase (about 2 ms using internal timer).
8. Re-enable interrupts.

EXAMPLE 5-2: ERASING A FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ROW

```
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER     ; load TBLPTR with the base
                MOVWF   TBLPTRU             ; address of the memory block
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
                MOVWF   TBLPTRH
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   TBLPTRL
    ERASE_ROW
                BSF     EECON1,EEPGD        ; point to FLASH program memory
                BCF     EECON1,CFGS         ; access FLASH program memory
                BSF     EECON1,WREN         ; enable write to memory
                BSF     EECON1,FREE         ; enable Row Erase operation
                BCF     INTCON,GIE          ; disable interrupts
                MOVLW   55h
Required        MOVWF   EECON2              ; write 55h
Sequence        MOVLW   AAh
                MOVWF   EECON2              ; write AAh
                BSF     EECON1,WR           ; start erase (CPU stall)
                BSF     INTCON,GIE          ; re-enable interrupts
```


© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.5 Writing to FLASH Program Memory

The minimum programming block is 4 words or 8 bytes. Word or byte programming is not supported.

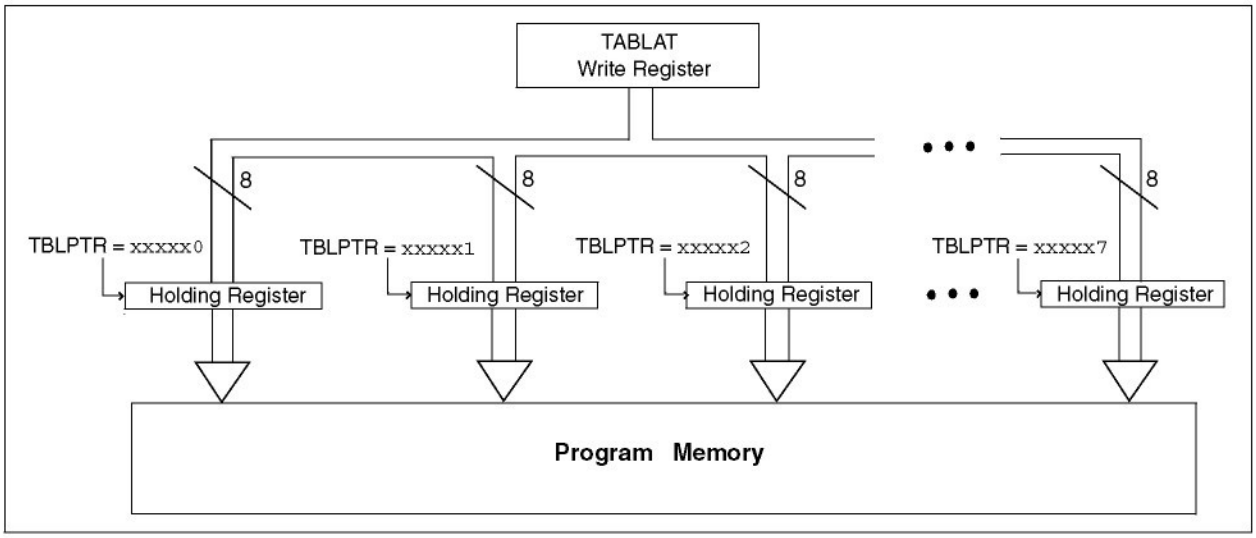
Table Writes are used internally to load the holding registers needed to program the FLASH memory. There are 8 holding registers used by the Table Writes for programming.

Since the Table Latch (TABLAT) is only a single byte, the TBLWT instruction has to be executed 8 times for each programming operation. All of the Table Write operations will essentially be short writes, because only the holding registers are written. At the end of updating 8 registers, the EECON1 register must be written to, to start the programming operation with a long write.

The long write is necessary for programming the internal FLASH. Instruction execution is halted while in a long write cycle. The long write will be terminated by the internal programming timer.

The EEPROM on-chip timer controls the write time. The write/erase voltages are generated by an on-chip charge pump rated to operate over the voltage range of the device for byte or word operations.

FIGURE 5-5: TABLE WRITES TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY



5.5.1 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCE

The sequence of events for programming an internal program memory location should be:

1. Read 64 bytes into RAM.
2. Update data values in RAM as necessary.
3. Load Table Pointer with address being erased.
4. Do the row erase procedure.
5. Load Table Pointer with address of first byte being written.
6. Write the first 8 bytes into the holding registers with auto-increment (TBLWT*+ or TBLWT+*).
7. Set EEPGD bit to point to program memory, clear the CFGS bit to access program memory, and set WREN to enable byte writes.
8. Disable interrupts.
9. Write 55h to EECON2.
10. Write AAh to EECON2.
11. Set the WR bit. This will begin the write cycle.
12. The CPU will stall for duration of the write (about 2 ms using internal timer).
13. Re-enable interrupts.
14. Repeat steps 6-14 seven times, to write 64 bytes.
15. Verify the memory (Table Read).

This procedure will require about 18 ms to update one row of 64 bytes of memory. An example of the required code is given in Example 5-3.

Note:	Before setting the WR bit, the table pointer address needs to be within the intended address range of the 8 bytes in the holding registers.

EXAMPLE 5-3: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

```
            MOVLW   D'64'                   ; number of bytes in erase block
            MOVWF   COUNTER
            MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_HIGH        ; point to buffer
            MOVWF   FSR0H
            MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF   FSR0L
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER         ; Load TBLPTR with the base
            MOVWF   TBLPTRU                 ; address of the memory block
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
            MOVWF   TBLPTRH
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF   TBLPTRL
READ_BLOCK
            TBLRD*+                         ; read into TABLAT, and inc
            MOVF    TABLAT, W               ; get data
            MOVWF   POSTINC0                ; store data
            DECFSZ  COUNTER                 ; done?
            BRA     READ_BLOCK              ; repeat
MODIFY_WORD
            MOVLW   DATA_ADDR_HIGH          ; point to buffer
            MOVWF   FSR0H
            MOVLW   DATA_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF   FSR0L
            MOVLW   NEW_DATA_LOW            ; update buffer word
            MOVWF   POSTINC0
            MOVLW   NEW_DATA_HIGH
            MOVWF   INDF0
ERASE_BLOCK
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER         ; load TBLPTR with the base
            MOVWF   TBLPTRU                 ; address of the memory block
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
            MOVWF   TBLPTRH
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF   TBLPTRL
            BSF     EECON1,EEPGD            ; point to FLASH program memory
            BCF     EECON1,CFGS             ; access FLASH program memory
            BSF     EECON1,WREN             ; enable write to memory
            BSF     EECON1,FREE             ; enable Row Erase operation
            BCF     INTCON,GIE              ; disable interrupts
            MOVLW   55h
            MOVWF   EECON2                  ; write 55h
            MOVLW   AAh
            MOVWF   EECON2                  ; write AAh
            BSF     EECON1,WR               ; start erase (CPU stall)
            BSF     INTCON,GIE              ; re-enable interrupts
            TBLRD*-                         ; dummy read decrement
WRITE_BUFFER_BACK
            MOVLW   8                       ; number of write buffer groups of 8 bytes
            MOVWF   COUNTER_HI
            MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_HIGH        ; point to buffer
            MOVWF   FSR0H
            MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF   FSR0L
PROGRAM_LOOP
            MOVLW   8                       ; number of bytes in holding register
            MOVWF   COUNTER
WRITE_WORD_TO_HREGS
            MOVF    POSTINC0, W             ; get low byte of buffer data
            MOVWF   TABLAT                  ; present data to table latch
            TBLWT+*                         ; write data, perform a short write
                                            ; to internal TBLWT holding register.
            DECFSZ  COUNTER                 ; loop until buffers are full
            BRA     WRITE_WORD_TO_HREGS
```


© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

EXAMPLE 5-3: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY (CONTINUED)

```
PROGRAM_MEMORY
            BSF     EECON1,EEPGD            ; point to FLASH program memory
            BCF     EECON1,CFGS             ; access FLASH program memory
            BSF     EECON1,WREN             ; enable write to memory
            BCF     INTCON,GIE              ; disable interrupts
            MOVLW   55h
Required    MOVWF   EECON2                  ; write 55h
Sequence    MOVLW   AAh
            MOVWF   EECON2                  ; write AAh
            BSF     EECON1,WR               ; start program (CPU stall)
            BSF     INTCON,GIE              ; re-enable interrupts
            DECFSZ  COUNTER_HI              ; loop until done
            BRA     PROGRAM_LOOP
            BCF     EECON1,WREN             ; disable write to memory
```

5.5.2 WRITE VERIFY

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the memory should be verified against the original value. This should be used in applications where excessive writes can stress bits near the specification limit.

5.5.3 UNEXPECTED TERMINATION OF WRITE OPERATION

If a write is terminated by an unplanned event, such as loss of power or an unexpected RESET, the memory location just programmed should be verified and reprogrammed if needed.The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, users can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location.

5.5.4 PROTECTION AGAINST SPURIOUS WRITES

To protect against spurious writes to FLASH program memory, the write initiate sequence must also be followed. See "Special Features of the CPU" (Section 19.0) for more detail.

5.6 FLASH Program Operation During Code Protection

See "Special Features of the CPU" (Section 19.0) for details on code protection of FLASH program memory.

TABLE 5-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PROGRAM FLASH MEMORY

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
FF8h	TBLPTRU	—	—	bit21	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					--00 0000	--00 0000
FF7h	TBPLTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
FF6h	TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
FF5h	TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								0000 0000	0000 0000
FF2h	INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
FA7h	EECON2	EEPROM Control Register2 (not a physical register)								—	—
FA6h	EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000
FA2h	IPR2	—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	---1 1111
FA1h	PIR2	—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	---0 0000
FA0h	PIE2	—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	---0 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, r = reserved, - = unimplemented read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used during FLASH/EEPROM access.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

6.0 DATA EEPROM MEMORY

The Data EEPROM is readable and writable during normal operation over the entire VDD range. The data memory is not directly mapped in the register file space. Instead, it is indirectly addressed through the Special Function Registers (SFR).

There are four SFRs used to read and write the program and data EEPROM memory. These registers are:

- EECON1
- EECON2
- EEDATA
- EEADR

The EEPROM data memory allows byte read and write. When interfacing to the data memory block, EEDATA holds the 8-bit data for read/write and EEADR holds the address of the EEPROM location being accessed. These devices have 256 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 0h to FFh.

The EEPROM data memory is rated for high erase/write cycles. A byte write automatically erases the location and writes the new data (erase-before-write). The write time is controlled by an on-chip timer. The write time will vary with voltage and temperature, as well as from chip to chip. Please refer to parameter D122 (Electrical Characteristics, Section 22.0) for exact limits.

6.1 EEADR

The address register can address up to a maximum of 256 bytes of data EEPROM.

6.2 EECON1 and EECON2 Registers

EECON1 is the control register for EEPROM memory accesses.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the EEPROM write sequence.

Control bits RD and WR initiate read and write operations, respectively. These bits cannot be cleared, only set, in software. They are cleared in hardware at the completion of the read or write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental or premature termination of a write operation.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location. It is necessary to reload the data and address registers (EEDATA and EEADR), due to the RESET condition forcing the contents of the registers to zero.

Note:	Interrupt flag bit, EEIF in the PIR2 register, is set when write is complete. It must be cleared in software.

REGISTER 6-1: EECON1 REGISTER (ADDRESS FA6h)

R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **EEPGD:** FLASH Program or Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Access FLASH Program memory
0 = Access Data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** FLASH Program/Data EE or Configuration Select bit
1 = Access Configuration or Calibration registers
0 = Access FLASH Program or Data EEPROM memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **FREE:** FLASH Row Erase Enable bit
1 = Erase the program memory row addressed by TBLPTR on the next WR command (cleared by completion of erase operation)
0 = Perform write only

bit 3 **WRERR:** FLASH Program/Data EE Error Flag bit
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ or any WDT Reset during self-timed programming in normal operation)
0 = The write operation completed

Note: When a WRERR occurs, the EEPGD or FREE bits are not cleared. This allows tracing of the error condition.

bit 2 **WREN:** FLASH Program/Data EE Write Enable bit
1 = Allows write cycles
0 = Inhibits write to the EEPROM

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a data EEPROM erase/write cycle or a program memory erase cycle or write cycle. (The operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.)
0 = Write cycle to the EEPROM is complete

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates an EEPROM read (Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software. RD bit cannot be set when EEPGD = 1.)
0 = Does not initiate an EEPROM read

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

6.3 Reading the Data EEPROM Memory

To read a data memory location, the user must write the address to the EEADR register, clear the EEPGD control bit (EECON1<7>), clear the CFGS control bit (EECON1<6>), and then set control bit RD (EECON1<0>). The data is available for the very next instruction cycle; therefore, the EEDATA register can be read by the next instruction. EEDATA will hold this value until another read operation, or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

EXAMPLE 6-1: DATA EEPROM READ

```
MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR   ;
MOVWF   EEADR          ; Data Memory Address to read
BCF     EECON1, EEPGD  ; Point to DATA memory
BCF     EECON1, CFGS   ; Access program FLASH or Data EEPROM memory
BSF     EECON1, RD     ; EEPROM Read
MOVF    EEDATA, W      ; W = EEDATA
```

6.4 Writing to the Data EEPROM Memory

To write an EEPROM data location, the address must first be written to the EEADR register and the data written to the EEDATA register. Then the sequence in Example 6-2 must be followed to initiate the write cycle.

The write will not initiate if the above sequence is not exactly followed (write 55h to EECON2, write AAh to EECON2, then set WR bit) for each byte. It is strongly recommended that interrupts be disabled during this code segment.

Additionally, the WREN bit in EECON1 must be set to enable writes. This mechanism prevents accidental writes to data EEPROM due to unexpected code execution (i.e., runaway programs). The WREN bit should be kept clear at all times, except when updating the EEPROM. The WREN bit is not cleared by hardware.

After a write sequence has been initiated, EECON1, EEADR and EDATA cannot be modified. The WR bit will be inhibited from being set unless the WREN bit is set. The WREN bit must be set on a previous instruction. Both WR and WREN cannot be set with the same instruction.

At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared in hardware and the EEPROM Write Complete Interrupt Flag bit (EEIF) is set. The user may either enable this interrupt, or poll this bit. EEIF must be cleared by software.

EXAMPLE 6-2: DATA EEPROM WRITE

```
                MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR   ;
                MOVWF   EEADR          ; Data Memory Address to read
                MOVLW   DATA_EE_DATA   ;
                MOVWF   EEDATA         ; Data Memory Value to write
                BCF     EECON1, EEPGD  ; Point to DATA memory
                BCF     EECON1, CFGS   ; Access program FLASH or Data EEPROM memory
                BSF     EECON1, WREN   ; Enable writes


                BCF     INTCON, GIE    ; Disable interrupts
  Required      MOVLW   55h            ;
  Sequence      MOVWF   EECON2         ; Write 55h
                MOVLW   AAh            ;
                MOVWF   EECON2         ; Write AAh
                BSF     EECON1, WR     ; Set WR bit to begin write
                BSF     INTCON, GIE    ; Enable interrupts


                .                      ; user code execution
                .
                .
                BCF     EECON1, WREN   ; Disable writes on write complete (EEIF set)
```

6.5 Write Verify

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the memory should be verified against the original value. This should be used in applications where excessive writes can stress bits near the specification limit.

6.6 Protection Against Spurious Write

There are conditions when the device may not want to write to the data EEPROM memory. To protect against spurious EEPROM writes, various mechanisms have been built-in. On power-up, the WREN bit is cleared. Also, the Power-up Timer (72 ms duration) prevents EEPROM write.

The write initiate sequence and the WREN bit together help prevent an accidental write during brown-out, power glitch, or software malfunction.

6.7 Operation During Code Protect

Data EEPROM memory has its own code protect mechanism. External Read and Write operations are disabled if either of these mechanisms are enabled.

The microcontroller itself can both read and write to the internal Data EEPROM, regardless of the state of the code protect configuration bit. Refer to "Special Features of the CPU" (Section 19.0) for additional information.

6.8 Using the Data EEPROM

The data EEPROM is a high endurance, byte addressable array that has been optimized for the storage of frequently changing information (e.g., program variables or other data that are updated often). Frequently changing values will typically be updated more often than specification D124. If this is not the case, an array refresh must be performed. For this reason, variables that change infrequently (such as constants, IDs, calibration, etc.) should be stored in FLASH program memory.

A simple data EEPROM refresh routine is shown in Example 6-3.

Note:	If data EEPROM is only used to store constants and/or data that changes rarely, an array refresh is likely not required. See specification D124.

EXAMPLE 6-3: DATA EEPROM REFRESH ROUTINE

```
        clrf    EEADR                   ; Start at address 0
        bcf     EECON1,CFGS             ; Set for memory
        bcf     EECON1,EEPGD            ; Set for Data EEPROM
        bcf     INTCON,GIE              ; Disable interrupts
        bsf     EECON1,WREN             ; Enable writes
Loop                                    ; Loop to refresh array
        bsf     EECON1,RD               ; Read current address
        movlw   55h                     ;
        movwf   EECON2                  ; Write 55h
        movlw   AAh                     ;
        movwf   EECON2                  ; Write AAh
        bsf     EECON1,WR               ; Set WR bit to begin write
        btfsc   EECON1,WR               ; Wait for write to complete
        bra     $-2
        incfsz  EEADR,F                 ; Increment address
        bra     Loop                    ; Not zero, do it again

        bcf     EECON1,WREN             ; Disable writes
        bsf     INTCON,GIE              ; Enable interrupts
```


© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 6-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH DATA EEPROM MEMORY

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
FF2h	INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	T0IE	INTE	RBIE	T0IF	INTF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
FA9h	EEADR	EEPROM Address Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
FA8h	EEDATA	EEPROM Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
FA7h	EECON2	EEPROM Control Register2 (not a physical register)								—	—
FA6h	EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000
FA2h	IPR2	—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	---1 1111
FA1h	PIR2	—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	---0 0000
FA0h	PIE2	—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	---0 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, r = reserved, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used during FLASH/EEPROM access.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

7.0 8 X 8 HARDWARE MULTIPLIER

7.1 Introduction

An 8 x 8 hardware multiplier is included in the ALU of the PIC18FXX2 devices. By making the multiply a hardware operation, it completes in a single instruction cycle. This is an unsigned multiply that gives a 16-bit result. The result is stored into the 16-bit product register pair (PRODH:PRODL). The multiplier does not affect any flags in the ALUSTA register.

Making the 8 x 8 multiplier execute in a single cycle gives the following advantages:

- Higher computational throughput
- Reduces code size requirements for multiply algorithms

The performance increase allows the device to be used in applications previously reserved for Digital Signal Processors.

Table 7-1 shows a performance comparison between enhanced devices using the single cycle hardware multiply, and performing the same function without the hardware multiply.

TABLE 7-1: PERFORMANCE COMPARISON

Routine	Multiply Method	Program Memory (Words)	Cycles (Max)	Time		
				@ 40 MHz	@ 10 MHz	@ 4 MHz
8 x 8 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	13	69	6.9 µs	27.6 µs	69 µs
	Hardware multiply	1	1	100 ns	400 ns	1 µs
8 x 8 signed	Without hardware multiply	33	91	9.1 µs	36.4 µs	91 µs
	Hardware multiply	6	6	600 ns	2.4 µs	6 µs
16 x 16 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	21	242	24.2 µs	96.8 µs	242 µs
	Hardware multiply	24	24	2.4 µs	9.6 µs	24 µs
16 x 16 signed	Without hardware multiply	52	254	25.4 µs	102.6 µs	254 µs
	Hardware multiply	36	36	3.6 µs	14.4 µs	36 µs

7.2 Operation

Example 7-1 shows the sequence to do an 8 x 8 unsigned multiply. Only one instruction is required when one argument of the multiply is already loaded in the WREG register.

Example 7-2 shows the sequence to do an 8 x 8 signed multiply. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument's Most Significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EXAMPLE 7-1: 8 x 8 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVF    ARG1, W     ;
MULWF   ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                    ;   PRODH:PRODL
```

EXAMPLE 7-2: 8 x 8 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVF    ARG1,  W
MULWF   ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                    ; PRODH:PRODL
BTFSC   ARG2,  SB   ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF   PRODH, F    ; PRODH = PRODH
                    ;         - ARG1
MOVF    ARG2,  W
BTFSC   ARG1,  SB   ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF   PRODH, F    ; PRODH = PRODH
                      ;         - ARG2
```

Example 7-3 shows the sequence to do a 16 x 16 unsigned multiply. Equation 7-1 shows the algorithm that is used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers, RES3:RES0.

EQUATION 7-1: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

$$
\begin{aligned}
RES3{:}RES0 &= ARG1H{:}ARG1L \bullet ARG2H{:}ARG2L \\
&= (ARG1H \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1H \bullet ARG2L \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2L)
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 7-3: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES1     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES0     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES3     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES2     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1,  F        ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2,  F        ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3,  F        ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W        ;
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1,  F        ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2,  F        ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3,  F        ;
```

Example 7-4 shows the sequence to do a 16 x 16 signed multiply. Equation 7-2 shows the algorithm used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers, RES3:RES0. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument pairs Most Significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EQUATION 7-2: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

RES3:RES0

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \text{ARG1H:ARG1L} \bullet \text{ARG2H:ARG2L} \\
&= (\text{ARG1H} \bullet \text{ARG2H} \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (\text{ARG1H} \bullet \text{ARG2L} \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (\text{ARG1L} \bullet \text{ARG2H} \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (\text{ARG1L} \bullet \text{ARG2L}) + \\
&\quad (-1 \bullet \text{ARG2H<7>} \bullet \text{ARG1H:ARG1L} \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (-1 \bullet \text{ARG1H<7>} \bullet \text{ARG2H:ARG2L} \bullet 2^{16})
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 7-4: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES1     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES0     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES3     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES2     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1,  F        ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2,  F        ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3,  F        ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W        ;
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1,  F        ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2,  F        ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3,  F        ;
;
    BTFSS   ARG2H, 7        ; ARG2H:ARG2L neg?
    BRA     SIGN_ARG1       ; no, check ARG1
    MOVF    ARG1L, W        ;
    SUBWF   RES2            ;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W        ;
    SUBWFB  RES3
;
SIGN_ARG1
    BTFSS   ARG1H, 7        ; ARG1H:ARG1L neg?
    BRA     CONT_CODE       ; no, done
    MOVF    ARG2L, W        ;
    SUBWF   RES2            ;
    MOVF    ARG2H, W        ;
    SUBWFB  RES3
;
CONT_CODE
      :
```


© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.0 INTERRUPTS

The PIC18FXX2 devices have multiple interrupt sources and an interrupt priority feature that allows each interrupt source to be assigned a high priority level or a low priority level. The high priority interrupt vector is at 000008h and the low priority interrupt vector is at 000018h. High priority interrupt events will override any low priority interrupts that may be in progress.

There are ten registers which are used to control interrupt operation. These registers are:

- RCON
- INTCON
- INTCON2
- INTCON3
- PIR1, PIR2
- PIE1, PIE2
- IPR1, IPR2

It is recommended that the Microchip header files supplied with MPLAB® IDE be used for the symbolic bit names in these registers. This allows the assembler/compiler to automatically take care of the placement of these bits within the specified register.

Each interrupt source, except INT0, has three bits to control its operation. The functions of these bits are:

- Flag bit to indicate that an interrupt event occurred
- Enable bit that allows program execution to branch to the interrupt vector address when the flag bit is set
- Priority bit to select high priority or low priority

The interrupt priority feature is enabled by setting the IPEN bit (RCON<7>). When interrupt priority is enabled, there are two bits which enable interrupts globally. Setting the GIEH bit (INTCON<7>) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit set. Setting the GIEL bit (INTCON<6>) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit cleared. When the interrupt flag, enable bit and appropriate global interrupt enable bit are set, the interrupt will vector immediately to address 000008h or 000018h, depending on the priority level. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits.

When the IPEN bit is cleared (default state), the interrupt priority feature is disabled and interrupts are compatible with PICmicro® mid-range devices. In Compatibility mode, the interrupt priority bits for each source have no effect. INTCON<6> is the PEIE bit, which enables/disables all peripheral interrupt sources. INTCON<7> is the GIE bit, which enables/disables all interrupt sources. All interrupts branch to address 000008h in Compatibility mode.

When an interrupt is responded to, the Global Interrupt Enable bit is cleared to disable further interrupts. If the IPEN bit is cleared, this is the GIE bit. If interrupt priority levels are used, this will be either the GIEH or GIEL bit. High priority interrupt sources can interrupt a low priority interrupt.

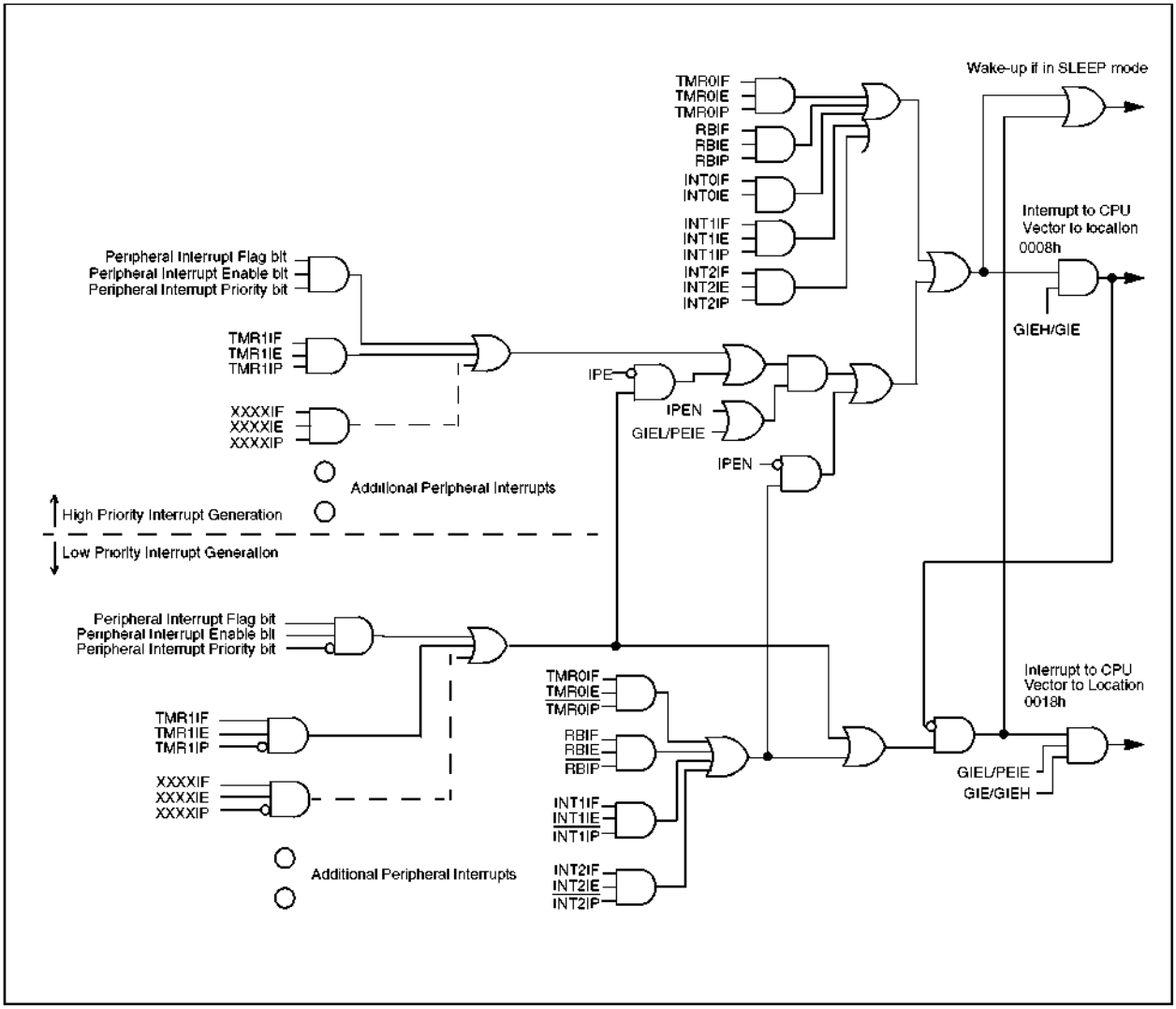
The return address is pushed onto the stack and the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector address (000008h or 000018h). Once in the Interrupt Service Routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bits must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid recursive interrupts.

The "return from interrupt" instruction, `RETFIE`, exits the interrupt routine and sets the GIE bit (GIEH or GIEL if priority levels are used), which re-enables interrupts.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pins or the PORTB input change interrupt, the interrupt latency will be three to four instruction cycles. The exact latency is the same for one or two-cycle instructions. Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the status of their corresponding enable bit or the GIE bit.

Note:	Do not use the `MOVFF` instruction to modify any of the Interrupt control registers while **any** interrupt is enabled. Doing so may cause erratic microcontroller behavior.

FIGURE 8-1: INTERRUPT LOGIC



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.1 INTCON Registers

The INTCON Registers are readable and writable registers, which contain various enable, priority and flag bits.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

REGISTER 8-1: INTCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GIE/GIEH:** Global Interrupt Enable bit
When IPEN = 0:
1 = Enables all unmasked interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts
When IPEN = 1:
1 = Enables all high priority interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

bit 6 **PEIE/GIEL:** Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit
When IPEN = 0:
1 = Enables all unmasked peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts
When IPEN = 1:
1 = Enables all low priority peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all low priority peripheral interrupts

bit 5 **TMR0IE:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR0 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR0 overflow interrupt

bit 4 **INT0IE:** INT0 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT0 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT0 external interrupt

bit 3 **RBIE:** RB Port Change Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the RB port change interrupt
0 = Disables the RB port change interrupt

bit 2 **TMR0IF:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow

bit 1 **INT0IF:** INT0 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT0 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT0 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **RBIF:** RB Port Change Interrupt Flag bit
1 = At least one of the RB7:RB4 pins changed state (must be cleared in software)
0 = None of the RB7:RB4 pins have changed state

Note: A mismatch condition will continue to set this bit. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow the bit to be cleared.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 8-2: INTCON2 REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	U-0	R/W-1	U-0	R/W-1
RBPU	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	—	TMR0IP	—	RBIP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$**: PORTB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = All PORTB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual port latch values

bit 6 **INTEDG0**:External Interrupt0 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 5 **INTEDG1**: External Interrupt1 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 4 **INTEDG2**: External Interrupt2 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **TMR0IP**: TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **RBIP**: RB Port Change Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 8-3: INTCON3 REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
INT2IP	INT1IP	—	INT2IE	INT1IE	—	INT2IF	INT1IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **INT2IP:** INT2 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **INT1IP:** INT1 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **INT2IE:** INT2 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT2 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT2 external interrupt

bit 3 **INT1IE:** INT1 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT1 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT1 external interrupt

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **INT2IF:** INT2 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT2 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT2 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **INT1IF:** INT1 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT1 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT1 external interrupt did not occur

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

8.2 PIR Registers

The PIR registers contain the individual flag bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are two Peripheral Interrupt Flag Registers (PIR1, PIR2).

Note 1: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>).

2: User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are cleared prior to enabling an interrupt, and after servicing that interrupt.

REGISTER 8-4: PIR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIF(1):** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A read or a write operation has taken place (must be cleared in software)
0 = No read or write has occurred

bit 6 **ADIF**: A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An A/D conversion completed (must be cleared in software)
0 = The A/D conversion is not complete

bit 5 **RCIF**: USART Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART receive buffer, RCREG, is full (cleared when RCREG is read)
0 = The USART receive buffer is empty

bit 4 **TXIF**: USART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit (see Section 16.0 for details on TXIF functionality)
1 = The USART transmit buffer, TXREG, is empty (cleared when TXREG is written)
0 = The USART transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **SSPIF**: Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The transmission/reception is complete (must be cleared in software)
0 = Waiting to transmit/receive

bit 2 **CCP1IF**: CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused in this mode

bit 1 **TMR2IF:** TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR2 to PR2 match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR2 to PR2 match occurred

bit 0 **TMR1IF:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = MR1 register did not overflow

Note 1: This bit is reserved on PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain this bit clear.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 8-5: PIR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 2

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIF**: Data EEPROM/FLASH Write Operation Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The Write operation is complete (must be cleared in software)
0 = The Write operation is not complete, or has not been started

bit 3 **BCLIF**: Bus Collision Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A bus collision occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No bus collision occurred

bit 2 **LVDIF**: Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A low voltage condition occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The device voltage is above the Low Voltage Detect trip point

bit 1 **TMR3IF**: TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR3 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR3 register did not overflow

bit 0 **CCP2IF**: CCPx Interrupt Flag bit
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused in this mode

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

8.3 PIE Registers

The PIE registers contain the individual enable bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are two Peripheral Interrupt Enable Registers (PIE1, PIE2). When IPEN = 0, the PEIE bit must be set to enable any of these peripheral interrupts.

REGISTER 8-6: PIE1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIE(1):** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the PSP read/write interrupt
0 = Disables the PSP read/write interrupt

bit 6 **ADIE**: A/D Converter Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the A/D interrupt
0 = Disables the A/D interrupt

bit 5 **RCIE**: USART Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART receive interrupt
0 = Disables the USART receive interrupt

bit 4 **TXIE**: USART Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the USART transmit interrupt

bit 3 **SSPIE**: Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the MSSP interrupt
0 = Disables the MSSP interrupt

bit 2 **CCP1IE**: CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt

bit 1 **TMR2IE**: TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt

bit 0 **TMR1IE**: TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR1 overflow interrupt

Note 1: This bit is reserved on PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain this bit clear.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 8-7: PIE2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 2

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIE**: Data EEPROM/FLASH Write Operation Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 3 **BCLIE**: Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 2 **LVDIE**: Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 1 **TMR3IE**: TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR3 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR3 overflow interrupt

bit 0 **CCP2IE**: CCP2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP2 interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

8.4 IPR Registers

The IPR registers contain the individual priority bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are two Peripheral Interrupt Priority Registers (IPR1, IPR2). The operation of the priority bits requires that the Interrupt Priority Enable (IPEN) bit be set.

REGISTER 8-8: IPR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 1

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIP(1):** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **ADIP**: A/D Converter Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **RCIP**: USART Receive Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 4 **TXIP**: USART Transmit Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **SSPIP**: Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 2 **CCP1IP**: CCP1 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **TMR2IP**: TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **TMR1IP**: TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Note 1: This bit is reserved on PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain this bit set.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 8-9: IPR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 2

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIP**: Data EEPROM/FLASH Write Operation Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **BCLIP**: Bus Collision Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 2 **LVDIP**: Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **TMR3IP**: TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **CCP2IP**: CCP2 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

8.5 RCON Register

The RCON register contains the bit which is used to enable prioritized interrupts (IPEN).

REGISTER 8-10: RCON REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R-1	R-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	—	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (16CXXX Compatibility mode)

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{RI}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-3

bit 3 **$\overline{TO}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-3

bit 2 **$\overline{PD}$:** Power-down Detection Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-3

bit 1 **$\overline{POR}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-3

bit 0 **$\overline{BOR}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-3

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.6 INT0 Interrupt

External interrupts on the RB0/INT0, RB1/INT1 and RB2/INT2 pins are edge triggered: either rising, if the corresponding INTEDGx bit is set in the INTCON2 register, or falling, if the INTEDGx bit is clear. When a valid edge appears on the RBx/INTx pin, the corresponding flag bit INTxF is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing the corresponding enable bit INTxE. Flag bit INTxF must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling the interrupt. All external interrupts (INT0, INT1 and INT2) can wake-up the processor from SLEEP, if bit INTxE was set prior to going into SLEEP. If the global interrupt enable bit GIE is set, the processor will branch to the interrupt vector following wake-up.

Interrupt priority for INT1 and INT2 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bits, INT1IP (INTCON3<6>) and INT2IP (INTCON3<7>). There is no priority bit associated with INT0. It is always a high priority interrupt source.

8.7 TMR0 Interrupt

In 8-bit mode (which is the default), an overflow (FFh → 00h) in the TMR0 register will set flag bit TMR0IF. In 16-bit mode, an overflow (FFFFh → 0000h) in the TMR0H:TMR0L registers will set flag bit TMR0IF. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit T0IE (INTCON<5>). Interrupt priority for Timer0 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit TMR0IP (INTCON2<2>). See Section 10.0 for further details on the Timer0 module.

8.8 PORTB Interrupt-on-Change

An input change on PORTB<7:4> sets flag bit RBIF (INTCON<0>). The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, RBIE (INTCON<3>). Interrupt priority for PORTB interrupt-on-change is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit, RBIP (INTCON2<0>).

8.9 Context Saving During Interrupts

During an interrupt, the return PC value is saved on the stack. Additionally, the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers are saved on the fast return stack. If a fast return from interrupt is not used (See Section 4.3), the user may need to save the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers in software. Depending on the user's application, other registers may also need to be saved. Equation 8-1 saves and restores the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers during an Interrupt Service Routine.

EXAMPLE 8-1: SAVING STATUS, WREG AND BSR REGISTERS IN RAM

```
MOVWF   W_TEMP                          ; W_TEMP is in virtual bank
MOVFF   STATUS, STATUS_TEMP             ; STATUS_TEMP located anywhere
MOVFF   BSR,    BSR_TEMP                ; BSR located anywhere
;
; USER ISR CODE
;
MOVFF   BSR_TEMP,   BSR                 ; Restore BSR
MOVF    W_TEMP,     W                   ; Restore WREG
MOVFF   STATUS_TEMP,STATUS              ; Restore STATUS
```

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

9.0 I/O PORTS

Depending on the device selected, there are either five ports or three ports available. Some pins of the I/O ports are multiplexed with an alternate function from the peripheral features on the device. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, that pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

Each port has three registers for its operation. These registers are:

- TRIS register (data direction register)
- PORT register (reads the levels on the pins of the device)
- LAT register (output latch)

The data latch (LAT register) is useful for read-modify-write operations on the value that the I/O pins are driving.

9.1 PORTA, TRISA and LATA Registers

PORTA is a 7-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISA. Setting a TRISA bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a Hi-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISA bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Reading the PORTA register reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the port latch.

The Data Latch register (LATA) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATA register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTA.

The RA4 pin is multiplexed with the Timer0 module clock input to become the RA4/T0CKI pin. The RA4/T0CKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input and an open drain output. All other RA port pins have TTL input levels and full CMOS output drivers.

The other PORTA pins are multiplexed with analog inputs and the analog VREF+ and VREF- inputs. The operation of each pin is selected by clearing/setting the control bits in the ADCON1 register (A/D Control Register1).

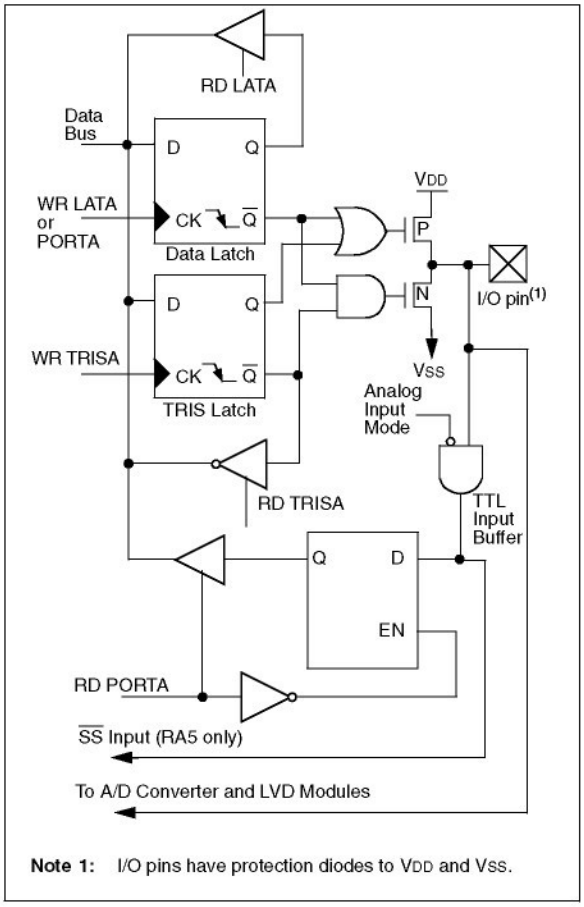
Note:	On a Power-on Reset, RA5 and RA3:RA0 are configured as analog inputs and read as '0'. RA6 and RA4 are configured as digital inputs.

The TRISA register controls the direction of the RA pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs.

EXAMPLE 9-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

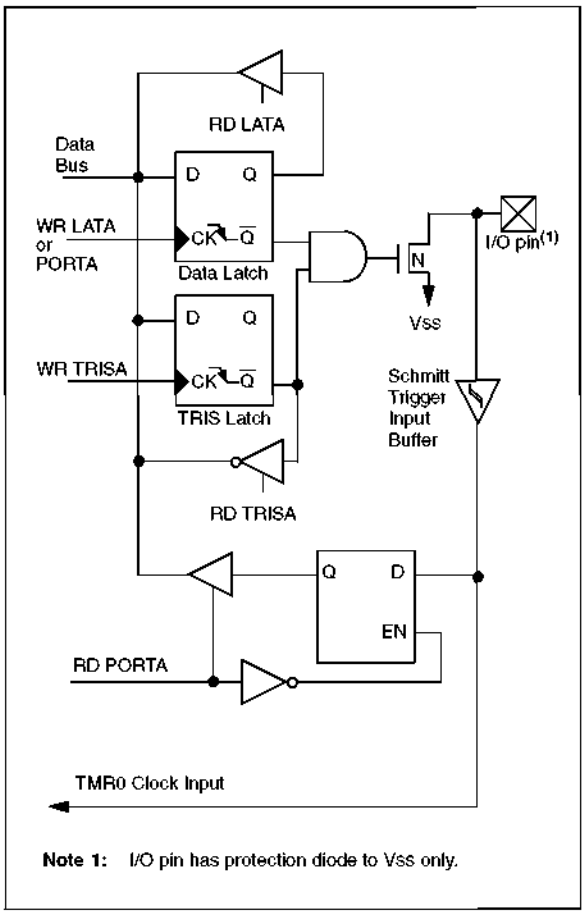
```
CLRF PORTA      ; Initialize PORTA by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF LATA       ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW 0x07      ; Configure A/D
MOVWF ADCON1    ; for digital inputs
MOVLW 0xCF      ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF TRISA     ; Set RA<3:0> as inputs
                ; RA<5:4> as outputs
```

FIGURE 9-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA3:RA0 AND RA5 PINS



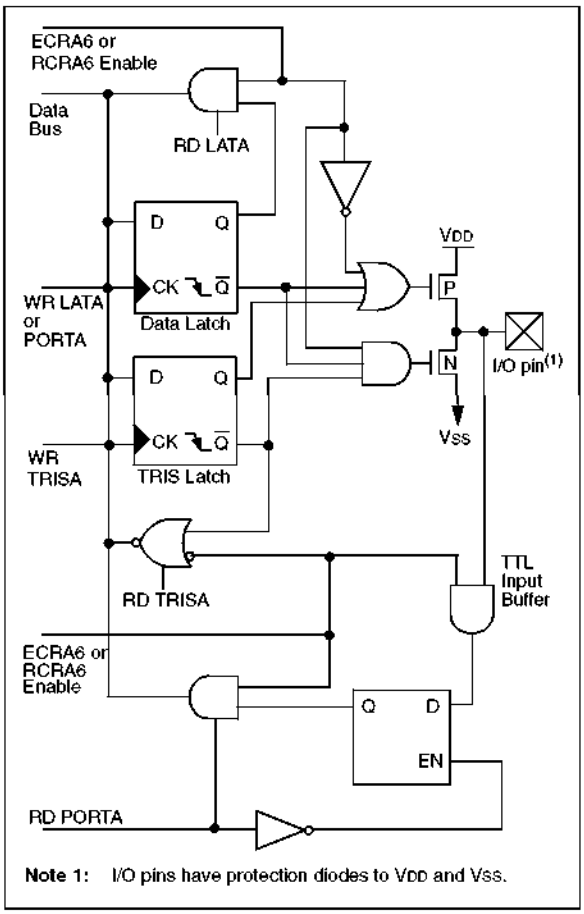
Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 9-2: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA4/T0CKI PIN



Note 1: I/O pin has protection diode to Vss only.

FIGURE 9-3: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA6 PIN



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and Vss.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 9-1: PORTA FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RA0/AN0	bit0	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA1/AN1	bit1	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA2/AN2/VREF-	bit2	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF-.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	bit3	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF+.
RA4/T0CKI	bit4	ST	Input/output or external clock input for Timer0. Output is open drain type.
RA5/$\overline{SS}$/AN4/LVDIN	bit5	TTL	Input/output or slave select input for synchronous serial port or analog input, or low voltage detect input.
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	bit6	TTL	OSC2 or clock output or I/O pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 9-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
PORTA	—	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	-x0x 0000	-u0u 0000
LATA	—	LATA Data Output Register							-xxx xxxx	-uuu uuuu
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							-111 1111	-111 1111
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	—	—	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	00-- 0000	00-- 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

9.2 PORTB, TRISB and LATB Registers

PORTB is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISB. Setting a TRISB bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a Hi-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATB) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATB register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTB.

EXAMPLE 9-2: INITIALIZING PORTB

```
CLRF    PORTB    ; Initialize PORTB by
                 ; clearing output
                 ; data latches
CLRF    LATB     ; Alternate method
                 ; to clear output
                 ; data latches
MOVLW 0xCF       ; Value used to
                 ; initialize data
                 ; direction
MOVWF TRISB      ; Set RB<3:0> as inputs
                 ; RB<5:4> as outputs
                 ; RB<7:6> as inputs
```

Each of the PORTB pins has a weak internal pull-up. A single control bit can turn on all the pull-ups. This is performed by clearing bit $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ (INTCON2<7>). The weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

Four of the PORTB pins, RB7:RB4, have an interrupt-on-change feature. Only pins configured as inputs can cause this interrupt to occur (i.e., any RB7:RB4 pin configured as an output is excluded from the interrupt-on-change comparison). The input pins (of RB7:RB4) are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTB. The "mismatch" outputs of RB7:RB4 are OR'ed together to generate the RB Port Change Interrupt with flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>).

This interrupt can wake the device from SLEEP. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of PORTB (except with the MOVFF instruction). This will end the mismatch condition.

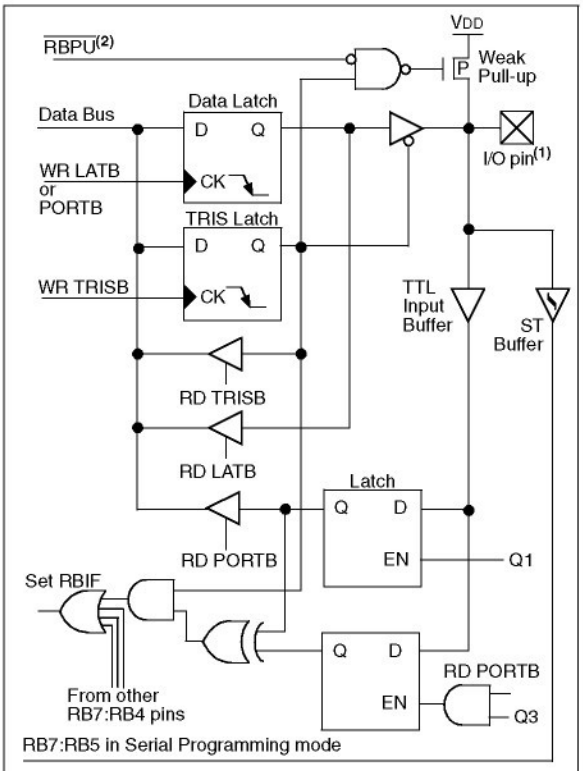
b) Clear flag bit RBIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RBIF. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RBIF to be cleared.

The interrupt-on-change feature is recommended for wake-up on key depression operation and operations where PORTB is only used for the interrupt-on-change feature. Polling of PORTB is not recommended while using the interrupt-on-change feature.

RB3 can be configured by the configuration bit CCP2MX as the alternate peripheral pin for the CCP2 module (CCP2MX='0').

FIGURE 9-4: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB7:RB4 PINS



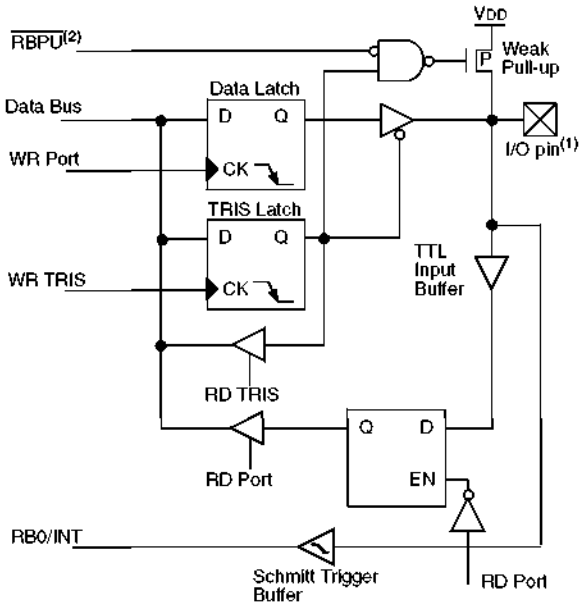
Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit (INTCON2<7>).

Note 1:	While in Low Voltage ICSP mode, the RB5 pin can no longer be used as a general purpose I/O pin, and should be held low during normal operation to protect against inadvertent ICSP mode entry.
2:	When using Low Voltage ICSP programming (LVP), the pull-up on RB5 becomes disabled. If TRISB bit 5 is cleared, thereby setting RB5 as an output, LATB bit 5 must also be cleared for proper operation.

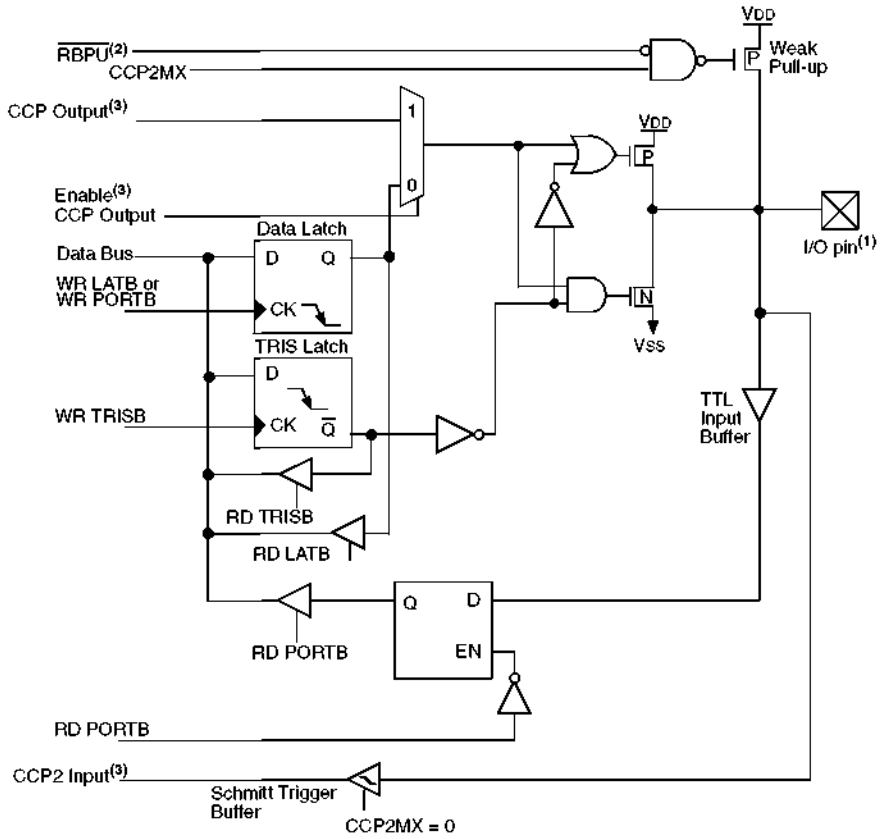
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 9-5: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB2:RB0 PINS



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.
2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit (OPTION_REG<7>).

FIGURE 9-6: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB3 PIN



Note 1: I/O pin has diode protection to VDD and VSS.
2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate DDR bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit (INTCON2<7>).
3: The CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RB3 if the CCP2MX bit is enabled (='0') in the configuration register.

TABLE 9-3: PORTB FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RB0/INT0	bit0	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input0. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB1/INT1	bit1	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input1. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB2/INT2	bit2	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input2. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB3/CCP2(3)	bit3	TTL/ST(4)	Input/output pin or Capture2 input/Compare2 output/PWM output when CCP2MX configuration bit is enabled. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB4	bit4	TTL	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB5/PGM(5)	bit5	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Low voltage ICSP enable pin.
RB6/PGC	bit6	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming clock.
RB7/PGD	bit7	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming data.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.
2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.
3: A device configuration bit selects which I/O pin the CCP2 pin is multiplexed on.
4: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the CCP2 input.
5: Low Voltage ICSP Programming (LVP) is enabled by default, which disables the RB5 I/O function. LVP must be disabled to enable RB5 as an I/O pin and allow maximum compatibility to the other 28-pin and 40-pin mid-range devices.

TABLE 9-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATB	LATB Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
INTCON2	RBPU	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	—	TMR0IP	—	RBIP	1111 -1-1	1111 -1-1
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	—	INT2IE	INT1IE	—	INT2IF	INT1IF	11-0 0-00	11-0 0-00

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

9.3 PORTC, TRISC and LATC Registers

PORTC is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISC. Setting a TRISC bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a Hi-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISC bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATC) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATC register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTC.

PORTC is multiplexed with several peripheral functions (Table 9-5). PORTC pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTC pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

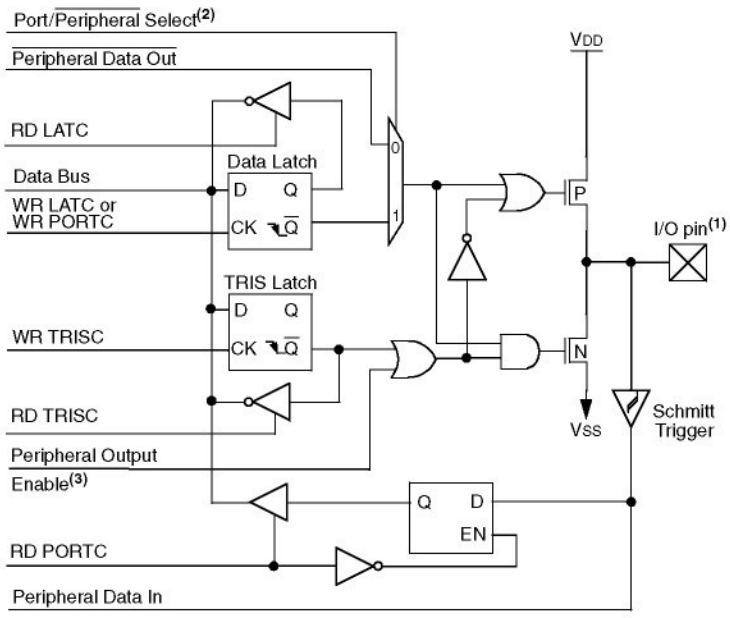
The pin override value is not loaded into the TRIS register. This allows read-modify-write of the TRIS register, without concern due to peripheral overrides.

RC1 is normally configured by configuration bit, CCP2MX, as the default peripheral pin of the CCP2 module (default/erased state, CCP2MX = '1').

EXAMPLE 9-3: INITIALIZING PORTC

```
CLRF    PORTC    ; Initialize PORTC by
                 ; clearing output
                 ; data latches
CLRF    LATC     ; Alternate method
                 ; to clear output
                 ; data latches
MOVLW 0xCF       ; Value used to
                 ; initialize data
                 ; direction
MOVWF TRISC      ; Set RC<3:0> as inputs
                 ; RC<5:4> as outputs
                 ; RC<7:6> as inputs
```

FIGURE 9-7: PORTC BLOCK DIAGRAM (PERIPHERAL OUTPUT OVERRIDE)



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: Port/Peripheral Select signal selects between port data (input) and peripheral output.

3: Peripheral Output Enable is only active if peripheral select is active.

TABLE 9-5: PORTC FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI	bit0	ST	Input/output port pin or Timer1 oscillator output/Timer1 clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	bit1	ST	Input/output port pin, Timer1 oscillator input, or Capture2 input/ Compare2 output/PWM output when CCP2MX configuration bit is set.
RC2/CCP1	bit2	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture1 input/Compare1 output/PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	bit3	ST	RC3 can also be the synchronous serial clock for both SPI and I^2C modes.
RC4/SDI/SDA	bit4	ST	RC4 can also be the SPI Data In (SPI mode) or Data I/O (I^2C mode).
RC5/SDO	bit5	ST	Input/output port pin or Synchronous Serial Port data output.
RC6/TX/CK	bit6	ST	Input/output port pin, Addressable USART Asynchronous Transmit, or Addressable USART Synchronous Clock.
RC7/RX/DT	bit7	ST	Input/output port pin, Addressable USART Asynchronous Receive, or Addressable USART Synchronous Data.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 9-6: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATC	LATC Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

9.4 PORTD, TRISD and LATD Registers

This section is applicable only to the PIC18F4X2 devices.

PORTD is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISD. Setting a TRISD bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a Hi-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISD bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATD) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATD register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTD.

PORTD is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output.

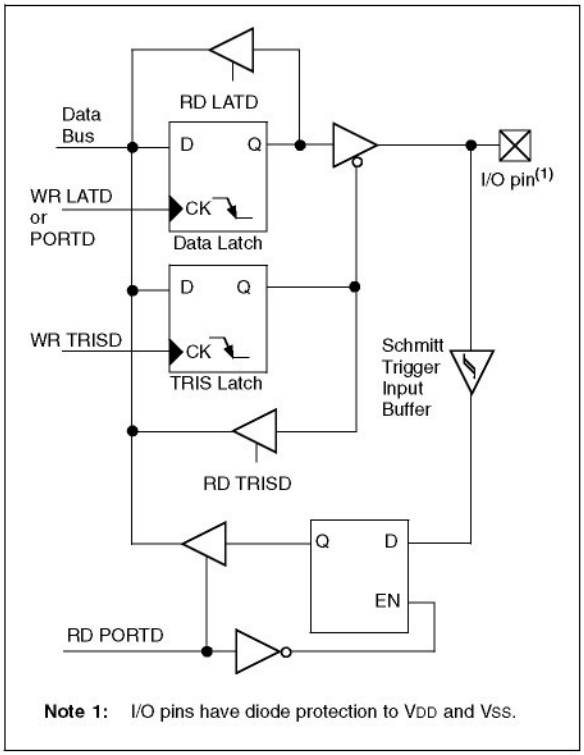
Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

PORTD can be configured as an 8-bit wide microprocessor port (parallel slave port) by setting control bit PSPMODE (TRISE<4>). In this mode, the input buffers are TTL. See Section 9.6 for additional information on the Parallel Slave Port (PSP).

EXAMPLE 9-4: INITIALIZING PORTD

```
CLRF   PORTD  ; Initialize PORTD by
              ; clearing output
              ; data latches
CLRF   LATD   ; Alternate method
              ; to clear output
              ; data latches
MOVLW 0xCF    ; Value used to
              ; initialize data
              ; direction
MOVWF TRISD   ; Set RD<3:0> as inputs
              ; RD<5:4> as outputs
              ; RD<7:6> as inputs
```

FIGURE 9-8: PORTD BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O PORT MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 9-7: PORTD FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RD0/PSP0	bit0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit0.
RD1/PSP1	bit1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit1.
RD2/PSP2	bit2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit2.
RD3/PSP3	bit3	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit3.
RD4/PSP4	bit4	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit4.
RD5/PSP5	bit5	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit5.
RD6/PSP6	bit6	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit6.
RD7/PSP7	bit7	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit7.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffer when in Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 9-8: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTD

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
PORTD	RD7	RD6	RD5	RD4	RD3	RD2	RD1	RD0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	LATD Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 -111	0000 -111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTD.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

9.5 PORTE, TRISE and LATE Registers

This section is only applicable to the PIC18F4X2 devices.

PORTE is a 3-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISE. Setting a TRISE bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a Hi-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISE bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATE) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATE register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTE.

PORTE has three pins (RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5, RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6 and RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7) which are individually configurable as inputs or outputs. These pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

Register 9-1 shows the TRISE register, which also controls the parallel slave port operation.

PORTE pins are multiplexed with analog inputs. When selected as an analog input, these pins will read as '0's.

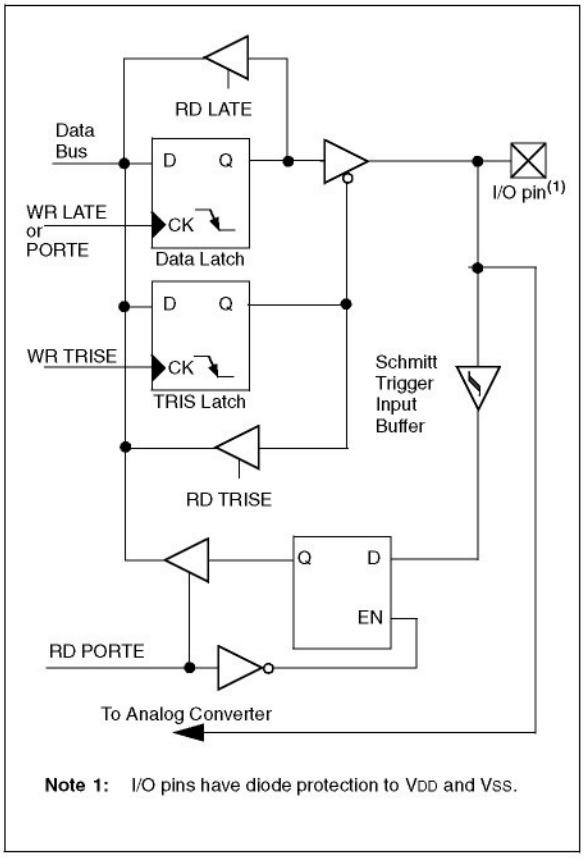
TRISE controls the direction of the RE pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must make sure to keep the pins configured as inputs when using them as analog inputs.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as analog inputs.

EXAMPLE 9-5: INITIALIZING PORTE

```
CLRF   PORTE    ; Initialize PORTE by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF   LATE     ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW  0x07     ; Configure A/D
MOVWF  ADCON1   ; for digital inputs
MOVLW  0x05     ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF  TRISE    ; Set RE<0> as inputs
                ; RE<1> as outputs
                ; RE<2> as inputs
```

FIGURE 9-9: PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O PORT MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

REGISTER 9-1: TRISE REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IBF:** Input Buffer Full Status bit
1 = A word has been received and waiting to be read by the CPU
0 = No word has been received

bit 6 **OBF**: Output Buffer Full Status bit
1 = The output buffer still holds a previously written word
0 = The output buffer has been read

bit 5 **IBOV**: Input Buffer Overflow Detect bit (in Microprocessor mode)
1 = A write occurred when a previously input word has not been read (must be cleared in software)
0 = No overflow occurred

bit 4 **PSPMODE**: Parallel Slave Port Mode Select bit
1 = Parallel Slave Port mode
0 = General purpose I/O mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **TRISE2**: RE2 Direction Control bit
1 = Input
0 = Output

bit 1 **TRISE1**: RE1 Direction Control bit
1 = Input
0 = Output

bit 0 **TRISE0**: RE0 Direction Control bit
1 = Input
0 = Output

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 9-9: PORTE FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AN5	bit0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or read control input in Parallel Slave Port mode or analog input: $\overline{RD}$ 1 = Not a read operation 0 = Read operation. Reads PORTD register (if chip selected).
RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AN6	bit1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or write control input in Parallel Slave Port mode or analog input: $\overline{WR}$ 1 = Not a write operation 0 = Write operation. Writes PORTD register (if chip selected).
RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AN7	bit2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or chip select control input in Parallel Slave Port mode or analog input: $\overline{CS}$ 1 = Device is not selected 0 = Device is selected

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffers when in Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 9-10: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
PORTE	—	—	—	—	—	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- -000	---- -000
LATE	—	—	—	—	—	LATE Data Output Register			---- -xxx	---- -uuu
TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 -111	0000 -111
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	—	—	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	00-- 0000	00-- 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTE.

9.6 Parallel Slave Port

The Parallel Slave Port is implemented on the 40-pin devices only (PIC18F4X2).

PORTD operates as an 8-bit wide Parallel Slave Port, or microprocessor port when control bit, PSPMODE (TRISE<4>) is set. It is asynchronously readable and writable by the external world through $\overline{RD}$ control input pin, RE0/$\overline{RD}$ and $\overline{WR}$ control input pin, RE1/$\overline{WR}$.

It can directly interface to an 8-bit microprocessor data bus. The external microprocessor can read or write the PORTD latch as an 8-bit latch. Setting bit PSPMODE enables port pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$ to be the $\overline{RD}$ input, RE1/$\overline{WR}$ to be the $\overline{WR}$ input and RE2/$\overline{CS}$ to be the $\overline{CS}$ (chip select) input. For this functionality, the corresponding data direction bits of the TRISE register (TRISE<2:0>) must be configured as inputs (set). The A/D port configuration bits PCFG2:PCFG0 (ADCON1<2:0>) must be set, which will configure pins RE2:RE0 as digital I/O.

A write to the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{WR}$ lines are first detected low. A read from the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{RD}$ lines are first detected low.

The PORTE I/O pins become control inputs for the microprocessor port when bit PSPMODE (TRISE<4>) is set. In this mode, the user must make sure that the TRISE<2:0> bits are set (pins are configured as digital inputs), and the ADCON1 is configured for digital I/O. In this mode, the input buffers are TTL.

FIGURE 9-10: PORTD AND PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM (PARALLEL SLAVE PORT)

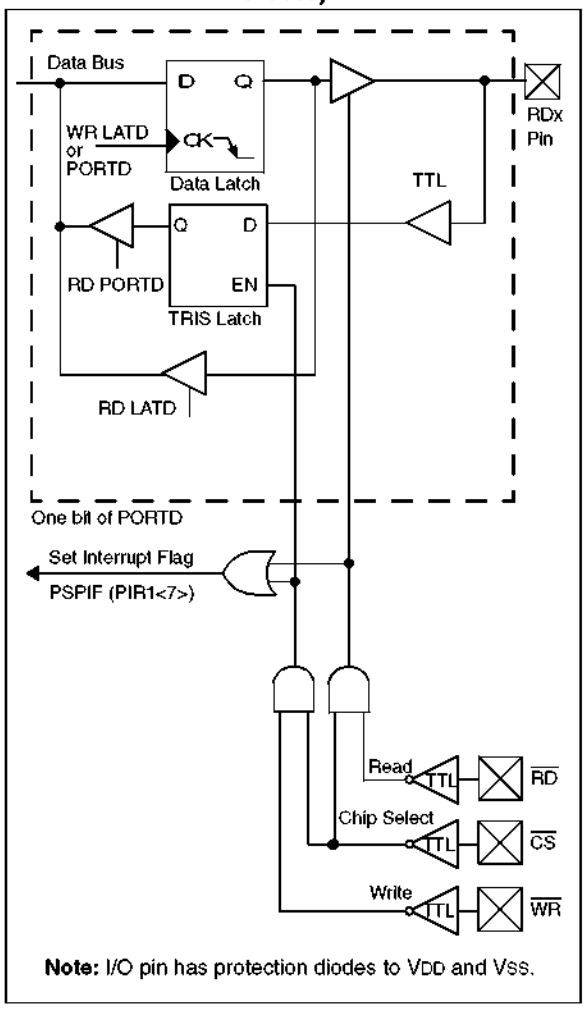
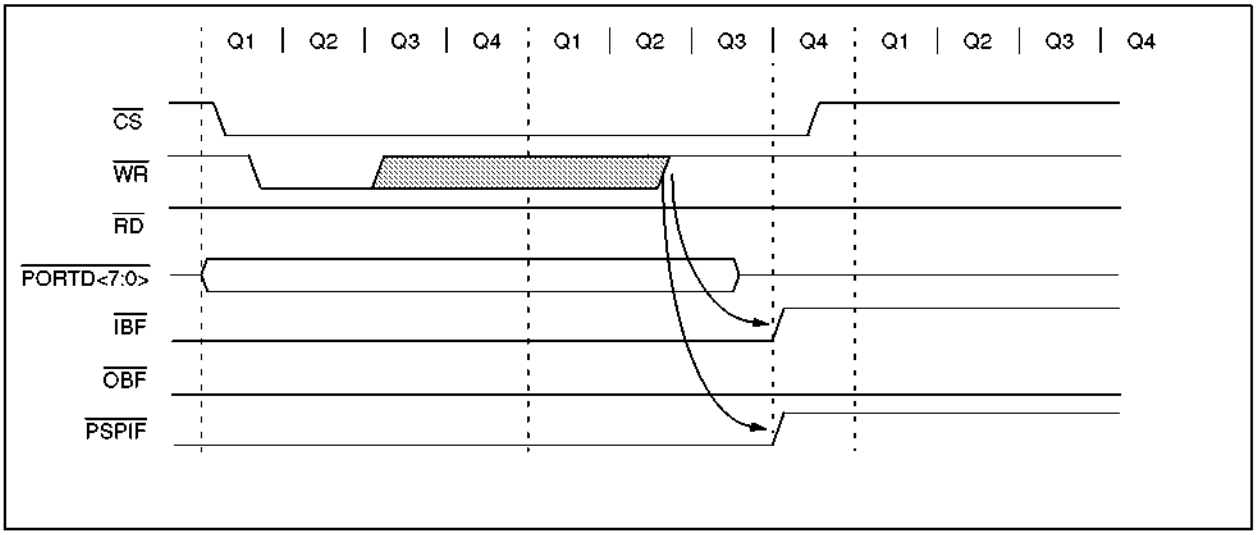


FIGURE 9-11: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT WRITE WAVEFORMS



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 9-12: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT READ WAVEFORMS

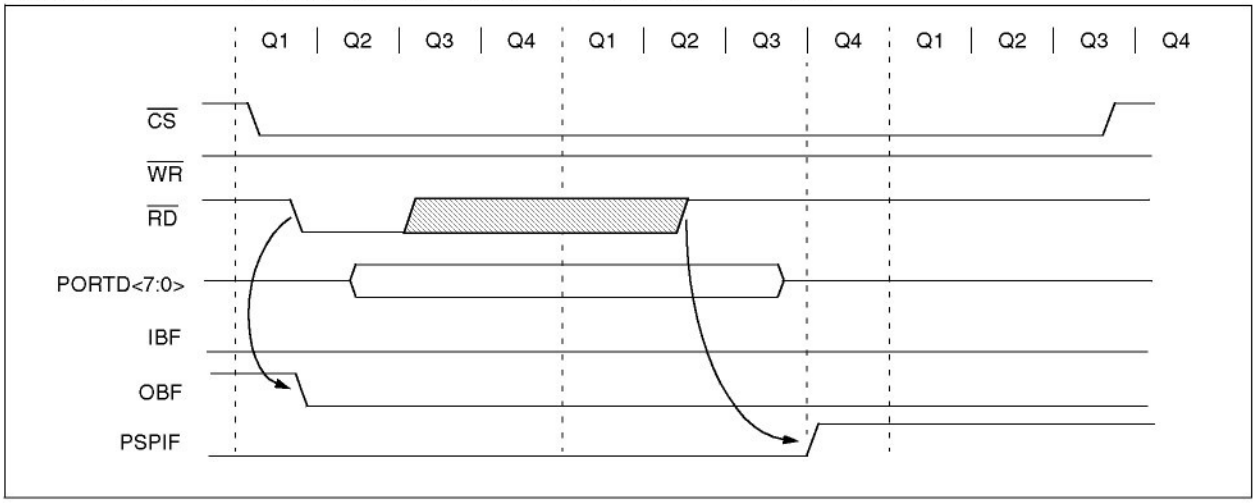


TABLE 9-11: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PARALLEL SLAVE PORT

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
PORTD	Port Data Latch when written; Port pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	LATD Data Output bits								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	PORTD Data Direction bits								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTE	—	—	—	—	—	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- -000	---- -000
LATE	—	—	—	—	—	LATE Data Output bits			---- -xxx	---- -uuu
TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 -111	0000 -111
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IF	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	—	—	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	00-- 0000	00-- 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Parallel Slave Port.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module has the following features:

- Software selectable as an 8-bit or 16-bit timer/counter
- Readable and writable
- Dedicated 8-bit software programmable prescaler
- Clock source selectable to be external or internal
- Interrupt-on-overflow from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode and FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode
- Edge select for external clock

Figure 10-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 8-bit mode and Figure 10-2 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 16-bit mode.

The T0CON register (Register 10-1) is a readable and writable register that controls all the aspects of Timer0, including the prescale selection.

REGISTER 10-1: T0CON: TIMER0 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **TMR0ON:** Timer0 On/Off Control bit
1 = Enables Timer0
0 = Stops Timer0

bit 6 **T08BIT**: Timer0 8-bit/16-bit Control bit
1 = Timer0 is configured as an 8-bit timer/counter
0 = Timer0 is configured as a 16-bit timer/counter

bit 5 **T0CS**: Timer0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (CLKO)

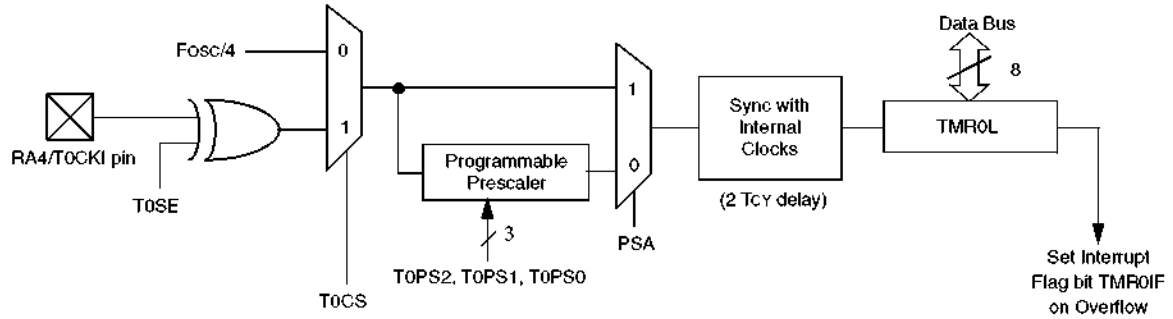
bit 4 **T0SE**: Timer0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin

bit 3 **PSA**: Timer0 Prescaler Assignment bit
1 = TImer0 prescaler is NOT assigned. Timer0 clock input bypasses prescaler.
0 = Timer0 prescaler is assigned. Timer0 clock input comes from prescaler output.

bit 2-0 **T0PS2:T0PS0**: Timer0 Prescaler Select bits
111 = 1:256 prescale value
110 = 1:128 prescale value
101 = 1:64 prescale value
100 = 1:32 prescale value
011 = 1:16 prescale value
010 = 1:8 prescale value
001 = 1:4 prescale value
000 = 1:2 prescale value

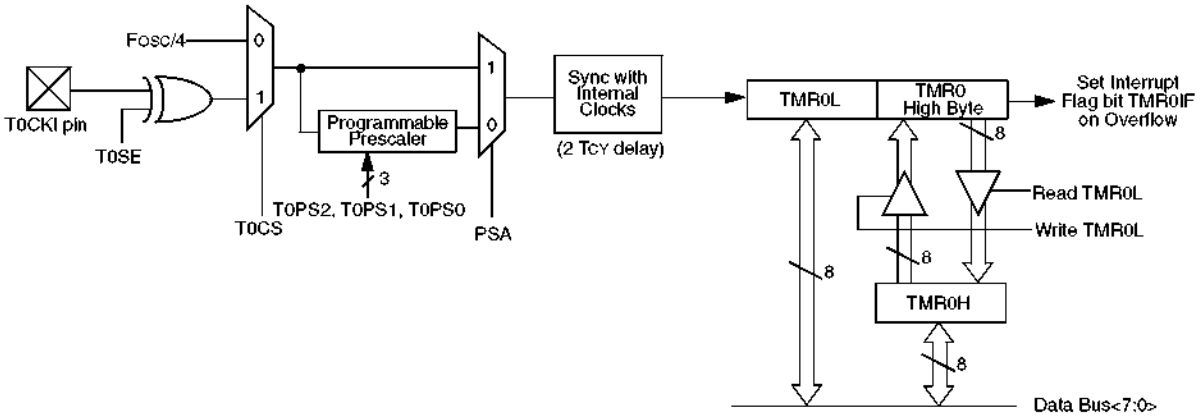
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 10-1: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 8-BIT MODE



Note: Upon RESET, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI max. prescale.

FIGURE 10-2: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 16-BIT MODE



Note: Upon RESET, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI max. prescale.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.1 Timer0 Operation

Timer0 can operate as a timer or as a counter.

Timer mode is selected by clearing the T0CS bit. In Timer mode, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). If the TMR0L register is written, the increment is inhibited for the following two instruction cycles. The user can work around this by writing an adjusted value to the TMR0L register.

Counter mode is selected by setting the T0CS bit. In Counter mode, Timer0 will increment, either on every rising or falling edge of pin RA4/T0CKI. The incrementing edge is determined by the Timer0 Source Edge Select bit (T0SE). Clearing the T0SE bit selects the rising edge. Restrictions on the external clock input are discussed below.

When an external clock input is used for Timer0, it must meet certain requirements. The requirements ensure the external clock can be synchronized with the internal phase clock (TOSC). Also, there is a delay in the actual incrementing of Timer0 after synchronization.

10.2 Prescaler

An 8-bit counter is available as a prescaler for the Timer0 module. The prescaler is not readable or writable.

The PSA and T0PS2:T0PS0 bits determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

Clearing bit PSA will assign the prescaler to the Timer0 module. When the prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module, prescale values of 1:2, 1:4,..., 1:256 are selectable.

When assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0L register (e.g., `CLRF TMR0`, `MOVWF TMR0`, `BSF TMR0, x`....etc.) will clear the prescaler count.

Note:	Writing to TMR0L when the prescaler is assigned to Timer0 will clear the prescaler count, but will not change the prescaler assignment.

10.2.1 SWITCHING PRESCALER ASSIGNMENT

The prescaler assignment is fully under software control, (i.e., it can be changed "on-the-fly" during program execution).

10.3 Timer0 Interrupt

The TMR0 interrupt is generated when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode, or FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode. This overflow sets the TMR0IF bit. The interrupt can be masked by clearing the TMR0IE bit. The TMR0IE bit must be cleared in software by the Timer0 module Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The TMR0 interrupt cannot awaken the processor from SLEEP, since the timer is shut-off during SLEEP.

10.4 16-Bit Mode Timer Reads and Writes

TMR0H is not the high byte of the timer/counter in 16-bit mode, but is actually a buffered version of the high byte of Timer0 (refer to Figure 10-2). The high byte of the Timer0 counter/timer is not directly readable nor writable. TMR0H is updated with the contents of the high byte of Timer0 during a read of TMR0L. This provides the ability to read all 16-bits of Timer0 without having to verify that the read of the high and low byte were valid due to a rollover between successive reads of the high and low byte.

A write to the high byte of Timer0 must also take place through the TMR0H buffer register. Timer0 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR0H when a write occurs to TMR0L. This allows all 16-bits of Timer0 to be updated at once.

TABLE 10-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
TMR0L	Timer0 Module Low Byte Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR0H	Timer0 Module High Byte Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
T0CON	TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							-111 1111	-111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Timer0.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

11.0 TIMER1 MODULE

The Timer1 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter
  (two 8-bit registers; TMR1H and TMR1L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt-on-overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- RESET from CCP module special event trigger

Figure 11-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer1 module.

Register 11-1 details the Timer1 control register. This register controls the Operating mode of the Timer1 module, and contains the Timer1 oscillator enable bit (T1OSCEN). Timer1 can be enabled or disabled by setting or clearing control bit TMR1ON (T1CON<0>).

REGISTER 11-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-bit Read/Write Mode Enable bit
1 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer1 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer1 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **T1CKPS1:T1CKPS0**: Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 3 **T1OSCEN:** Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit
1 = Timer1 Oscillator is enabled
0 = Timer1 Oscillator is shut-off
The oscillator inverter and feedback resistor are turned off to eliminate power drain.

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Select bit
When TMR1CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input
When TMR1CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock when TMR1CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR1CS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock from pin RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI (on the rising edge)
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)

bit 0 **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit
1 = Enables Timer1
0 = Stops Timer1

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

11.1 Timer1 Operation

Timer1 can operate in one of these modes:

- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

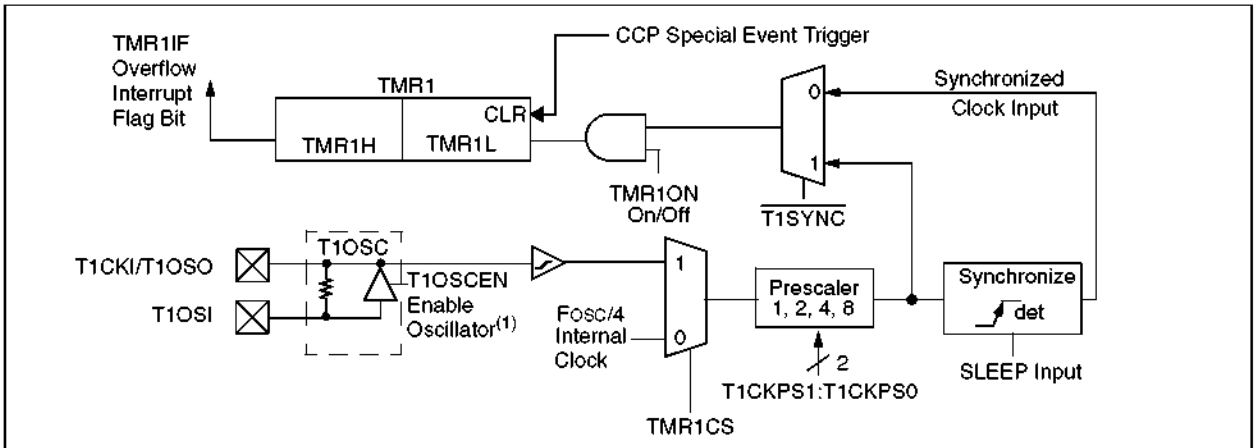
The Operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR1CS (T1CON<1>).

When TMR1CS = 0, Timer1 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR1CS = 1, Timer1 increments on every rising edge of the external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC1/T1OSI and RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI pins become inputs. That is, the TRISC<1:0> value is ignored, and the pins are read as '0'.

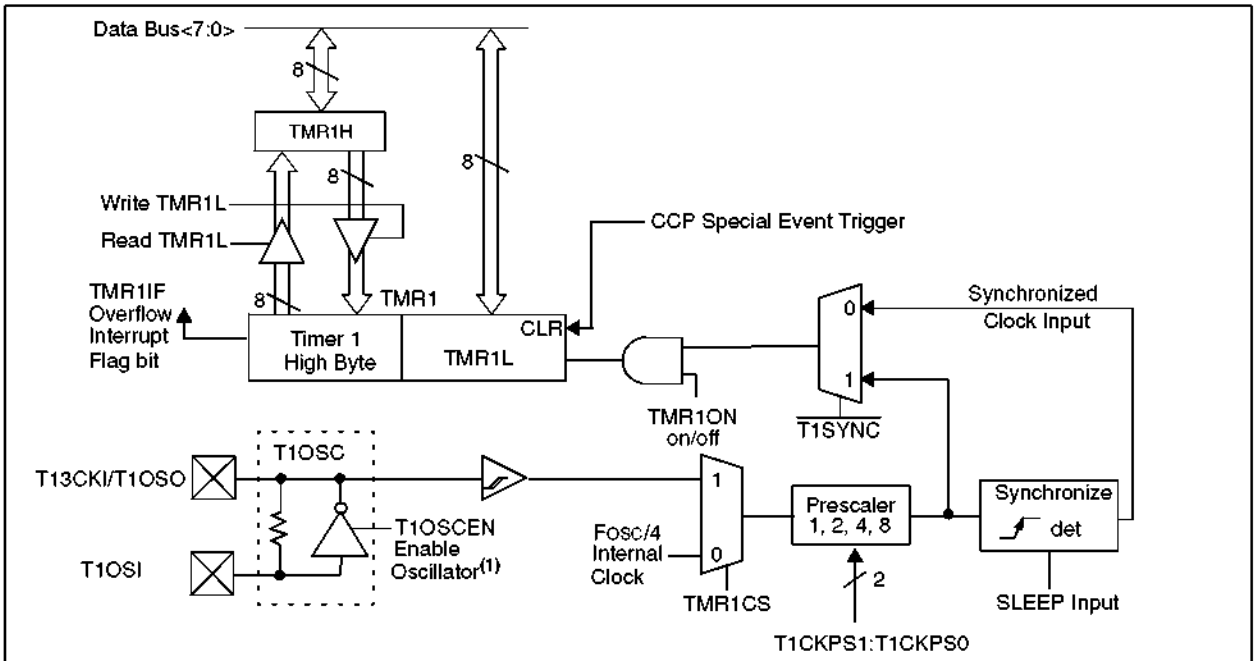
Timer1 also has an internal "RESET input". This RESET can be generated by the CCP module (Section 14.0).

FIGURE 11-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

FIGURE 11-2: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM: 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

11.2 Timer1 Oscillator

A crystal oscillator circuit is built-in between pins T1OSI (input) and T1OSO (amplifier output). It is enabled by setting control bit T1OSCEN (T1CON<3>). The oscillator is a low power oscillator rated up to 200 kHz. It will continue to run during SLEEP. It is primarily intended for a 32 kHz crystal. Table 11-1 shows the capacitor selection for the Timer1 oscillator.

The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper start-up of the Timer1 oscillator.

TABLE 11-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR THE ALTERNATE OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Freq	C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	TBD(1)	TBD(1)
Crystal to be Tested:			
32.768 kHz	Epson C-001R32.768K-A	± 20 PPM	

Note 1: Microchip suggests 33 pF as a starting point in validating the oscillator circuit.

2: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.

4: Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

11.3 Timer1 Interrupt

The TMR1 Register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR1 Interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow, which is latched in interrupt flag bit TMR1IF (PIR1<0>). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing TMR1 interrupt enable bit, TMR1IE (PIE1<0>).

11.4 Resetting Timer1 using a CCP Trigger Output

If the CCP module is configured in Compare mode to generate a "special event trigger" (CCP1M3:CCP1M0 = 1011), this signal will reset Timer1 and start an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled).

Note: The special event triggers from the CCP1 module will not set interrupt flag bit TMR1IF (PIR1<0>).

Timer1 must be configured for either Timer or Synchronized Counter mode to take advantage of this feature. If Timer1 is running in Asynchronous Counter mode, this RESET operation may not work.

In the event that a write to Timer1 coincides with a special event trigger from CCP1, the write will take precedence.

In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L registers pair effectively becomes the period register for Timer1.

11.5 Timer1 16-Bit Read/Write Mode

Timer1 can be configured for 16-bit reads and writes (see Figure 11-2). When the RD16 control bit (T1CON<7>) is set, the address for TMR1H is mapped to a buffer register for the high byte of Timer1. A read from TMR1L will load the contents of the high byte of Timer1 into the Timer1 high byte buffer. This provides the user with the ability to accurately read all 16-bits of Timer1 without having to determine whether a read of the high byte followed by a read of the low byte is valid, due to a rollover between reads.

A write to the high byte of Timer1 must also take place through the TMR1H buffer register. Timer1 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR1H when a write occurs to TMR1L. This allows a user to write all 16 bits to both the high and low bytes of Timer1 at once.

The high byte of Timer1 is not directly readable or writable in this mode. All reads and writes must take place through the Timer1 high byte buffer register. Writes to TMR1H do not clear the Timer1 prescaler. The prescaler is only cleared on writes to TMR1L.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 11-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

12.0 TIMER2 MODULE

The Timer2 module timer has the following features:

- 8-bit timer (TMR2 register)
- 8-bit period register (PR2)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)
- Interrupt on TMR2 match of PR2
- SSP module optional use of TMR2 output to generate clock shift

Timer2 has a control register shown in Register 12-1. Timer2 can be shut-off by clearing control bit TMR2ON (T2CON<2>) to minimize power consumption. Figure 12-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer2 module. Register 12-1 shows the Timer2 control register. The prescaler and postscaler selection of Timer2 are controlled by this register.

12.1 Timer2 Operation

Timer2 can be used as the PWM time-base for the PWM mode of the CCP module. The TMR2 register is readable and writable, and is cleared on any device RESET. The input clock (FOSC/4) has a prescale option of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16, selected by control bits T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0 (T2CON<1:0>). The match output of TMR2 goes through a 4-bit postscaler (which gives a 1:1 to 1:16 scaling inclusive) to generate a TMR2 interrupt (latched in flag bit TMR2IF, (PIR1<1>)).

The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when any of the following occurs:

- a write to the TMR2 register
- a write to the T2CON register
- any device RESET (Power-on Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset, or Brown-out Reset)

TMR2 is not cleared when T2CON is written.

REGISTER 12-1: T2CON: TIMER2 CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-3 **TOUTPS3:TOUTPS0**: Timer2 Output Postscale Select bits
0000 = 1:1 Postscale
0001 = 1:2 Postscale
•
•
•
1111 = 1:16 Postscale

bit 2 **TMR2ON**: Timer2 On bit
1 = Timer2 is on
0 = Timer2 is off

bit 1-0 **T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0**: Timer2 Clock Prescale Select bits
00 = Prescaler is 1
01 = Prescaler is 4
1x = Prescaler is 16

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

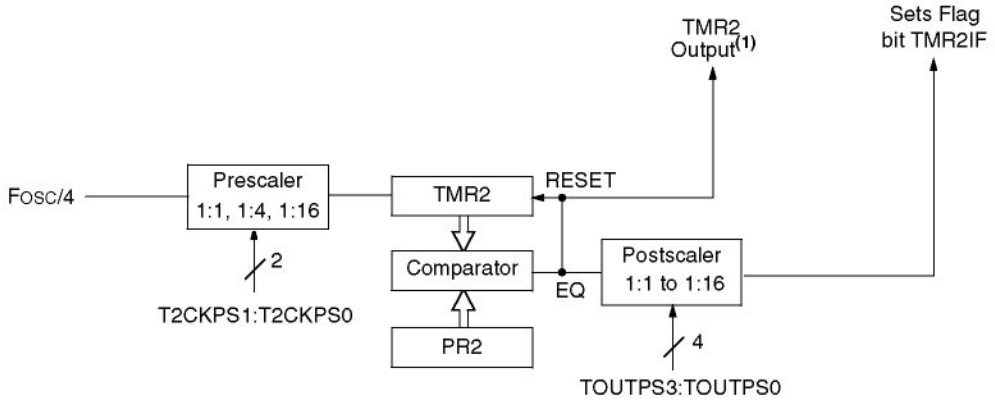
12.2 Timer2 Interrupt

The Timer2 module has an 8-bit period register, PR2. Timer2 increments from 00h until it matches PR2 and then resets to 00h on the next increment cycle. PR2 is a readable and writable register. The PR2 register is initialized to FFh upon RESET.

12.3 Output of TMR2

The output of TMR2 (before the postscaler) is fed to the Synchronous Serial Port module, which optionally uses it to generate the shift clock.

FIGURE 12-1: TIMER2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: TMR2 register output can be software selected by the SSP Module as a baud clock.

TABLE 12-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER2 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer2 module.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.0 TIMER3 MODULE

The Timer3 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter
  (two 8-bit registers; TMR3H and TMR3L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt-on-overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- RESET from CCP module trigger

Figure 13-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer3 module.

Register 13-1 shows the Timer3 control register. This register controls the Operating mode of the Timer3 module and sets the CCP clock source.

Register 11-1 shows the Timer1 control register. This register controls the Operating mode of the Timer1 module, as well as contains the Timer1 oscillator enable bit (T1OSCEN), which can be a clock source for Timer3.

REGISTER 13-1: T3CON: TIMER3 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-bit Read/Write Mode Enable bit
1 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer3 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer3 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6-3 **T3CCP2:T3CCP1:** Timer3 and Timer1 to CCPx Enable bits
1x = Timer3 is the clock source for compare/capture CCP modules
01 = Timer3 is the clock source for compare/capture of CCP2,
Timer1 is the clock source for compare/capture of CCP1
00 = Timer1 is the clock source for compare/capture CCP modules

bit 5-4 **T3CKPS1:T3CKPS0**: Timer3 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$:** Timer3 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit
(Not usable if the system clock comes from Timer1/Timer3)
When TMR3CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input
When TMR3CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer3 uses the internal clock when TMR3CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR3CS:** Timer3 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock input from Timer1 oscillator or T1CKI
(on the rising edge after the first falling edge)
0 = Internal clock (Fosc/4)

bit 0 **TMR3ON:** Timer3 On bit
1 = Enables Timer3
0 = Stops Timer3

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

13.1 Timer3 Operation

Timer3 can operate in one of these modes:

- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

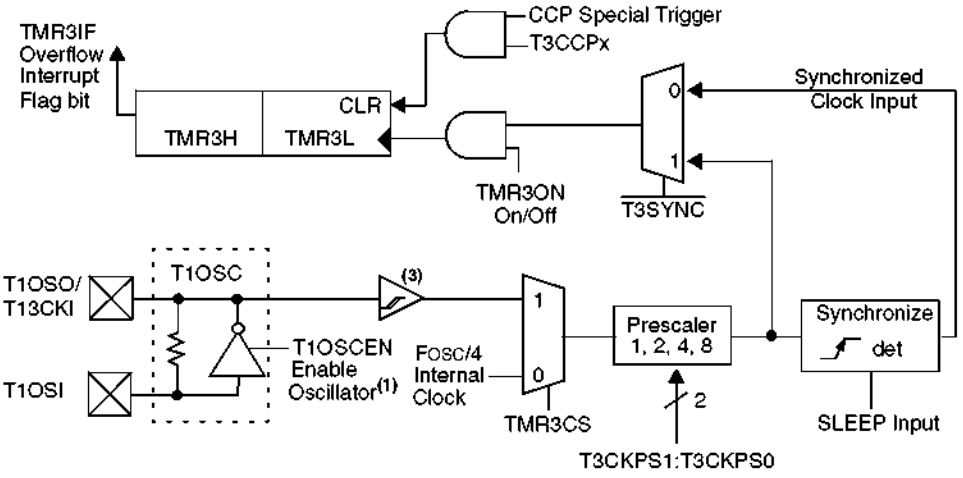
The Operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR3CS (T3CON<1>).

When TMR3CS = 0, Timer3 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR3CS = 1, Timer3 increments on every rising edge of the Timer1 external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC1/T1OSI and RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI pins become inputs. That is, the TRISC<1:0> value is ignored, and the pins are read as '0'.

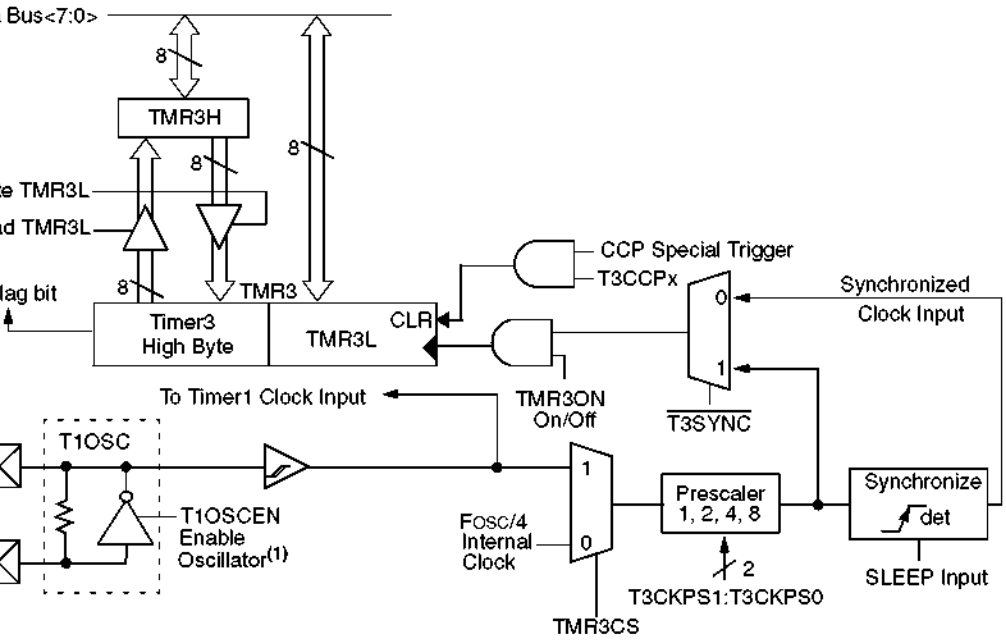
Timer3 also has an internal "RESET input". This RESET can be generated by the CCP module (Section 14.0).

FIGURE 13-1: TIMER3 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

FIGURE 13-2: TIMER3 BLOCK DIAGRAM CONFIGURED IN 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE



Note 1: When the T1OSCEN bit is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.2 Timer1 Oscillator

The Timer1 oscillator may be used as the clock source for Timer3. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN (T1CON<3>) bit. The oscillator is a low power oscillator rated up to 200 KHz. See Section 11.0 for further details.

13.3 Timer3 Interrupt

The TMR3 Register pair (TMR3H:TMR3L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR3 Interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow, which is latched in interrupt flag bit, TMR3IF (PIR2<1>). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing TMR3 interrupt enable bit, TMR3IE (PIE2<1>).

13.4 Resetting Timer3 Using a CCP Trigger Output

If the CCP module is configured in Compare mode to generate a "special event trigger" (CCP1M3:CCP1M0 = 1011), this signal will reset Timer3.

Note:	The special event triggers from the CCP module will not set interrupt flag bit, TMR3IF (PIR1<0>).

Timer3 must be configured for either Timer or Synchronized Counter mode to take advantage of this feature. If Timer3 is running in Asynchronous Counter mode, this RESET operation may not work. In the event that a write to Timer3 coincides with a special event trigger from CCP1, the write will take precedence. In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L registers pair effectively becomes the period register for Timer3.

TABLE 13-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER3 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR2	—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	---0 0000
PIE2	—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	---0 0000
IPR2	—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	---1 1111
TMR3L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR3H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.0 CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM (CCP) MODULES

Each CCP (Capture/Compare/PWM) module contains a 16-bit register which can operate as a 16-bit Capture register, as a 16-bit Compare register or as a PWM Master/Slave Duty Cycle register. Table 14-1 shows the timer resources of the CCP Module modes.

The operation of CCP1 is identical to that of CCP2, with the exception of the special event trigger. Therefore, operation of a CCP module in the following sections is described with respect to CCP1.

Table 14-2 shows the interaction of the CCP modules.

REGISTER 14-1: CCP1CON REGISTER/CCP2CON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	DCxB1	DCxB0	CCPxM3	CCPxM2	CCPxM1	CCPxM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **DCxB1:DCxB0**: PWM Duty Cycle bit1 and bit0

Capture mode:
Unused

Compare mode:
Unused

PWM mode:
These bits are the two LSbs (bit1 and bit0) of the 10-bit PWM duty cycle. The upper eight bits (DCx9:DCx2) of the duty cycle are found in CCPRxL.

bit 3-0 **CCPxM3:CCPxM0**: CCPx Mode Select bits

0000 = Capture/Compare/PWM disabled (resets CCPx module)
0001 = Reserved
0010 = Compare mode, toggle output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)
0011 = Reserved
0100 = Capture mode, every falling edge
0101 = Capture mode, every rising edge
0110 = Capture mode, every 4th rising edge
0111 = Capture mode, every 16th rising edge
1000 = Compare mode,
Initialize CCP pin Low, on compare match force CCP pin High (CCPIF bit is set)
1001 = Compare mode,
Initialize CCP pin High, on compare match force CCP pin Low (CCPIF bit is set)
1010 = Compare mode,
Generate software interrupt on compare match (CCPIF bit is set, CCP pin is unaffected)
1011 = Compare mode,
Trigger special event (CCPIF bit is set)
11xx = PWM mode

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

14.1 CCP1 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (CCPR1) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR1L (low byte) and CCPR1H (high byte). The CCP1CON register controls the operation of CCP1. All are readable and writable.

TABLE 14-1: CCP MODE - TIMER RESOURCE

CCP Mode	Timer Resource
Capture	Timer1 or Timer3
Compare	Timer1 or Timer3
PWM	Timer2

14.2 CCP2 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 (CCPR2) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR2L (low byte) and CCPR2H (high byte). The CCP2CON register controls the operation of CCP2. All are readable and writable.

TABLE 14-2: INTERACTION OF TWO CCP MODULES

CCPx Mode	CCPy Mode	Interaction
Capture	Capture	TMR1 or TMR3 time-base. Time-base can be different for each CCP.
Capture	Compare	The compare could be configured for the special event trigger, which clears either TMR1 or TMR3 depending upon which time-base is used.
Compare	Compare	The compare(s) could be configured for the special event trigger, which clears TMR1 or TMR3 depending upon which time-base is used.
PWM	PWM	The PWMs will have the same frequency and update rate (TMR2 interrupt).
PWM	Capture	None
PWM	Compare	None

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.3 Capture Mode

In Capture mode, CCPR1H:CCPR1L captures the 16-bit value of the TMR1 or TMR3 registers when an event occurs on pin RC2/CCP1. An event is defined as one of the following:

- every falling edge
- every rising edge
- every 4th rising edge
- every 16th rising edge

The event is selected by control bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP1CON<3:0>). When a capture is made, the interrupt request flag bit CCP1IF (PIR1<2>) is set; it must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in register CCPR1 is read, the old captured value is overwritten by the new captured value.

14.3.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the RC2/CCP1 pin should be configured as an input by setting the TRISC<2> bit.

Note:	If the RC2/CCP1 is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

14.3.2 TIMER1/TIMER3 MODE SELECTION

The timers that are to be used with the capture feature (either Timer1 and/or Timer3) must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work. The timer to be used with each CCP module is selected in the T3CON register.

14.3.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep bit CCP1IE (PIE1<2>) clear to avoid false interrupts and should clear the flag bit, CCP1IF, following any such change in Operating mode.

14.3.4 CCP PRESCALER

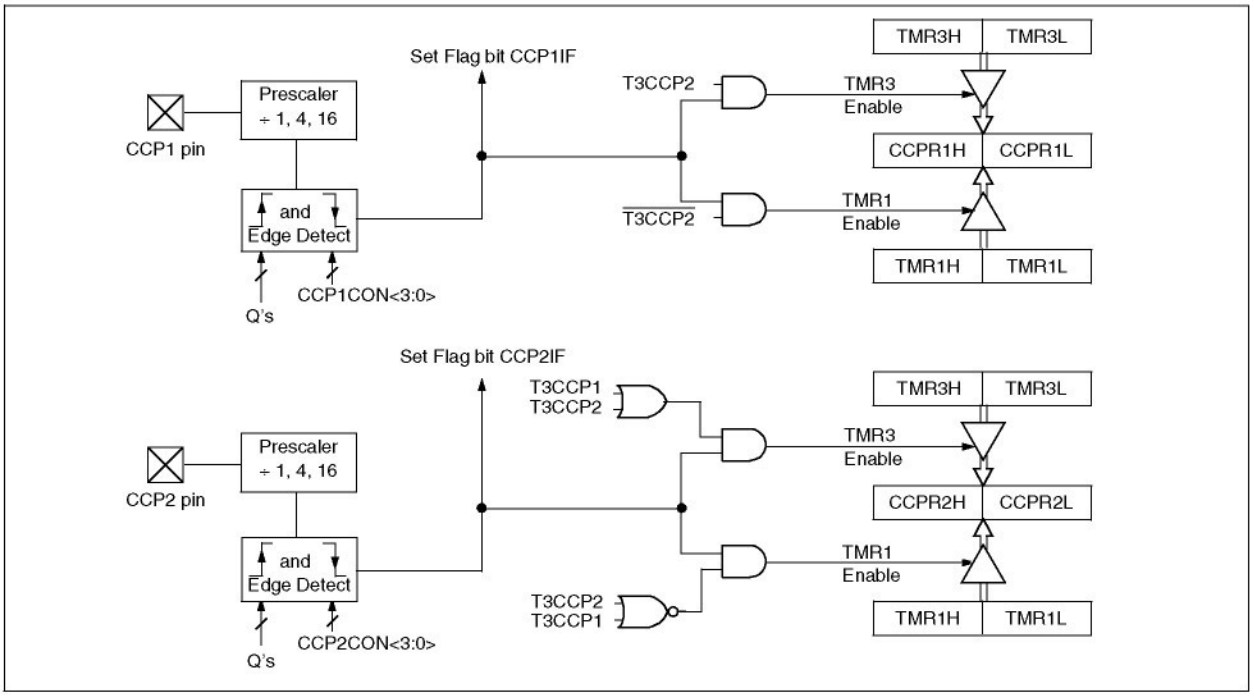
There are four prescaler settings, specified by bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0. Whenever the CCP module is turned off or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. This means that any RESET will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another may generate an interrupt. Also, the prescaler counter will not be cleared, therefore, the first capture may be from a non-zero prescaler. Example 14-1 shows the recommended method for switching between capture prescalers. This example also clears the prescaler counter and will not generate the "false" interrupt.

EXAMPLE 14-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS

```
CLRF    CCP1CON, F  ; Turn CCP module off
MOVLW   NEW_CAPT_PS ; Load WREG with the
                    ; new prescaler mode
                    ; value and CCP ON
MOVWF   CCP1CON     ; Load CCP1CON with
                    ; this value
```

FIGURE 14-1: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



14.4 Compare Mode

In Compare mode, the 16-bit CCPR1 (CCPR2) register value is constantly compared against either the TMR1 register pair value, or the TMR3 register pair value. When a match occurs, the RC2/CCP1 (RC1/CCP2) pin is:

- driven High
- driven Low
- toggle output (High to Low or Low to High)
- remains unchanged

The action on the pin is based on the value of control bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP2M3:CCP2M0). At the same time, interrupt flag bit CCP1IF (CCP2IF) is set.

14.4.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the CCPx pin as an output by clearing the appropriate TRISC bit.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the RC2/CCP1 compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

14.4.2 TIMER1/TIMER3 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 and/or Timer3 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode if the CCP module is using the compare feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the compare operation may not work.

14.4.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When generate software interrupt is chosen, the CCP1 pin is not affected. Only a CCP interrupt is generated (if enabled).

14.4.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

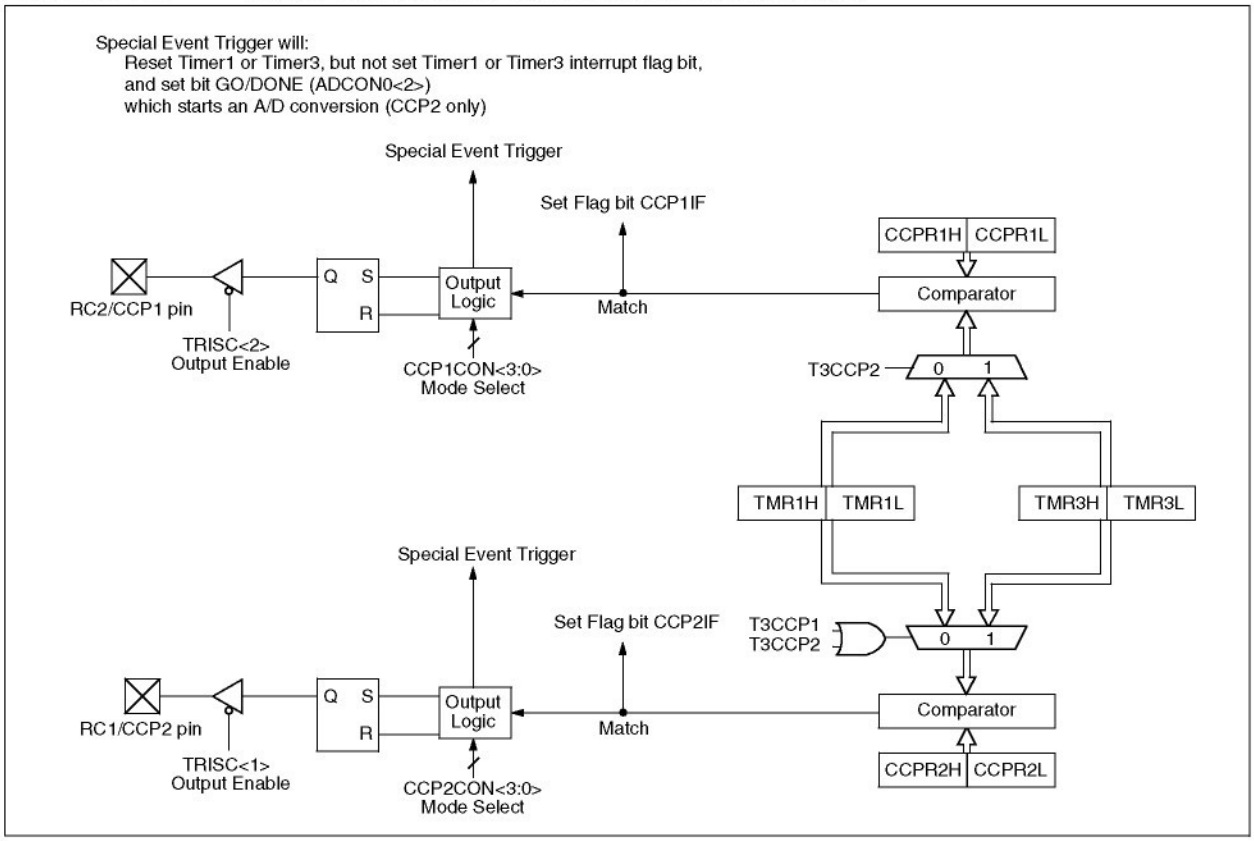
In this mode, an internal hardware trigger is generated, which may be used to initiate an action.

The special event trigger output of CCP1 resets the TMR1 register pair. This allows the CCPR1 register to effectively be a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1.

The special trigger output of CCPx resets either the TMR1 or TMR3 register pair. Additionally, the CCP2 Special Event Trigger will start an A/D conversion if the A/D module is enabled.

Note:	The special event trigger from the CCP2 module will not set the Timer1 or Timer3 interrupt flag bits.

FIGURE 14-2: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 14-3: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE, COMPARE, TIMER1 AND TIMER3

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIR2	—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	---0 0000
PIE2	—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	---0 0000
IPR2	—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	---1 1111
TMR3L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR3H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Capture and Timer1.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2x2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

14.5 PWM Mode

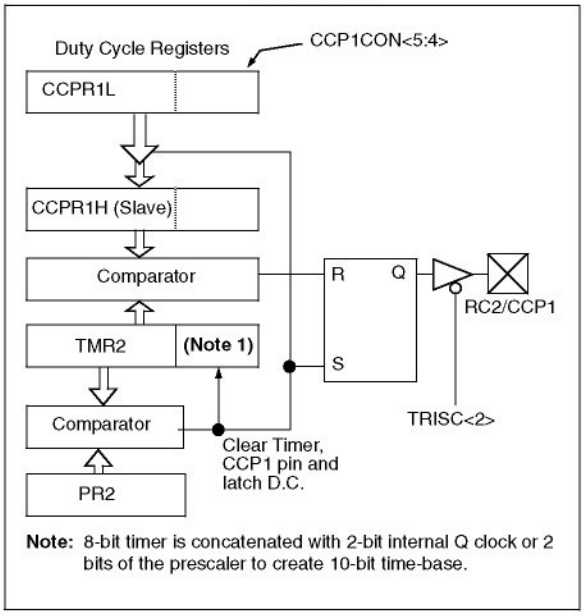
In Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) mode, the CCP1 pin produces up to a 10-bit resolution PWM output. Since the CCP1 pin is multiplexed with the PORTC data latch, the TRISC<2> bit must be cleared to make the CCP1 pin an output.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the CCP1 PWM output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

Figure 14-3 shows a simplified block diagram of the CCP module in PWM mode.

For a step-by-step procedure on how to set up the CCP module for PWM operation, see Section 14.5.3.

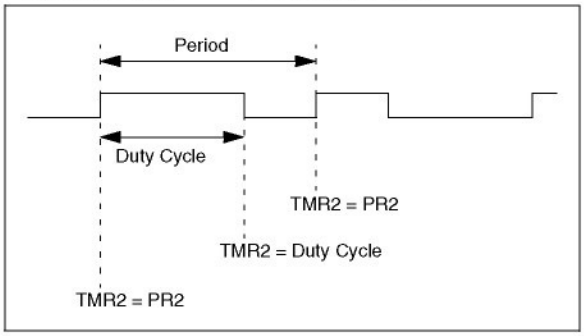
FIGURE 14-3: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: 8-bit timer is concatenated with 2-bit internal Q clock or 2 bits of the prescaler to create 10-bit time-base.

A PWM output (Figure 14-4) has a time-base (period) and a time that the output stays high (duty cycle). The frequency of the PWM is the inverse of the period (1/period).

FIGURE 14-4: PWM OUTPUT



14.5.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by writing to the PR2 register. The PWM period can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{PWM period} = (PR2) + 1] \cdot 4 \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 prescale value})$$

PWM frequency is defined as 1 / [PWM period].

When TMR2 is equal to PR2, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMR2 is cleared
- The CCP1 pin is set (exception: if PWM duty cycle = 0%, the CCP1 pin will not be set)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPR1L into CCPR1H

Note:	The Timer2 postscaler (see Section 12.0) is not used in the determination of the PWM frequency. The postscaler could be used to have a servo update rate at a different frequency than the PWM output.

14.5.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing to the CCPR1L register and to the CCP1CON<5:4> bits. Up to 10-bit resolution is available. The CCPR1L contains the eight MSbs and the CCP1CON<5:4> contains the two LSbs. This 10-bit value is represented by CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>. The following equation is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle in time:

$$\text{PWM duty cycle} = (\text{CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>}) \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 prescale value})$$

CCPR1L and CCP1CON<5:4> can be written to at any time, but the duty cycle value is not latched into CCPR1H until after a match between PR2 and TMR2 occurs (i.e., the period is complete). In PWM mode, CCPR1H is a read only register.

The CCPR1H register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double buffer the PWM duty cycle. This double buffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

When the CCPR1H and 2-bit latch match TMR2 concatenated with an internal 2-bit Q clock or 2 bits of the TMR2 prescaler, the CCP1 pin is cleared.

The maximum PWM resolution (bits) for a given PWM frequency is given by the equation:

$$\text{PWM Resolution (max)} = \frac{\log\left(\frac{F_{OSC}}{F_{PWM}}\right)}{\log(2)} \text{bits}$$

Note:	If the PWM duty cycle value is longer than the PWM period, the CCP1 pin will not be cleared.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.5.3 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for PWM operation:

1. Set the PWM period by writing to the PR2 register.
2. Set the PWM duty cycle by writing to the CCPR1L register and CCP1CON<5:4> bits.
3. Make the CCP1 pin an output by clearing the TRISC<2> bit.
4. Set the TMR2 prescale value and enable Timer2 by writing to T2CON.
5. Configure the CCP1 module for PWM operation.

TABLE 14-4: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS AT 40 MHz

PWM Frequency	2.44 kHz	9.77 kHz	39.06 kHz	156.25 kHz	312.50 kHz	416.67 kHz
Timer Prescaler (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PR2 Value	0xFF	0xFF	0xFF	0x3F	0x1F	0x17
Maximum Resolution (bits)	14	12	10	8	7	6.58

TABLE 14-5: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PWM AND TIMER2

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
PR2	Timer2 Module Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	--00 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PWM and Timer2.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.0 MASTER SYNCHRONOUS SERIAL PORT (MSSP) MODULE

15.1 Master SSP (MSSP) Module Overview

The Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) module is a serial interface useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The MSSP module can operate in one of two modes:

- Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C)
  - Full Master mode
  - Slave mode (with general address call)

The I^2C interface supports the following modes in hardware:

- Master mode
- Multi-Master mode
- Slave mode

15.2 Control Registers

The MSSP module has three associated registers. These include a status register (SSPSTAT) and two control registers (SSPCON1 and SSPCON2). The use of these registers and their individual configuration bits differ significantly, depending on whether the MSSP module is operated in SPI or I^2C mode.

Additional details are provided under the individual sections.

15.3 SPI Mode

The SPI mode allows 8-bits of data to be synchronously transmitted and received, simultaneously. All four modes of SPI are supported. To accomplish communication, typically three pins are used:

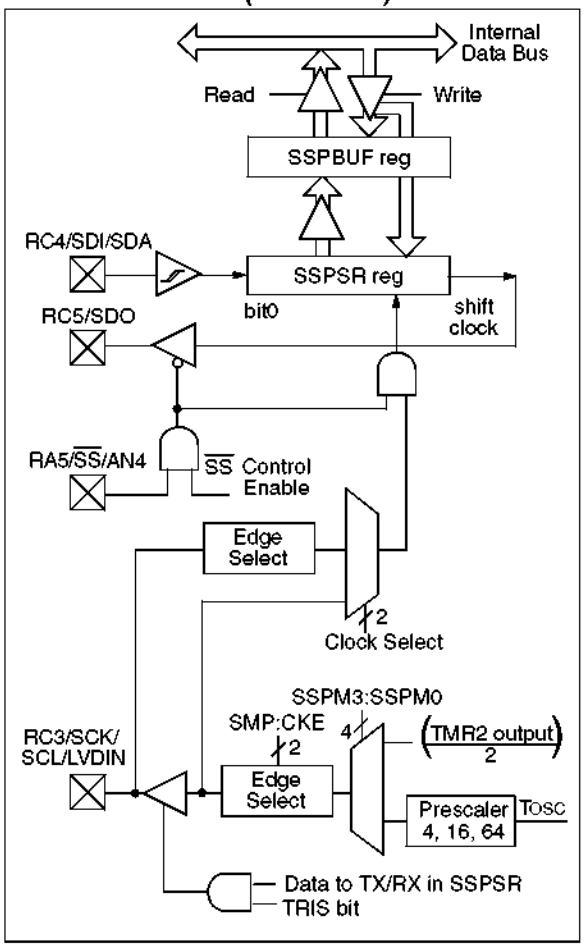
- Serial Data Out (SDO) - RC5/SDO
- Serial Data In (SDI) - RC4/SDI/SDA
- Serial Clock (SCK) - RC3/SCK/SCL/LVDIN

Additionally, a fourth pin may be used when in a Slave mode of operation:

- Slave Select ($\overline{SS}$) - RA5/$\overline{SS}$/AN4

Figure 15-1 shows the block diagram of the MSSP module when operating in SPI mode.

FIGURE 15-1: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)



15.3.1 REGISTERS

The MSSP module has four registers for SPI mode operation. These are:

- MSSP Control Register1 (SSPCON1)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) - Not directly accessible

SSPCON1 and SSPSTAT are the control and status registers in SPI mode operation. The SSPCON1 register is readable and writable. The lower 6 bits of the SSPSTAT are read only. The upper two bits of the SSPSTAT are read/write.

SSPSR is the shift register used for shifting data in or out. SSPBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written to or read from.

In receive operations, SSPSR and SSPBUF together create a double buffered receiver. When SSPSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPBUF and the SSPIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPBUF is not double buffered. A write to SSPBUF will write to both SSPBUF and SSPSR.

REGISTER 15-1: SSPSTAT: MSSP STATUS REGISTER (SPI MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Sample bit
SPI Master mode:
1 = Input data sampled at end of data output time
0 = Input data sampled at middle of data output time
SPI Slave mode:
SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode

bit 6 **CKE:** SPI Clock Edge Select
When CKP = 0:
1 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK
0 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK
When CKP = 1:
1 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK
0 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{Address}$ bit
Used in I^2C mode only

bit 4 **P:** STOP bit
Used in I^2C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSP module is disabled, SSPEN is cleared.

bit 3 **S:** START bit
Used in I^2C mode only

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/Write bit information
Used in I^2C mode only

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address
Used in I^2C mode only

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit (Receive mode only)
1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full
0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 15-2: SSPCON1: MSSP CONTROL REGISTER1 (SPI MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit (Transmit mode only)

1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)

0 = No collision

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

SPI Slave mode:

1 = A new byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode.The user must read the SSPBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow (must be cleared in software).

0 = No overflow

Note: In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPBUF register.

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit

1 = Enables serial port and configures SCK, SDO, SDI, and $\overline{SS}$ as serial port pins

0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

Note: When enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.

bit 4 **CKP:** Clock Polarity Select bit

1 = IDLE state for clock is a high level

0 = IDLE state for clock is a low level

bit 3-0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

0101 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin, $\overline{SS}$ pin control disabled, $\overline{SS}$ can be used as I/O pin

0100 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin, $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled

0011 = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2

0010 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/64

0001 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/16

0000 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/4

Note: Bit combinations not specifically listed here are either reserved, or implemented in I^2C mode only.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

15.3.2 OPERATION

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits (SSPCON1<5:0>) and SSPSTAT<7:6>. These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCK is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCK is the clock input)
- Clock Polarity (IDLE state of SCK)
- Data input sample phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCK)
- Clock Rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

The MSSP consists of a transmit/receive Shift Register (SSPSR) and a buffer register (SSPBUF). The SSPSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPSR, until the received data is ready. Once the 8 bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPBUF register. Then the buffer full detect bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>), and the interrupt flag bit, SSPIF, are set. This double buffering of the received data (SSPBUF) allows the next byte to start reception before reading the data that was just received. Any write to the SSPBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored, and the write collision detect bit, WCOL (SSPCON1<7>), will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit so that it can be determined if the following write(s) to the SSPBUF register completed successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPBUF. Buffer full bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>), indicates when SSPBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the MSSP Interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. The SSPBUF must be read and/or written. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur. Example 15-1 shows the loading of the SSPBUF (SSPSR) for data transmission.

The SSPSR is not directly readable or writable, and can only be accessed by addressing the SSPBUF register. Additionally, the MSSP status register (SSPSTAT) indicates the various status conditions.

EXAMPLE 15-1: LOADING THE SSPBUF (SSPSR) REGISTER

```
LOOP BTFSS SSPSTAT, BF     ;Has data been received(transmit complete)?
     BRA   LOOP            ;No
     MOVF  SSPBUF, W       ;WREG reg = contents of SSPBUF
     MOVWF RXDATA          ;Save in user RAM, if data is meaningful
     MOVF  TXDATA, W       ;W reg = contents of TXDATA
     MOVWF SSPBUF          ;New data to xmit
```


© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.3.3 ENABLING SPI I/O

To enable the serial port, SSP Enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON1<5>), must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPEN bit, re-initialize the SSPCON registers, and then set the SSPEN bit. This configures the SDI, SDO, SCK, and $\overline{SS}$ pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, some must have their data direction bits (in the TRIS register) appropriately programmed. That is:

- SDI is automatically controlled by the SPI module
- SDO must have TRISC<5> bit cleared
- SCK (Master mode) must have TRISC<3> bit cleared
- SCK (Slave mode) must have TRISC<3> bit set
- $\overline{SS}$ must have TRISC<4> bit set

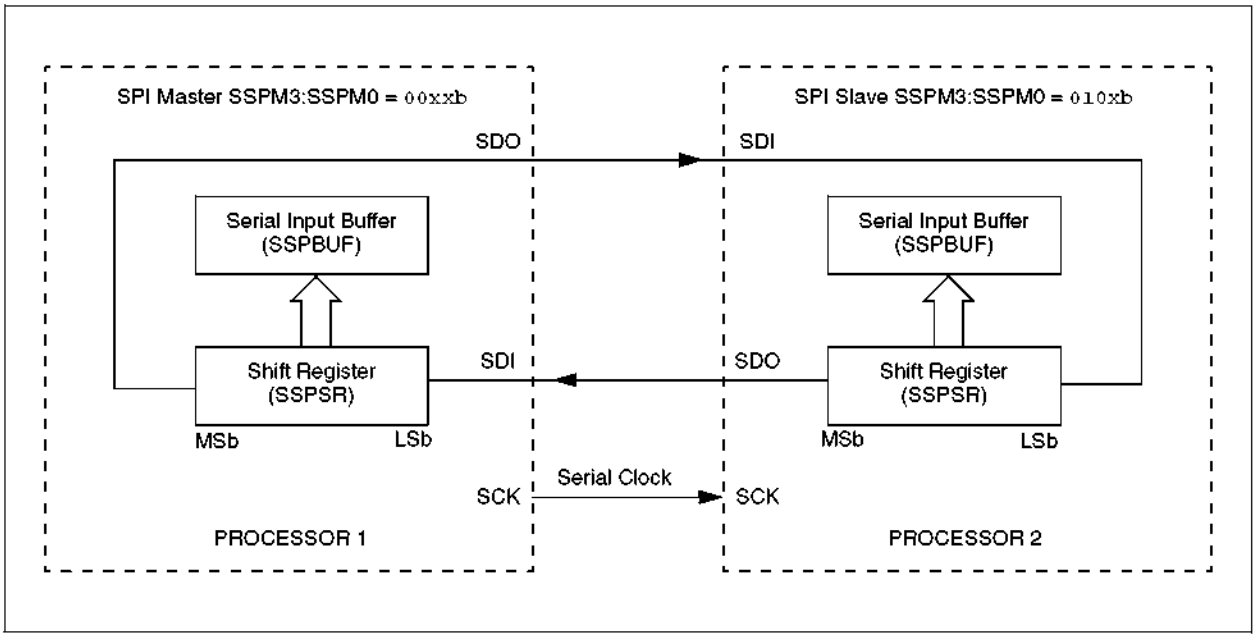
Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRIS) register to the opposite value.

15.3.4 TYPICAL CONNECTION

Figure 15-2 shows a typical connection between two microcontrollers. The master controller (Processor 1) initiates the data transfer by sending the SCK signal. Data is shifted out of both shift registers on their programmed clock edge, and latched on the opposite edge of the clock. Both processors should be programmed to the same Clock Polarity (CKP), then both controllers would send and receive data at the same time. Whether the data is meaningful (or dummy data) depends on the application software. This leads to three scenarios for data transmission:

- Master sends data — Slave sends dummy data
- Master sends data — Slave sends data
- Master sends dummy data — Slave sends data

FIGURE 15-2: SPI MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION



15.3.5 MASTER MODE

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCK. The master determines when the slave (Processor 2, Figure 15-2) is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDO output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDI pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPBUF register as if a normal received byte (interrupts and status bits appropriately set). This could be useful in receiver applications as a "Line Activity Monitor" mode.

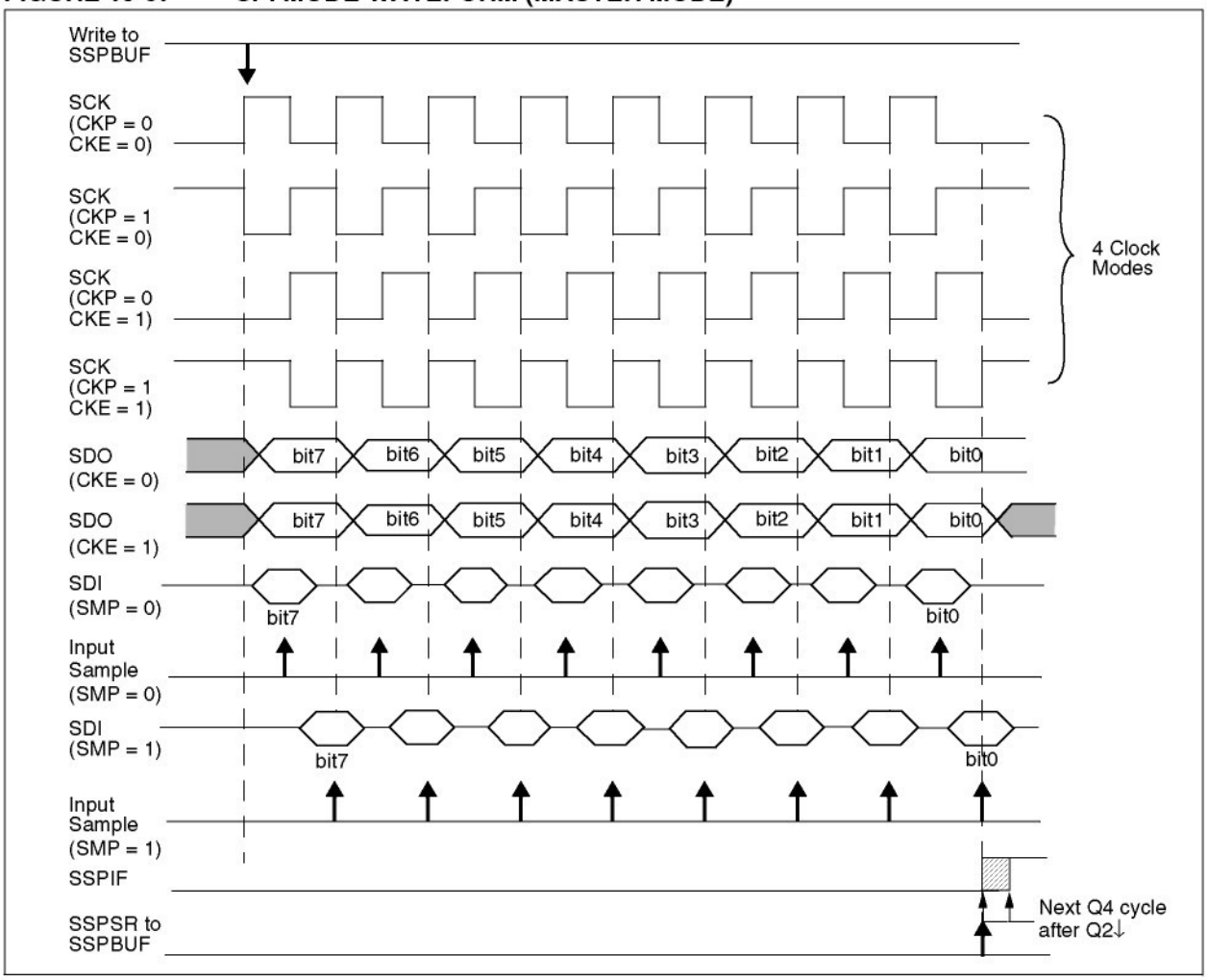
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit (SSPCON1<4>). This then, would give waveforms for SPI communication as shown in Figure 15-3, Figure 15-5, and Figure 15-6, where the MSB is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user programmable to be one of the following:

- FOSC/4 (or TCY)
- FOSC/16 (or 4 • TCY)
- FOSC/64 (or 16 • TCY)
- Timer2 output/2

This allows a maximum data rate (at 40 MHz) of 10.00 Mbps.

Figure 15-3 shows the waveforms for Master mode. When the CKE bit is set, the SDO data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCK. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

FIGURE 15-3: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.3.6 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as the external clock pulses appear on SCK. When the last bit is latched, the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCK pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in SLEEP mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. When a byte is received, the device will wake-up from sleep.

15.3.7 SLAVE SELECT SYNCHRONIZATION

The $\overline{SS}$ pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON1<3:0> = 04h). The pin must not be driven low for the $\overline{SS}$ pin to function as an input. The Data Latch must be high. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDO pin is driven. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin goes high, the SDO pin is no longer driven, even if in the middle of a transmitted byte, and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable, depending on the application.

Note 1: When the SPI is in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = 0100), the SPI module will reset if the $\overline{SS}$ pin is set to V_{DD}.

2: If the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE set, then the $\overline{SS}$ pin control must be enabled.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to 0. This can be done by either forcing the $\overline{SS}$ pin to a high level or clearing the SSPEN bit.

To emulate two-wire communication, the SDO pin can be connected to the SDI pin. When the SPI needs to operate as a receiver the SDO pin can be configured as an input. This disables transmissions from the SDO. The SDI can always be left as an input (SDI function), since it cannot create a bus conflict.

FIGURE 15-4: SLAVE SYNCHRONIZATION WAVEFORM

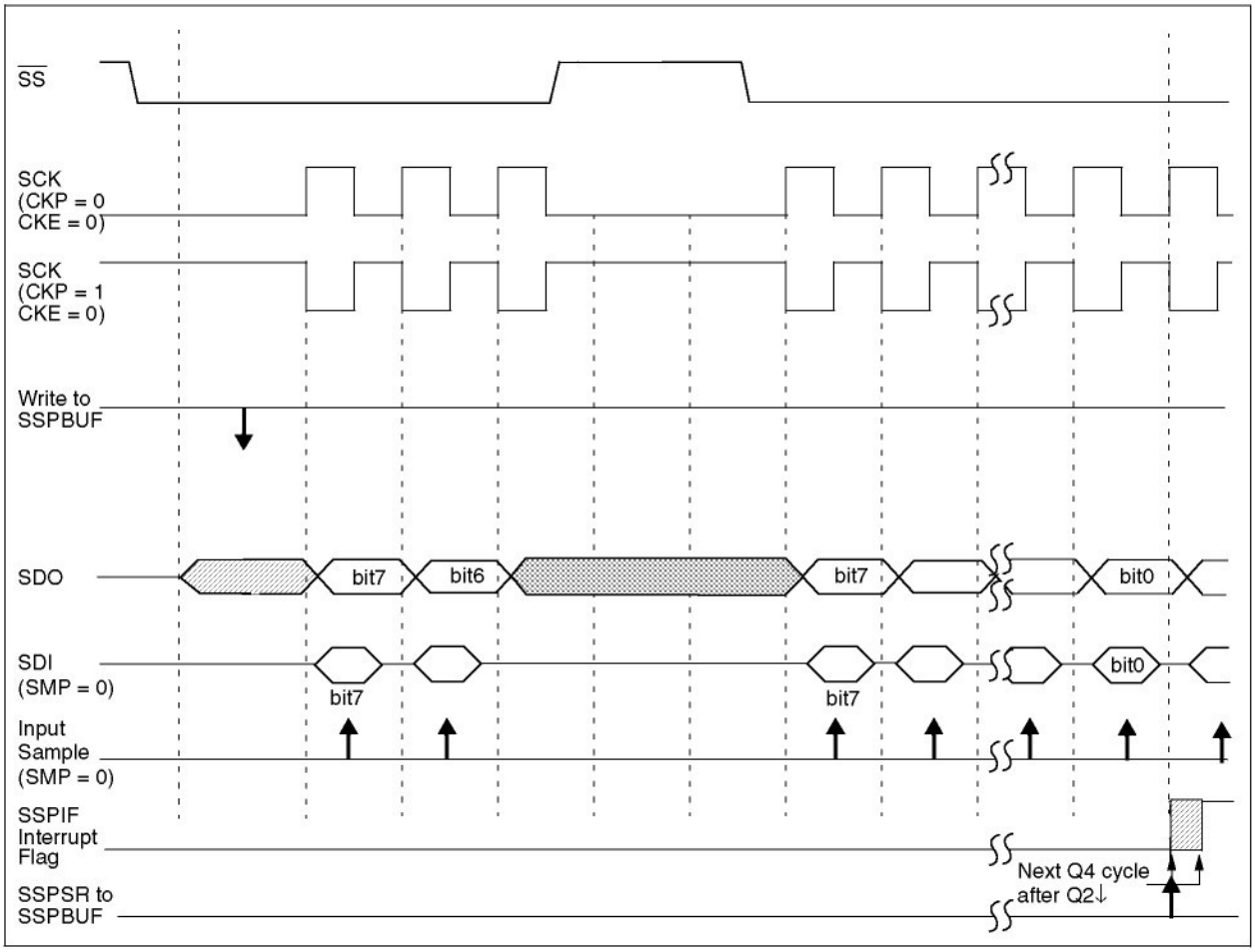


FIGURE 15-5: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

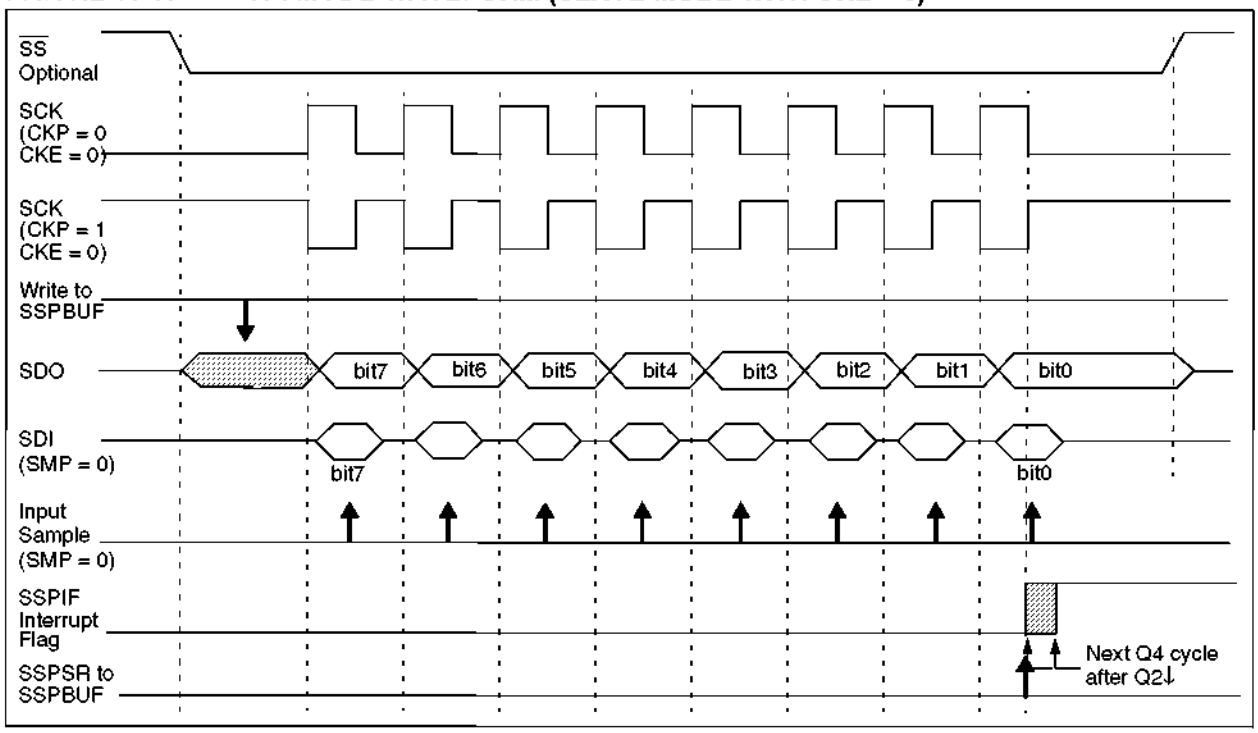
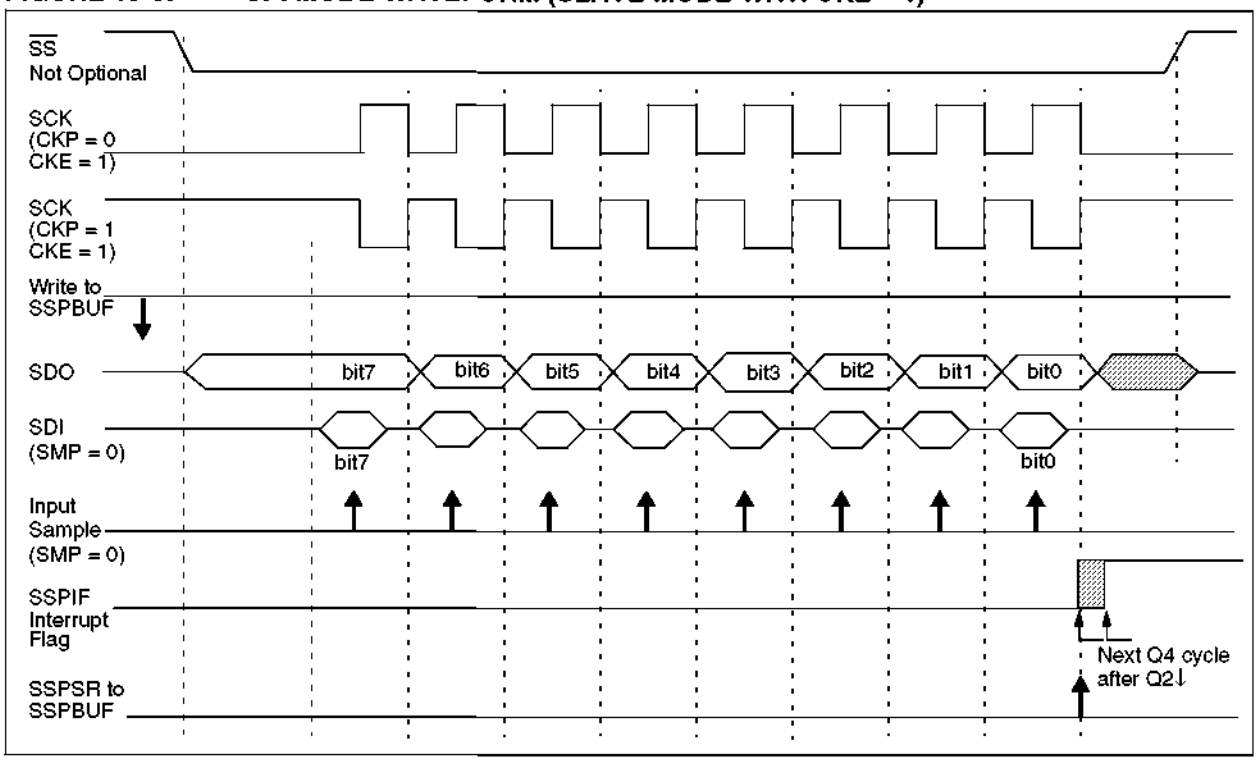


FIGURE 15-6: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.3.8 SLEEP OPERATION

In Master mode, all module clocks are halted and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes from SLEEP. After the device returns to Normal mode, the module will continue to transmit/ receive data.

In Slave mode, the SPI transmit/receive shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in SLEEP mode and data to be shifted into the SPI transmit/receive shift register. When all 8 bits have been received, the MSSP interrupt flag bit will be set and if enabled, will wake the device from SLEEP.

15.3.9 EFFECTS OF A RESET

A RESET disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

15.3.10 BUS MODE COMPATIBILITY

Table 15-1 shows the compatibility between the standard SPI modes and the states the CKP and CKE control bits.

TABLE 15-1: SPI BUS MODES

Standard SPI Mode Terminology	Control Bits State	
	CKP	CKE
0, 0	0	1
0, 1	0	0
1, 0	1	1
1, 1	1	0

There is also a SMP bit which controls when the data is sampled.

TABLE 15-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
SSPBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							-111 1111	-111 1111
SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the MSSP in SPI mode.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18C2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

15.4 I²C Mode

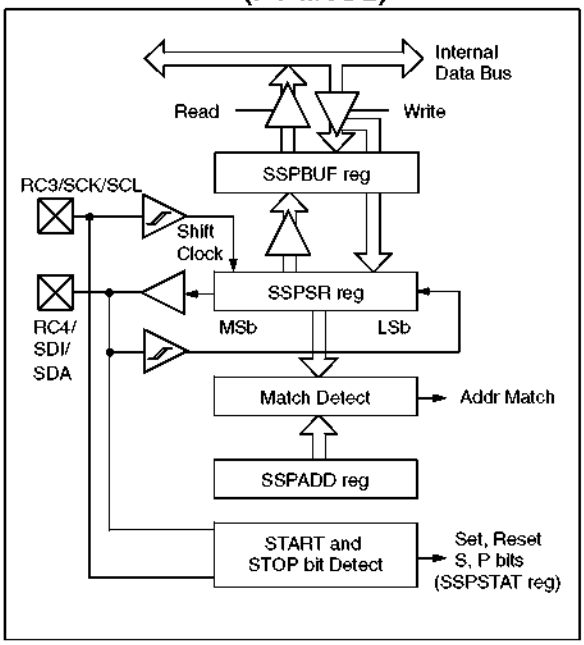
The MSSP module in I²C mode fully implements all master and slave functions (including general call support) and provides interrupts on START and STOP bits in hardware to determine a free bus (multi-master function). The MSSP module implements the Standard mode specifications, as well as 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.

Two pins are used for data transfer:

- Serial clock (SCL) - RC3/SCK/SCL
- Serial data (SDA) - RC4/SDI/SDA

The user must configure these pins as inputs or outputs through the TRISC<4:3> bits.

FIGURE 15-7: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I²C MODE)



15.4.1 REGISTERS

The MSSP module has six registers for I²C operation. These are:

- MSSP Control Register1 (SSPCON1)
- MSSP Control Register2 (SSPCON2)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) - Not directly accessible
- MSSP Address Register (SSPADD)

SSPCON, SSPCON2 and SSPSTAT are the control and status registers in I²C mode operation. The SSPCON and SSPCON2 registers are readable and writable. The lower 6 bits of the SSPSTAT are read only. The upper two bits of the SSPSTAT are read/write.

SSPSR is the shift register used for shifting data in or out. SSPBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written to or read from.

SSPADD register holds the slave device address when the SSP is configured in I²C Slave mode. When the SSP is configured in Master mode, the lower seven bits of SSPADD act as the baud rate generator reload value.

In receive operations, SSPSR and SSPBUF together, create a double buffered receiver. When SSPSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPBUF and the SSPIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPBUF is not double buffered. A write to SSPBUF will write to both SSPBUF and SSPSR.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 15-3: SSPSTAT: MSSP STATUS REGISTER (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Slew Rate Control bit
In Master or Slave mode:
1 = Slew rate control disabled for Standard Speed mode (100 kHz and 1 MHz)
0 = Slew rate control enabled for High Speed mode (400 kHz)

bit 6 **CKE:** SMBus Select bit
In Master or Slave mode:
1 = Enable SMBus specific inputs
0 = Disable SMBus specific inputs

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{Address}$ bit
In Master mode:
Reserved
In Slave mode:
1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data
0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address

bit 4 **P:** STOP bit
1 = Indicates that a STOP bit has been detected last
0 = STOP bit was not detected last
Note: This bit is cleared on RESET and when SSPEN is cleared.

bit 3 **S:** START bit
1 = Indicates that a start bit has been detected last
0 = START bit was not detected last
Note: This bit is cleared on RESET and when SSPEN is cleared.

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/Write bit Information (I^2C mode only)
In Slave mode:
1 = Read
0 = Write
Note: This bit holds the R/W bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next START bit, STOP bit, or not $\overline{ACK}$ bit.
In Master mode:
1 = Transmit is in progress
0 = Transmit is not in progress
Note: ORing this bit with SEN, RSEN, PEN, RCEN, or ACKEN will indicate if the MSSP is in IDLE mode.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address (10-bit Slave mode only)
1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPADD register
0 = Address does not need to be updated

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit
In Transmit mode:
1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full
0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty
In Receive mode:
1 = Data transmit in progress (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and STOP bits), SSPBUF is full
0 = Data transmit complete (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and STOP bits), SSPBUF is empty

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 15-4: SSPCON1: MSSP CONTROL REGISTER1 (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit

In Master Transmit mode:

1 = A write to the SSPBUF register was attempted while the I^2C conditions were not valid for a transmission to be started (must be cleared in software)

0 = No collision

In Slave Transmit mode:

1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)

0 = No collision

In Receive mode (Master or Slave modes):

This is a "don't care" bit

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

In Receive mode:

1 = A byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous byte (must be cleared in software)

0 = No overflow

In Transmit mode:

This is a "don't care" bit in Transmit mode

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit

1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDA and SCL pins as the serial port pins

0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

Note: When enabled, the SDA and SCL pins must be properly configured as input or output.

bit 4 **CKP:** SCK Release Control bit

In Slave mode:

1 = Release clock

0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch), used to ensure data setup time

In Master mode:

Unused in this mode

bit 3-0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

1111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled

1110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled

1011 = I^2C Firmware Controlled Master mode (Slave IDLE)

1000 = I^2C Master mode, clock = FOSC / (4 * (SSPADD+1))

0111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address

0110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address

Note: Bit combinations not specifically listed here are either reserved, or implemented in SPI mode only.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 15-5: SSPCON2: MSSP CONTROL REGISTER 2 (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GCEN:** General Call Enable bit (Slave mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt when a general call address (0000h) is received in the SSPSR
0 = General call address disabled

bit 6 **ACKSTAT:** Acknowledge Status bit (Master Transmit mode only)
1 = Acknowledge was not received from slave
0 = Acknowledge was received from slave

bit 5 **ACKDT:** Acknowledge Data bit (Master Receive mode only)
1 = Not Acknowledge
0 = Acknowledge

Note: Value that will be transmitted when the user initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of a receive.

bit 4 **ACKEN:** Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit (Master Receive mode only)
1 = Initiate Acknowledge sequence on SDA and SCL pins, and transmit ACKDT data bit. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Acknowledge sequence IDLE

bit 3 **RCEN:** Receive Enable bit (Master mode only)
1 = Enables Receive mode for I^2C
0 = Receive IDLE

bit 2 **PEN:** STOP Condition Enable bit (Master mode only)
1 = Initiate STOP condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = STOP condition IDLE

bit 1 **RSEN:** Repeated START Condition Enabled bit (Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Repeated START condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Repeated START condition IDLE

bit 0 **SEN:** START Condition Enabled/Stretch Enabled bit
In Master mode:
1 = Initiate START condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = START condition IDLE
In Slave mode:
1 = Clock stretching is enabled for both Slave Transmit and Slave Receive (stretch enabled)
0 = Clock stretching is enabled for slave transmit only (Legacy mode)

Note: For bits ACKEN, RCEN, PEN, RSEN, SEN: If the I^2C module is not in the IDLE mode, this bit may not be set (no spooling) and the SSPBUF may not be written (or writes to the SSPBUF are disabled).

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.2 OPERATION

The MSSP module functions are enabled by setting MSSP Enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON<5>).

The SSPCON1 register allows control of the I^2C operation. Four mode selection bits (SSPCON<3:0>) allow one of the following I^2C modes to be selected:

- I^2C Master mode, clock = OSC/4 (SSPADD +1)
- I^2C Slave mode (7-bit address)
- I^2C Slave mode (10-bit address)
- I^2C Slave mode (7-bit address), with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled
- I^2C Slave mode (10-bit address), with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled
- I^2C Firmware controlled master operation, slave is IDLE

Selection of any I^2C mode, with the SSPEN bit set, forces the SCL and SDA pins to be open drain, provided these pins are programmed to inputs by setting the appropriate TRISC bits. To guarantee proper operation of the module, pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins.

15.4.3 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the SCL and SDA pins must be configured as inputs (TRISC<4:3> set). The MSSP module will override the input state with the output data when required (slave-transmitter).

The I^2C Slave mode hardware will always generate an interrupt on an address match. Through the mode select bits, the user can also choose to interrupt on START and STOP bits

When an address is matched or the data transfer after an address match is received, the hardware automatically will generate the Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse and load the SSPBUF register with the received value currently in the SSPSR register.

Any combination of the following conditions will cause the MSSP module not to give this $\overline{ACK}$ pulse:

- The buffer full bit BF (SSPSTAT<0>) was set before the transfer was received.
- The overflow bit SSPOV (SSPCON<6>) was set before the transfer was received.

In this case, the SSPSR register value is not loaded into the SSPBUF, but bit SSPIF (PIR1<3>) is set. The BF bit is cleared by reading the SSPBUF register, while bit SSPOV is cleared through software.

The SCL clock input must have a minimum high and low for proper operation. The high and low times of the I^2C specification, as well as the requirement of the MSSP module, are shown in timing parameter 100 and parameter 101.

15.4.3.1 Addressing

Once the MSSP module has been enabled, it waits for a START condition to occur. Following the START condition, the 8-bits are shifted into the SSPSR register. All incoming bits are sampled with the rising edge of the clock (SCL) line. The value of register SSPSR<7:1> is compared to the value of the SSPADD register. The address is compared on the falling edge of the eighth clock (SCL) pulse. If the addresses match, and the BF and SSPOV bits are clear, the following events occur:

1. The SSPSR register value is loaded into the SSPBUF register.
2. The buffer full bit BF is set.
3. An $\overline{ACK}$ pulse is generated.
4. MSSP interrupt flag bit, SSPIF (PIR1<3>) is set (interrupt is generated if enabled) on the falling edge of the ninth SCL pulse.

In 10-bit Address mode, two address bytes need to be received by the slave. The five Most Significant bits (MSbs) of the first address byte specify if this is a 10-bit address. Bit R/$\overline{W}$ (SSPSTAT<2>) must specify a write so the slave device will receive the second address byte. For a 10-bit address, the first byte would equal '11110 A9 A8 0', where 'A9' and 'A8' are the two MSbs of the address. The sequence of events for 10-bit address is as follows, with steps 7 through 9 for the slave-transmitter:

1. Receive first (high) byte of Address (bits SSPIF, BF and bit UA (SSPSTAT<1>) are set).
2. Update the SSPADD register with second (low) byte of Address (clears bit UA and releases the SCL line).
3. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
4. Receive second (low) byte of Address (bits SSPIF, BF, and UA are set).
5. Update the SSPADD register with the first (high) byte of Address. If match releases SCL line, this will clear bit UA.
6. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
7. Receive Repeated START condition.
8. Receive first (high) byte of Address (bits SSPIF and BF are set).
9. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.3.2 Reception

When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the address byte is clear and an address match occurs, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register and the SDA line is held low ($\overline{ACK}$).

When the address byte overflow condition exists, then the no Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF (SSPSTAT<0>) is set, or bit SSPOV (SSPCON1<6>) is set.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF (PIR1<3>) must be cleared in software. The SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte.

If SEN is enabled (SSPCON1<0>=1), RC3/SCK/SCL will be held low (clock stretch) following each data transfer. The clock must be released by setting bit CKP (SSPCON<4>). See Section 15.4.4 ("Clock Stretching"), for more detail.

15.4.3.3 Transmission

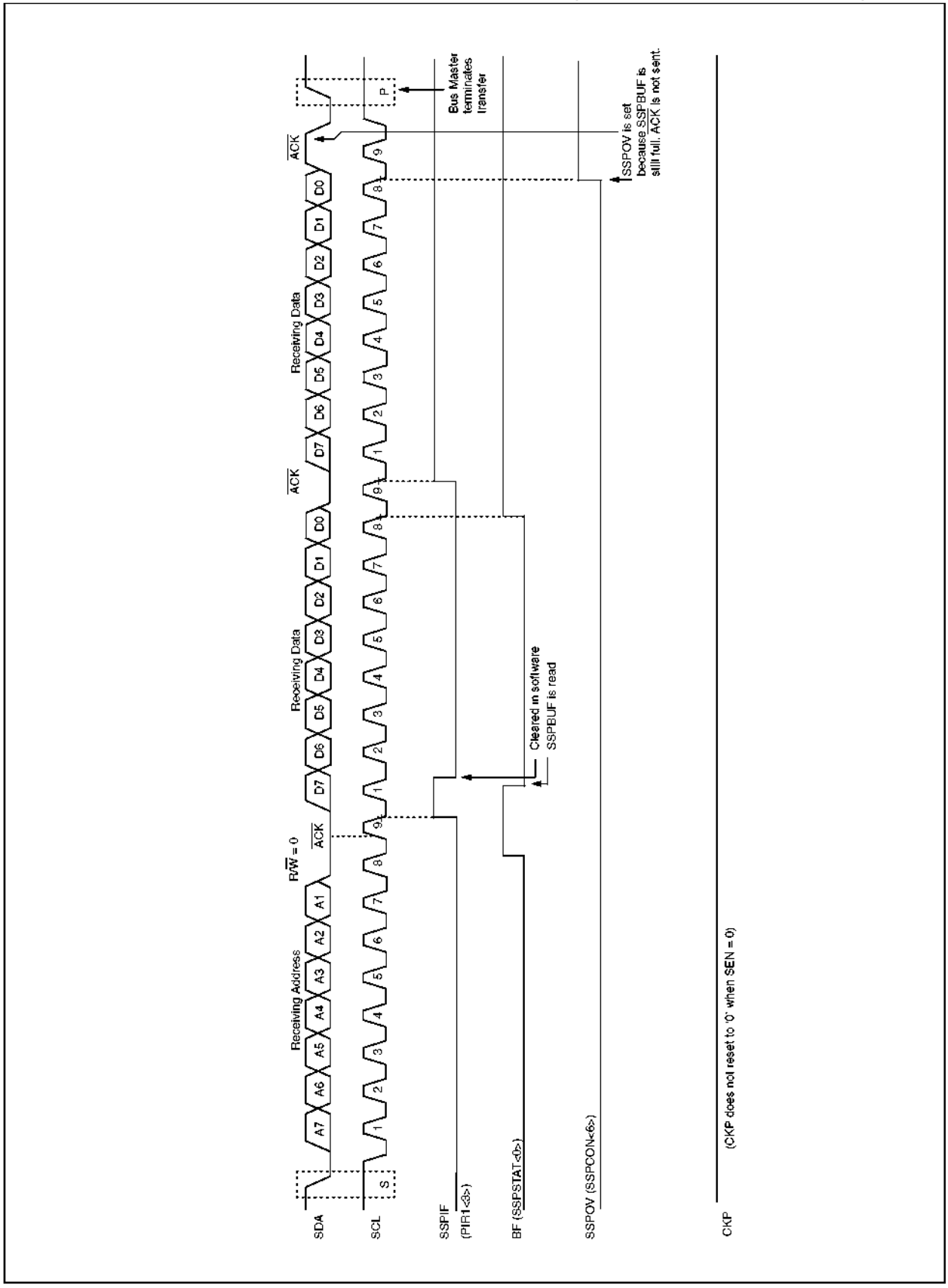
When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register. The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse will be sent on the ninth bit and pin RC3/SCK/SCL is held low, regardless of SEN (see "Clock Stretching", Section 15.4.4, for more detail). By stretching the clock, the master will be unable to assert another clock pulse until the slave is done preparing the transmit data.The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then pin RC3/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP (SSPCON1<4>). The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCL input. This ensures that the SDA signal is valid during the SCL high time (Figure 15-9).

The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse from the master-receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCL input pulse. If the SDA line is high (not $\overline{ACK}$), then the data transfer is complete. In this case, when the $\overline{ACK}$ is latched by the slave, the slave logic is reset (resets SSPSTAT register) and the slave monitors for another occurrence of the START bit. If the SDA line was low ($\overline{ACK}$), the next transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register. Again, pin RC3/SCK/SCL must be enabled by setting bit CKP.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. The SSPIF bit must be cleared in software and the SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. The SSPIF bit is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-8: I^2C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 0 (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-9: I^2C SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

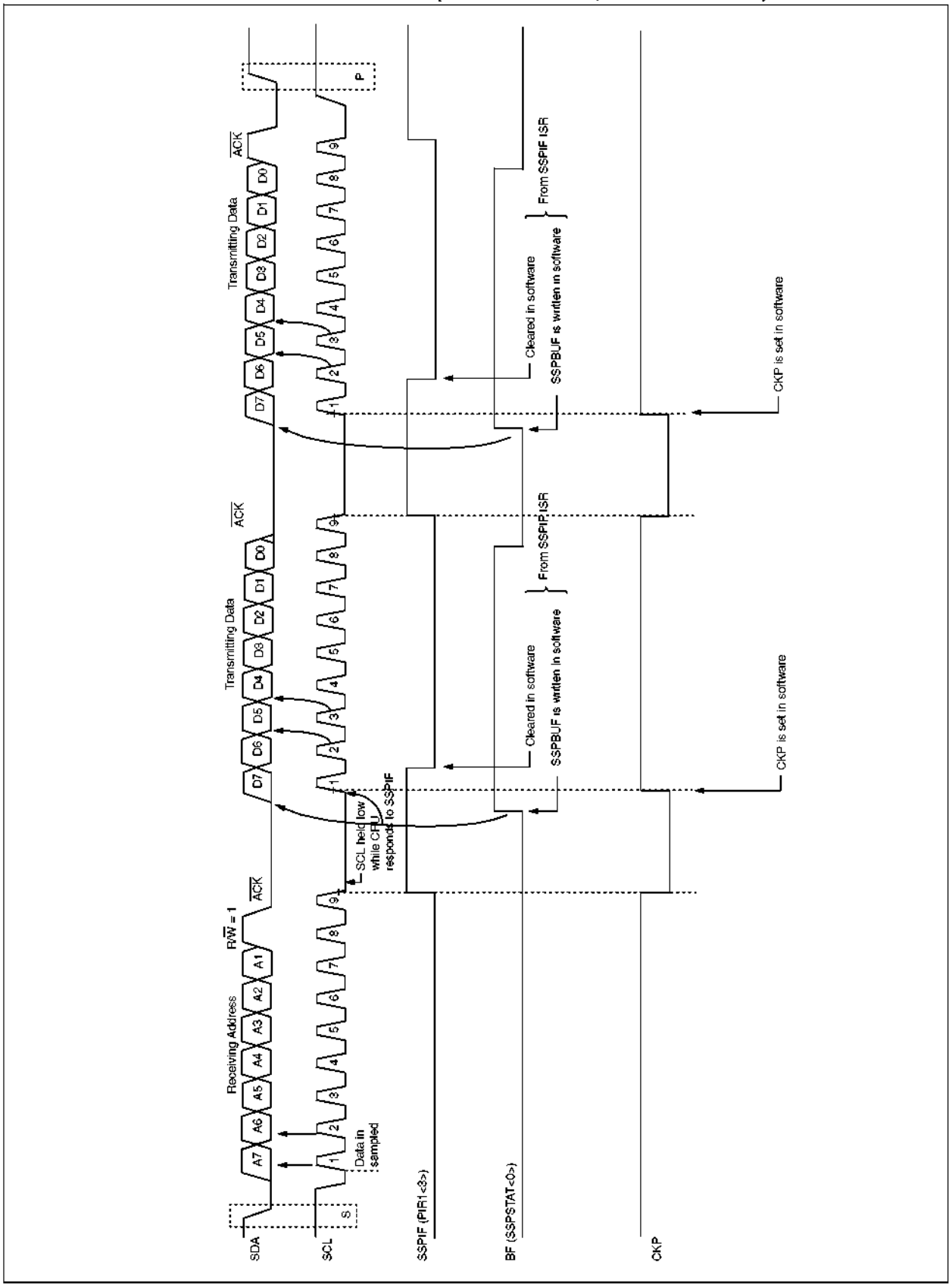
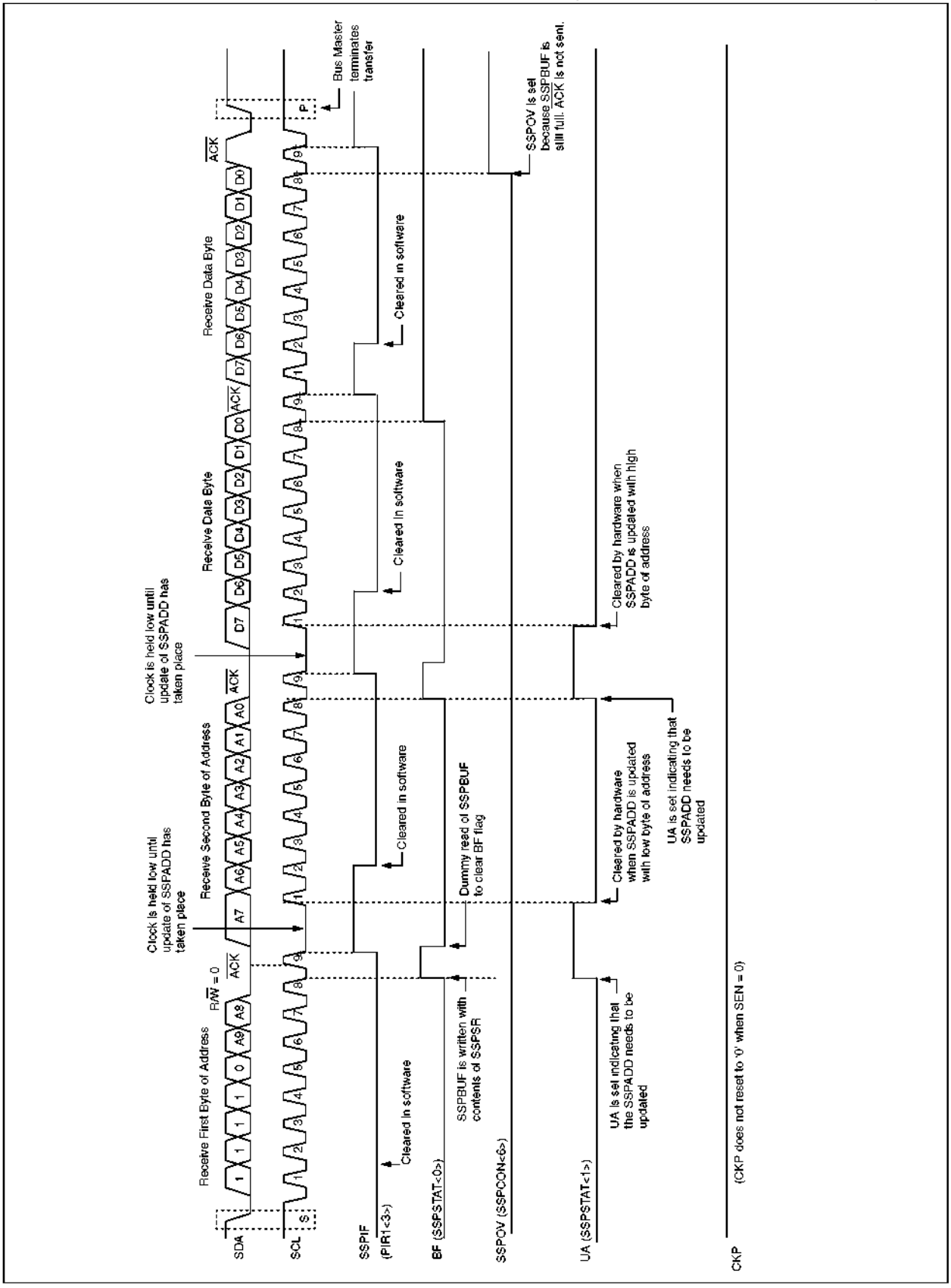
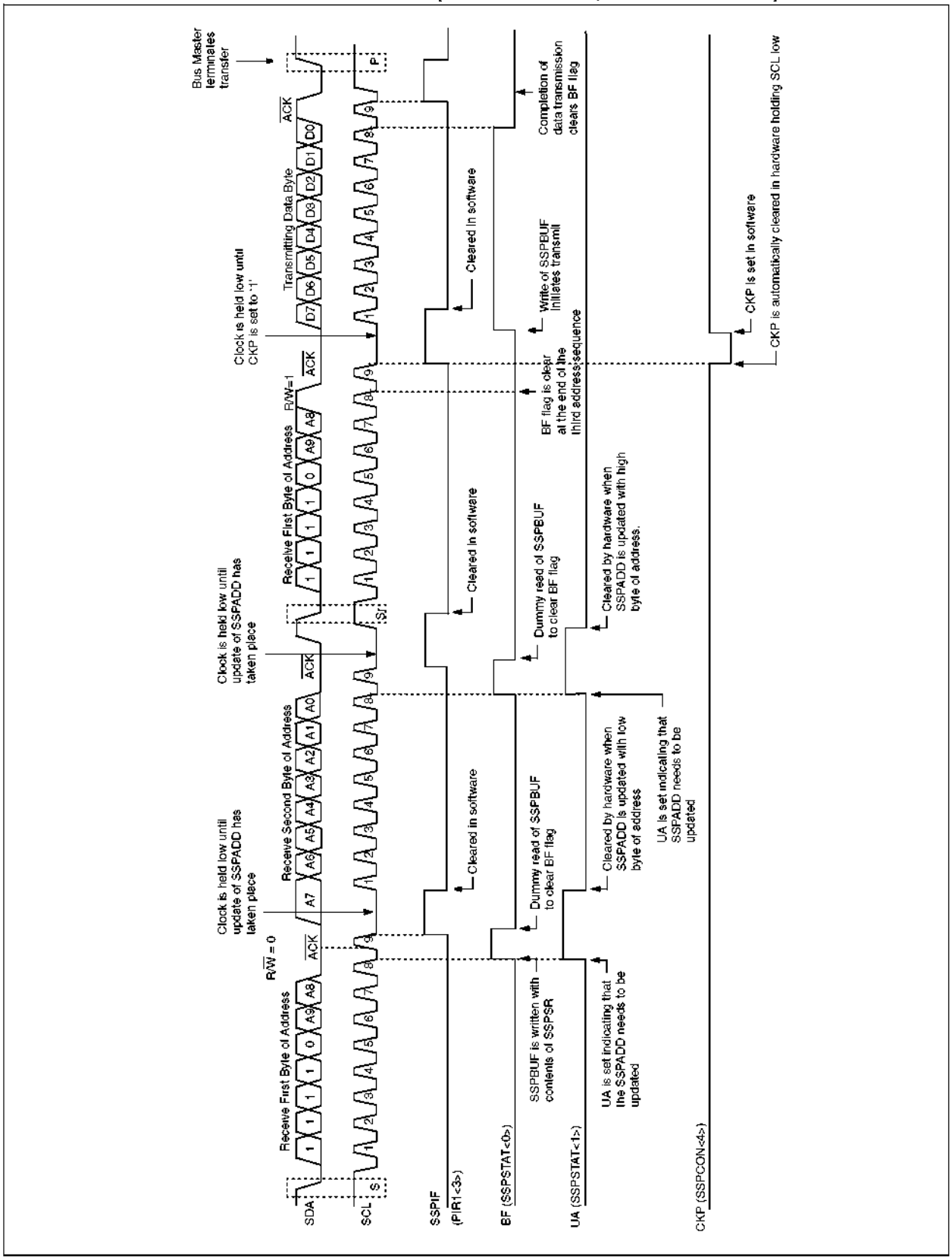


FIGURE 15-10: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 0 (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-11: I^2C SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



15.4.4 CLOCK STRETCHING

Both 7- and 10-bit Slave modes implement automatic clock stretching during a transmit sequence.

The SEN bit (SSPCON2<0>) allows clock stretching to be enabled during receives. Setting SEN will cause the SCL pin to be held low at the end of each data receive sequence.

15.4.4.1 Clock Stretching for 7-bit Slave Receive Mode (SEN = 1)

In 7-bit Slave Receive mode, on the falling edge of the ninth clock at the end of the $\overline{ACK}$ sequence, if the BF bit is set, the CKP bit in the SSPCON1 register is automatically cleared, forcing the SCL output to be held low. The CKP being cleared to '0' will assert the SCL line low. The CKP bit must be set in the user's ISR before reception is allowed to continue. By holding the SCL line low, the user has time to service the ISR and read the contents of the SSPBUF before the master device can initiate another receive sequence. This will prevent buffer overruns from occurring (see Figure 15-13).

Note 1: If the user reads the contents of the SSPBUF before the falling edge of the ninth clock, thus clearing the BF bit, the CKP bit will not be cleared and clock stretching will not occur.

2: The CKP bit can be set in software, regardless of the state of the BF bit. The user should be careful to clear the BF bit in the ISR before the next receive sequence, in order to prevent an overflow condition.

15.4.4.2 Clock Stretching for 10-bit Slave Receive Mode (SEN = 1)

In 10-bit Slave Receive mode, during the address sequence, clock stretching automatically takes place but CKP is not cleared. During this time, if the UA bit is set after the ninth clock, clock stretching is initiated. The UA bit is set after receiving the upper byte of the 10-bit address, and following the receive of the second byte of the 10-bit address with the R/$\overline{W}$ bit cleared to '0'. The release of the clock line occurs upon updating SSPADD. Clock stretching will occur on each data receive sequence as described in 7-bit mode.

Note: If the user polls the UA bit and clears it by updating the SSPADD register before the falling edge of the ninth clock occurs, and if the user hasn't cleared the BF bit by reading the SSPBUF register before that time, then the CKP bit will still NOT be asserted low. Clock stretching on the basis of the state of the BF bit only occurs during a data sequence, not an address sequence.

15.4.4.3 Clock Stretching for 7-bit Slave Transmit Mode

7-bit Slave Transmit mode implements clock stretching by clearing the CKP bit after the falling edge of the ninth clock, if the BF bit is clear. This occurs, regardless of the state of the SEN bit.

The user's ISR must set the CKP bit before transmission is allowed to continue. By holding the SCL line low, the user has time to service the ISR and load the contents of the SSPBUF before the master device can initiate another transmit sequence (see Figure 15-9).

Note 1: If the user loads the contents of SSPBUF, setting the BF bit before the falling edge of the ninth clock, the CKP bit will not be cleared and clock stretching will not occur.

2: The CKP bit can be set in software, regardless of the state of the BF bit.

15.4.4.4 Clock Stretching for 10-bit Slave Transmit Mode

In 10-bit Slave Transmit mode, clock stretching is controlled during the first two address sequences by the state of the UA bit, just as it is in 10-bit Slave Receive mode. The first two addresses are followed by a third address sequence, which contains the high order bits of the 10-bit address and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit set to '1'. After the third address sequence is performed, the UA bit is not set, the module is now configured in Transmit mode, and clock stretching is controlled by the BF flag, as in 7-bit Slave Transmit mode (see Figure 15-11).

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.4.5 Clock Synchronization and the CKP bit

If a user clears the CKP bit, the SCL output is forced to '0'. Setting the CKP bit will not assert the SCL output low until the SCL output is already sampled low. If the user attempts to drive SCL low, the CKP bit will not assert the SCL line until an external I^2C master device has already asserted the SCL line. The SCL output will remain low until the CKP bit is set, and all other devices on the I^2C bus have de-asserted SCL. This ensures that a write to the CKP bit will not violate the minimum high time requirement for SCL (see Figure 15-12).

FIGURE 15-12: CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION TIMING

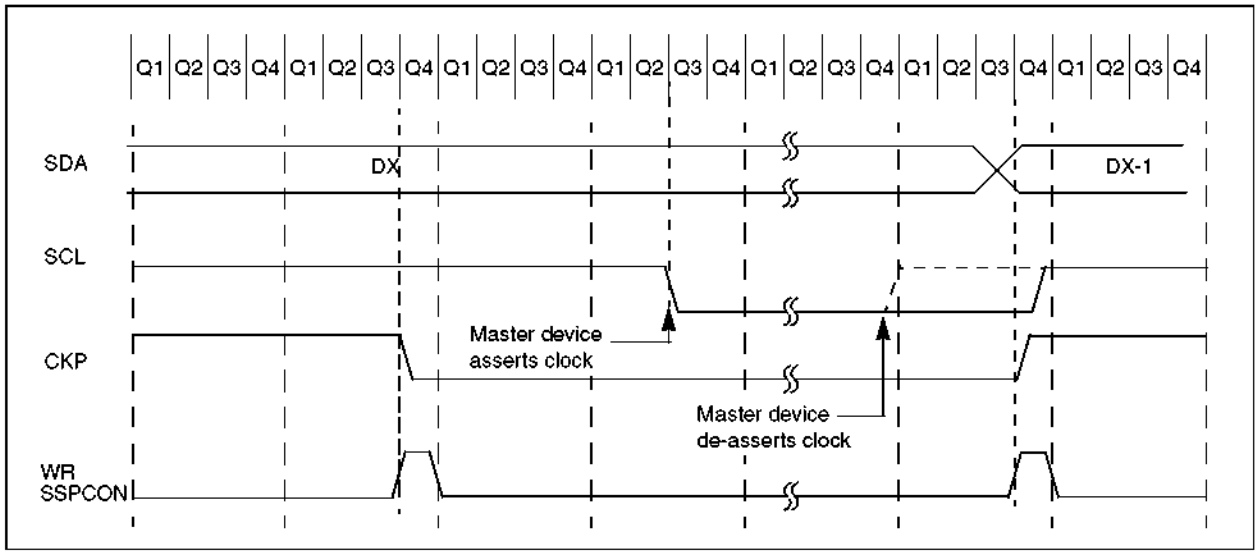
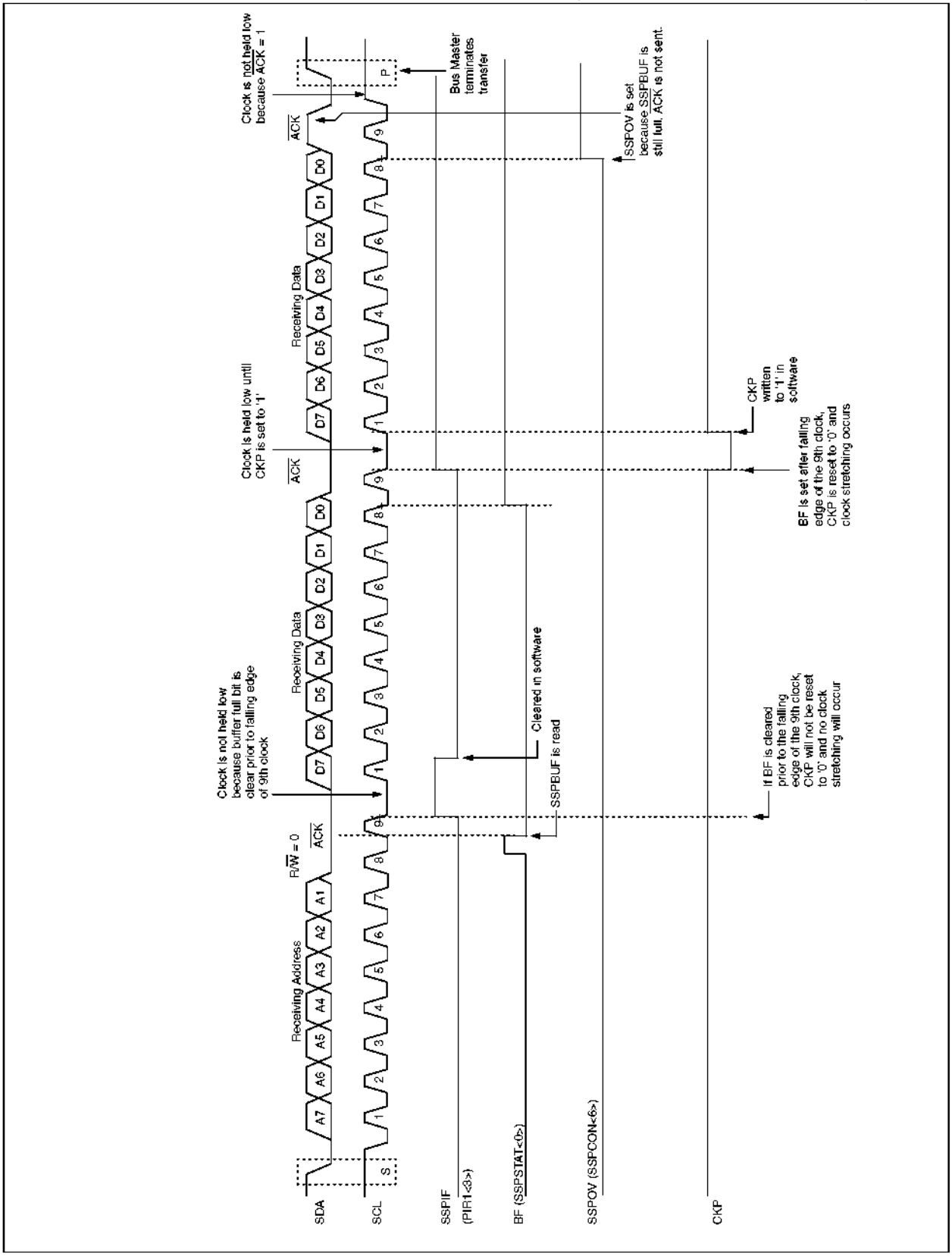
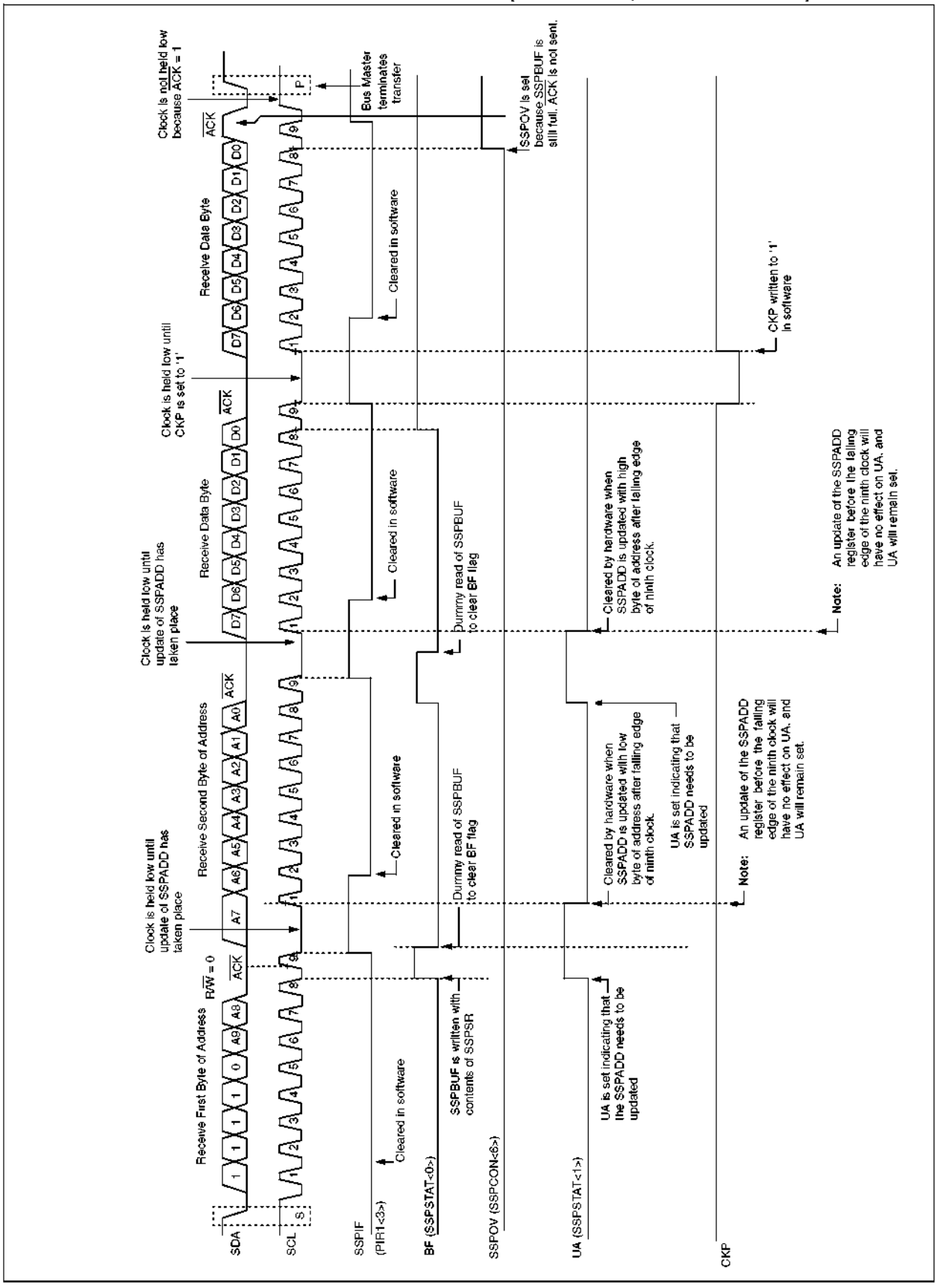


FIGURE 15-13: I^2C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 1 (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-14: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING SEN = 1 (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



15.4.5 GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SUPPORT

The addressing procedure for the I^2C bus is such that the first byte after the START condition usually determines which device will be the slave addressed by the master. The exception is the general call address, which can address all devices. When this address is used, all devices should, in theory, respond with an Acknowledge.

The general call address is one of eight addresses reserved for specific purposes by the I^2C protocol. It consists of all 0's with R/$\overline{W}$ = 0.

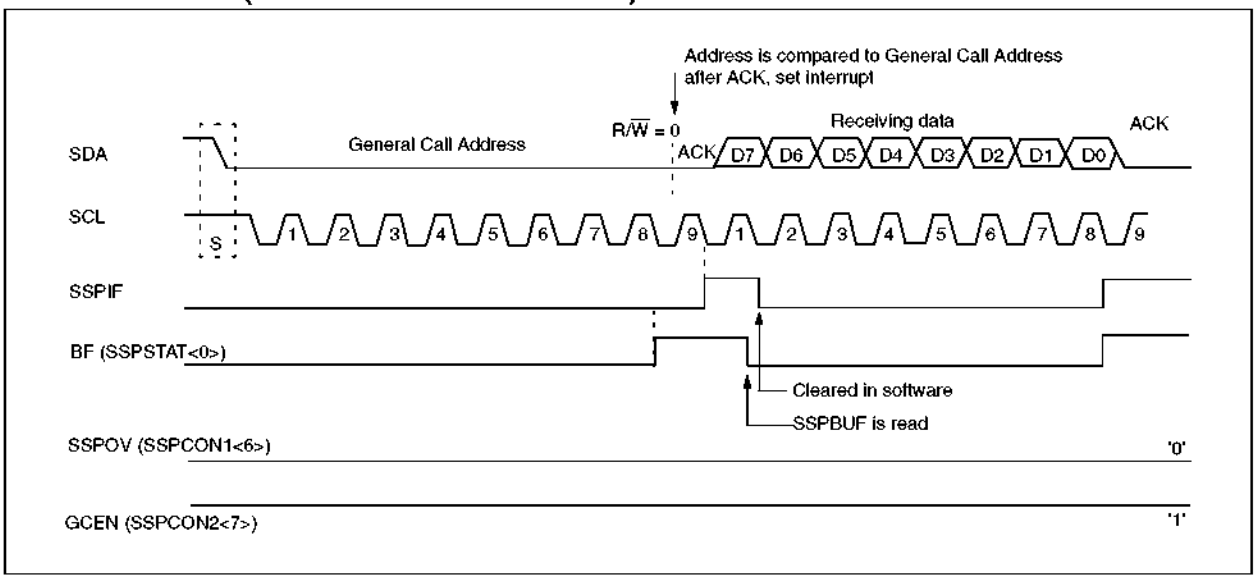
The general call address is recognized when the General Call Enable bit (GCEN) is enabled (SSPCON2<7> set). Following a START bit detect, 8-bits are shifted into the SSPSR and the address is compared against the SSPADD. It is also compared to the general call address and fixed in hardware.

If the general call address matches, the SSPSR is transferred to the SSPBUF, the BF flag bit is set (eighth bit), and on the falling edge of the ninth bit ($\overline{ACK}$ bit), the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

When the interrupt is serviced, the source for the interrupt can be checked by reading the contents of the SSPBUF. The value can be used to determine if the address was device specific or a general call address.

In 10-bit mode, the SSPADD is required to be updated for the second half of the address to match, and the UA bit is set (SSPSTAT<1>). If the general call address is sampled when the GCEN bit is set, while the slave is configured in 10-bit Address mode, then the second half of the address is not necessary, the UA bit will not be set, and the slave will begin receiving data after the Acknowledge (Figure 15-15).

FIGURE 15-15: SLAVE MODE GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SEQUENCE (7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS MODE)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.6 MASTER MODE

Master mode is enabled by setting and clearing the appropriate SSPM bits in SSPCON1 and by setting the SSPEN bit. In Master mode, the SCL and SDA lines are manipulated by the MSSP hardware.

Master mode of operation is supported by interrupt generation on the detection of the START and STOP conditions. The STOP (P) and START (S) bits are cleared from a RESET or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^2C bus may be taken when the P bit is set or the bus is IDLE, with both the S and P bits clear.

In Firmware Controlled Master mode, user code conducts all I^2C bus operations based on START and STOP bit conditions.

Once Master mode is enabled, the user has six options.

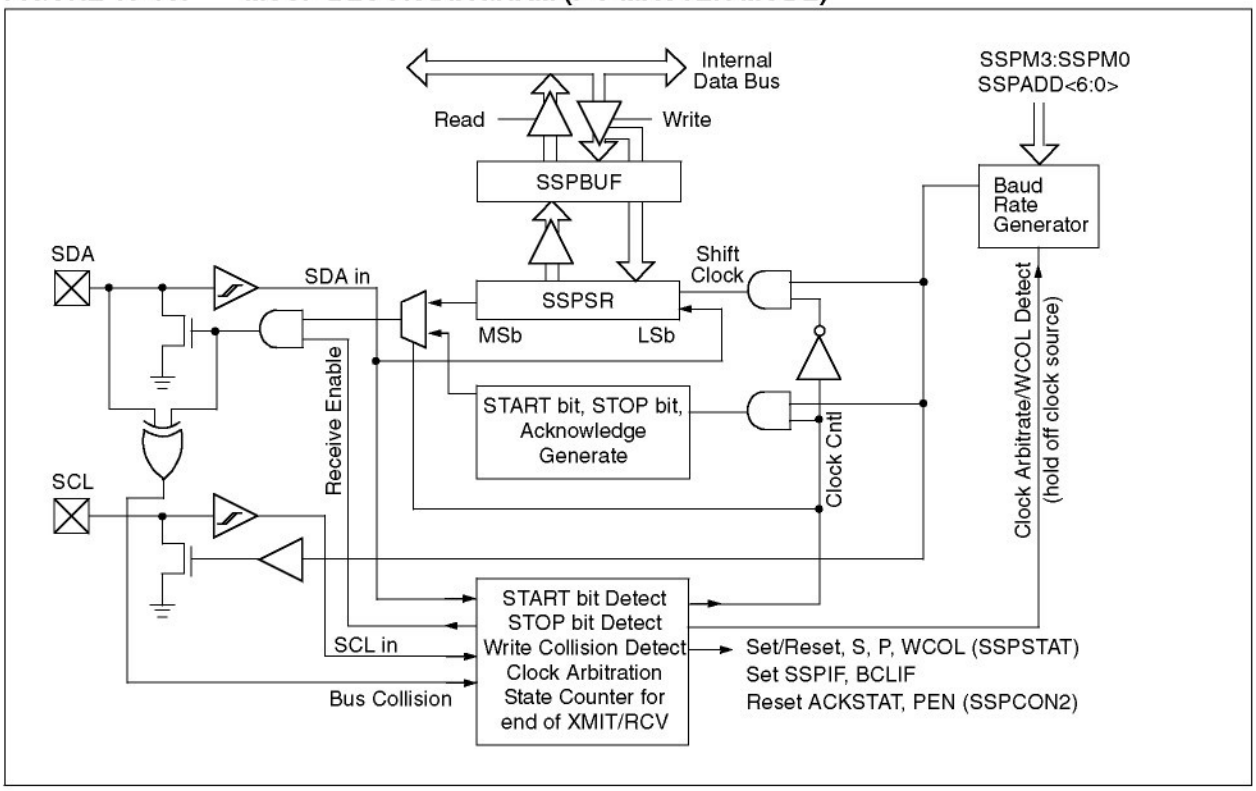
1. Assert a START condition on SDA and SCL.
2. Assert a Repeated START condition on SDA and SCL.
3. Write to the SSPBUF register initiating transmission of data/address.
4. Configure the I^2C port to receive data.
5. Generate an Acknowledge condition at the end of a received byte of data.
6. Generate a STOP condition on SDA and SCL.

Note: The MSSP Module, when configured in I^2C Master mode, does not allow queueing of events. For instance, the user is not allowed to initiate a START condition and immediately write the SSPBUF register to initiate transmission before the START condition is complete. In this case, the SSPBUF will not be written to and the WCOL bit will be set, indicating that a write to the SSPBUF did not occur.

The following events will cause SSP interrupt flag bit, SSPIF, to be set (SSP interrupt if enabled):

- START condition
- STOP condition
- Data transfer byte transmitted/received
- Acknowledge Transmit
- Repeated START

FIGURE 15-16: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I^2C MASTER MODE)



15.4.6.1 I^2C Master Mode Operation

The master device generates all of the serial clock pulses and the START and STOP conditions. A transfer is ended with a STOP condition or with a Repeated START condition. Since the Repeated START condition is also the beginning of the next serial transfer, the I^2C bus will not be released.

In Master Transmitter mode, serial data is output through SDA, while SCL outputs the serial clock. The first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the receiving device (7 bits) and the Read/Write (R/$\overline{W}$) bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '0'. Serial data is transmitted 8 bits at a time. After each byte is transmitted, an Acknowledge bit is received. START and STOP conditions are output to indicate the beginning and the end of a serial transfer.

In Master Receive mode, the first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the transmitting device (7 bits) and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '1'. Thus, the first byte transmitted is a 7-bit slave address followed by a '1' to indicate receive bit. Serial data is received via SDA, while SCL outputs the serial clock. Serial data is received 8 bits at a time. After each byte is received, an Acknowledge bit is transmitted. START and STOP conditions indicate the beginning and end of transmission.

The baud rate generator used for the SPI mode operation is used to set the SCL clock frequency for either 100 kHz, 400 kHz or 1 MHz I^2C operation. See Section 15.4.7 ("Baud Rate Generator"), for more detail.

A typical transmit sequence would go as follows:

1. The user generates a START condition by setting the START enable bit, SEN (SSPCON2<0>).
2. SSPIF is set. The MSSP module will wait the required start time before any other operation takes place.
3. The user loads the SSPBUF with the slave address to transmit.
4. Address is shifted out the SDA pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
5. The MSSP Module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the SSPCON2 register (SSPCON2<6>).
6. The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
7. The user loads the SSPBUF with eight bits of data.
8. Data is shifted out the SDA pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
9. The MSSP Module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the SSPCON2 register (SSPCON2<6>).
10. The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
11. The user generates a STOP condition by setting the STOP enable bit PEN (SSPCON2<2>).
12. Interrupt is generated once the STOP condition is complete.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.7 BAUD RATE GENERATOR

In I^2C Master mode, the baud rate generator (BRG) reload value is placed in the lower 7 bits of the SSPADD register (Figure 15-17). When a write occurs to SSPBUF, the baud rate generator will automatically begin counting. The BRG counts down to 0 and stops until another reload has taken place. The BRG count is decremented twice per instruction cycle (TCY) on the Q2 and Q4 clocks. In I^2C Master mode, the BRG is reloaded automatically.

Once the given operation is complete (i.e., transmission of the last data bit is followed by $\overline{ACK}$), the internal clock will automatically stop counting and the SCL pin will remain in its last state.

Table 15-3 demonstrates clock rates based on instruction cycles and the BRG value loaded into SSPADD.

FIGURE 15-17: BAUD RATE GENERATOR BLOCK DIAGRAM

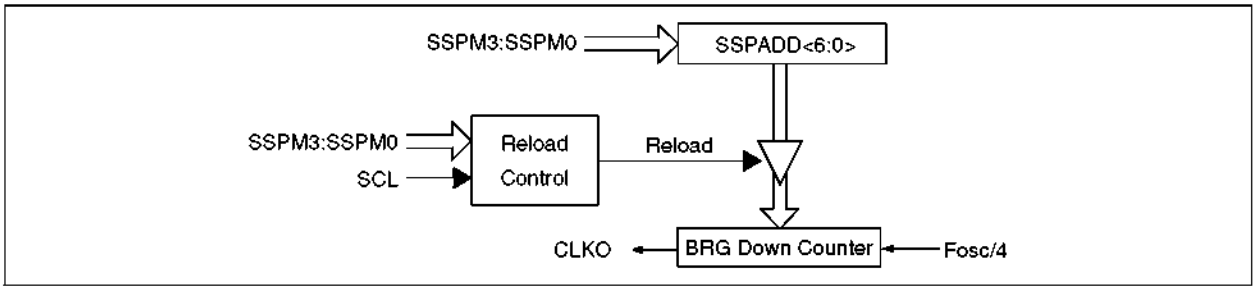


TABLE 15-3: I^2C CLOCK RATE W/BRG

FCY	FCY*2	BRG Value	FSCL(2) (2 Rollovers of BRG)
10 MHz	20 MHz	19h	400 kHz(1)
10 MHz	20 MHz	20h	312.5 kHz
10 MHz	20 MHz	3Fh	100 kHz
4 MHz	8 MHz	0Ah	400 kHz(1)
4 MHz	8 MHz	0Dh	308 kHz
4 MHz	8 MHz	28h	100 kHz
1 MHz	2 MHz	03h	333 kHz(1)
1 MHz	2 MHz	0Ah	100kHz
1 MHz	2 MHz	00h	1 MHz(1)

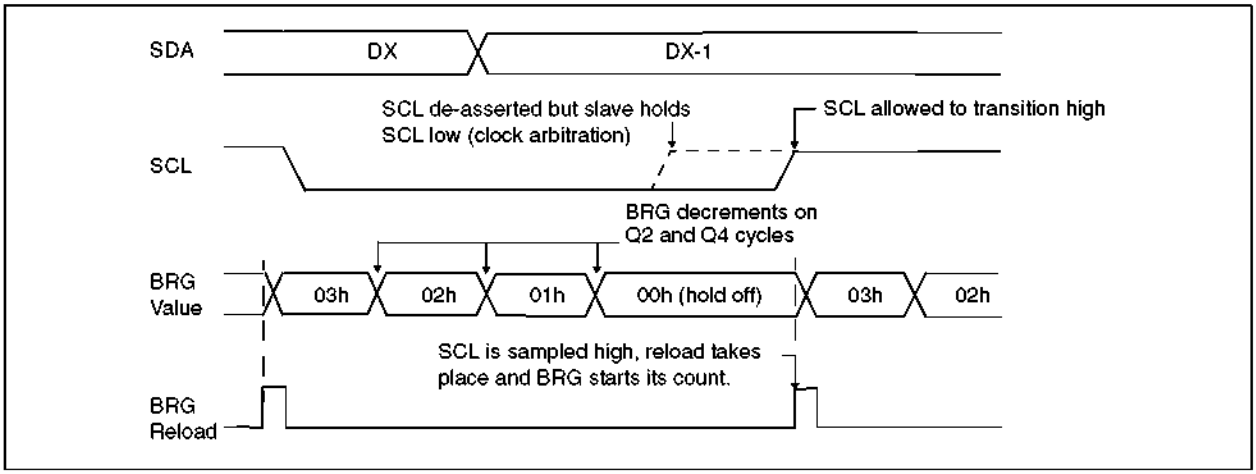
Note 1: The I^2C interface does not conform to the 400 kHz I^2C specification (which applies to rates greater than 100 kHz) in all details, but may be used with care where higher rates are required by the application.

2: Actual frequency will depend on bus conditions. Theoretically, bus conditions will add rise time and extend low time of clock period, producing the effective frequency.

15.4.7.1 Clock Arbitration

Clock arbitration occurs when the master, during any receive, transmit or Repeated START/STOP condition, de-asserts the SCL pin (SCL allowed to float high). When the SCL pin is allowed to float high, the baud rate generator (BRG) is suspended from counting until the SCL pin is actually sampled high. When the SCL pin is sampled high, the baud rate generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. This ensures that the SCL high time will always be at least one BRG rollover count, in the event that the clock is held low by an external device (Figure 15-18).

FIGURE 15-18: BAUD RATE GENERATOR TIMING WITH CLOCK ARBITRATION



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.8 I²C MASTER MODE START CONDITION TIMING

To initiate a START condition, the user sets the START condition enable bit, SEN (SSPCON2<0>). If the SDA and SCL pins are sampled high, the baud rate generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and starts its count. If SCL and SDA are both sampled high when the baud rate generator times out (TBRG), the SDA pin is driven low. The action of the SDA being driven low, while SCL is high, is the START condition and causes the S bit (SSPSTAT<3>) to be set. Following this, the baud rate generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and resumes its count. When the baud rate generator times out (TBRG), the SEN bit (SSPCON2<0>) will be automatically cleared by hardware, the baud rate generator is suspended, leaving the SDA line held low and the START condition is complete.

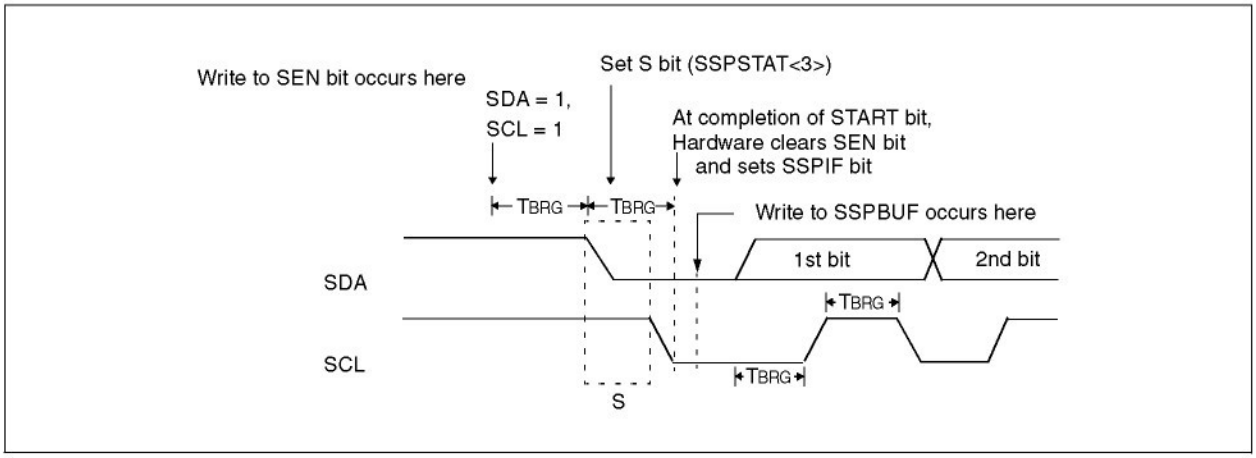
Note:	If at the beginning of the START condition, the SDA and SCL pins are already sampled low, or if during the START condition the SCL line is sampled low before the SDA line is driven low, a bus collision occurs, the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLIF is set, the START condition is aborted, and the I²C module is reset into its IDLE state.

15.4.8.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a START sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note:	Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing to the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the START condition is complete.

FIGURE 15-19: FIRST START BIT TIMING



15.4.9 I²C MASTER MODE REPEATED START CONDITION TIMING

A Repeated START condition occurs when the RSEN bit (SSPCON2<1>) is programmed high and the I²C logic module is in the IDLE state. When the RSEN bit is set, the SCL pin is asserted low. When the SCL pin is sampled low, the baud rate generator is loaded with the contents of SSPADD<5:0> and begins counting. The SDA pin is released (brought high) for one baud rate generator count (TBRG). When the baud rate generator times out, if SDA is sampled high, the SCL pin will be de-asserted (brought high). When SCL is sampled high, the baud rate generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. SDA and SCL must be sampled high for one TBRG. This action is then followed by assertion of the SDA pin (SDA = 0) for one TBRG, while SCL is high. Following this, the RSEN bit (SSPCON2<1>) will be automatically cleared and the baud rate generator will not be reloaded, leaving the SDA pin held low. As soon as a START condition is detected on the SDA and SCL pins, the S bit (SSPSTAT<3>) will be set. The SSPIF bit will not be set until the baud rate generator has timed out.

Note 1: If RSEN is programmed while any other event is in progress, it will not take effect.

2: A bus collision during the Repeated START condition occurs if:

- SDA is sampled low when SCL goes from low to high.
- SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low. This may indicate that another master is attempting to transmit a data "1".

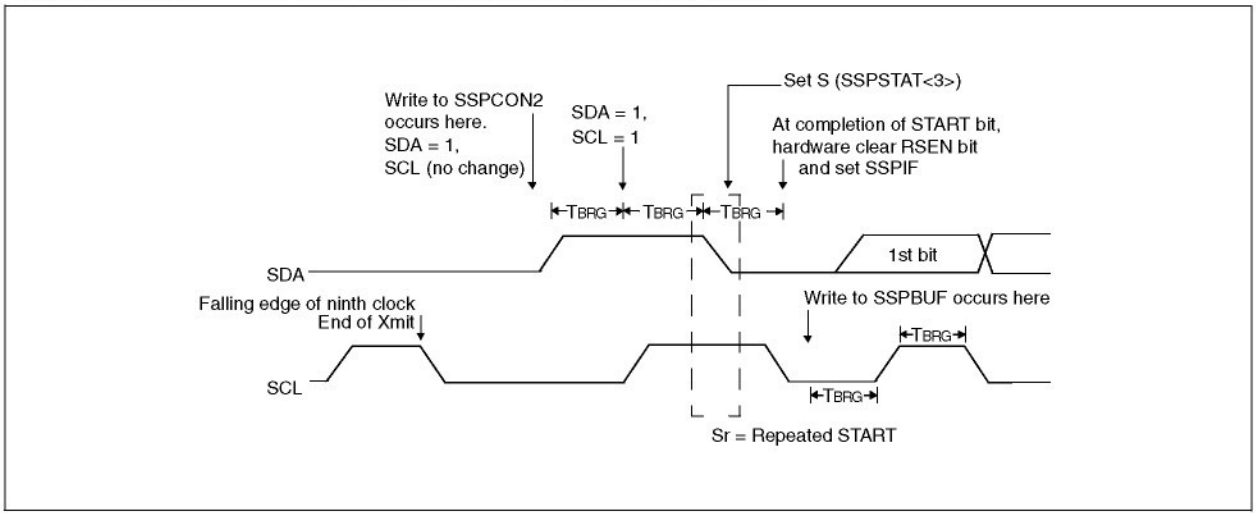
Immediately following the SSPIF bit getting set, the user may write the SSPBUF with the 7-bit address in 7-bit mode, or the default first address in 10-bit mode. After the first eight bits are transmitted and an ACK is received, the user may then transmit an additional eight bits of address (10-bit mode) or eight bits of data (7-bit mode).

15.4.9.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Repeated START sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note: Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing of the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the Repeated START condition is complete.

FIGURE 15-20: REPEAT START CONDITION WAVEFORM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.10 I²C MASTER MODE TRANSMISSION

Transmission of a data byte, a 7-bit address, or the other half of a 10-bit address is accomplished by simply writing a value to the SSPBUF register. This action will set the buffer full flag bit, BF, and allow the baud rate generator to begin counting and start the next transmission. Each bit of address/data will be shifted out onto the SDA pin after the falling edge of SCL is asserted (see data hold time specification parameter 106). SCL is held low for one baud rate generator rollover count (TBRG). Data should be valid before SCL is released high (see data setup time specification parameter 107). When the SCL pin is released high, it is held that way for TBRG. The data on the SDA pin must remain stable for that duration and some hold time after the next falling edge of SCL. After the eighth bit is shifted out (the falling edge of the eighth clock), the BF flag is cleared and the master releases SDA. This allows the slave device being addressed to respond with an $\overline{ACK}$ bit during the ninth bit time if an address match occurred or if data was received properly. The status of $\overline{ACK}$ is written into the ACKDT bit on the falling edge of the ninth clock. If the master receives an Acknowledge, the Acknowledge status bit, ACKSTAT, is cleared. If not, the bit is set. After the ninth clock, the SSPIF bit is set and the master clock (baud rate generator) is suspended until the next data byte is loaded into the SSPBUF, leaving SCL low and SDA unchanged (Figure 15-21).

After the write to the SSPBUF, each bit of address will be shifted out on the falling edge of SCL until all seven address bits and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit are completed. On the falling edge of the eighth clock, the master will de-assert the SDA pin, allowing the slave to respond with an Acknowledge. On the falling edge of the ninth clock, the master will sample the SDA pin to see if the address was recognized by a slave. The status of the ACK bit is loaded into the ACKSTAT status bit (SSPCON2<6>). Following the falling edge of the ninth clock transmission of the address, the SSPIF is set, the BF flag is cleared and the baud rate generator is turned off until another write to the SSPBUF takes place, holding SCL low and allowing SDA to float.

15.4.10.1 BF Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the BF bit (SSPSTAT<0>) is set when the CPU writes to SSPBUF and is cleared when all 8 bits are shifted out.

15.4.10.2 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a transmit is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting out a data byte), the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

WCOL must be cleared in software.

15.4.10.3 ACKSTAT Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the ACKSTAT bit (SSPCON2<6>) is cleared when the slave has sent an Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$ = 0), and is set when the slave does not Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$ = 1). A slave sends an Acknowledge when it has recognized its address (including a general call) or when the slave has properly received its data.

15.4.11 I²C MASTER MODE RECEPTION

Master mode reception is enabled by programming the receive enable bit, RCEN (SSPCON2<3>).

Note:	In the MSSP module, the RCEN bit must be set after the ACK sequence or the RCEN bit will be disregarded.

The baud rate generator begins counting, and on each rollover, the state of the SCL pin changes (high to low/low to high) and data is shifted into the SSPSR. After the falling edge of the eighth clock, the receive enable flag is automatically cleared, the contents of the SSPSR are loaded into the SSPBUF, the BF flag bit is set, the SSPIF flag bit is set and the baud rate generator is suspended from counting, holding SCL low. The MSSP is now in IDLE state, awaiting the next command. When the buffer is read by the CPU, the BF flag bit is automatically cleared. The user can then send an Acknowledge bit at the end of reception, by setting the Acknowledge sequence enable bit, ACKEN (SSPCON2<4>).

15.4.11.1 BF Status Flag

In receive operation, the BF bit is set when an address or data byte is loaded into SSPBUF from SSPSR. It is cleared when the SSPBUF register is read.

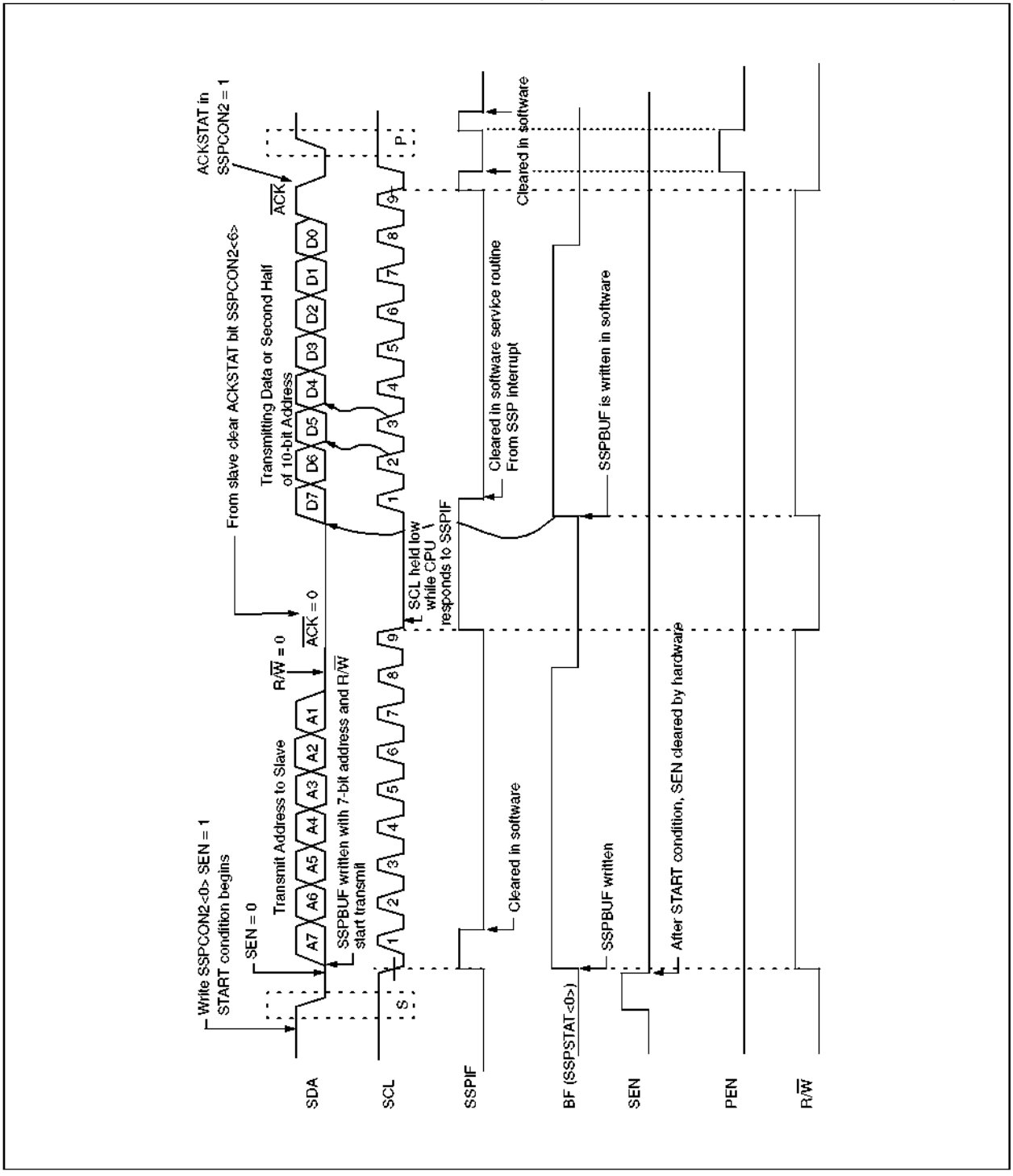
15.4.11.2 SSPOV Status Flag

In receive operation, the SSPOV bit is set when 8 bits are received into the SSPSR and the BF flag bit is already set from a previous reception.

15.4.11.3 WCOL Status Flag

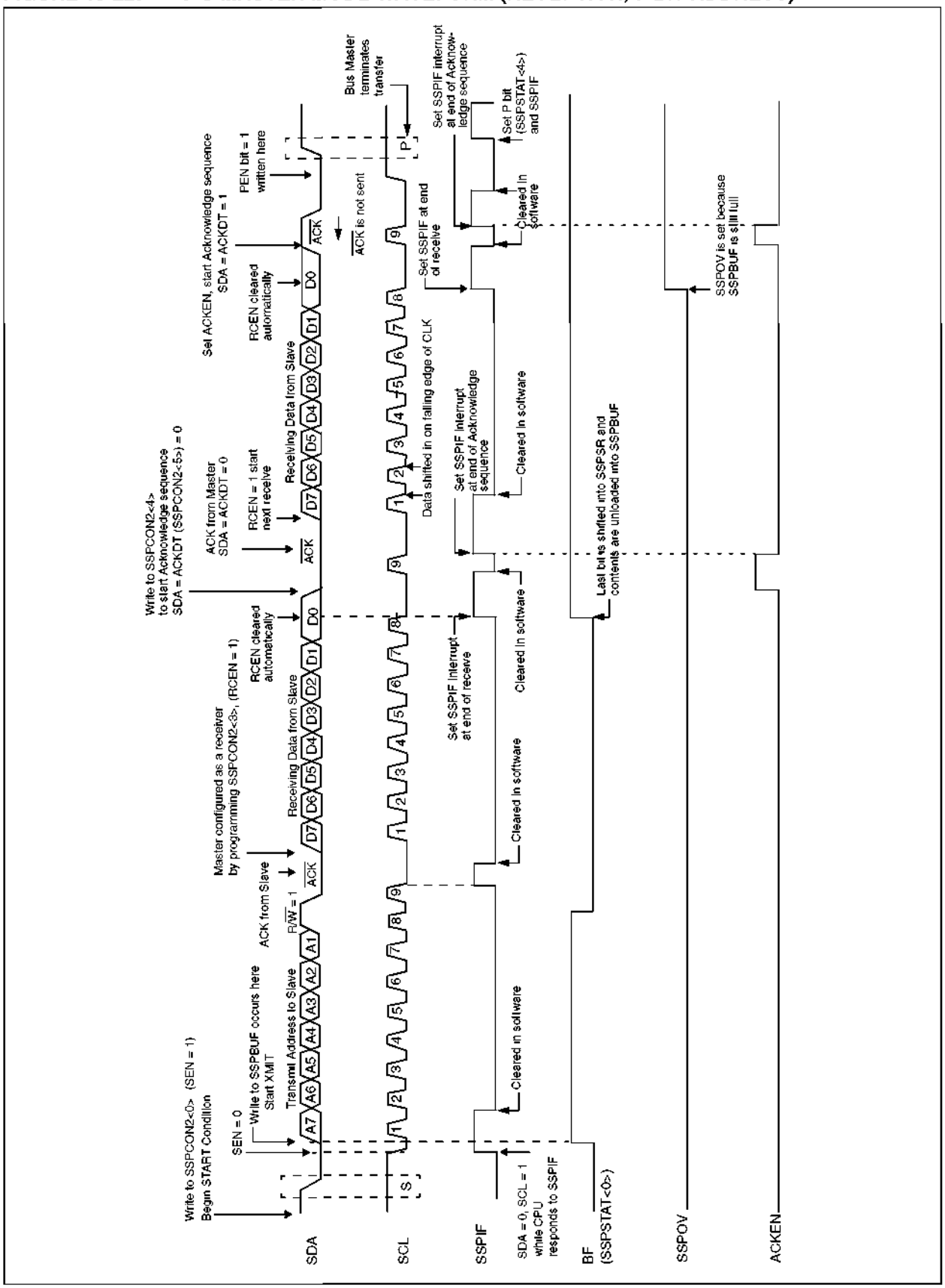
If the user writes the SSPBUF when a receive is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting in a data byte), the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 15-21: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (TRANSMISSION, 7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-22: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



15.4.12 ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE TIMING

An Acknowledge sequence is enabled by setting the Acknowledge sequence enable bit, ACKEN (SSPCON2<4>). When this bit is set, the SCL pin is pulled low and the contents of the Acknowledge data bit are presented on the SDA pin. If the user wishes to generate an Acknowledge, then the ACKDT bit should be cleared. If not, the user should set the ACKDT bit before starting an Acknowledge sequence. The baud rate generator then counts for one rollover period (TBRG) and the SCL pin is de-asserted (pulled high). When the SCL pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the baud rate generator counts for TBRG. The SCL pin is then pulled low. Following this, the ACKEN bit is automatically cleared, the baud rate generator is turned off and the MSSP module then goes into IDLE mode (Figure 15-23).

15.4.12.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when an Acknowledge sequence is in progress, then WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

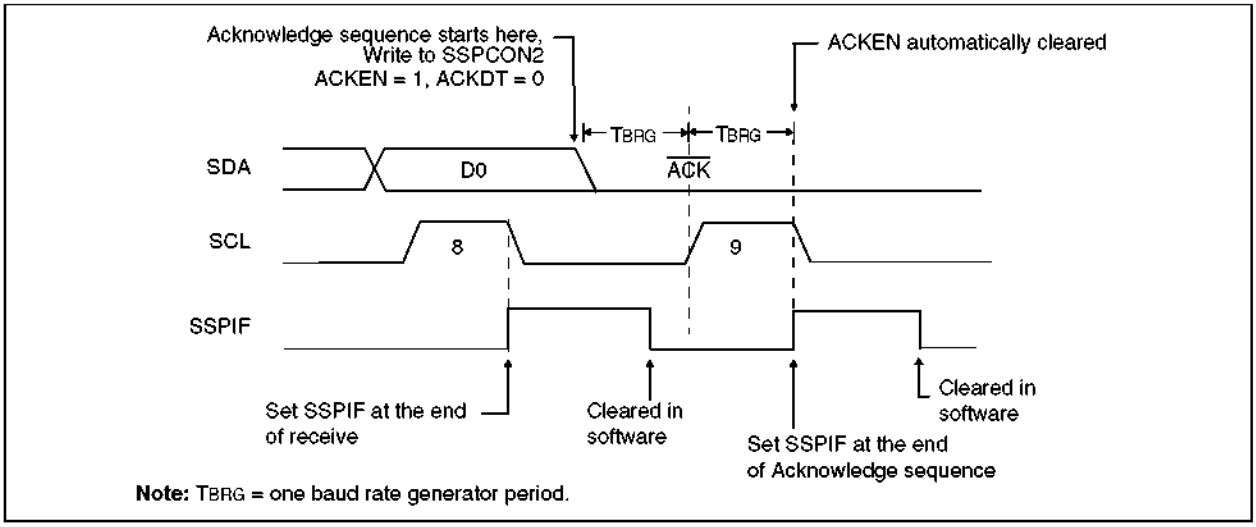
15.4.13 STOP CONDITION TIMING

A STOP bit is asserted on the SDA pin at the end of a receive/transmit by setting the STOP sequence enable bit, PEN (SSPCON2<2>). At the end of a receive/transmit the SCL line is held low after the falling edge of the ninth clock. When the PEN bit is set, the master will assert the SDA line low. When the SDA line is sampled low, the baud rate generator is reloaded and counts down to 0. When the baud rate generator times out, the SCL pin will be brought high, and one TBRG (baud rate generator rollover count) later, the SDA pin will be de-asserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high while SCL is high, the P bit (SSPSTAT<4>) is set. A TBRG later, the PEN bit is cleared and the SSPIF bit is set (Figure 15-24).

15.4.13.1 WCOL Status Flag

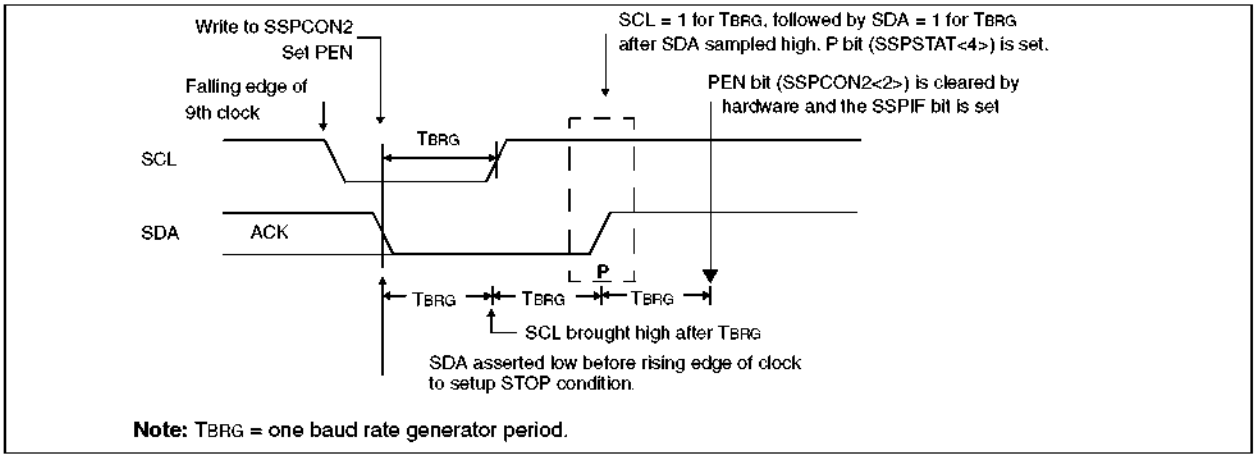
If the user writes the SSPBUF when a STOP sequence is in progress, then the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 15-23: ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE WAVEFORM



Note: TBRG = one baud rate generator period.

FIGURE 15-24: STOP CONDITION RECEIVE OR TRANSMIT MODE



Note: TBRG = one baud rate generator period.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.14 SLEEP OPERATION

While in SLEEP mode, the I^2C module can receive addresses or data, and when an address match or complete byte transfer occurs, wake the processor from SLEEP (if the MSSP interrupt is enabled).

15.4.15 EFFECT OF A RESET

A RESET disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

15.4.16 MULTI-MASTER MODE

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the START and STOP conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. The STOP (P) and START (S) bits are cleared from a RESET or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^2C bus may be taken when the P bit (SSPSTAT<4>) is set, or the bus is idle with both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSP interrupt will generate the interrupt when the STOP condition occurs.

In multi-master operation, the SDA line must be monitored for arbitration, to see if the signal level is the expected output level. This check is performed in hardware, with the result placed in the BCLIF bit.

The states where arbitration can be lost are:

- Address Transfer
- Data Transfer
- A START Condition
- A Repeated START Condition
- An Acknowledge Condition

15.4.17 MULTI -MASTER COMMUNICATION, BUS COLLISION, AND BUS ARBITRATION

Multi-Master mode support is achieved by bus arbitration. When the master outputs address/data bits onto the SDA pin, arbitration takes place when the master outputs a '1' on SDA, by letting SDA float high and another master asserts a '0'. When the SCL pin floats high, data should be stable. If the expected data on SDA is a '1' and the data sampled on the SDA pin = '0', then a bus collision has taken place. The master will set the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag BCLIF and reset the I^2C port to its IDLE state (Figure 15-25).

If a transmit was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the transmission is halted, the BF flag is cleared, the SDA and SCL lines are de-asserted, and the SSPBUF can be written to. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine, and if the I^2C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a START condition.

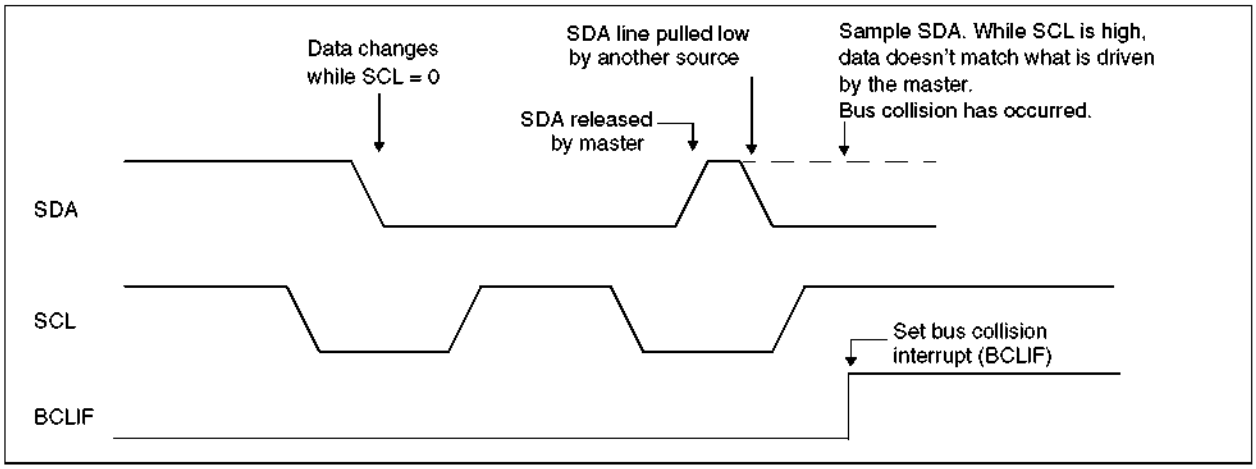
If a START, Repeated START, STOP, or Acknowledge condition was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the condition is aborted, the SDA and SCL lines are de-asserted, and the respective control bits in the SSPCON2 register are cleared. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine, and if the I^2C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a START condition.

The master will continue to monitor the SDA and SCL pins. If a STOP condition occurs, the SSPIF bit will be set.

A write to the SSPBUF will start the transmission of data at the first data bit, regardless of where the transmitter left off when the bus collision occurred.

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of START and STOP conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. Control of the I^2C bus can be taken when the P bit is set in the SSPSTAT register, or the bus is IDLE and the S and P bits are cleared.

FIGURE 15-25: BUS COLLISION TIMING FOR TRANSMIT AND ACKNOWLEDGE



15.4.17.1 Bus Collision During a START Condition

During a START condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) SDA or SCL are sampled low at the beginning of the START condition (Figure 15-26).

b) SCL is sampled low before SDA is asserted low (Figure 15-27).

During a START condition, both the SDA and the SCL pins are monitored.

If the SDA pin is already low, or the SCL pin is already low, then all of the following occur:

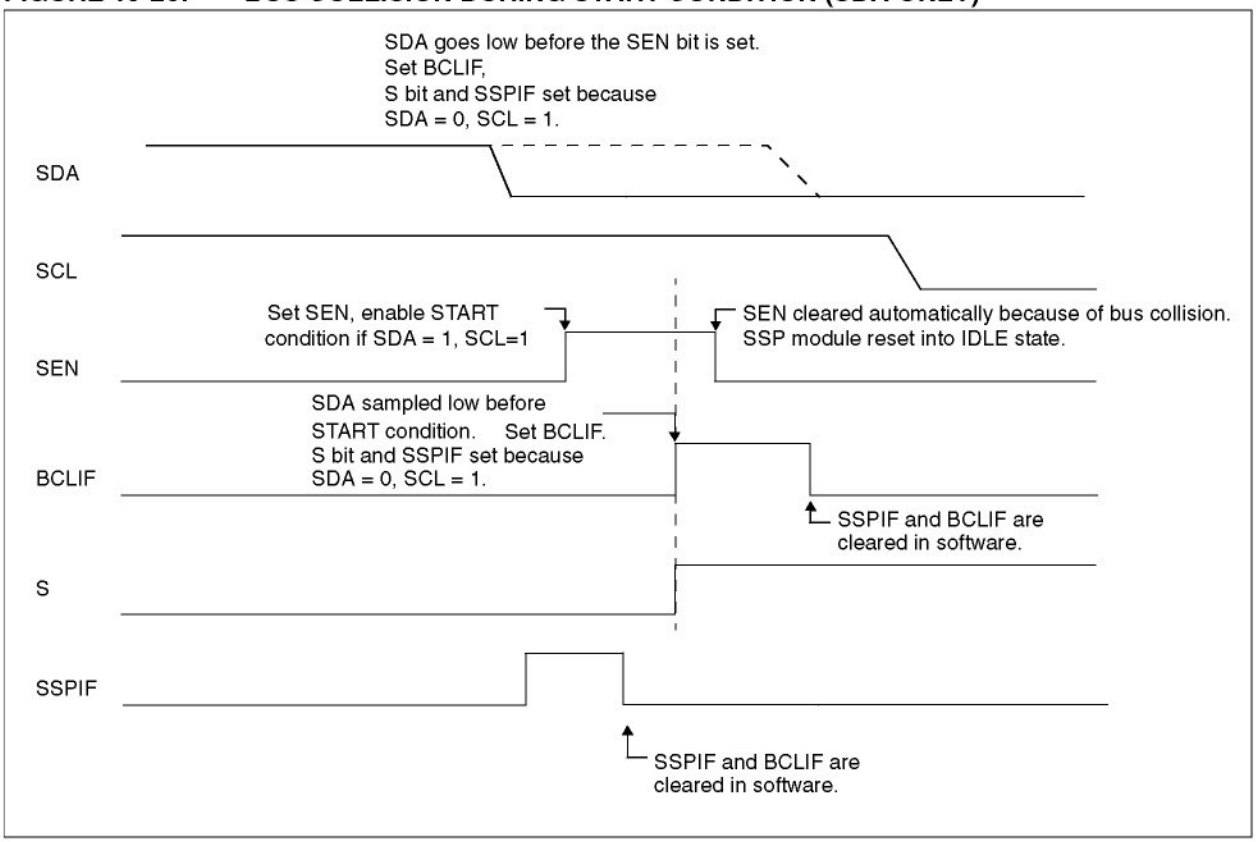
- the START condition is aborted,
- the BCLIF flag is set, and
- the MSSP module is reset to its IDLE state (Figure 15-26).

The START condition begins with the SDA and SCL pins de-asserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high, the baud rate generator is loaded from SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. If the SCL pin is sampled low while SDA is high, a bus collision occurs, because it is assumed that another master is attempting to drive a data '1' during the START condition.

If the SDA pin is sampled low during this count, the BRG is reset and the SDA line is asserted early (Figure 15-28). If, however, a '1' is sampled on the SDA pin, the SDA pin is asserted low at the end of the BRG count. The baud rate generator is then reloaded and counts down to 0, and during this time, if the SCL pins are sampled as '0', a bus collision does not occur. At the end of the BRG count, the SCL pin is asserted low.

Note: The reason that bus collision is not a factor during a START condition is that no two bus masters can assert a START condition at the exact same time. Therefore, one master will always assert SDA before the other. This condition does not cause a bus collision, because the two masters must be allowed to arbitrate the first address following the START condition. If the address is the same, arbitration must be allowed to continue into the data portion, Repeated START or STOP conditions.

FIGURE 15-26: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SDA ONLY)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-27: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SCL = 0)

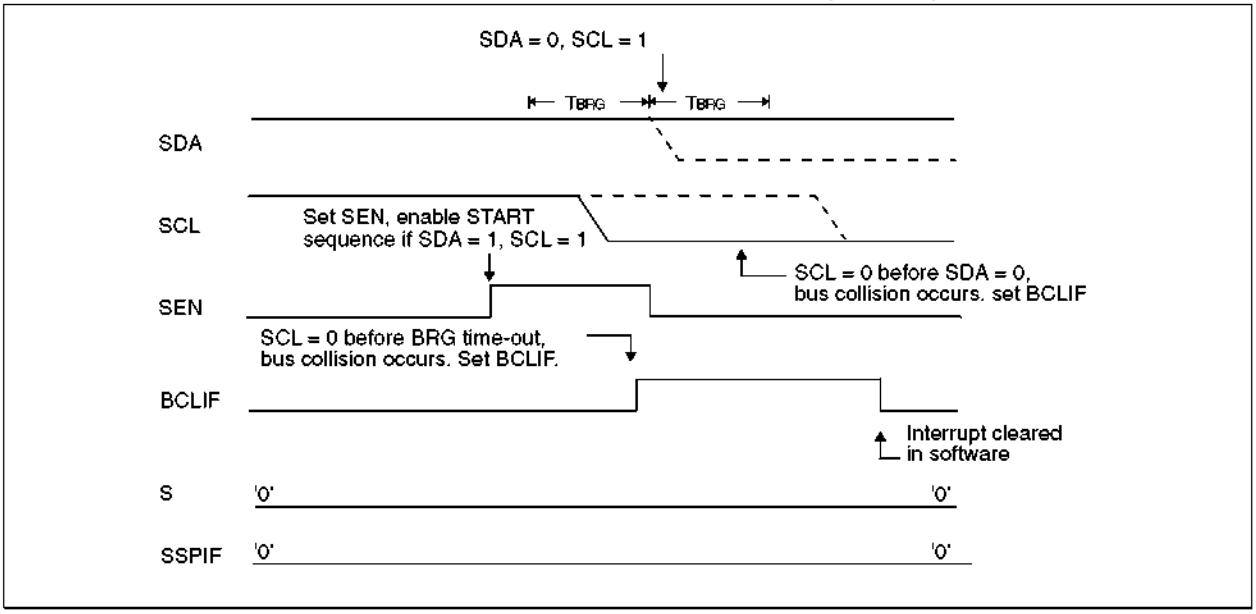
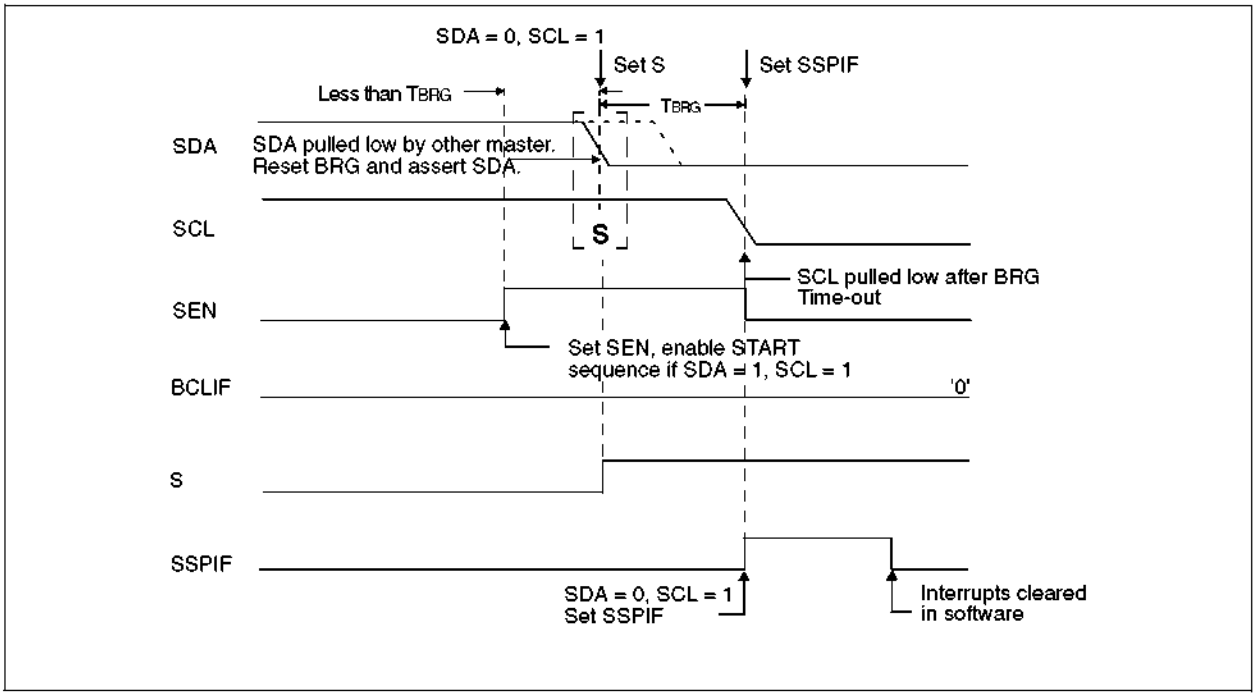


FIGURE 15-28: BRG RESET DUE TO SDA ARBITRATION DURING START CONDITION



15.4.17.2 Bus Collision During a Repeated START Condition

During a Repeated START condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) A low level is sampled on SDA when SCL goes from low level to high level.

b) SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low, indicating that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

When the user de-asserts SDA and the pin is allowed to float high, the BRG is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. The SCL pin is then de-asserted, and when sampled high, the SDA pin is sampled.

If SDA is low, a bus collision has occurred (i.e., another master is attempting to transmit a data '0', Figure 15-29). If SDA is sampled high, the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. If SDA goes from high to low before the BRG times out, no bus collision occurs because no two masters can assert SDA at exactly the same time.

If SCL goes from high to low before the BRG times out and SDA has not already been asserted, a bus collision occurs. In this case, another master is attempting to transmit a data '1' during the Repeated START condition, Figure 15-30.

If, at the end of the BRG time-out both SCL and SDA are still high, the SDA pin is driven low and the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. At the end of the count, regardless of the status of the SCL pin, the SCL pin is driven low and the Repeated START condition is complete.

FIGURE 15-29: BUS COLLISION DURING A REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 1)

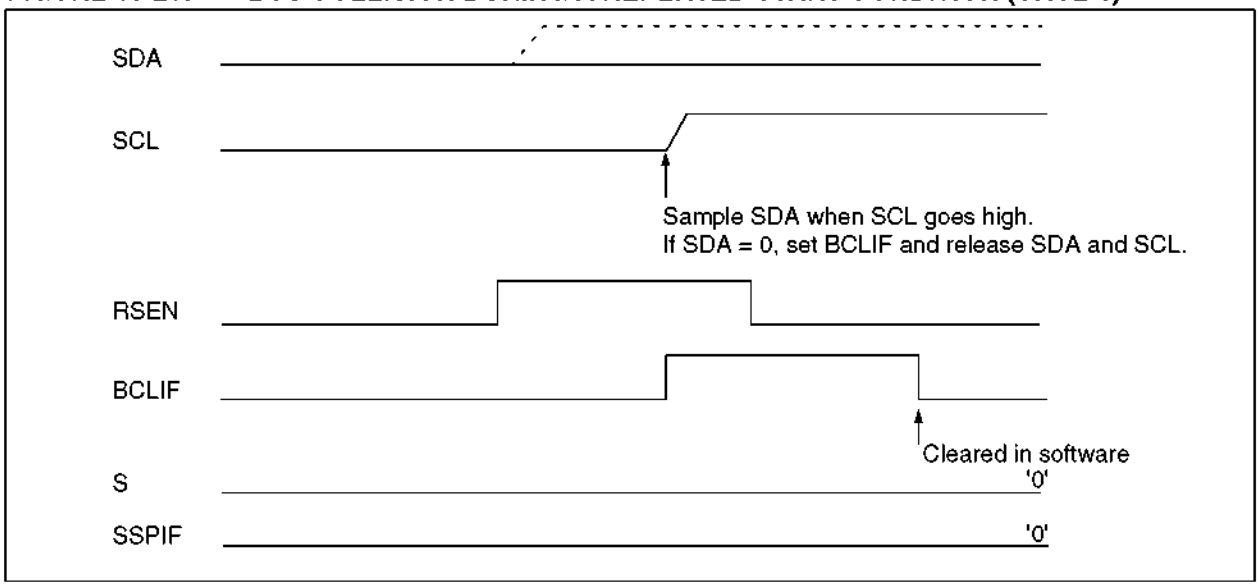
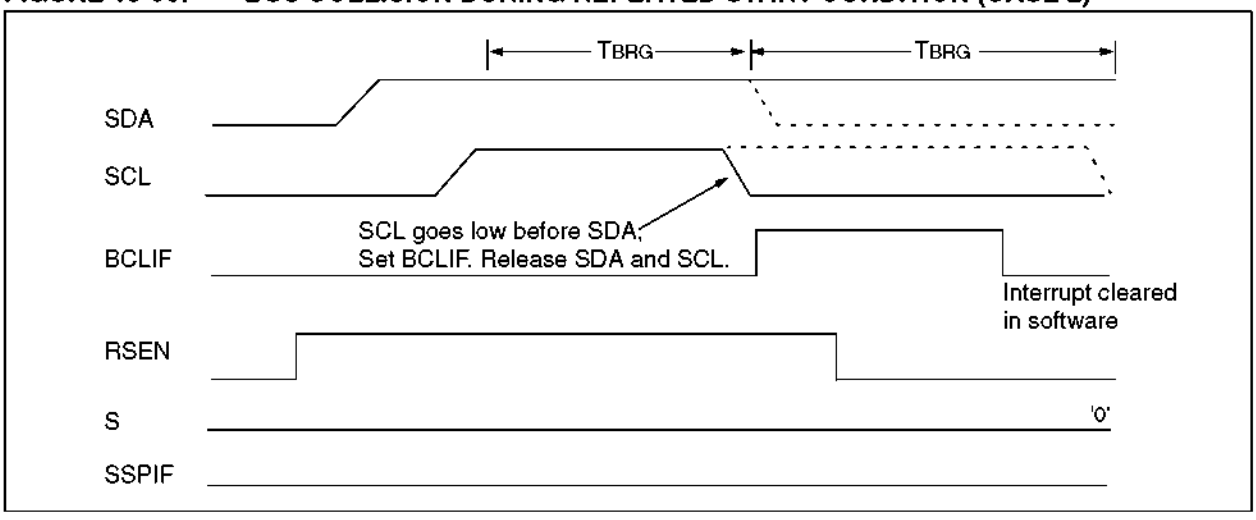


FIGURE 15-30: BUS COLLISION DURING REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 2)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.17.3 Bus Collision During a STOP Condition

Bus collision occurs during a STOP condition if:

a) After the SDA pin has been de-asserted and allowed to float high, SDA is sampled low after the BRG has timed out.

b) After the SCL pin is de-asserted, SCL is sampled low before SDA goes high.

The STOP condition begins with SDA asserted low. When SDA is sampled low, the SCL pin is allowed to float. When the pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the baud rate generator is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. After the BRG times out, SDA is sampled. If SDA is sampled low, a bus collision has occurred. This is due to another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 15-31). If the SCL pin is sampled low before SDA is allowed to float high, a bus collision occurs. This is another case of another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 15-32).

FIGURE 15-31: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 1)

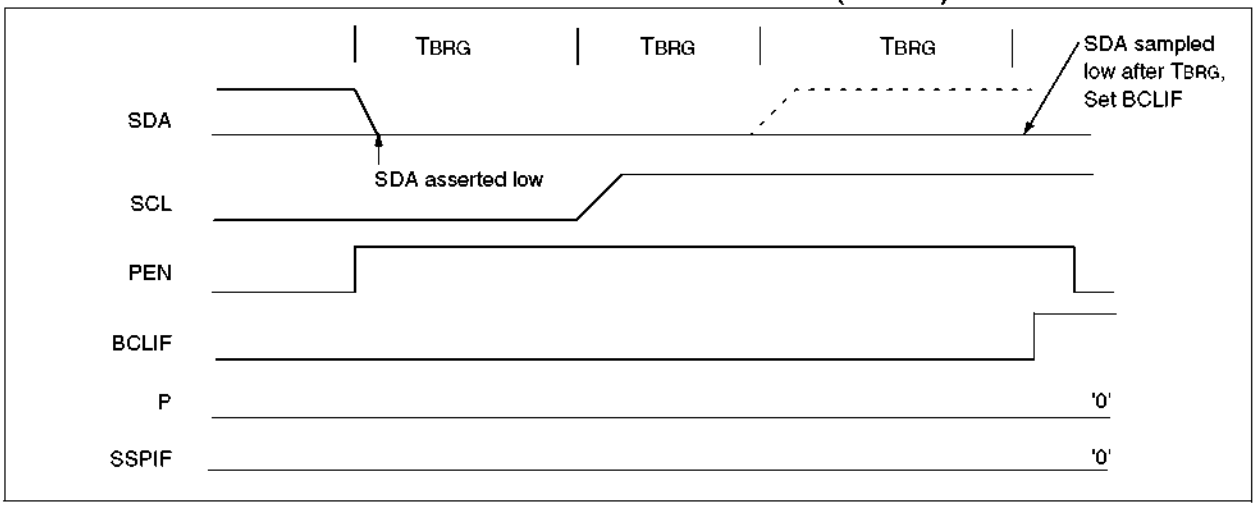
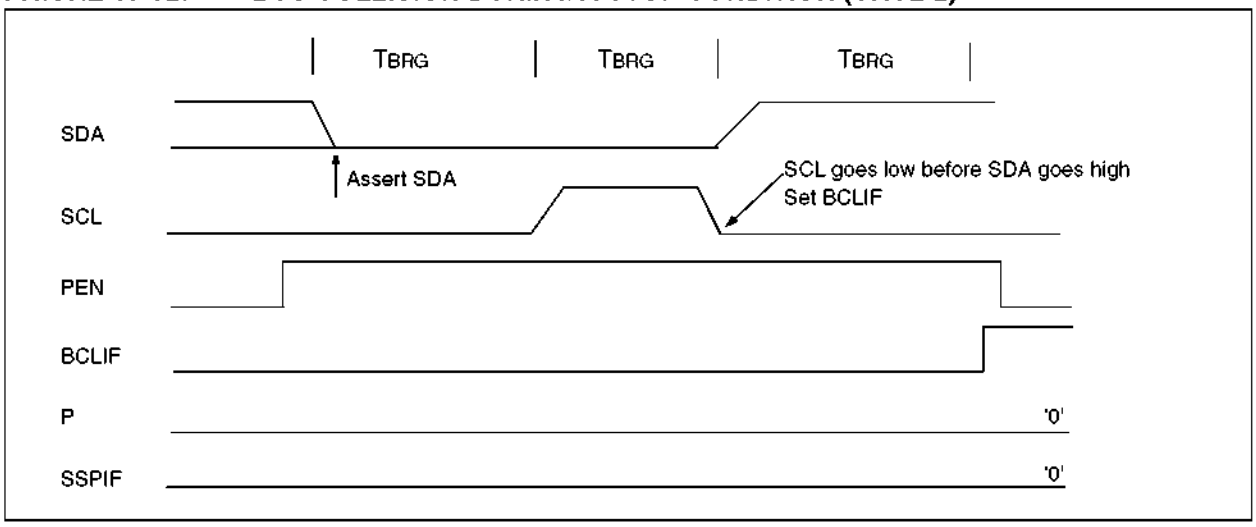


FIGURE 15-32: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 2)



NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.0 ADDRESSABLE UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (USART)

The Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) module is one of the two serial I/O modules. (USART is also known as a Serial Communications Interface or SCI.) The USART can be configured as a full duplex asynchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as CRT terminals and personal computers, or it can be configured as a half-duplex synchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs, etc.

The USART can be configured in the following modes:

- Asynchronous (full-duplex)
- Synchronous - Master (half-duplex)
- Synchronous - Slave (half-duplex)

In order to configure pins RC6/TX/CK and RC7/RX/DT as the Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter:

- bit SPEN (RCSTA<7>) must be set (= 1),
- bit TRISC<6> must be cleared (= 0), and
- bit TRISC<7> must be set (=1).

Register 16-1 shows the Transmit Status and Control Register (TXSTA) and Register 16-2 shows the Receive Status and Control Register (RCSTA).

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 16-1: TXSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit
Asynchronous mode:
Don't care
Synchronous mode:
1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG)
0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)

bit 6 **TX9**: 9-bit Transmit Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit transmission
0 = Selects 8-bit transmission

bit 5 **TXEN**: Transmit Enable bit
1 = Transmit enabled
0 = Transmit disabled

Note: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in SYNC mode.

bit 4 **SYNC**: USART Mode Select bit
1 = Synchronous mode
0 = Asynchronous mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **BRGH**: High Baud Rate Select bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = High speed
0 = Low speed
Synchronous mode:
Unused in this mode

bit 1 **TRMT**: Transmit Shift Register Status bit
1 = TSR empty
0 = TSR full

bit 0 **TX9D:** 9th bit of Transmit Data
Can be Address/Data bit or a parity bit.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 16-2: RCSTA: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SPEN:** Serial Port Enable bit
1 = Serial port enabled (configures RX/DT and TX/CK pins as serial port pins)
0 = Serial port disabled

bit 6 **RX9**: 9-bit Receive Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit reception
0 = Selects 8-bit reception

bit 5 **SREN**: Single Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
Don't care
Synchronous mode - Master:
1 = Enables single receive
0 = Disables single receive
This bit is cleared after reception is complete.
Synchronous mode - Slave:
Don't care

bit 4 **CREN**: Continuous Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Enables receiver
0 = Disables receiver
Synchronous mode:
1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)
0 = Disables continuous receive

bit 3 **ADDEN**: Address Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):
1 = Enables address detection, enable interrupt and load of the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set
0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received, and ninth bit can be used as parity bit

bit 2 **FERR**: Framing Error bit
1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCREG register and receive next valid byte)
0 = No framing error

bit 1 **OERR**: Overrun Error bit
1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)
0 = No overrun error

bit 0 **RX9D:** 9th bit of Received Data
This can be Address/Data bit or a parity bit, and must be calculated by user firmware.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

16.1 USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The BRG supports both the Asynchronous and Synchronous modes of the USART. It is a dedicated 8-bit baud rate generator. The SPBRG register controls the period of a free running 8-bit timer. In Asynchronous mode, bit BRGH (TXSTA<2>) also controls the baud rate. In Synchronous mode, bit BRGH is ignored. Table 16-1 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate for different USART modes, which only apply in Master mode (internal clock).

Given the desired baud rate and Fosc, the nearest integer value for the SPBRG register can be calculated using the formula in Table 16-1. From this, the error in baud rate can be determined.

Example 16-1 shows the calculation of the baud rate error for the following conditions:

- FOSC = 16 MHz
- Desired Baud Rate = 9600
- BRGH = 0
- SYNC = 0

It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1) even for slower baud clocks. This is because the FOSC/(16(X + 1)) equation can reduce the baud rate error in some cases.

Writing a new value to the SPBRG register causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

16.1.1 SAMPLING

The data on the RC7/RX/DT pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine if a high or a low level is present at the RX pin.

EXAMPLE 16-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

Desired Baud Rate = FOSC / (64 (X + 1))

Solving for X:

X = ((FOSC / Desired Baud Rate) / 64) – 1
X = ((16000000 / 9600) / 64) – 1
X = [25.042] = 25

Calculated Baud Rate = 16000000 / (64 (25 + 1))
= 9615

$$\text{Error} = \frac{\text{(Calculated Baud Rate – Desired Baud Rate)}}{\text{Desired Baud Rate}}$$

= (9615 – 9600) / 9600
= 0.16%

TABLE 16-1: BAUD RATE FORMULA

SYNC	BRGH = 0 (Low Speed)	BRGH = 1 (High Speed)
0	(Asynchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(64(X+1))	Baud Rate = FOSC/(16(X+1))
1	(Synchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(4(X+1))	N/A

Legend: X = value in SPBRG (0 to 255)

TABLE 16-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the BRG.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 16-3: BAUD RATES FOR SYNCHRONOUS MODE

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 40 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	33 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	25 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	20 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
19.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
76.8	76.92	+0.16	129	77.10	+0.39	106	77.16	+0.47	80	76.92	+0.16	64
96	96.15	+0.16	103	95.93	-0.07	85	96.15	+0.16	64	96.15	+0.16	51
300	303.03	+1.01	32	294.64	-1.79	27	297.62	-0.79	20	294.12	-1.96	16
500	500	0	19	485.30	-2.94	16	480.77	-3.85	12	500	0	9
HIGH	10000	-	0	8250	-	0	6250	-	0	5000	-	0
LOW	39.06	-	255	32.23	-	255	24.41	-	255	19.53	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 16 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	10 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	7.15909 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	5.0688 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	9.62	+0.23	185	9.60	0	131
19.2	19.23	+0.16	207	19.23	+0.16	129	19.24	+0.23	92	19.20	0	65
76.8	76.92	+0.16	51	75.76	-1.36	32	77.82	+1.32	22	74.54	-2.94	16
96	95.24	-0.79	41	96.15	+0.16	25	94.20	-1.88	18	97.48	+1.54	12
300	307.70	+2.56	12	312.50	+4.17	7	298.35	-0.57	5	316.80	+5.60	3
500	500	0	7	500	0	4	447.44	-10.51	3	422.40	-15.52	2
HIGH	4000	-	0	2500	-	0	1789.80	-	0	1267.20	-	0
LOW	15.63	-	255	9.77	-	255	6.99	-	255	4.95	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 4 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	3.579545 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	1 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	32.768 kHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	0.30	+1.14	26
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	1.20	+0.16	207	1.17	-2.48	6
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	2.40	+0.16	103	2.73	+13.78	2
9.6	9.62	+0.16	103	9.62	+0.23	92	9.62	+0.16	25	8.20	-14.67	0
19.2	19.23	+0.16	51	19.04	-0.83	46	19.23	+0.16	12	NA	-	-
76.8	76.92	+0.16	12	74.57	-2.90	11	83.33	+8.51	2	NA	-	-
96	1000	+4.17	9	99.43	+3.57	8	83.33	-13.19	2	NA	-	-
300	333.33	+11.11	2	298.30	-0.57	2	250	-16.67	0	NA	-	-
500	500	0	1	447.44	-10.51	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	1000	-	0	894.89	-	0	250	-	0	8.20	-	0
LOW	3.91	-	255	3.50	-	255	0.98	-	255	0.03	-	255

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 16-4: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 0)

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 40 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	33 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	25 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	20 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	2.40	-0.07	214	2.40	-0.15	162	2.40	+0.16	129
9.6	9.62	+0.16	64	9.55	-0.54	53	9.53	-0.76	40	9.47	-1.36	32
19.2	18.94	-1.36	32	19.10	-0.54	26	19.53	+1.73	19	19.53	+1.73	15
76.8	78.13	+1.73	7	73.66	-4.09	6	78.13	+1.73	4	78.13	+1.73	3
96	89.29	-6.99	6	103.13	+7.42	4	97.66	+1.73	3	104.17	+8.51	2
300	312.50	+4.17	1	257.81	-14.06	1	NA	-	-	312.50	+4.17	0
500	625	+25.00	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	625	-	0	515.63	-	0	390.63	-	0	312.50	-	0
LOW	2.44	-	255	2.01	-	255	1.53	-	255	1.22	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 16 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	10 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	7.15909 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	5.0688 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	1.20	+0.16	207	1.20	+0.16	129	1.20	+0.23	92	1.20	0	65
2.4	2.40	+0.16	103	2.40	+0.16	64	2.38	-0.83	46	2.40	0	32
9.6	9.62	+0.16	25	9.77	+1.73	15	9.32	-2.90	11	9.90	+3.13	7
19.2	19.23	+0.16	12	19.53	+1.73	7	18.64	-2.90	5	19.80	+3.13	3
76.8	83.33	+8.51	2	78.13	+1.73	1	111.86	+45.65	0	79.20	+3.13	0
96	83.33	-13.19	2	78.13	-18.62	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	250	-16.67	0	156.25	-47.92	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	250	-	0	156.25	-	0	111.86	-	0	79.20	-	0
LOW	0.98	-	255	0.61	-	255	0.44	-	255	0.31	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 4 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	3.579545 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	1 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	32.768 kHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	0.30	-0.16	207	0.30	+0.23	185	0.30	+0.16	51	0.26	-14.67	1
1.2	1.20	+1.67	51	1.19	-0.83	46	1.20	+0.16	12	NA	-	-
2.4	2.40	+1.67	25	2.43	+1.32	22	2.23	-6.99	6	NA	-	-
9.6	8.93	-6.99	6	9.32	-2.90	5	7.81	-18.62	1	NA	-	-
19.2	20.83	+8.51	2	18.64	-2.90	2	15.63	-18.62	0	NA	-	-
76.8	62.50	-18.62	0	55.93	-27.17	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
96	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	62.50	-	0	55.93	-	0	15.63	-	0	0.51	-	0
LOW	0.24	-	255	0.22	-	255	0.06	-	255	0.002	-	255

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 16-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 1)

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 40 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	33 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	25 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	20 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	9.60	-0.07	214	9.59	-0.15	162	9.62	+0.16	129
19.2	19.23	+0.16	129	19.28	+0.39	106	19.30	+0.47	80	19.23	+0.16	64
76.8	75.76	-1.36	32	76.39	-0.54	26	78.13	+1.73	19	78.13	+1.73	15
96	96.15	+0.16	25	98.21	+2.31	20	97.66	+1.73	15	96.15	+0.16	12
300	312.50	+4.17	7	294.64	-1.79	6	312.50	+4.17	4	312.50	+4.17	3
500	500	0	4	515.63	+3.13	3	520.83	+4.17	2	416.67	-16.67	2
HIGH	2500	-	0	2062.50	-	0	1562.50	-	0	1250	-	0
LOW	9.77	-	255	8.06	-	255	6.10	-	255	4.88	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 16 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	10 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	7.15909 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	5.0688 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	2.41	+0.23	185	2.40	0	131
9.6	9.62	+0.16	103	9.62	+0.16	64	9.52	-0.83	46	9.60	0	32
19.2	19.23	+0.16	51	18.94	-1.36	32	19.45	+1.32	22	18.64	-2.94	16
76.8	76.92	+0.16	12	78.13	+1.73	7	74.57	-2.90	5	79.20	+3.13	3
96	100	+4.17	9	89.29	-6.99	6	89.49	-6.78	4	105.60	+10.00	2
300	333.33	+11.11	2	312.50	+4.17	1	447.44	+49.15	0	316.80	+5.60	0
500	500	0	1	625	+25.00	0	447.44	-10.51	0	NA	-	-
HIGH	1000	-	0	625	-	0	447.44	-	0	316.80	-	0
LOW	3.91	-	255	2.44	-	255	1.75	-	255	1.24	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 4 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	3.579545 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	1 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	32.768 kHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	0.30	+0.16	207	0.29	-2.48	6
1.2	1.20	+0.16	207	1.20	+0.23	185	1.20	+0.16	51	1.02	-14.67	1
2.4	2.40	+0.16	103	2.41	+0.23	92	2.40	+0.16	25	2.05	-14.67	0
9.6	9.62	+0.16	25	9.73	+1.32	22	8.93	-6.99	6	NA	-	-
19.2	19.23	+0.16	12	18.64	-2.90	11	20.83	+8.51	2	NA	-	-
76.8	NA	-	-	74.57	-2.90	2	62.50	-18.62	0	NA	-	-
96	NA	-	-	111.86	+16.52	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	NA	-	-	223.72	-25.43	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	250	-	0	55.93	-	0	62.50	-	0	2.05	-	0
LOW	0.98	-	255	0.22	-	255	0.24	-	255	0.008	-	255

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.2 USART Asynchronous Mode

In this mode, the USART uses standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format (one START bit, eight or nine data bits and one STOP bit). The most common data format is 8-bits. An on-chip dedicated 8-bit baud rate generator can be used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the oscillator. The USART transmits and receives the LSb first. The USART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but use the same data format and baud rate. The baud rate generator produces a clock, either x16 or x64 of the bit shift rate, depending on bit BRGH (TXSTA<2>). Parity is not supported by the hardware, but can be implemented in software (and stored as the ninth data bit). Asynchronous mode is stopped during SLEEP.

Asynchronous mode is selected by clearing bit SYNC (TXSTA<4>).

The USART Asynchronous module consists of the following important elements:

- Baud Rate Generator
- Sampling Circuit
- Asynchronous Transmitter
- Asynchronous Receiver

16.2.1 USART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 16-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (serial) Shift Register (TSR). The shift register obtains its data from the read/write transmit buffer, TXREG. The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the STOP bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the STOP bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG register (if available). Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCY), the TXREG register is empty and flag bit TXIF (PIR1<4>) is set. This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit TXIE (PIE1<4>). Flag bit TXIF will be set, regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register. While flag bit TXIF indicated the status of the TXREG register, another bit, TRMT (TXSTA<1>), shows the status of the TSR register. Status bit TRMT is a read-only bit, which is set when the TSR register is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty.

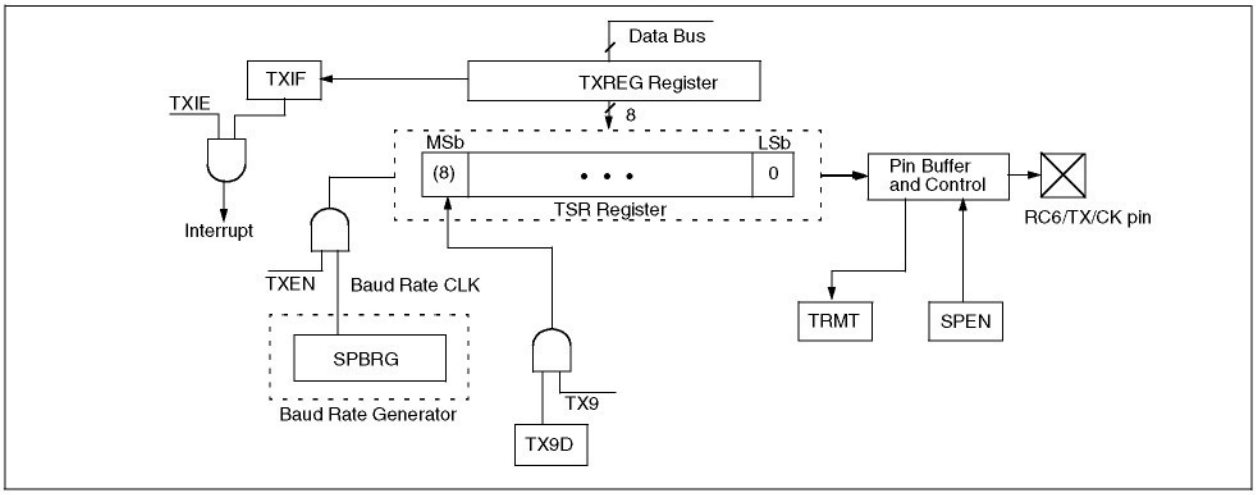
Note 1:	The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.
2:	Flag bit TXIF is set when enable bit TXEN is set.

To set up an asynchronous transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set transmit bit TX9. Can be used as address/data bit.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN, which will also set bit TXIF.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Load data to the TXREG register (starts transmission).

Note:	TXIF is not cleared immediately upon loading data into the transmit buffer TXREG. The flag bit becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the load instruction.

FIGURE 16-1: USART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 16-2: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

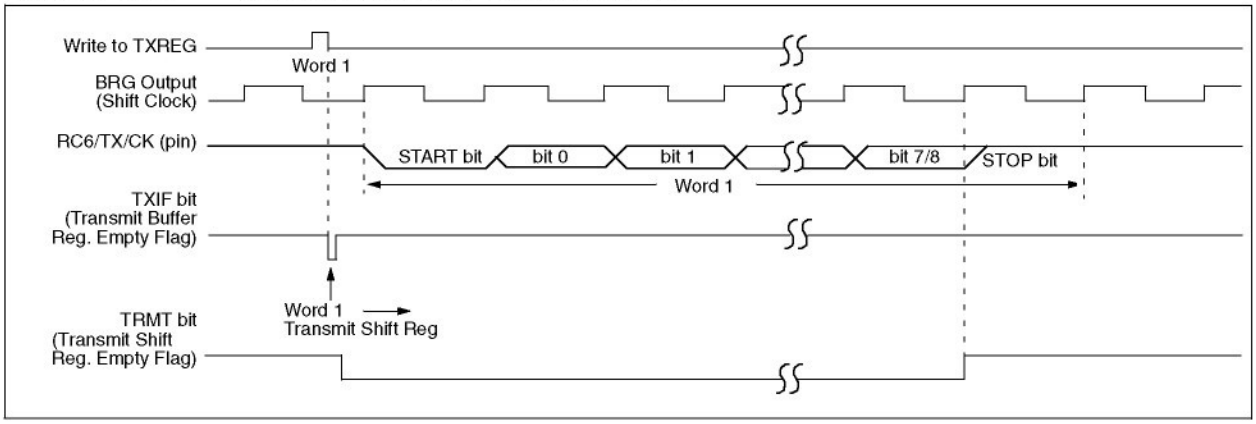
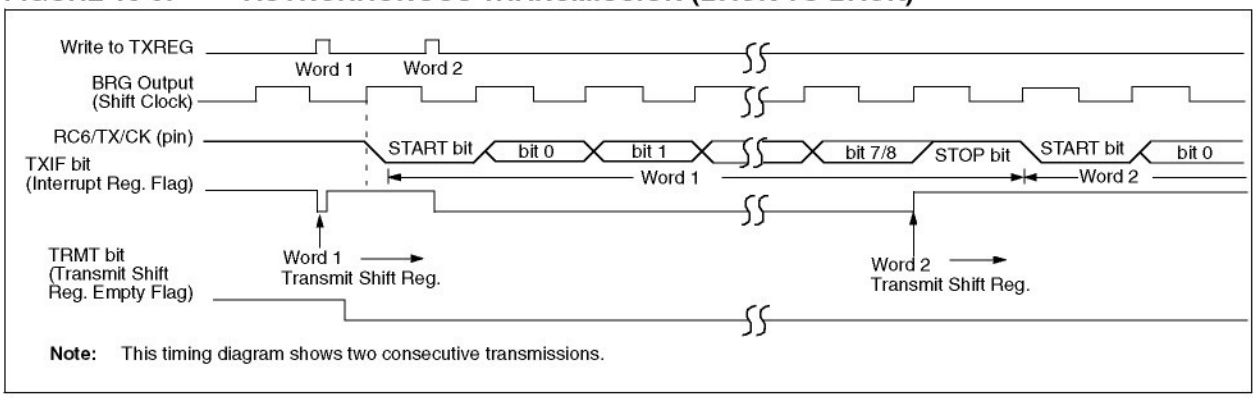


FIGURE 16-3: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK TO BACK)



Note: This timing diagram shows two consecutive transmissions.

TABLE 16-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Transmission.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

16.2.2 USART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 16-4. The data is received on the RC7/RX/DT pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high speed shifter operating at x16 times the baud rate, whereas the main receive serial shifter operates at the bit rate or at Fosc. This mode would typically be used in RS-232 systems.

To set up an Asynchronous Reception:

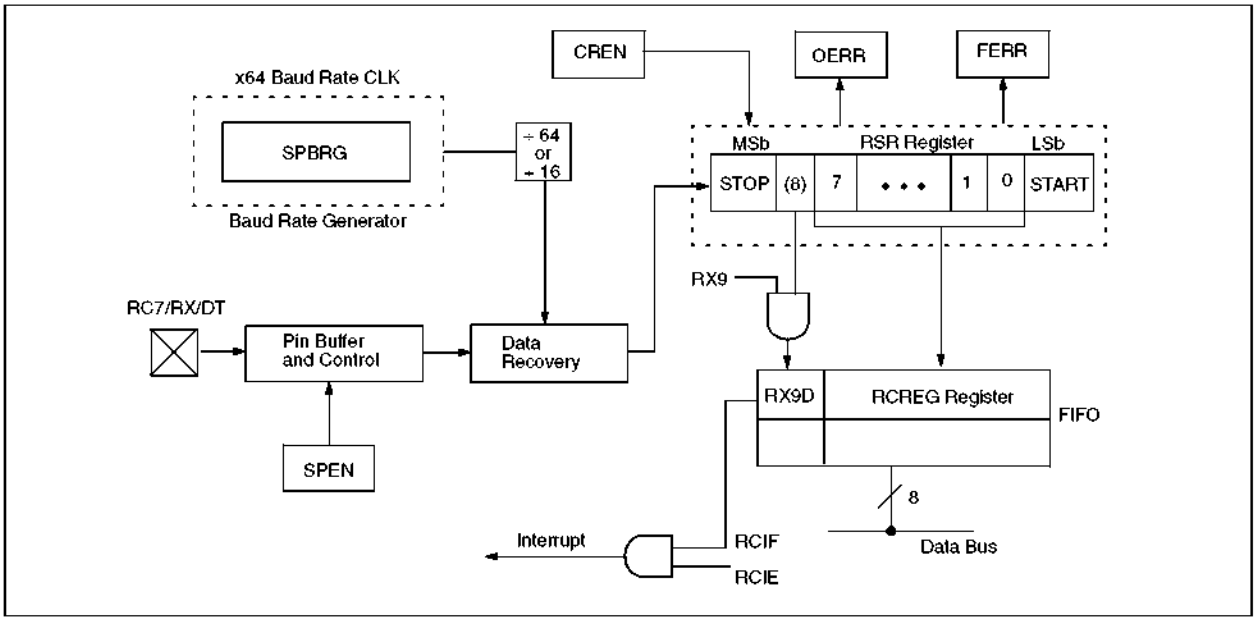
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
5. Enable the reception by setting bit CREN.
6. Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
7. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
8. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
9. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing enable bit CREN.
10. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

16.2.3 SETTING UP 9-BIT MODE WITH ADDRESS DETECT

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. To set up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

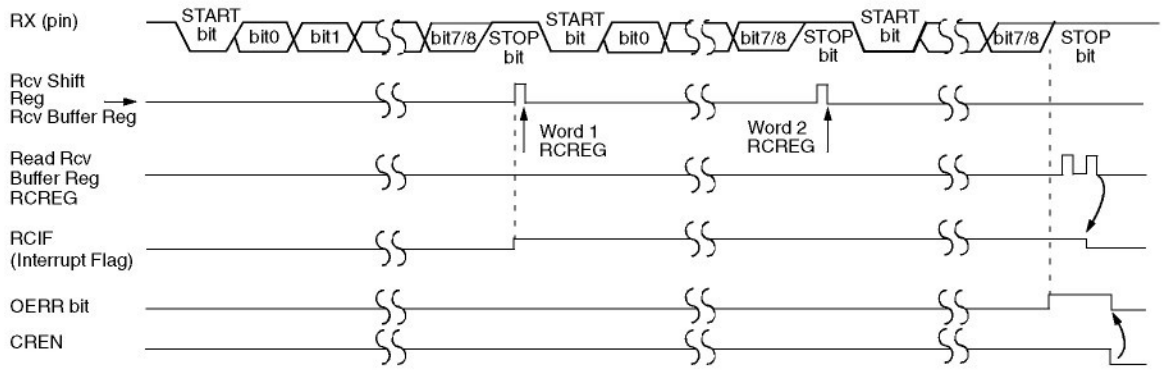
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high speed baud rate is required, set the BRGH bit.
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
3. If interrupts are required, set the RCEN bit and select the desired priority level with the RCIP bit.
4. Set the RX9 bit to enable 9-bit reception.
5. Set the ADDEN bit to enable address detect.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCIF bit will be set when reception is complete. The interrupt will be acknowledged if the RCIE and GIE bits are set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to determine if any error occurred during reception, as well as read bit 9 of data (if applicable).
9. Read RCREG to determine if the device is being addressed.
10. If any error occurred, clear the CREN bit.
11. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and interrupt the CPU.

FIGURE 16-4: USART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 16-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



Note: This timing diagram shows three words appearing on the RX input. The RCREG (receive buffer) is read after the third word, causing the OERR (overrun) bit to be set.

TABLE 16-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Reception.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

16.3 USART Synchronous Master Mode

In Synchronous Master mode, the data is transmitted in a half-duplex manner (i.e., transmission and reception do not occur at the same time). When transmitting data, the reception is inhibited and vice versa. Synchronous mode is entered by setting bit SYNC (TXSTA<4>). In addition, enable bit SPEN (RCSTA<7>) is set in order to configure the RC6/TX/CK and RC7/RX/DT I/O pins to CK (clock) and DT (data) lines, respectively. The Master mode indicates that the processor transmits the master clock on the CK line. The Master mode is entered by setting bit CSRC (TXSTA<7>).

16.3.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 16-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (serial) Shift Register (TSR). The shift register obtains its data from the read/write transmit buffer register TXREG. The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the last bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the last bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG (if available). Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCYCLE), the TXREG is empty and interrupt bit TXIF (PIR1<4>) is set. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit TXIE (PIE1<4>). Flag bit TXIF will be set, regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE, and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register. While flag bit TXIF indicates the status of the TXREG register, another bit TRMT (TXSTA<1>) shows the status of the TSR register. TRMT is a read only bit, which is set when the TSR is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty. The TSR is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

To set up a Synchronous Master Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN, and CSRC.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.

Note: TXIF is not cleared immediately upon loading data into the transmit buffer TXREG. The flag bit becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the load instruction.

TABLE 16-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

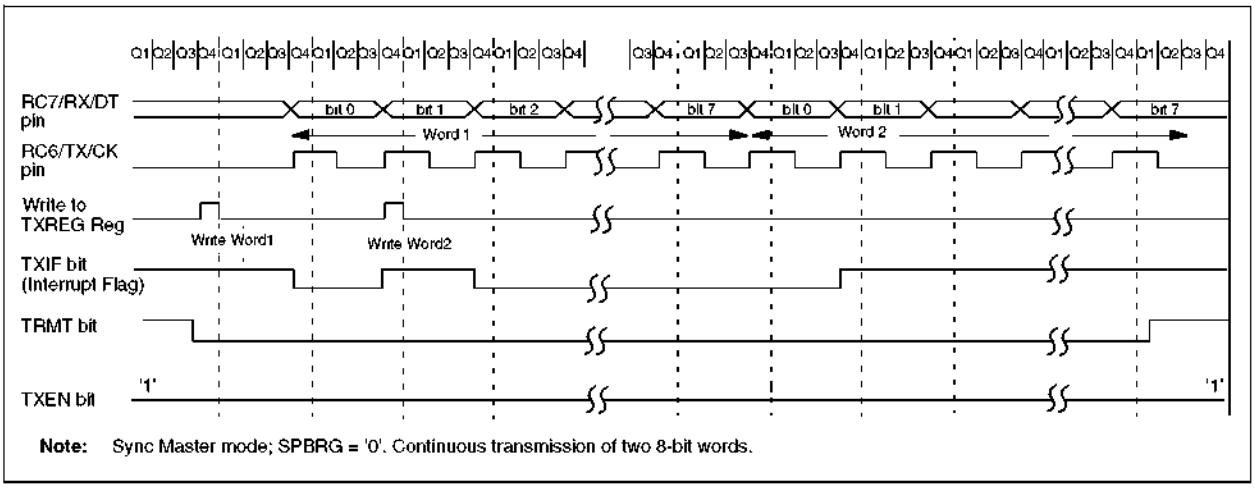
Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Transmission.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

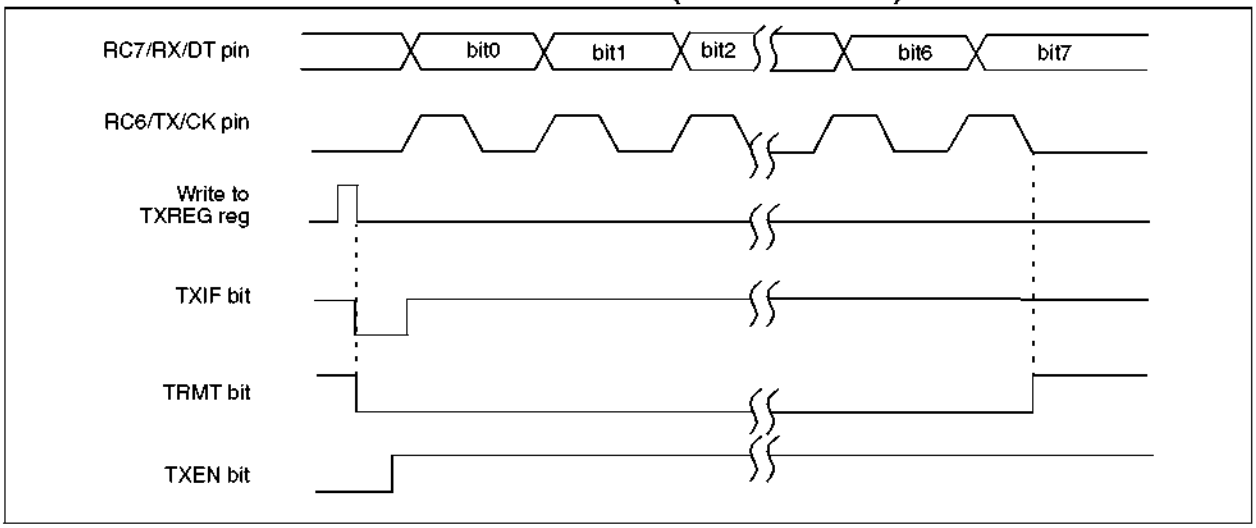
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 16-6: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



Note: Sync Master mode; SPBRG = '0'. Continuous transmission of two 8-bit words.

FIGURE 16-7: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)



16.3.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Once Synchronous mode is selected, reception is enabled by setting either enable bit SREN (RCSTA<5>), or enable bit CREN (RCSTA<4>). Data is sampled on the RC7/RX/DT pin on the falling edge of the clock. If enable bit SREN is set, only a single word is received. If enable bit CREN is set, the reception is continuous until CREN is cleared. If both bits are set, then CREN takes precedence.

To set up a Synchronous Master Reception:

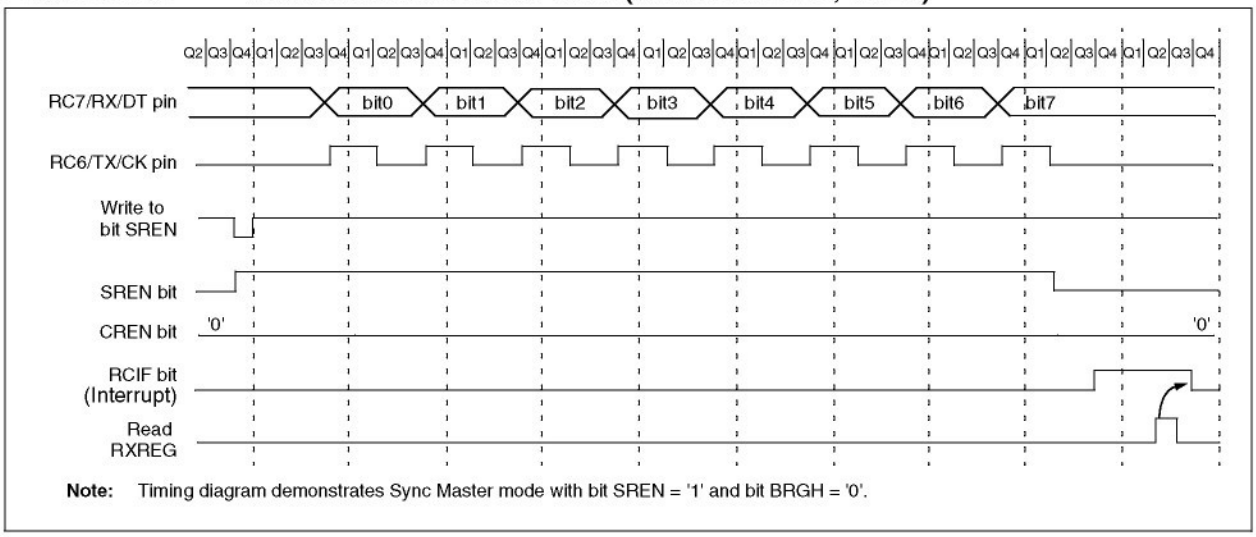
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
4. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
6. If a single reception is required, set bit SREN. For continuous reception, set bit CREN.
7. Interrupt flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if the enable bit RCIE was set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
9. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
10. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
11. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 16-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Reception.
Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

FIGURE 16-8: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)



Note: Timing diagram demonstrates Sync Master mode with bit SREN = '1' and bit BRGH = '0'.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.4 USART Synchronous Slave Mode

Synchronous Slave mode differs from the Master mode in the fact that the shift clock is supplied externally at the RC6/TX/CK pin (instead of being supplied internally in Master mode). This allows the device to transfer or receive data while in SLEEP mode. Slave mode is entered by clearing bit CSRC (TXSTA<7>).

16.4.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMIT

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical, except in the case of the SLEEP mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the SLEEP instruction is executed, the following will occur:

a) The first word will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.
b) The second word will remain in TXREG register.
c) Flag bit TXIF will not be set.
d) When the first word has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREG register will transfer the second word to the TSR and flag bit TXIF will now be set.
e) If enable bit TXIE is set, the interrupt will wake the chip from SLEEP. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

To set up a Synchronous Slave Transmission:

1. Enable the synchronous slave serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. Clear bits CREN and SREN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting enable bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.
8. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 16-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave Transmission.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

16.4.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical, except in the case of the SLEEP mode and bit SREN, which is a “don't care” in Slave mode.

If receive is enabled by setting bit CREN prior to the SLEEP instruction, then a word may be received during SLEEP. On completely receiving the word, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register, and if enable bit RCIE bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the chip from SLEEP. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

To set up a Synchronous Slave Reception:

1. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
4. To enable reception, set enable bit CREN.
5. Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
6. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
7. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
8. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
9. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 16-11: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave Reception.

Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.0 COMPATIBLE 10-BIT ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (A/D) MODULE

The Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converter module has five inputs for the PIC18F2X2 devices and eight for the PIC18F4X2 devices. This module has the ADCON0 and ADCON1 register definitions that are compatible with the mid-range A/D module.

The A/D allows conversion of an analog input signal to a corresponding 10-bit digital number.

The A/D module has four registers. These registers are:

- A/D Result High Register (ADRESH)
- A/D Result Low Register (ADRESL)
- A/D Control Register 0 (ADCON0)
- A/D Control Register 1 (ADCON1)

The ADCON0 register, shown in Register 17-1, controls the operation of the A/D module. The ADCON1 register, shown in Register 17-2, configures the functions of the port pins.

REGISTER 17-1: ADCON0 REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0
ADCS1	ADCS0	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	—	ADON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **ADCS1:ADCS0:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits (ADCON0 bits in **bold**)

ADCON1 <ADCS2>	ADCON0 <ADCS1:ADCS0>	Clock Conversion
0	**00**	FOSC/2
0	**01**	FOSC/8
0	**10**	FOSC/32
0	**11**	FRC (clock derived from the internal A/D RC oscillator)
1	**00**	FOSC/4
1	**01**	FOSC/16
1	**10**	FOSC/64
1	**11**	FRC (clock derived from the internal A/D RC oscillator)

bit 5-3 **CHS2:CHS0:** Analog Channel Select bits
000 = channel 0, (AN0)
001 = channel 1, (AN1)
010 = channel 2, (AN2)
011 = channel 3, (AN3)
100 = channel 4, (AN4)
101 = channel 5, (AN5)
110 = channel 6, (AN6)
111 = channel 7, (AN7)

Note: The PIC18F2X2 devices do not implement the full 8 A/D channels; the unimplemented selections are reserved. Do not select any unimplemented channel.

bit 2 **GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** A/D Conversion Status bit
When ADON = 1:
1 = A/D conversion in progress (setting this bit starts the A/D conversion which is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion is complete)
0 = A/D conversion not in progress

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **ADON:** A/D On bit
1 = A/D converter module is powered up
0 = A/D converter module is shut-off and consumes no operating current

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-2: ADCON1 REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ADFM	ADCS2	—	—	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Result Format Select bit
1 = Right justified. Six (6) Most Significant bits of ADRESH are read as '0'.
0 = Left justified. Six (6) Least Significant bits of ADRESL are read as '0'.

bit 6 **ADCS2:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bit (ADCON1 bits in **bold**)

ADCON1 <ADCS2>	ADCON0 <ADCS1:ADCS0>	Clock Conversion
0	00	FOSC/2
0	01	FOSC/8
0	10	FOSC/32
0	11	FRC (clock derived from the internal A/D RC oscillator)
1	00	FOSC/4
1	01	FOSC/16
1	10	FOSC/64
1	11	FRC (clock derived from the internal A/D RC oscillator)

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-0 **PCFG3:PCFG0:** A/D Port Configuration Control bits

PCFG <3:0>	AN7	AN6	AN5	AN4	AN3	AN2	AN1	AN0	VREF+	VREF-	C / R
0000	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	VDD	VSS	8 / 0
0001	A	A	A	A	VREF+	A	A	A	AN3	VSS	7 / 1
0010	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	VDD	VSS	5 / 0
0011	D	D	D	A	VREF+	A	A	A	AN3	VSS	4 / 1
0100	D	D	D	D	A	D	A	A	VDD	VSS	3 / 0
0101	D	D	D	D	VREF+	D	A	A	AN3	VSS	2 / 1
011x	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	—	—	0 / 0
1000	A	A	A	A	VREF+	VREF-	A	A	AN3	AN2	6 / 2
1001	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	VDD	VSS	6 / 0
1010	D	D	A	A	VREF+	A	A	A	AN3	VSS	5 / 1
1011	D	D	A	A	VREF+	VREF-	A	A	AN3	AN2	4 / 2
1100	D	D	D	A	VREF+	VREF-	A	A	AN3	AN2	3 / 2
1101	D	D	D	D	VREF+	VREF-	A	A	AN3	AN2	2 / 2
1110	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	VDD	VSS	1 / 0
1111	D	D	D	D	VREF+	VREF-	D	A	AN3	AN2	1 / 2

A = Analog input D = Digital I/O
C/R = # of analog input channels / # of A/D voltage references

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: On any device RESET, the port pins that are multiplexed with analog functions (ANx) are forced to be an analog input.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

The analog reference voltage is software selectable to either the device's positive and negative supply voltage (V_{DD} and V_{SS}), or the voltage level on the RA3/AN3/V_{REF+} pin and RA2/AN2/V_{REF-} pin.

The A/D converter has a unique feature of being able to operate while the device is in SLEEP mode. To operate in SLEEP, the A/D conversion clock must be derived from the A/D's internal RC oscillator.

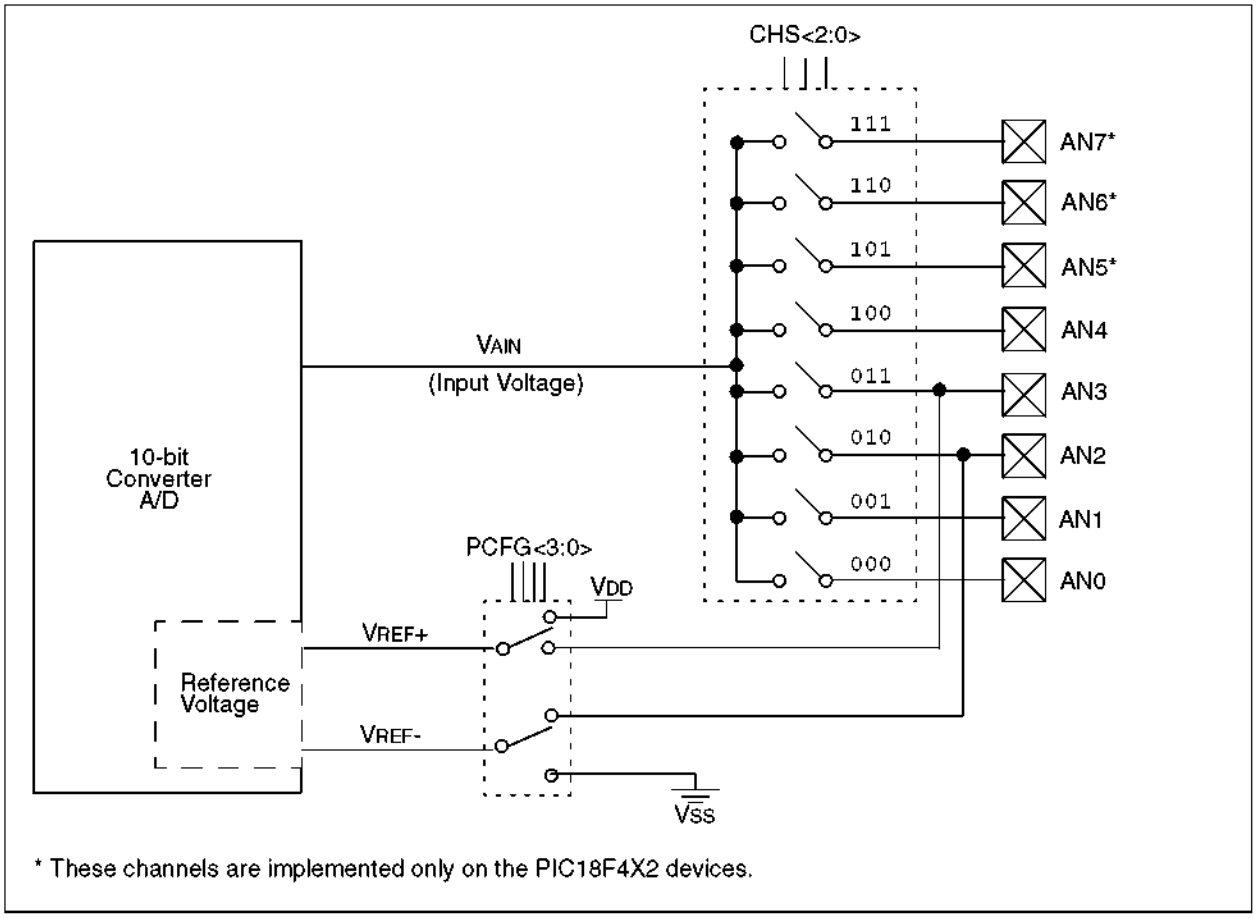
The output of the sample and hold is the input into the converter, which generates the result via successive approximation.

A device RESET forces all registers to their RESET state. This forces the A/D module to be turned off and any conversion is aborted.

Each port pin associated with the A/D converter can be configured as an analog input (RA3 can also be a voltage reference) or as a digital I/O.

The ADRESH and ADRESL registers contain the result of the A/D conversion. When the A/D conversion is complete, the result is loaded into the ADRESH/ADRESL registers, the GO/DONE bit (ADCON0<2>) is cleared, and A/D interrupt flag bit, ADIF is set. The block diagram of the A/D module is shown in Figure 17-1.

FIGURE 17-1: A/D BLOCK DIAGRAM



* These channels are implemented only on the PIC18F4X2 devices.

The value that is in the ADRESH/ADRESL registers is not modified for a Power-on Reset. The ADRESH/ADRESL registers will contain unknown data after a Power-on Reset.

After the A/D module has been configured as desired, the selected channel must be acquired before the conversion is started. The analog input channels must have their corresponding TRIS bits selected as an input. To determine acquisition time, see Section 17.1. After this acquisition time has elapsed, the A/D conversion can be started. The following steps should be followed for doing an A/D conversion:

1. Configure the A/D module:
   - Configure analog pins, voltage reference and digital I/O (ADCON1)
   - Select A/D input channel (ADCON0)
   - Select A/D conversion clock (ADCON0)
   - Turn on A/D module (ADCON0)
2. Configure A/D interrupt (if desired):
   - Clear ADIF bit
   - Set ADIE bit
   - Set GIE bit
   - Set PEIE bit
3. Wait the required acquisition time.
4. Start conversion:
   - Set GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0)
5. Wait for A/D conversion to complete, by either:
   - Polling for the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit to be cleared (interrupts disabled)

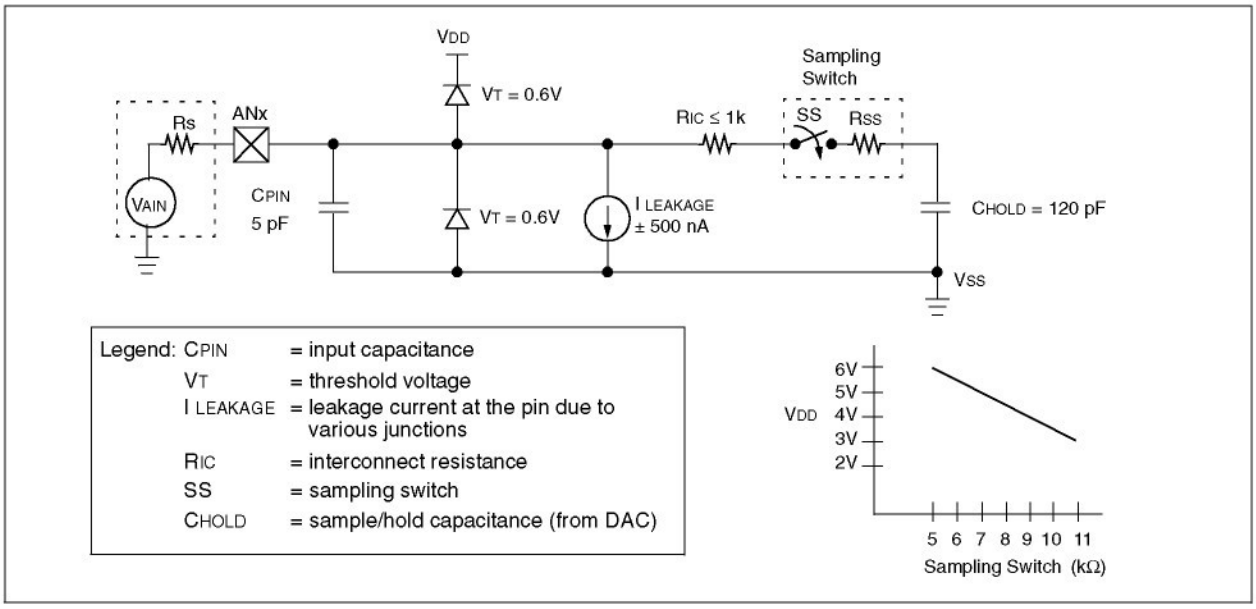
   OR
   - Waiting for the A/D interrupt
6. Read A/D Result registers (ADRESH/ADRESL); clear bit ADIF if required.
7. For next conversion, go to step 1 or step 2 as required. The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. A minimum wait of 2 TAD is required before the next acquisition starts.

17.1 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the A/D converter to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The analog input model is shown in Figure 17-2. The source impedance (RS) and the internal sampling switch (RSS) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor CHOLD. The sampling switch (RSS) impedance varies over the device voltage (VDD). The source impedance affects the offset voltage at the analog input (due to pin leakage current). **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 2.5 kΩ.** After the analog input channel is selected (changed), this acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started.

Note:	When the conversion is started, the holding capacitor is disconnected from the input pin.

FIGURE 17-2: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 17-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSb error is used (1024 steps for the A/D). The 1/2 LSb error is the maximum error allowed for the A/D to meet its specified resolution.

EQUATION 17-1: ACQUISITION TIME

$$T_{ACQ} = \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Holding Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient}$$
$$= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$$

EQUATION 17-2: A/D MINIMUM CHARGING TIME

$$V_{HOLD} = (V_{REF} - (V_{REF}/2048)) \cdot (1 - e^{(-T_C/C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S))})$$
or
$$T_C = -(120\ pF)(1\ k\Omega + R_{SS} + R_S) \ln(1/2048)$$

Example 17-1 shows the calculation of the minimum required acquisition time, TACQ. This calculation is based on the following application system assumptions:

- CHOLD = 120 pF
- Rs = 2.5 kΩ
- Conversion Error ≤ 1/2 LSb
- VDD = 5V → Rss = 7 kΩ
- Temperature = 50°C (system max.)
- VHOLD = 0V @ time = 0

EXAMPLE 17-1: CALCULATING THE MINIMUM REQUIRED ACQUISITION TIME

$T_{ACQ} = T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$

Temperature coefficient is only required for temperatures > 25°C.

$T_{ACQ} = 2\ \mu s + T_C + [(Temp - 25°C)(0.05\ \mu s/°C)]$

$T_C = -C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S) \ln(1/2048)$
$-120\ pF\ (1\ k\Omega + 7\ k\Omega + 2.5\ k\Omega) \ln(0.0004883)$
$-120\ pF\ (10.5\ k\Omega) \ln(0.0004883)$
$-1.26\ \mu s\ (-7.6246)$
$9.61\ \mu s$

$T_{ACQ} = 2\ \mu s + 9.61\ \mu s + [(50°C - 25°C)(0.05\ \mu s/°C)]$
$11.61\ \mu s + 1.25\ \mu s$
$12.86\ \mu s$

17.2 Selecting the A/D Conversion Clock

The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. The A/D conversion requires 12 TAD per 10-bit conversion. The source of the A/D conversion clock is software selectable. The seven possible options for TAD are:

- 2 TOSC
- 4 TOSC
- 8 TOSC
- 16 TOSC
- 32 TOSC
- 64 TOSC
- Internal A/D module RC oscillator (2-6 µs)

For correct A/D conversions, the A/D conversion clock (TAD) must be selected to ensure a minimum TAD time of 1.6 µs.

Table 17-1 shows the resultant TAD times derived from the device operating frequencies and the A/D clock source selected.

17.3 Configuring Analog Port Pins

The ADCON1, TRISA and TRISE registers control the operation of the A/D port pins. The port pins that are desired as analog inputs, must have their corresponding TRIS bits set (input). If the TRIS bit is cleared (output), the digital output level (VOH or VOL) will be converted.

The A/D operation is independent of the state of the CHS2:CHS0 bits and the TRIS bits.

Note 1: When reading the port register, all pins configured as analog input channels will read as cleared (a low level). Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input. Analog levels on a digitally configured input will not affect the conversion accuracy.

2: Analog levels on any pin that is defined as a digital input (including the AN4:AN0 pins) may cause the input buffer to consume current that is out of the device's specification.

TABLE 17-1: TAD vs. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES

AD Clock Source (TAD)		Maximum Device Frequency	
Operation	**ADCS2:ADCS0**	**PIC18FXX2**	**PIC18LFXX2**
2 TOSC	000	1.25 MHz	666 kHz
4 TOSC	100	2.50 MHz	1.33 MHz
8 TOSC	001	5.00 MHz	2.67 MHz
16 TOSC	101	10.00 MHz	5.33 MHz
32 TOSC	010	20.00 MHz	10.67 MHz
64 TOSC	110	40.00 MHz	21.33 MHz
RC	011	—	—

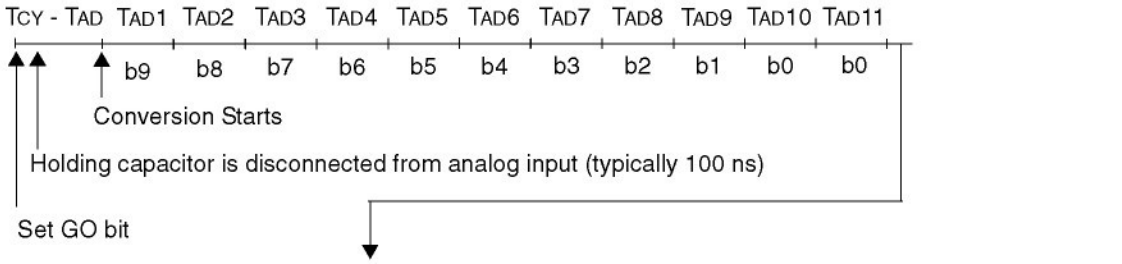
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.4 A/D Conversions

Figure 17-3 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO bit has been set. Clearing the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit during a conversion will abort the current conversion. The A/D result register pair will NOT be updated with the partially completed A/D conversion sample. That is, the ADRESH:ADRESL registers will continue to contain the value of the last completed conversion (or the last value written to the ADRESH:ADRESL registers). After the A/D conversion is aborted, a 2 TAD wait is required before the next acquisition is started. After this 2 TAD wait, acquisition on the selected channel is automatically started. The GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit can then be set to start the conversion.

Note:	The GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit should **NOT** be set in the same instruction that turns on the A/D.

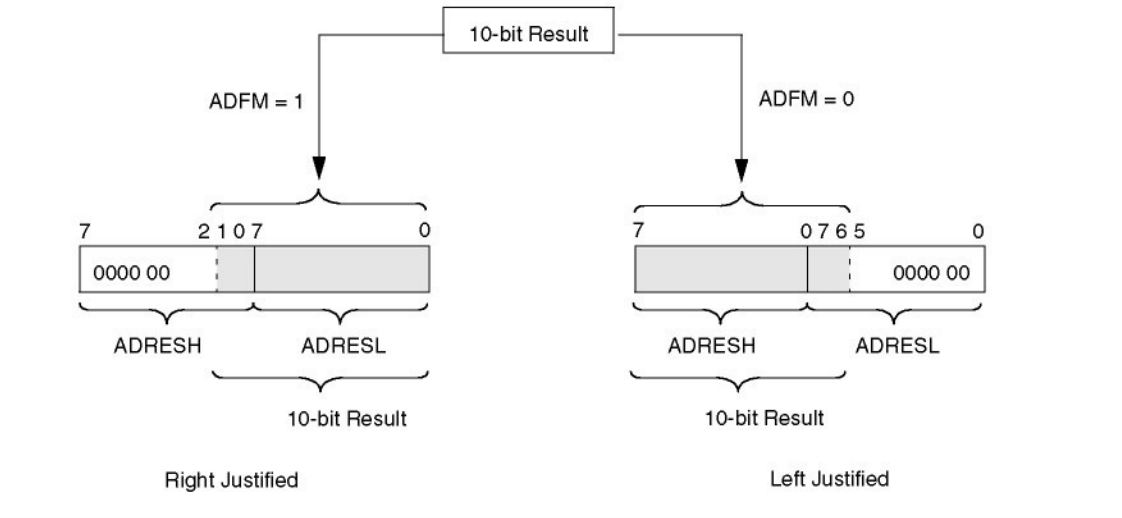
FIGURE 17-3: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES



17.4.1 A/D RESULT REGISTERS

The ADRESH:ADRESL register pair is the location where the 10-bit A/D result is loaded at the completion of the A/D conversion. This register pair is 16-bits wide. The A/D module gives the flexibility to left or right justify the 10-bit result in the 16-bit result register. The A/D Format Select bit (ADFM) controls this justification. Figure 17-4 shows the operation of the A/D result justification. The extra bits are loaded with '0's. When an A/D result will not overwrite these locations (A/D disable), these registers may be used as two general purpose 8-bit registers.

FIGURE 17-4: A/D RESULT JUSTIFICATION



17.5 Use of the CCP2 Trigger

An A/D conversion can be started by the "special event trigger" of the CCP2 module. This requires that the CCP2M3:CCP2M0 bits (CCP2CON<3:0>) be programmed as 1011 and that the A/D module is enabled (ADON bit is set). When the trigger occurs, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit will be set, starting the A/D conversion, and the Timer1 (or Timer3) counter will be reset to zero. Timer1 (or Timer3) is reset to automatically repeat the A/D acquisition period with minimal software overhead (moving ADRESH/ADRESL to the desired location). The appropriate analog input channel must be selected and the minimum acquisition done before the "special event trigger" sets the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (starts a conversion).

If the A/D module is not enabled (ADON is cleared), the "special event trigger" will be ignored by the A/D module, but will still reset the Timer1 (or Timer3) counter.

TABLE 17-2: SUMMARY OF A/D REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on All Other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR2	—	—	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	---0 0000
PIE2	—	—	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	---0 0000
IPR2	—	—	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	---1 0000
ADRESH	A/D Result Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	A/D Result Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	ADCS1	ADCS0	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	—	ADON	0000 00-0	0000 00-0
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS2	—	—	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	---- -000	---- -000
PORTA	—	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--0x 0000	--0u 0000
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							--11 1111	--11 1111
PORTE	—	—	—	—	—	RE2	RE1	RE0	---- -000	---- -000
LATE	—	—	—	—	—	LATE2	LATE1	LATE0	---- -xxx	---- -uuu
TRISE	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	PORTE Data Direction bits			0000 -111	0000 -111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for A/D conversion.
Note 1: The PSPIF, PSPIE and PSPIP bits are reserved on the PIC18F2X2 devices; always maintain these bits clear.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.0 LOW VOLTAGE DETECT

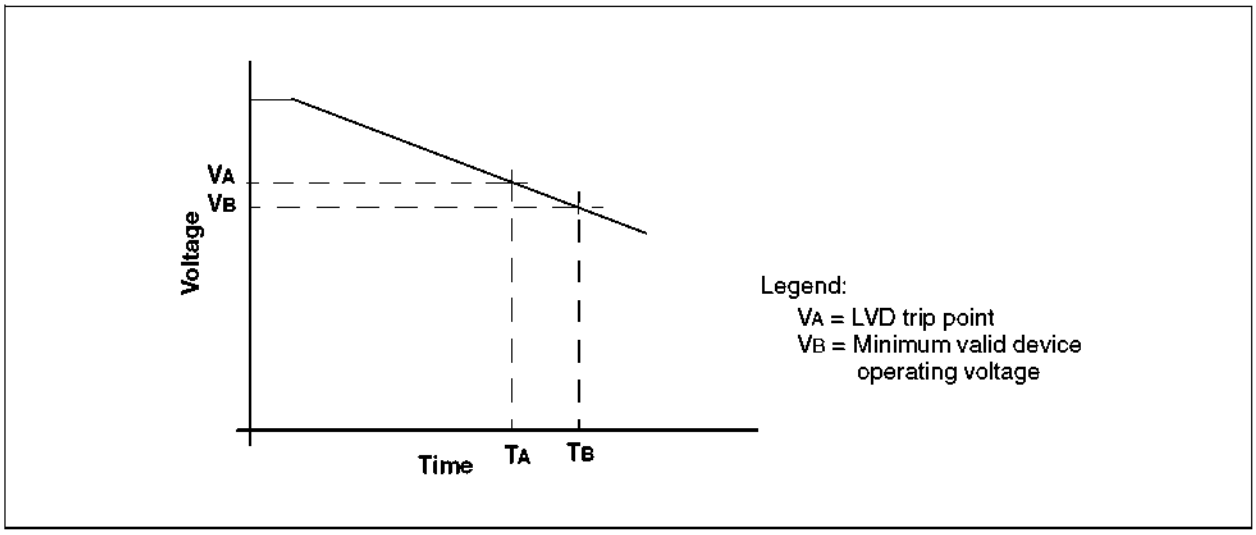
In many applications, the ability to determine if the device voltage (VDD) is below a specified voltage level is a desirable feature. A window of operation for the application can be created, where the application software can do "housekeeping tasks" before the device voltage exits the valid operating range. This can be done using the Low Voltage Detect module.

This module is a software programmable circuitry, where a device voltage trip point can be specified. When the voltage of the device becomes lower then the specified point, an interrupt flag is set. If the interrupt is enabled, the program execution will branch to the interrupt vector address and the software can then respond to that interrupt source.

The Low Voltage Detect circuitry is completely under software control. This allows the circuitry to be "turned off" by the software, which minimizes the current consumption for the device.

Figure 18-1 shows a possible application voltage curve (typically for batteries). Over time, the device voltage decreases. When the device voltage equals voltage VA, the LVD logic generates an interrupt. This occurs at time TA. The application software then has the time, until the device voltage is no longer in valid operating range, to shutdown the system. Voltage point VB is the minimum valid operating voltage specification. This occurs at time TB. The difference TB - TA is the total time for shutdown.

FIGURE 18-1: TYPICAL LOW VOLTAGE DETECT APPLICATION

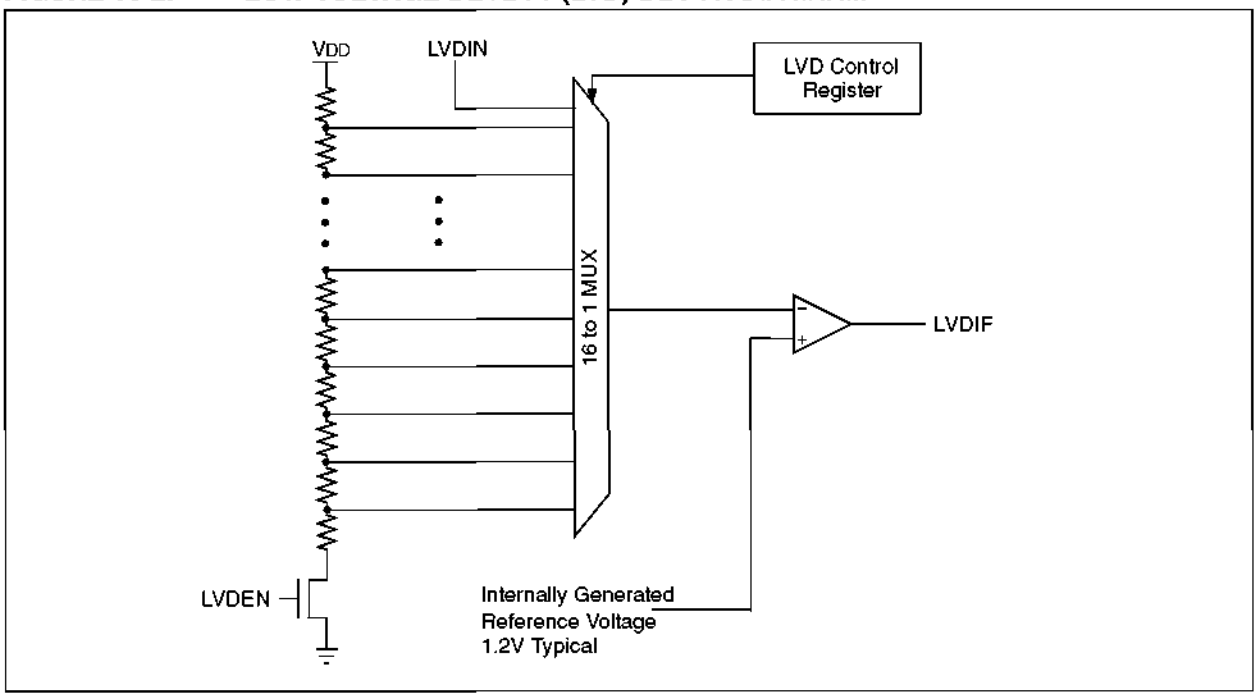


The block diagram for the LVD module is shown in Figure 18-2. A comparator uses an internally generated reference voltage as the set point. When the selected tap output of the device voltage crosses the set point (is lower than), the LVDIF bit is set.

Each node in the resistor divider represents a "trip point" voltage. The "trip point" voltage is the minimum supply voltage level at which the device can operate before the LVD module asserts an interrupt. When the supply voltage is equal to the trip point, the voltage tapped off of the resistor array is equal to the 1.2V internal reference voltage generated by the voltage reference module. The comparator then generates an interrupt signal setting the LVDIF bit. This voltage is software programmable to any one of 16 values (see Figure 18-2). The trip point is selected by programming the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON<3:0>).

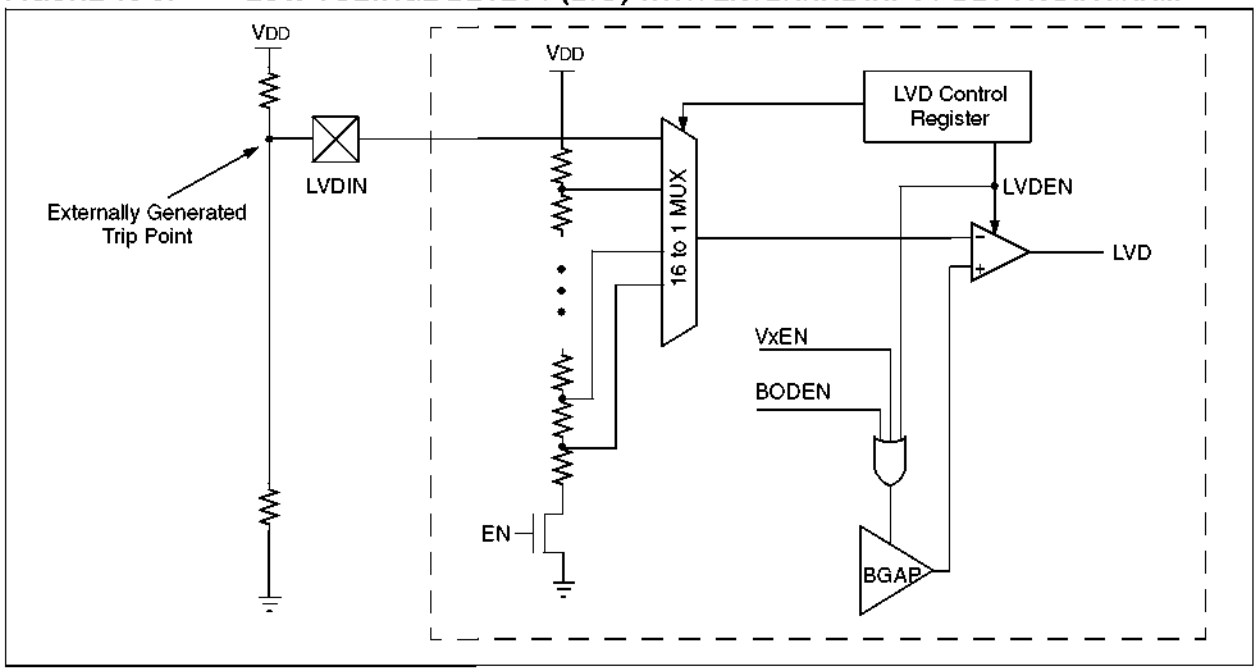
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 18-2: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) BLOCK DIAGRAM



The LVD module has an additional feature that allows the user to supply the trip voltage to the module from an external source. This mode is enabled when bits LVDL3:LVDL0 are set to `1111`. In this state, the comparator input is multiplexed from the external input pin, LVDIN (Figure 18-3). This gives users flexibility, because it allows them to configure the Low Voltage Detect interrupt to occur at any voltage in the valid operating range.

FIGURE 18-3: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) WITH EXTERNAL INPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.1 Control Register

The Low Voltage Detect Control register controls the operation of the Low Voltage Detect circuitry.

REGISTER 18-1: LVDCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Flag bit
1 = Indicates that the Low Voltage Detect logic will generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range
0 = Indicates that the Low Voltage Detect logic will not generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range and the LVD interrupt should not be enabled

bit 4 **LVDEN:** Low Voltage Detect Power Enable bit
1 = Enables LVD, powers up LVD circuit
0 = Disables LVD, powers down LVD circuit

bit 3-0 **LVDL3:LVDL0:** Low Voltage Detection Limit bits
1111 = External analog input is used (input comes from the LVDIN pin)
1110 = 4.5V - 4.77V
1101 = 4.2V - 4.45V
1100 = 4.0V - 4.24V
1011 = 3.8V - 4.03V
1010 = 3.6V - 3.82V
1001 = 3.5V - 3.71V
1000 = 3.3V - 3.50V
0111 = 3.0V - 3.18V
0110 = 2.8V - 2.97V
0101 = 2.7V - 2.86V
0100 = 2.5V - 2.65V
0011 = 2.4V - 2.54V
0010 = 2.2V - 2.33V
0001 = 2.0V - 2.12V
0000 = Reserved

Note: LVDL3:LVDL0 modes which result in a trip point below the valid operating voltage of the device are not tested.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

18.2 Operation

Depending on the power source for the device voltage, the voltage normally decreases relatively slowly. This means that the LVD module does not need to be constantly operating. To decrease the current requirements, the LVD circuitry only needs to be enabled for short periods, where the voltage is checked. After doing the check, the LVD module may be disabled.

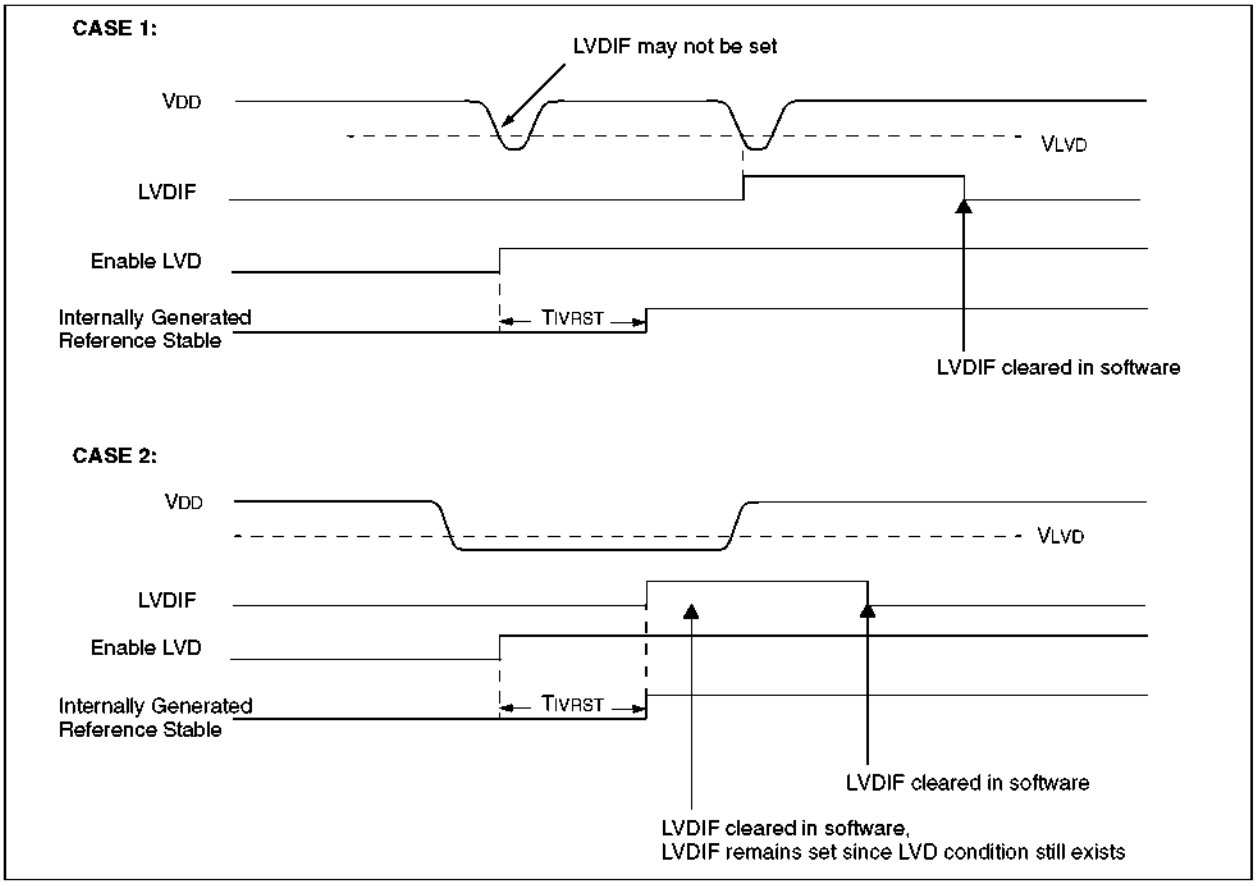
Each time that the LVD module is enabled, the circuitry requires some time to stabilize. After the circuitry has stabilized, all status flags may be cleared. The module will then indicate the proper state of the system.

The following steps are needed to set up the LVD module:

1. Write the value to the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON register), which selects the desired LVD Trip Point.
2. Ensure that LVD interrupts are disabled (the LVDIE bit is cleared or the GIE bit is cleared).
3. Enable the LVD module (set the LVDEN bit in the LVDCON register).
4. Wait for the LVD module to stabilize (the IRVST bit to become set).
5. Clear the LVD interrupt flag, which may have falsely become set until the LVD module has stabilized (clear the LVDIF bit).
6. Enable the LVD interrupt (set the LVDIE and the GIE bits).

Figure 18-4 shows typical waveforms that the LVD module may be used to detect.

FIGURE 18-4: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT WAVEFORMS



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.2.1 REFERENCE VOLTAGE SET POINT

The Internal Reference Voltage of the LVD module may be used by other internal circuitry (the Programmable Brown-out Reset). If these circuits are disabled (lower current consumption), the reference voltage circuit requires a time to become stable before a low voltage condition can be reliably detected. This time is invariant of system clock speed. This start-up time is specified in electrical specification parameter 36. The low voltage interrupt flag will not be enabled until a stable reference voltage is reached. Refer to the waveform in Figure 18-4.

18.2.2 CURRENT CONSUMPTION

When the module is enabled, the LVD comparator and voltage divider are enabled and will consume static current. The voltage divider can be tapped from multiple places in the resistor array. Total current consumption, when enabled, is specified in electrical specification parameter #D022B.

18.3 Operation During SLEEP

When enabled, the LVD circuitry continues to operate during SLEEP. If the device voltage crosses the trip point, the LVDIF bit will be set and the device will wake-up from SLEEP. Device execution will continue from the interrupt vector address if interrupts have been globally enabled.

18.4 Effects of a RESET

A device RESET forces all registers to their RESET state. This forces the LVD module to be turned off.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

There are several features intended to maximize system reliability, minimize cost through elimination of external components, provide power saving Operating modes and offer code protection. These are:

- OSC Selection
- RESET
  - Power-on Reset (POR)
  - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
  - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
  - Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- SLEEP
- Code Protection
- ID Locations
- In-Circuit Serial Programming

All PIC18FXX2 devices have a Watchdog Timer, which is permanently enabled via the configuration bits or software controlled. It runs off its own RC oscillator for added reliability. There are two timers that offer necessary delays on power-up. One is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in RESET until the crystal oscillator is stable. The other is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay on power-up only, designed to keep the part in RESET while the power supply stabilizes. With these two timers on-chip, most applications need no external RESET circuitry.

SLEEP mode is designed to offer a very low current Power-down mode. The user can wake-up from SLEEP through external RESET, Watchdog Timer Wake-up or through an interrupt. Several oscillator options are also made available to allow the part to fit the application. The RC oscillator option saves system cost, while the LP crystal option saves power. A set of configuration bits are used to select various options.

19.1 Configuration Bits

The configuration bits can be programmed (read as '0'), or left unprogrammed (read as '1'), to select various device configurations. These bits are mapped starting at program memory location 300000h.

The user will note that address 300000h is beyond the user program memory space. In fact, it belongs to the configuration memory space (300000h - 3FFFFFh), which can only be accessed using Table Reads and Table Writes.

Programming the configuration registers is done in a manner similar to programming the FLASH memory (see Section 5.5.1). The only difference is the configuration registers are written a byte at a time. The sequence of events for programming configuration registers is:

1. Load table pointer with address of configuration register being written.
2. Write a single byte using the `TBLWT` instruction.
3. Set EEPGD to point to program memory, set the CFGS bit to access configuration registers, and set WREN to enable byte writes.
4. Disable interrupts.
5. Write 55h to EECON2.
6. Write AAh to EECON2.
7. Set the WR bit. This will begin the write cycle.
8. CPU will stall for duration of write (approximately 2 ms using internal timer).
9. Execute a `NOP`.
10. Re-enable interrupts.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 19-1: CONFIGURATION BITS AND DEVICE IDS

File Name		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Default/ Unprogrammed Value
300001h	CONFIG1H	—	—	$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$	—	—	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0	--1- -111
300002h	CONFIG2L	—	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BOREN	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$	---- 1111
300003h	CONFIG2H	—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN	---- 1111
300005h	CONFIG3H	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCP2MX	---- ---1
300006h	CONFIG4L	$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$	—	—	—	—	LVP	—	STVREN	1--- -1-1
300008h	CONFIG5L	—	—	—	—	CP3	CP2	CP1	CP0	---- 1111
300009h	CONFIG5H	CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—	11-- ----
30000Ah	CONFIG6L	—	—	—	—	WRT3	WRT2	WRT1	WRT0	---- 1111
30000Bh	CONFIG6H	WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—	111- ----
30000Ch	CONFIG7L	—	—	—	—	EBTR3	EBTR2	EBTR1	EBTR0	---- 1111
30000Dh	CONFIG7H	—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—	-1-- ----
3FFFFEh	DEVID1	DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0	(1)
3FFFFFh	DEVID2	DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3	0000 0100

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition.
Shaded cells are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: See Register 19-12 for DEVID1 values.

REGISTER 19-1: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 1 HIGH (CONFIG1H: BYTE ADDRESS 300001h)

U-0	U-0	R/P-1	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$	—	—	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$**: Oscillator System Clock Switch Enable bit
1 = Oscillator system clock switch option is disabled (main oscillator is source)
0 = Oscillator system clock switch option is enabled (oscillator switching is enabled)

bit 4-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **FOSC2:FOSC0**: Oscillator Selection bits
111 = RC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as RA6
110 = HS oscillator with PLL enabled/Clock frequency = (4 x FOSC)
101 = EC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as RA6
100 = EC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as divide-by-4 clock output
011 = RC oscillator
010 = HS oscillator
001 = XT oscillator
000 = LP oscillator

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-2: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 LOW (CONFIG2L: BYTE ADDRESS 300002h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BOREN	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-2 **BORV1:BORV0:** Brown-out Reset Voltage bits
11 = VBOR set to 2.5V
10 = VBOR set to 2.7V
01 = VBOR set to 4.2V
00 = VBOR set to 4.5V

bit 1 **BOREN:** Brown-out Reset Enable bit
1 = Brown-out Reset enabled
0 = Brown-out Reset disabled

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$:** Power-up Timer Enable bit
1 = PWRT disabled
0 = PWRT enabled

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-3: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 HIGH (CONFIG2H: BYTE ADDRESS 300003h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-1 **WDTPS2:WDTPS0:** Watchdog Timer Postscale Select bits
111 = 1:128
110 = 1:64
101 = 1:32
100 = 1:16
011 = 1:8
010 = 1:4
001 = 1:2
000 = 1:1

bit 0 **WDTEN:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit
1 = WDT enabled
0 = WDT disabled (control is placed on the SWDTEN bit)

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-4: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 3 HIGH (CONFIG3H: BYTE ADDRESS 300005h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCP2MX
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **CCP2MX:** CCP2 Mux bit
1 = CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RC1
0 = CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RB3

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-5: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 4 LOW (CONFIG4L: BYTE ADDRESS 300006h)

R/P-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	U-0	R/P-1
$\overline{\text{BKBUG}}$	—	—	—	—	LVP	—	STVREN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$:** Background Debugger Enable bit
1 = Background Debugger disabled. RB6 and RB7 configured as general purpose I/O pins.
0 = Background Debugger enabled. RB6 and RB7 are dedicated to In-Circuit Debug.

bit 6-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **LVP:** Low Voltage ICSP Enable bit
1 = Low Voltage ICSP enabled
0 = Low Voltage ICSP disabled

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **STVREN:** Stack Full/Underflow Reset Enable bit
1 = Stack Full/Underflow will cause RESET
0 = Stack Full/Underflow will not cause RESET

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-6: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 5 LOW (CONFIG5L: BYTE ADDRESS 300008h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/C-1	R/C-1	R/C-1	R/C-1
—	—	—	—	CP3(1)	CP2(1)	CP1	CP0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **CP3:** Code Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) not code protected
0 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) code protected

bit 2 **CP2:** Code Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) not code protected
0 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) code protected

bit 1 **CP1:** Code Protection bit
1 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) not code protected
0 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) code protected

bit 0 **CP0:** Code Protection bit
1 = Block 0 (000200-001FFFh) not code protected
0 = Block 0 (000200-001FFFh) code protected

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX42 devices; maintain this bit set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-7: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 5 HIGH (CONFIG5H: BYTE ADDRESS 300009h)

R/C-1	R/C-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CPD:** Data EEPROM Code Protection bit
1 = Data EEPROM not code protected
0 = Data EEPROM code protected

bit 6 **CPB:** Boot Block Code Protection bit
1 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) not code protected
0 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) code protected

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-8: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 6 LOW (CONFIG6L: BYTE ADDRESS 30000Ah)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/C-1	R/C-1	R/C-1	R/C-1
—	—	—	—	WRT3(1)	WRT2(1)	WRT1	WRT0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **WRT3:** Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) not write protected
0 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) write protected

bit 2 **WRT2:** Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) not write protected
0 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) write protected

bit 1 **WRT1:** Write Protection bit
1 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) not write protected
0 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) write protected

bit 0 **WRT0:** Write Protection bit
1 = Block 0 (000200h-001FFFh) not write protected
0 = Block 0 (000200h-001FFFh) write protected

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX42 devices; maintain this bit set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-9: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 6 HIGH (CONFIG6H: BYTE ADDRESS 30000Bh)

R/C-1	R/C-1	C-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WRTD:** Data EEPROM Write Protection bit
1 = Data EEPROM not write protected
0 = Data EEPROM write protected

bit 6 **WRTB:** Boot Block Write Protection bit
1 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) not write protected
0 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) write protected

bit 5 **WRTC:** Configuration Register Write Protection bit
1 = Configuration registers (300000-3000FFh) not write protected
0 = Configuration registers (300000-3000FFh) write protected

Note: This bit is read only, and cannot be changed in User mode.

bit 4-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C =Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-10: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 7 LOW (CONFIG7L: BYTE ADDRESS 30000Ch)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/C-1	R/C-1	R/C-1	R/C-1
—	—	—	—	EBTR3(1)	EBTR2(1)	EBTR1	EBTR0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **EBTR3:** Table Read Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) not protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks

bit 2 **EBTR2:** Table Read Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) not protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks

bit 1 **EBTR1:** Table Read Protection bit
1 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) not protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks

bit 0 **EBTR0:** Table Read Protection bit
1 = Block 0 (000200h-001FFFh) not protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 0 (000200h-001FFFh) protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX42 devices; maintain this bit set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-11: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 7 HIGH (CONFIG7H: BYTE ADDRESS 30000Dh)

U-0	R/C-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **EBTRB:** Boot Block Table Read Protection bit
1 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) not protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks
0 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) protected from Table Reads executed in other blocks

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C =Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-12: DEVICE ID REGISTER 1 FOR PIC18FXX2 (DEVID1: BYTE ADDRESS 3FFFFEh)

R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **DEV2:DEV0:** Device ID bits
000 = PIC18F252
001 = PIC18F452
100 = PIC18F242
101 = PIC18F442

bit 4-0 **REV4:REV0:** Revision ID bits
These bits are used to indicate the device revision.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P =Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 19-13: DEVICE ID REGISTER 2 FOR PIC18FXX2 (DEVID2: BYTE ADDRESS 3FFFFFh)

R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **DEV10:DEV3:** Device ID bits
These bits are used with the DEV2:DEV0 bits in the Device ID Register 1 to identify the part number.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P =Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.2 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

The Watchdog Timer is a free running on-chip RC oscillator, which does not require any external components. This RC oscillator is separate from the RC oscillator of the OSC1/CLKI pin. That means that the WDT will run, even if the clock on the OSC1/CLKI and OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pins of the device has been stopped, for example, by execution of a SLEEP instruction.

During normal operation, a WDT time-out generates a device RESET (Watchdog Timer Reset). If the device is in SLEEP mode, a WDT time-out causes the device to wake-up and continue with normal operation (Watchdog Timer Wake-up). The $\overline{TO}$ bit in the RCON register will be cleared upon a WDT time-out.

The Watchdog Timer is enabled/disabled by a device configuration bit. If the WDT is enabled, software execution may not disable this function. When the WDTEN configuration bit is cleared, the SWDTEN bit enables/disables the operation of the WDT.

The WDT time-out period values may be found in the Electrical Specifications (Section 22.0) under parameter D031. Values for the WDT postscaler may be assigned using the configuration bits.

Note:	The CLRWDT and SLEEP instructions clear the WDT and the postscaler, if assigned to the WDT and prevent it from timing out and generating a device RESET condition.

Note:	When a CLRWDT instruction is executed and the postscaler is assigned to the WDT, the postscaler count will be cleared, but the postscaler assignment is not changed.

19.2.1 CONTROL REGISTER

Register 19-14 shows the WDTCON register. This is a readable and writable register, which contains a control bit that allows software to override the WDT enable configuration bit, only when the configuration bit has disabled the WDT.

REGISTER 19-14: WDTCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

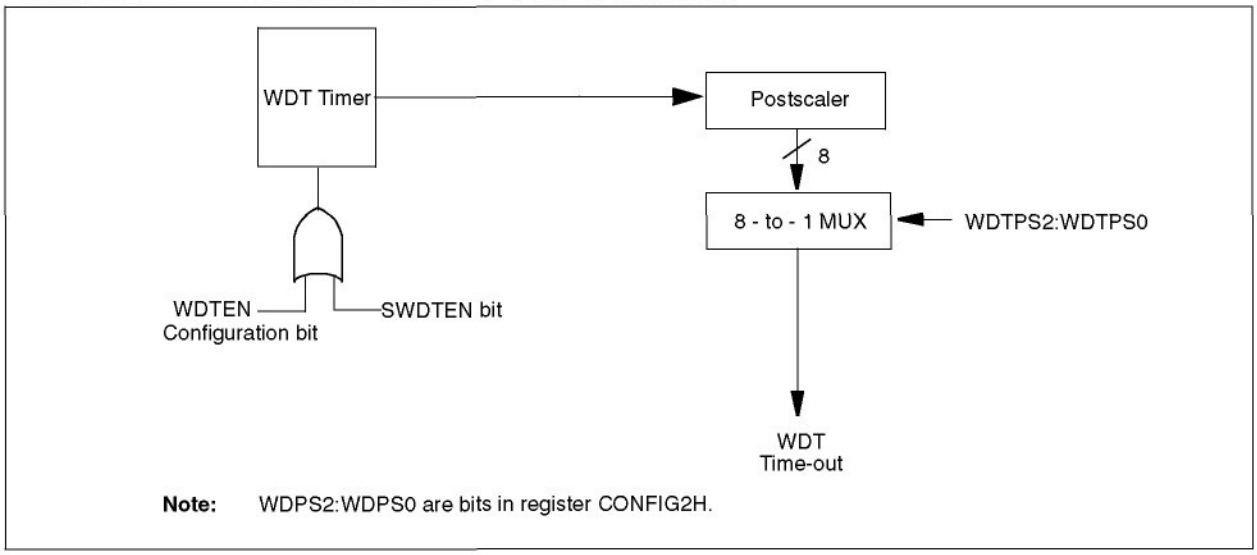
bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Controlled Watchdog Timer Enable bit
1 = Watchdog Timer is on
0 = Watchdog Timer is turned off if the WDTEN configuration bit in the configuration register = '0'

Legend:	
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit
U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	- n = Value at POR

19.2.2 WDT POSTSCALER

The WDT has a postscaler that can extend the WDT Reset period. The postscaler is selected at the time of the device programming, by the value written to the CONFIG2H configuration register.

FIGURE 19-1: WATCHDOG TIMER BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: WDPS2:WDPS0 are bits in register CONFIG2H.

TABLE 19-2: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
CONFIG2H	—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS2	WDTPS0	WDTEN
RCON	IPEN	—	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN

Legend: Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.3 Power-down Mode (SLEEP)

Power-down mode is entered by executing a SLEEP instruction.

If enabled, the Watchdog Timer will be cleared, but keeps running, the $\overline{PD}$ bit (RCON<3>) is cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ (RCON<4>) bit is set, and the oscillator driver is turned off. The I/O ports maintain the status they had before the SLEEP instruction was executed (driving high, low or hi-impedance).

For lowest current consumption in this mode, place all I/O pins at either VDD or VSS, ensure no external circuitry is drawing current from the I/O pin, power-down the A/D and disable external clocks. Pull all I/O pins that are hi-impedance inputs, high or low externally, to avoid switching currents caused by floating inputs. The T0CKI input should also be at VDD or VSS for lowest current consumption. The contribution from on-chip pull-ups on PORTB should be considered.

The $\overline{MCLR}$ pin must be at a logic high level (VIHMC).

19.3.1 WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The device can wake-up from SLEEP through one of the following events:

1. External RESET input on $\overline{MCLR}$ pin.
2. Watchdog Timer Wake-up (if WDT was enabled).
3. Interrupt from INT pin, RB port change or a Peripheral Interrupt.

The following peripheral interrupts can wake the device from SLEEP:

1. PSP read or write.
2. TMR1 interrupt. Timer1 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
3. TMR3 interrupt. Timer3 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
4. CCP Capture mode interrupt.
5. Special event trigger (Timer1 in Asynchronous mode using an external clock).
6. MSSP (START/STOP) bit detect interrupt.
7. MSSP transmit or receive in Slave mode (SPI/I^2C).
8. USART RX or TX (Synchronous Slave mode).
9. A/D conversion (when A/D clock source is RC).
10. EEPROM write operation complete.
11. LVD interrupt.

Other peripherals cannot generate interrupts, since during SLEEP, no on-chip clocks are present.

External $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset will cause a device RESET. All other events are considered a continuation of program execution and will cause a "wake-up". The $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits in the RCON register can be used to determine the cause of the device RESET. The $\overline{PD}$ bit, which is set on power-up, is cleared when SLEEP is invoked. The $\overline{TO}$ bit is cleared, if a WDT time-out occurred (and caused wake-up).

When the SLEEP instruction is being executed, the next instruction (PC + 2) is pre-fetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the corresponding interrupt enable bit must be set (enabled). Wake-up is regardless of the state of the GIE bit. If the GIE bit is clear (disabled), the device continues execution at the instruction after the SLEEP instruction. If the GIE bit is set (enabled), the device executes the instruction after the SLEEP instruction and then branches to the interrupt address. In cases where the execution of the instruction following SLEEP is not desirable, the user should have a NOP after the SLEEP instruction.

19.3.2 WAKE-UP USING INTERRUPTS

When global interrupts are disabled (GIE cleared) and any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and interrupt flag bit set, one of the following will occur:

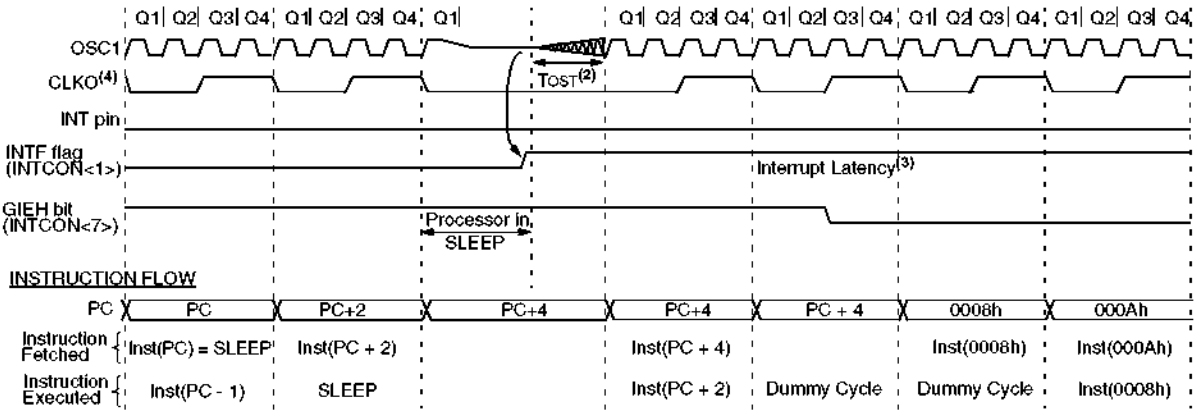
- If an interrupt condition (interrupt flag bit and interrupt enable bits are set) occurs **before** the execution of a SLEEP instruction, the SLEEP instruction will complete as a NOP. Therefore, the WDT and WDT postscaler will not be cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ bit will not be set and $\overline{PD}$ bits will not be cleared.
- If the interrupt condition occurs **during or after** the execution of a SLEEP instruction, the device will immediately wake-up from SLEEP. The SLEEP instruction will be completely executed before the wake-up. Therefore, the WDT and WDT postscaler will be cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ bit will be set and the $\overline{PD}$ bit will be cleared.

Even if the flag bits were checked before executing a SLEEP instruction, it may be possible for flag bits to become set before the SLEEP instruction completes. To determine whether a SLEEP instruction executed, test the $\overline{PD}$ bit. If the $\overline{PD}$ bit is set, the SLEEP instruction was executed as a NOP.

To ensure that the WDT is cleared, a CLRWDT instruction should be executed before a SLEEP instruction.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 19-2: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT(1,2)



Note 1: XT, HS or LP Oscillator mode assumed.
2: GIE = '1' assumed. In this case, after wake-up, the processor jumps to the interrupt routine. If GIE = '0', execution will continue in-line.
3: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale). This delay will not occur for RC and EC Osc modes.
4: CLKO is not available in these Osc modes, but shown here for timing reference.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.4 Program Verification and Code Protection

The overall structure of the code protection on the PIC18 FLASH devices differs significantly from other PICmicro devices.

The user program memory is divided into five blocks. One of these is a boot block of 512 bytes. The remainder of the memory is divided into four blocks on binary boundaries.

Each of the five blocks has three code protection bits associated with them. They are:

- Code Protect bit (CPn)
- Write Protect bit (WRTn)
- External Block Table Read bit (EBTRn)

Figure 19-3 shows the program memory organization for 16- and 32-Kbyte devices, and the specific code protection bit associated with each block. The actual locations of the bits are summarized in Table 19-3.

FIGURE 19-3: CODE PROTECTED PROGRAM MEMORY FOR PIC18F2XX/4XX

MEMORY SIZE/DEVICE			
16 Kbytes (PIC18FX42)	32 Kbytes (PIC18FX52)	Address Range	Block Code Protection Controlled By:
Boot Block	Boot Block	000000h 0001FFh	CPB, WRTB, EBTRB
Block 0	Block 0	000200h 001FFFh	CP0, WRT0, EBTR0
Block 1	Block 1	002000h 003FFFh	CP1, WRT1, EBTR1
Unimplemented Read 0's	Block 2	004000h 005FFFh	CP2, WRT2, EBTR2
Unimplemented Read 0's	Block 3	006000h 007FFFh	CP3, WRT3, EBTR3
Unimplemented Read 0's	Unimplemented Read 0's	008000h 1FFFFFh	(Unimplemented Memory Space)

TABLE 19-3: SUMMARY OF CODE PROTECTION REGISTERS

File Name		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
300008h	CONFIG5L	—	—	—	—	CP3	CP2	CP1	CP0
300009h	CONFIG5H	CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—
30000Ah	CONFIG6L	—	—	—	—	WRT3	WRT2	WRT1	WRT0
30000Bh	CONFIG6H	WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—
30000Ch	CONFIG7L	—	—	—	—	EBTR3	EBTR2	EBTR1	EBTR0
30000Dh	CONFIG7H	—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—

Legend: Shaded cells are unimplemented.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

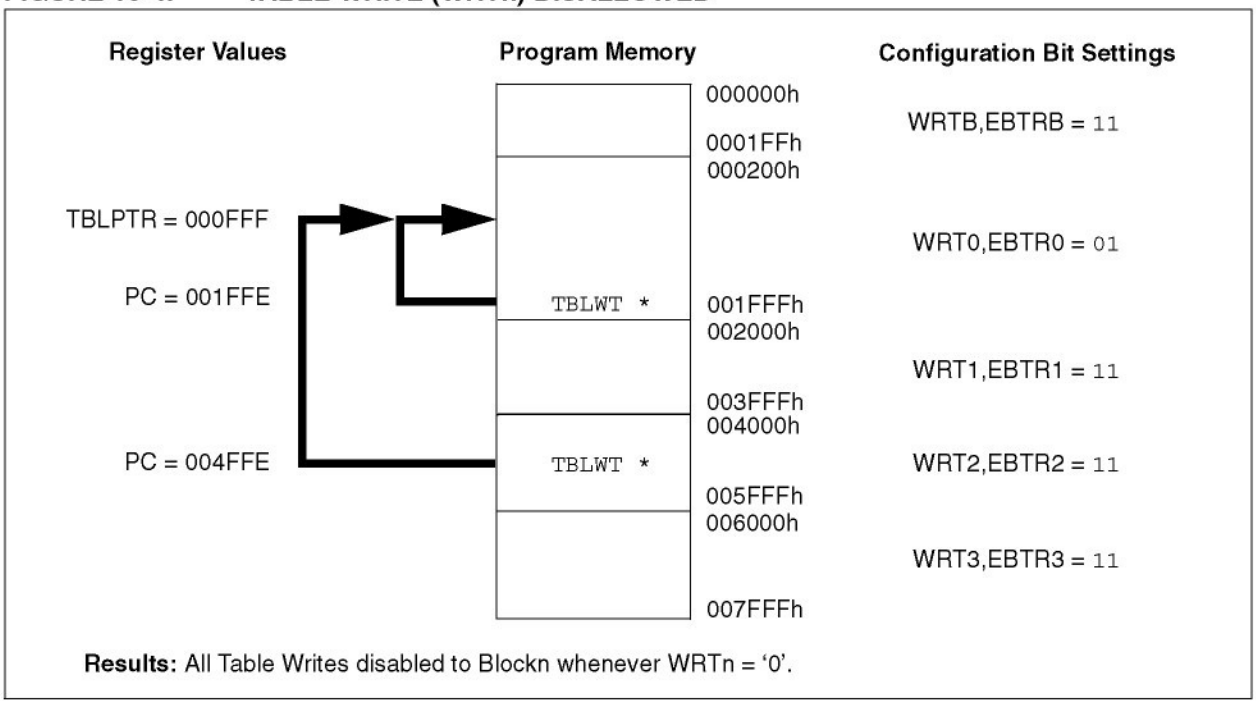
19.4.1 PROGRAM MEMORY CODE PROTECTION

The user memory may be read to or written from any location using the Table Read and Table Write instructions. The device ID may be read with Table Reads. The configuration registers may be read and written with the Table Read and Table Write instructions.

In User mode, the CPn bits have no direct effect. CPn bits inhibit external reads and writes. A block of user memory may be protected from Table Writes if the WRTn configuration bit is '0'. The EBTRn bits control Table Reads. For a block of user memory with the EBTRn bit set to '0', a Table Read instruction that executes from within that block is allowed to read. A Table Read instruction that executes from a location outside of that block is not allowed to read, and will result in reading '0's. Figures 19-4 through 19-6 illustrate Table Write and Table Read protection.

Note:	Code protection bits may only be written to a '0' from a '1' state. It is not possible to write a '1' to a bit in the '0' state. Code protection bits are only set to '1' by a full chip erase or block erase function. The full chip erase and block erase functions can only be initiated via ICSP or an external programmer.

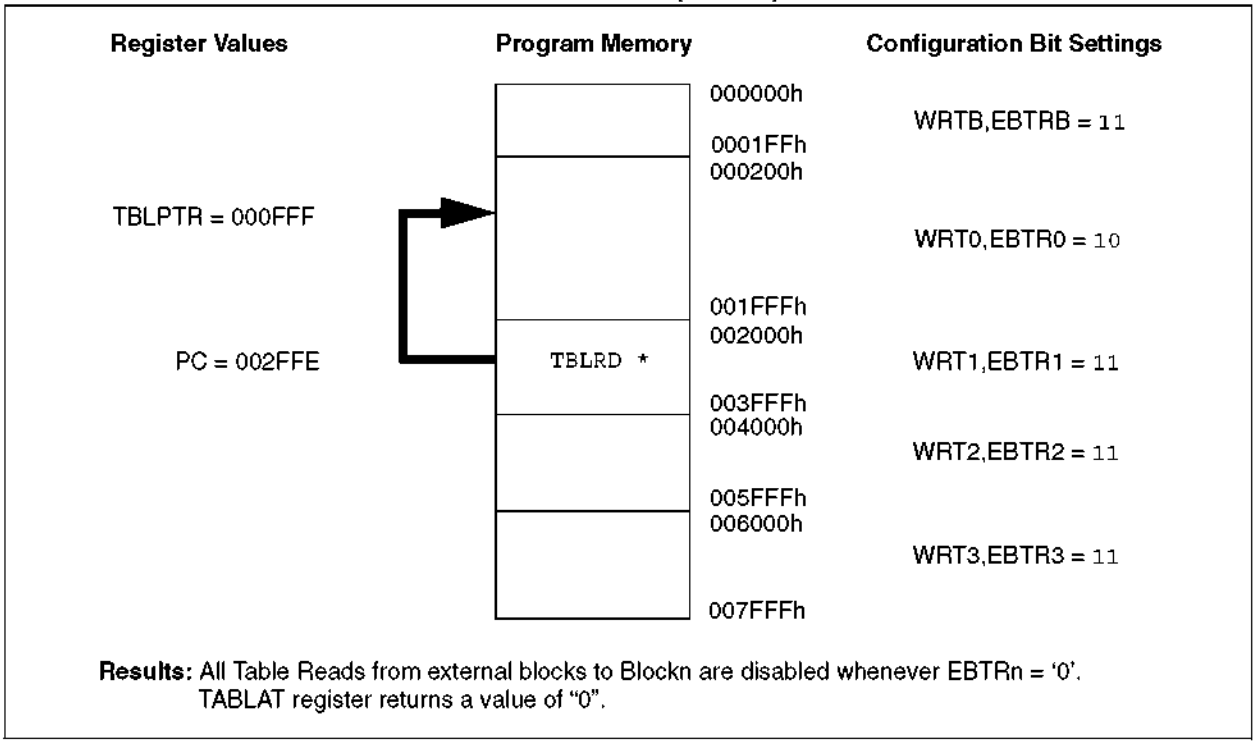
FIGURE 19-4: TABLE WRITE (WRTn) DISALLOWED



Results: All Table Writes disabled to Blockn whenever WRTn = '0'.

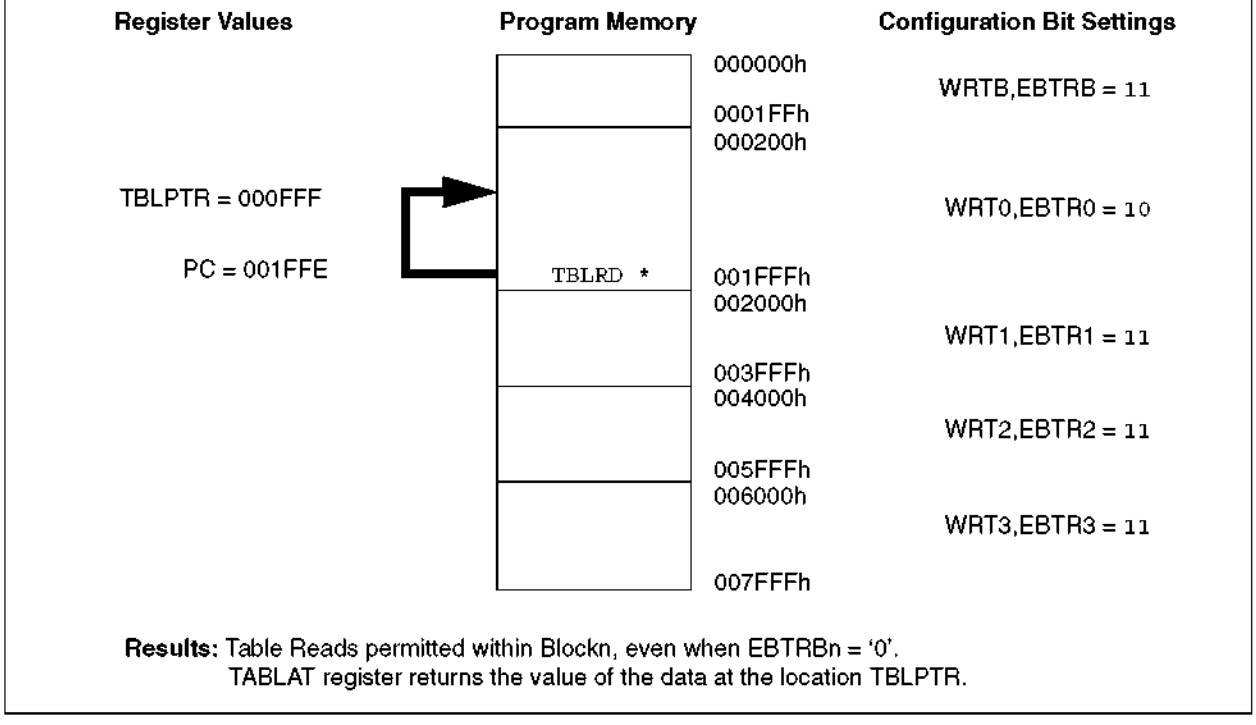
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 19-5: EXTERNAL BLOCK TABLE READ (EBTRn) DISALLOWED



Results: All Table Reads from external blocks to Blockn are disabled whenever EBTRn = '0'.
TABLAT register returns a value of "0".

FIGURE 19-6: EXTERNAL BLOCK TABLE READ (EBTRn) ALLOWED



Results: Table Reads permitted within Blockn, even when EBTRBn = '0'.
TABLAT register returns the value of the data at the location TBLPTR.

19.4.2 DATA EEPROM CODE PROTECTION

The entire Data EEPROM is protected from external reads and writes by two bits: CPD and WRTD. CPD inhibits external reads and writes of Data EEPROM. WRTD inhibits external writes to Data EEPROM. The CPU can continue to read and write Data EEPROM regardless of the protection bit settings.

19.4.3 CONFIGURATION REGISTER PROTECTION

The configuration registers can be write protected. The WRTC bit controls protection of the configuration registers. In User mode, the WRTC bit is readable only. WRTC can only be written via ICSP or an external programmer.

19.5 ID Locations

Eight memory locations (200000h - 200007h) are designated as ID locations, where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are accessible during normal execution through the TBLRD and TBLWT instructions, or during program/verify. The ID locations can be read when the device is code protected.

The sequence for programming the ID locations is similar to programming the FLASH memory (see Section 5.5.1).

19.6 In-Circuit Serial Programming

PIC18FXXX microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data, and three other lines for power, ground and the programming voltage. This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices, and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

19.7 In-Circuit Debugger

When the DEBUG bit in configuration register CONFIG4L is programmed to a '0', the In-Circuit Debugger functionality is enabled. This function allows simple debugging functions when used with MPLAB® IDE. When the microcontroller has this feature enabled, some of the resources are not available for general use. Table 19-4 shows which features are consumed by the background debugger.

TABLE 19-4: DEBUGGER RESOURCES

I/O pins	RB6, RB7
Stack	2 levels
Program Memory	512 bytes
Data Memory	10 bytes

To use the In-Circuit Debugger function of the microcontroller, the design must implement In-Circuit Serial Programming connections to $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$, V_{DD}, GND, RB7 and RB6. This will interface to the In-Circuit Debugger module available from Microchip or one of the third party development tool companies.

19.8 Low Voltage ICSP Programming

The LVP bit configuration register CONFIG4L enables low voltage ICSP programming. This mode allows the microcontroller to be programmed via ICSP using a V_{DD} source in the operating voltage range. This only means that V_{PP} does not have to be brought to V_{IHH}, but can instead be left at the normal operating voltage. In this mode, the RB5/PGM pin is dedicated to the programming function and ceases to be a general purpose I/O pin. During programming, V_{DD} is applied to the $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$ pin. To enter Programming mode, V_{DD} must be applied to the RB5/PGM, provided the LVP bit is set. The LVP bit defaults to a ('1') from the factory.

Note 1: The High Voltage Programming mode is always available, regardless of the state of the LVP bit, by applying V_{IHH} to the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin.

2: While in low voltage ICSP mode, the RB5 pin can no longer be used as a general purpose I/O pin, and should be held low during normal operation to protect against inadvertent ICSP mode entry.

3: When using low voltage ICSP programming (LVP), the pull-up on RB5 becomes disabled. If TRISB bit 5 is cleared, thereby setting RB5 as an output, LATB bit 5 must also be cleared for proper operation.

If Low Voltage Programming mode is not used, the LVP bit can be programmed to a '0' and RB5/PGM becomes a digital I/O pin. However, the LVP bit may only be programmed when programming is entered with V_{IHH} on $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$.

It should be noted that once the LVP bit is programmed to 0, only the High Voltage Programming mode is available and only High Voltage Programming mode can be used to program the device.

When using low voltage ICSP, the part must be supplied 4.5V to 5.5V, if a bulk erase will be executed. This includes reprogramming of the code protect bits from an on-state to off-state. For all other cases of low voltage ICSP, the part may be programmed at the normal operating voltage. This means unique user IDs, or user code can be reprogrammed or added.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

20.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

The PIC18FXXX instruction set adds many enhancements to the previous PICmicro instruction sets, while maintaining an easy migration from these PICmicro instruction sets.

Most instructions are a single program memory word (16-bits), but there are three instructions that require two program memory locations.

Each single word instruction is a 16-bit word divided into an OPCODE, which specifies the instruction type and one or more operands, which further specify the operation of the instruction.

The instruction set is highly orthogonal and is grouped into four basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
- **Bit-oriented** operations
- **Literal** operations
- **Control** operations

The PIC18FXXX instruction set summary in Table 20-2 lists **byte-oriented**, **bit-oriented**, **literal** and **control** operations. Table 20-1 shows the opcode field descriptions.

Most **byte-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by 'f')
2. The destination of the result (specified by 'd')
3. The accessed memory (specified by 'a')

The file register designator 'f' specifies which file register is to be used by the instruction.

The destination designator 'd' specifies where the result of the operation is to be placed. If 'd' is zero, the result is placed in the WREG register. If 'd' is one, the result is placed in the file register specified in the instruction.

All **bit-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by 'f')
2. The bit in the file register (specified by 'b')
3. The accessed memory (specified by 'a')

The bit field designator 'b' selects the number of the bit affected by the operation, while the file register designator 'f' represents the number of the file in which the bit is located.

The **literal** instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A literal value to be loaded into a file register (specified by 'k')
- The desired FSR register to load the literal value into (specified by 'f')
- No operand required (specified by '—')

The **control** instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A program memory address (specified by 'n')
- The mode of the Call or Return instructions (specified by 's')
- The mode of the Table Read and Table Write instructions (specified by 'm')
- No operand required (specified by '—')

All instructions are a single word, except for three double-word instructions. These three instructions were made double-word instructions so that all the required information is available in these 32 bits. In the second word, the 4-MSbs are 1's. If this second word is executed as an instruction (by itself), it will execute as a NOP.

All single word instructions are executed in a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true or the program counter is changed as a result of the instruction. In these cases, the execution takes two instruction cycles with the additional instruction cycle(s) executed as a NOP.

The double-word instructions execute in two instruction cycles.

One instruction cycle consists of four oscillator periods. Thus, for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, the normal instruction execution time is 1 µs. If a conditional test is true or the program counter is changed as a result of an instruction, the instruction execution time is 2 µs. Two-word branch instructions (if true) would take 3 µs.

Figure 20-1 shows the general formats that the instructions can have.

All examples use the format `'nnh'` to represent a hexadecimal number, where `'h'` signifies a hexadecimal digit.

The Instruction Set Summary, shown in Table 20-2, lists the instructions recognized by the Microchip Assembler (MPASM™).

Section 20.1 provides a description of each instruction.

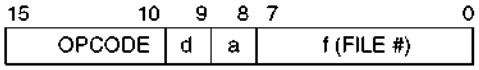
TABLE 20-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
a	RAM access bit a = 0: RAM location in Access RAM (BSR register is ignored) a = 1: RAM bank is specified by BSR register
bbb	Bit address within an 8-bit file register (0 to 7)
BSR	Bank Select Register. Used to select the current RAM bank.
d	Destination select bit; d = 0: store result in WREG, d = 1: store result in file register f.
dest	Destination either the WREG register or the specified register file location
f	8-bit Register file address (0x00 to 0xFF)
fs	12-bit Register file address (0x000 to 0xFFF). This is the source address.
fd	12-bit Register file address (0x000 to 0xFFF). This is the destination address.
k	Literal field, constant data or label (may be either an 8-bit, 12-bit or a 20-bit value)
label	Label name
mm * *+ *- +*	The mode of the TBLPTR register for the Table Read and Table Write instructions. Only used with Table Read and Table Write instructions: No Change to register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes) Post-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes) Post-Decrement register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes) Pre-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes)
n	The relative address (2's complement number) for relative branch instructions, or the direct address for Call/Branch and Return instructions
PRODH	Product of Multiply high byte
PRODL	Product of Multiply low byte
s	Fast Call/Return mode select bit. s = 0: do not update into/from shadow registers s = 1: certain registers loaded into/from shadow registers (Fast mode)
u	Unused or Unchanged
WREG	Working register (accumulator)
x	Don't care (0 or 1) The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
TBLPTR	21-bit Table Pointer (points to a Program Memory location)
TABLAT	8-bit Table Latch
TOS	Top-of-Stack
PC	Program Counter
PCL	Program Counter Low Byte
PCH	Program Counter High Byte
PCLATH	Program Counter High Byte Latch
PCLATU	Program Counter Upper Byte Latch
GIE	Global Interrupt Enable bit
WDT	Watchdog Timer
$\overline{TO}$	Time-out bit
$\overline{PD}$	Power-down bit
C, DC, Z, OV, N	ALU status bits Carry, Digit Carry, Zero, Overflow, Negative
[ ]	Optional
( )	Contents
→	Assigned to
< >	Register bit field
∈	In the set of
italics	User defined term (font is courier)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 20-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

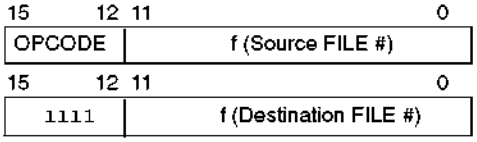
Byte-oriented file register operations — **Example Instruction**



ADDWF MYREG, W, B

d = 0 for result destination to be WREG register
d = 1 for result destination to be file register (f)
a = 0 to force Access Bank
a = 1 for BSR to select bank
f = 8-bit file register address

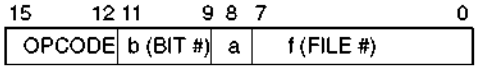
Byte to Byte move operations (2-word)



MOVFF MYREG1, MYREG2

f = 12-bit file register address

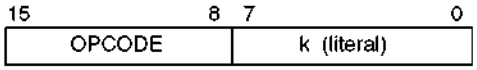
Bit-oriented file register operations



BSF MYREG, bit, B

b = 3-bit position of bit in file register (f)
a = 0 to force Access Bank
a = 1 for BSR to select bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Literal operations

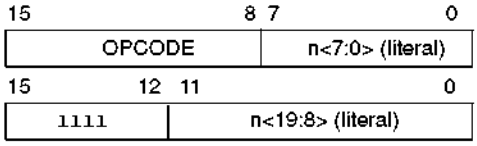


MOVLW 0x7F

k = 8-bit immediate value

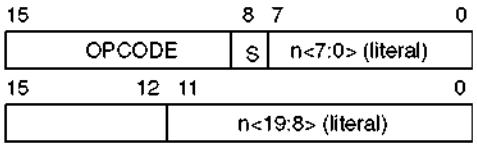
Control operations

CALL, GOTO and Branch operations



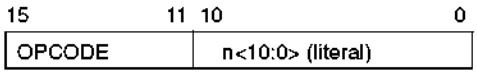
GOTO Label

n = 20-bit immediate value

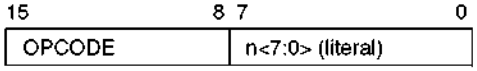


CALL MYFUNC

S = Fast bit



BRA MYFUNC



BC MYFUNC

TABLE 20-2: PIC18FXXX INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
ADDWF	f, d, a	Add WREG and f	1	0010	01da0	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
ADDWFC	f, d, a	Add WREG and Carry bit to f	1	0010	0da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
ANDWF	f, d, a	AND WREG with f	1	0001	01da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1,2
CLRF	f, a	Clear f	1	0110	101a	ffff	ffff	Z	2
COMF	f, d, a	Complement f	1	0001	11da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2
CPFSEQ	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip =	1 (2 or 3)	0110	001a	ffff	ffff	None	4
CPFSGT	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip >	1 (2 or 3)	0110	010a	ffff	ffff	None	4
CPFSLT	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip <	1 (2 or 3)	0110	000a	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
DECF	f, d, a	Decrement f	1	0000	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4
DECFSZ	f, d, a	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0010	11da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 3, 4
DCFSNZ	f, d, a	Decrement f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100	11da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
INCF	f, d, a	Increment f	1	0010	10da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4
INCFSZ	f, d, a	Increment f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0011	11da	ffff	ffff	None	4
INFSNZ	f, d, a	Increment f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100	10da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
IORWF	f, d, a	Inclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2
MOVF	f, d, a	Move f	1	0101	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1
MOVFF	f_s, f_d	Move f_s (source) to 1st word f_d (destination) 2nd word	2	1100 1111	ffff ffff	ffff ffff	ffff ffff	None	
MOVWF	f, a	Move WREG to f	1	0110	111a	ffff	ffff	None	
MULWF	f, a	Multiply WREG with f	1	0000	001a	ffff	ffff	None	
NEGF	f, a	Negate f	1	0110	110a	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
RLCF	f, d, a	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	0011	01da	ffff	ffff	C, Z, N	
RLNCF	f, d, a	Rotate Left f (No Carry)	1	0100	01da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2
RRCF	f, d, a	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	0011	00da	ffff	ffff	C, Z, N	
RRNCF	f, d, a	Rotate Right f (No Carry)	1	0100	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	
SETF	f, a	Set f	1	0110	100a	ffff	ffff	None	
SUBFWB	f, d, a	Subtract f from WREG with borrow	1	0101	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
SUBWF	f, d, a	Subtract WREG from f	1	0101	11da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
SUBWFB	f, d, a	Subtract WREG from f with borrow	1	0101	10da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
SWAPF	f, d, a	Swap nibbles in f	1	0011	10da	ffff	ffff	None	4
TSTFSZ	f, a	Test f, skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0110	011a	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
XORWF	f, d, a	Exclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001	10da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	
BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b, a	Bit Clear f	1	1001	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
BSF	f, b, a	Bit Set f	1	1000	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
BTFSC	f, b, a	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2 or 3)	1011	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4
BTFSS	f, b, a	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2 or 3)	1010	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4
BTG	f, d, a	Bit Toggle f	1	0111	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and, where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a NOP.

4: Some instructions are 2-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a NOP, unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16-bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the Table Write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 20-2: PIC18FXXX INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word				Status Affected	Notes
				MSb			LSb		
CONTROL OPERATIONS									
BC	n	Branch if Carry	1 (2)	1110	0010	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BN	n	Branch if Negative	1 (2)	1110	0110	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNC	n	Branch if Not Carry	1 (2)	1110	0011	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNN	n	Branch if Not Negative	1 (2)	1110	0111	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNOV	n	Branch if Not Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0101	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNZ	n	Branch if Not Zero	2	1110	0001	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BOV	n	Branch if Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0100	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BRA	n	Branch Unconditionally	1 (2)	1101	0nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BZ	n	Branch if Zero	1 (2)	1110	0000	nnnn	nnnn	None	
CALL	n, s	Call subroutine1st word	2	1110	110s	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CLRWDT	—	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	0000	0000	0000	0100	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
DAW	—	Decimal Adjust WREG	1	0000	0000	0000	0111	C	
GOTO	n	Go to address1st word	2	1110	1111	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
NOP	—	No Operation	1	0000	0000	0000	0000	None	
NOP	—	No Operation	1	1111	xxxx	xxxx	xxxx	None	4
POP	—	Pop top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0110	None	
PUSH	—	Push top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0101	None	
RCALL	n	Relative Call	2	1101	1nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
RESET		Software device RESET	1	0000	0000	1111	1111	All	
RETFIE	s	Return from interrupt enable	2	0000	0000	0001	000s	GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETURN	s	Return from Subroutine	2	0000	0000	0001	001s	None	
SLEEP	—	Go into Standby mode	1	0000	0000	0000	0011	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and, where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are 2-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP`, unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16-bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the Table Write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 20-2: PIC18FXXX INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word				Status Affected	Notes
				MSb			LSb		
LITERAL OPERATIONS									
ADDLW	k	Add literal and WREG	1	0000	1111	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
ANDLW	k	AND literal with WREG	1	0000	1011	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
IORLW	k	Inclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000	1001	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
LFSR	f, k	Move literal (12-bit) 2nd word to FSRx 1st word	2	1110 1111	1110 0000	00ff kkkk	kkkk kkkk	None	
MOVLB	k	Move literal to BSR<3:0>	1	0000	0001	0000	kkkk	None	
MOVLW	k	Move literal to WREG	1	0000	1110	kkkk	kkkk	None	
MULLW	k	Multiply literal with WREG	1	0000	1101	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
SUBLW	k	Subtract WREG from literal	1	0000	1000	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
XORLW	k	Exclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000	1010	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
DATA MEMORY ↔ PROGRAM MEMORY OPERATIONS									
TBLRD*		Table Read	2	0000	0000	0000	1000	None	
TBLRD*+		Table Read with post-increment		0000	0000	0000	1001	None	
TBLRD*-		Table Read with post-decrement		0000	0000	0000	1010	None	
TBLRD+*		Table Read with pre-increment		0000	0000	0000	1011	None	
TBLWT*		Table Write	2 (5)	0000	0000	0000	1100	None	
TBLWT*+		Table Write with post-increment		0000	0000	0000	1101	None	
TBLWT*-		Table Write with post-decrement		0000	0000	0000	1110	None	
TBLWT+*		Table Write with pre-increment		0000	0000	0000	1111	None	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and, where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a NOP.

4: Some instructions are 2-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a NOP, unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16-bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the Table Write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

20.1 Instruction Set

ADDLW **ADD literal to W**

Syntax: [*label*] ADDLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: (W) + k → W

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0000	1111	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The contents of W are added to the 8-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ADDLW 0x15`

Before Instruction
W = 0x10

After Instruction
W = 0x25

ADDWF **ADD W to f**

Syntax: [*label*] ADDWF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (W) + (f) → dest

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0010	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: Add W to register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the BSR is used.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
W = 0x17
REG = 0xC2

After Instruction
W = 0xD9
REG = 0xC2

ADDWFC **ADD W and Carry bit to f**

Syntax: [*label*] ADDWFC f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (W) + (f) + (C) → dest

Status Affected: N,OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0010	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: Add W, the Carry Flag and data memory location 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed in data memory location 'f'. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the BSR will not be overridden.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWFC REG, 0, 1`

Before Instruction
Carry bit = 1
REG = 0x02
W = 0x4D

After Instruction
Carry bit = 0
REG = 0x02
W = 0x50

ANDLW **AND literal with W**

Syntax: [*label*] ANDLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: (W) .AND. k → W

Status Affected: N,Z

Encoding:

0000	1011	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The contents of W are ANDed with the 8-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ANDLW 0x5F`

Before Instruction
W = 0xA3

After Instruction
W = 0x03

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

ANDWF **AND W with f**

Syntax: [*label*] ANDWF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (W) .AND. (f) → dest

Status Affected: N,Z

Encoding:

0001	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of W are AND'ed with register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the BSR will not be overridden (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ANDWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
W = 0x17
REG = 0xC2

After Instruction
W = 0x02
REG = 0xC2

BC **Branch if Carry**

Syntax: [*label*] BC n

Operands: $-128 \le n \le 127$

Operation: if carry bit is '1'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0010	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Carry bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    BC   5
```
Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Carry = 1;
PC = address (HERE+12)
If Carry = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BCF **Bit Clear f**

Syntax: [*label*] BCF f,b[,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b \le 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $0 \rightarrow f<b>$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1001	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BCF FLAG_REG, 7, 0`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0xC7
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x47

BN **Branch if Negative**

Syntax: [*label*] BN n

Operands: $-128 \le n \le 127$

Operation: if negative bit is '1'
$(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0110	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Negative bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    BN   Jump
```
Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BNC **Branch if Not Carry**

Syntax: [*label*] BNC n

Operands: -128 ≤ n ≤ 127

Operation: if carry bit is '0'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0011	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Carry bit is '0', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNC Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Carry = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Carry = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BNN **Branch if Not Negative**

Syntax: [*label*] BNN n

Operands: -128 ≤ n ≤ 127

Operation: if negative bit is '0'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0111	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Negative bit is '0', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNN Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BNOV **Branch if Not Overflow**

Syntax: [*label*] BNOV n

Operands: -128 ≤ n ≤ 127

Operation: if overflow bit is '0'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0101	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Overflow bit is '0', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNOV Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BNZ **Branch if Not Zero**

Syntax: [*label*] BNZ n

Operands: -128 ≤ n ≤ 127

Operation: if zero bit is '0'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0001	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Zero bit is '0', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNZ Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Zero = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BRA **Unconditional Branch**

Syntax: [*label*] BRA n

Operands: -1024 ≤ n ≤ 1023

Operation: (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1101	0nnn	nnnn	nnnn

Description: Add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE BRA Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
PC = address (Jump)

BSF **Bit Set f**

Syntax: [*label*] BSF f,b[,a]

Operands: 0 ≤ f ≤ 255
0 ≤ b ≤ 7
a ∈ [0,1]

Operation: 1 → f<b>

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1000	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set. If 'a' is 0 Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BSF FLAG_REG, 7, 1`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x0A
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x8A

BTFSC **Bit Test File, Skip if Clear**

Syntax: [*label*] BTFSC f,b[,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b \le 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: skip if (f<b>) = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1011	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: If bit 'b' in register 'f' is 0, then the next instruction is skipped.
If bit 'b' is 0, then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    BTFSC   FLAG, 1, 0
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```
Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (TRUE)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (FALSE)

BTFSS **Bit Test File, Skip if Set**

Syntax: [*label*] BTFSS f,b[,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b \le 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: skip if (f<b>) = 1

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1010	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: If bit 'b' in register 'f' is 1, then the next instruction is skipped.
If bit 'b' is 1, then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution, is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    BTFSS   FLAG, 1, 0
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```
Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (FALSE)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (TRUE)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BTG **Bit Toggle f**

Syntax: [*label*] BTG f,b[,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b \le 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $(\overline{f<b>}) \rightarrow f<b>$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0111	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: Bit 'b' in data memory location 'f' is inverted. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example:
```
BTG     PORTC,  4,  0
```
Before Instruction:
PORTC = 0111 0101 [0x75]
After Instruction:
PORTC = 0110 0101 [0x65]

BOV **Branch if Overflow**

Syntax: [*label*] BOV n

Operands: $-128 \le n \le 127$

Operation: if overflow bit is '1'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0100	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Overflow bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    BOV   Jump
```
Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BZ **Branch if Zero**

Syntax: [*label*] BZ n

Operands: -128 ≤ n ≤ 127

Operation: if Zero bit is '1'
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0000	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Zero bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BZ Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Zero = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

CALL **Subroutine Call**

Syntax: [*label*] CALL k [,s]

Operands: 0 ≤ k ≤ 1048575
s ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (PC) + 4 → TOS,
k → PC<20:1>,
if s = 1
(W) → WS,
(STATUS) → STATUSS,
(BSR) → BSRS

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1st word (k<7:0>)	1110	110s	$k_7$kkk	kkkk$_0$
2nd word(k<19:8>)	1111	k_{19}kkk	kkkk	kkkk$_8$

Description: Subroutine call of entire 2 Mbyte memory range. First, return address (PC+ 4) is pushed onto the return stack. If 's' = 1, the W, STATUS and BSR registers are also pushed into their respective shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS. If 's' = 0, no update occurs (default). Then, the 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>,	Push PC to stack	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE CALL THERE,1`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
PC = address (THERE)
TOS = address (HERE + 4)
WS = W
BSRS = BSR
STATUSS= STATUS

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

CLRF **Clear f**

Syntax: [*label*] CLRF f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: 000h → f
1 → Z

Status Affected: Z

Encoding:

0110	101a	ffff	ffff

Description: Clears the contents of the specified register. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `CLRF FLAG_REG,1`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x5A
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x00

CLRWDT **Clear Watchdog Timer**

Syntax: [*label*] CLRWDT

Operands: None

Operation: 000h → WDT,
000h → WDT postscaler,
1 → $\overline{TO}$,
1 → $\overline{PD}$

Status Affected: $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0100

Description: CLRWDT instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the postscaler of the WDT. Status bits $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ are set.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	No operation

Example: `CLRWDT`

Before Instruction
WDT Counter = ?
After Instruction
WDT Counter = 0x00
WDT Postscaler = 0
$\overline{TO}$ = 1
$\overline{PD}$ = 1

COMF **Complement f**

Syntax: [*label*] COMF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $(\overline{f}) \rightarrow$ dest

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0001	11da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `COMF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 0x13
After Instruction
REG = 0x13
W = 0xEC

CPFSEQ **Compare f with W, skip if f = W**

Syntax: [*label*] CPFSEQ f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – (W),
skip if (f) = (W)
(unsigned comparison)

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	001a	ffff	ffff

Description: Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction.
If 'f' = W, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    CPFSEQ REG, 0
NEQUAL  :
EQUAL   :
```

Before Instruction
PC Address = HERE
W = ?
REG = ?
After Instruction
If REG = W;
PC = Address (EQUAL)
If REG ≠ W;
PC = Address (NEQUAL)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

CPFSGT **Compare f with W, skip if f > W**

Syntax: [*label*] CPFSGT f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – (W),
skip if (f) > (W)
(unsigned comparison)

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	010a	ffff	ffff

Description: Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of the W by performing an unsigned subtraction.
If the contents of 'f' are greater than the contents of WREG, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE      CPFSGT REG, 0
NGREATER  :
GREATER   :
```
Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
W = ?
After Instruction
If REG > W;
PC = Address (GREATER)
If REG ≤ W;
PC = Address (NGREATER)

CPFSLT **Compare f with W, skip if f < W**

Syntax: [*label*] CPFSLT f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – (W),
skip if (f) < (W)
(unsigned comparison)

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	000a	ffff	ffff

Description: Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction.
If the contents of 'f' are less than the contents of W, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the BSR will not be overridden (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    CPFSLT REG, 1
NLESS   :
LESS    :
```
Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
W = ?
After Instruction
If REG < W;
PC = Address (LESS)
If REG ≥ W;
PC = Address (NLESS)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

DAW **Decimal Adjust W Register**

Syntax: [*label*] DAW

Operands: None

Operation: If [W<3:0> >9] or [DC = 1] then
(W<3:0>) + 6 → W<3:0>;
else
(W<3:0>) → W<3:0>;

If [W<7:4> >9] or [C = 1] then
(W<7:4>) + 6 → W<7:4>;
else
(W<7:4>) → W<7:4>;

Status Affected: C

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0111

Description: DAW adjusts the eight-bit value in W, resulting from the earlier addition of two variables (each in packed BCD format) and produces a correct packed BCD result.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register W	Process Data	Write W

Example1: DAW

Before Instruction
W = 0xA5
C = 0
DC = 0

After Instruction
W = 0x05
C = 1
DC = 0

Example 2:

Before Instruction
W = 0xCE
C = 0
DC = 0

After Instruction
W = 0x34
C = 1
DC = 0

DECF **Decrement f**

Syntax: [*label*] DECF f [,d [,a]

Operands: 0 ≤ f ≤ 255
d ∈ [0,1]
a ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest

Status Affected: C, DC, N, OV, Z

Encoding:

0000	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: Decrement register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: DECF CNT, 1, 0

Before Instruction
CNT = 0x01
Z = 0

After Instruction
CNT = 0x00
Z = 1

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

DECFSZ **Decrement f, skip if 0**

Syntax: [*label*] DECFSZ f [,d [,a]]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest,
skip if result = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0010	11da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    DECFSZ  CNT, 1, 1
        GOTO    LOOP
CONTINUE
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
After Instruction
CNT = CNT - 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (CONTINUE)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (HERE+2)

DCFSNZ **Decrement f, skip if not 0**

Syntax: [*label*] DCFSNZ f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest,
skip if result ≠ 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0100	11da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is not 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    DCFSNZ  TEMP, 1, 0
ZERO    :
NZERO   :
```

Before Instruction
TEMP = ?
After Instruction
TEMP = TEMP - 1,
If TEMP = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)
If TEMP ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)

GOTO **Unconditional Branch**

Syntax: [*label*] GOTO k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 1048575$

Operation: k → PC<20:1>

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1st word (k<7:0>)	1110	1111	k_7kkk	$kkkk_0$
2nd word(k<19:8>)	1111	$k_{19}kkk$	kkkk	$kkkk_8$

Description: GOTO allows an unconditional branch anywhere within entire 2 Mbyte memory range. The 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. GOTO is always a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>,	No operation	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: GOTO THERE

After Instruction
PC = Address (THERE)

INCF **Increment f**

Syntax: [*label*] INCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) + 1 → dest

Status Affected: C, DC, N, OV, Z

Encoding:

0010	10da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: INCF CNT, 1, 0

Before Instruction
CNT = 0xFF
Z = 0
C = ?
DC = ?

After Instruction
CNT = 0x00
Z = 1
C = 1
DC = 1

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

INCFSZ **Increment f, skip if 0**

Syntax: [*label*] INCFSZ f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) + 1 → dest,
skip if result = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0011	11da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f'. (default) If the result is 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    INCFSZ   CNT, 1, 0
NZERO   :
ZERO    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
After Instruction
CNT = CNT + 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)

INFSNZ **Increment f, skip if not 0**

Syntax: [*label*] INFSNZ f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) + 1 → dest,
skip if result ≠ 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0100	10da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is not 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    INFSNZ  REG, 1, 0
ZERO
NZERO
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
After Instruction
REG = REG + 1
If REG ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)
If REG = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)

IORLW **Inclusive OR literal with W**

Syntax: [*label*] IORLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: (W) .OR. k → W

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0000	1001	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The contents of W are OR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `IORLW 0x35`

Before Instruction
W = 0x9A
After Instruction
W = 0xBF

IORWF **Inclusive OR W with f**

Syntax: [*label*] IORWF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (W) .OR. (f) → dest

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0001	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: Inclusive OR W with register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `IORWF RESULT, 0, 1`

Before Instruction
RESULT = 0x13
W = 0x91
After Instruction
RESULT = 0x13
W = 0x93

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

LFSR **Load FSR**

Syntax: [*label*] LFSR f,k

Operands: $0 \le f \le 2$
$0 \le k \le 4095$

Operation: $k \rightarrow FSRf$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110 1111	1110 0000	00ff $k_7$kkk	k_{11}kkk kkkk

Description: The 12-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the file select register pointed to by 'f'.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k' MSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' MSB to FSRfH
Decode	Read literal 'k' LSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to FSRfL

Example: `LFSR 2, 0x3AB`

After Instruction
FSR2H = 0x03
FSR2L = 0xAB

MOVF **Move f**

Syntax: [*label*] MOVF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $f \rightarrow dest$

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0101	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are moved to a destination dependent upon the status of 'd'. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256 byte bank. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write W

Example: `MOVF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 0x22
W = 0xFF
After Instruction
REG = 0x22
W = 0x22

MOVFF **Move f to f**

Syntax: [*label*] MOVFF f_s,f_d

Operands: $0 \le f_s \le 4095$
$0 \le f_d \le 4095$

Operation: $(f_s) \rightarrow f_d$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1st word (source)	1100	ffff	ffff	$ffff_s$
2nd word (destin.)	1111	ffff	ffff	$ffff_d$

Description: The contents of source register 'f_s' are moved to destination register 'f_d'. Location of source 'f_s' can be anywhere in the 4096 byte data space (000h to FFFh), and location of destination 'f_d' can also be anywhere from 000h to FFFh.
Either source or destination can be W (a useful special situation).
MOVFF is particularly useful for transferring a data memory location to a peripheral register (such as the transmit buffer or an I/O port).

The MOVFF instruction cannot use the PCL, TOSU, TOSH or TOSL as the destination register.

Note: The MOVFF instruction should not be used to modify interrupt settings while any interrupt is enabled. See Section 8.0 for more information.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2 (3)

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f' (src)	Process Data	No operation
Decode	No operation No dummy read	No operation	Write register 'f' (dest)

Example: MOVFF REG1, REG2

Before Instruction
REG1 = 0x33
REG2 = 0x11
After Instruction
REG1 = 0x33,
REG2 = 0x33

MOVLB **Move literal to low nibble in BSR**

Syntax: [*label*] MOVLB k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: $k \rightarrow BSR$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0001	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The 8-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the Bank Select Register (BSR).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to BSR

Example: MOVLB 5

Before Instruction
BSR register = 0x02
After Instruction
BSR register = 0x05

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

MOVLW **Move literal to W**

Syntax: [*label*] MOVLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: $k \rightarrow W$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	1110	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `MOVLW 0x5A`

After Instruction

W = 0x5A

MOVWF **Move W to f**

Syntax: [*label*] MOVWF f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $(W) \rightarrow f$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	111a	ffff	ffff

Description: Move data from W to register 'f'. Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256 byte bank. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `MOVWF REG, 0`

Before Instruction

W = 0x4F
REG = 0xFF

After Instruction

W = 0x4F
REG = 0x4F

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

MULLW **Multiply Literal with W**

Syntax: [*label*] MULLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: (W) x k → PRODH:PRODL

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	1101	kkkk	kkkk

Description: An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of W and the 8-bit literal 'k'. The 16-bit result is placed in PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. W is unchanged. None of the status flags are affected. Note that neither overflow nor carry is possible in this operation. A zero result is possible but not detected.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULLW 0xC4`

Before Instruction

W = 0xE2
PRODH = ?
PRODL = ?

After Instruction

W = 0xE2
PRODH = 0xAD
PRODL = 0x08

MULWF **Multiply W with f**

Syntax: [*label*] MULWF f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (W) x (f) → PRODH:PRODL

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	001a	ffff	ffff

Description: An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of W and the register file location 'f'. The 16-bit result is stored in the PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. Both W and 'f' are unchanged. None of the status flags are affected. Note that neither overflow nor carry is possible in this operation. A zero result is possible but not detected. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULWF REG, 1`

Before Instruction

W = 0xC4
REG = 0xB5
PRODH = ?
PRODL = ?

After Instruction

W = 0xC4
REG = 0xB5
PRODH = 0x8A
PRODL = 0x94

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

NEGF **Negate f**

Syntax: [*label*] NEGF f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $(\bar{f}) + 1 \rightarrow f$

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0110	110a	ffff	ffff

Description: Location 'f' is negated using two's complement. The result is placed in the data memory location 'f'. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `NEGF REG, 1`

Before Instruction
REG = 0011 1010 [0x3A]
After Instruction
REG = 1100 0110 [0xC6]

NOP **No Operation**

Syntax: [*label*] NOP

Operands: None

Operation: No operation

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000 1111	0000 xxxx	0000 xxxx	0000 xxxx

Description: No operation.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

None.

POP **Pop Top of Return Stack**

Syntax: [*label*] POP

Operands: None

Operation: (TOS) → bit bucket

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0110

Description: The TOS value is pulled off the return stack and is discarded. The TOS value then becomes the previous value that was pushed onto the return stack.
This instruction is provided to enable the user to properly manage the return stack to incorporate a software stack.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	POP TOS value	No operation

Example:
```
POP
GOTO    NEW
```
Before Instruction
TOS = 0031A2h
Stack (1 level down) = 014332h

After Instruction
TOS = 014332h
PC = NEW

PUSH **Push Top of Return Stack**

Syntax: [*label*] PUSH

Operands: None

Operation: (PC+2) → TOS

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0101

Description: The PC+2 is pushed onto the top of the return stack. The previous TOS value is pushed down on the stack. This instruction allows to implement a software stack by modifying TOS, and then push it onto the return stack.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	PUSH PC+2 onto return stack	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
PUSH
```
Before Instruction
TOS = 00345Ah
PC = 000124h

After Instruction
PC = 000126h
TOS = 000126h
Stack (1 level down) = 00345Ah

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RCALL **Relative Call**

Syntax: [*label*] RCALL n

Operands: -1024 ≤ n ≤ 1023

Operation: (PC) + 2 → TOS,
(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1101	1nnn	nnnn	nnnn

Description: Subroutine call with a jump up to 1K from the current location. First, return address (PC+2) is pushed onto the stack. Then, add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n' Push PC to stack	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE RCALL Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
PC = Address (Jump)
TOS = Address (HERE+2)

RESET **Reset**

Syntax: [*label*] RESET

Operands: None

Operation: Reset all registers and flags that are affected by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

Status Affected: All

Encoding:

0000	0000	1111	1111

Description: This instruction provides a way to execute a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset in software.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Start reset	No operation	No operation

Example: `RESET`

After Instruction
Registers = Reset Value
Flags* = Reset Value

RETFIE **Return from Interrupt**

Syntax: [*label*] RETFIE [s]

Operands: s ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (TOS) → PC,
1 → GIE/GIEH or PEIE/GIEL,
if s = 1
(WS) → W,
(STATUSS) → STATUS,
(BSRS) → BSR,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged.

Status Affected: GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL.

Encoding:

0000	0000	0001	000s

Description: Return from Interrupt. Stack is popped and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded into the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting either the high or low priority global interrupt enable bit. If 's' = 1, the contents of the shadow registers WS, STATUSS and BSRS are loaded into their corresponding registers, W, STATUS and BSR. If 's' = 0, no update of these registers occurs (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	pop PC from stack Set GIEH or GIEL
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETFIE 1`

After Interrupt
PC = TOS
W = WS
BSR = BSRS
STATUS = STATUSS
GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL = 1

RETLW **Return Literal to W**

Syntax: [*label*] RETLW k

Operands: 0 ≤ k ≤ 255

Operation: k → W,
(TOS) → PC,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk

Description: W is loaded with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). The high address latch (PCLATH) remains unchanged.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	pop PC from stack, Write to W
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
    CALL TABLE  ; W contains table
                ; offset value
                ; W now has
                ; table value
    :
TABLE
    ADDWF PCL   ; W = offset
    RETLW k0    ; Begin table
    RETLW k1    ;
    :
    :
    RETLW kn    ; End of table
```

Before Instruction
W = 0x07
After Instruction
W = value of kn

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RETURN **Return from Subroutine**

Syntax: [*label*] RETURN [s]

Operands: s ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (TOS) → PC,
if s = 1
(WS) → W,
(STATUSS) → STATUS,
(BSRS) → BSR,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0001	001s

Description: Return from subroutine. The stack is popped and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. If 's'= 1, the contents of the shadow registers WS, STATUSS and BSRS are loaded into their corresponding registers, W, STATUS and BSR. If 's' = 0, no update of these registers occurs (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	pop PC from stack
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETURN`

After Interrupt
PC = TOS

RLCF **Rotate Left f through Carry**

Syntax: [*label*] RLCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: 0 ≤ f ≤ 255
d ∈ [0,1]
a ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n+1>,
(f<7>) → C,
(C) → dest<0>

Status Affected: C, N, Z

Encoding:

0011	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry Flag. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RLCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 1110 0110
C = 0
After Instruction
REG = 1110 0110
W = 1100 1100
C = 1

RLNCF **Rotate Left f (no carry)**

Syntax: [*label*] RLNCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n+1>,
(f<7>) → dest<0>

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0100	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: RLNCF REG, 1, 0

Before Instruction
REG = 1010 1011
After Instruction
REG = 0101 0111

RRCF **Rotate Right f through Carry**

Syntax: [*label*] RRCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n-1>,
(f<0>) → C,
(C) → dest<7>

Status Affected: C, N, Z

Encoding:

0011	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry Flag. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: RRCF REG, 0, 0

Before Instruction
REG = 1110 0110
C = 0
After Instruction
REG = 1110 0110
W = 0111 0011
C = 0

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RRNCF **Rotate Right f (no carry)**

Syntax: [*label*] RRNCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

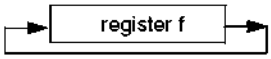
Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n-1>,
(f<0>) → dest<7>

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0100	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).



Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1:
```
RRNCF   REG, 1, 0
```
Before Instruction
```
REG  =  1101 0111
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  1110 1011
```

Example 2:
```
RRNCF   REG, 0, 0
```
Before Instruction
```
W    =  ?
REG  =  1101 0111
```
After Instruction
```
W    =  1110 1011
REG  =  1101 0111
```

SETF **Set f**

Syntax: [*label*] SETF f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: FFh → f

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	100a	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of the specified register are set to FFh. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example:
```
SETF    REG,1
```
Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x5A
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0xFF
```

SLEEP **Enter SLEEP mode**

Syntax: [*label*] SLEEP

Operands: None

Operation: 00h → WDT,
0 → WDT postscaler,
1 → $\overline{TO}$,
0 → $\overline{PD}$

Status Affected: $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0011

Description: The power-down status bit ($\overline{PD}$) is cleared. The time-out status bit ($\overline{TO}$) is set. Watchdog Timer and its postscaler are cleared.
The processor is put into SLEEP mode with the oscillator stopped.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	Go to sleep

Example: SLEEP

Before Instruction
$\overline{TO}$ = ?
$\overline{PD}$ = ?
After Instruction
$\overline{TO}$ = 1 †
$\overline{PD}$ = 0

† If WDT causes wake-up, this bit is cleared.

SUBFWB **Subtract f from W with borrow**

Syntax: [*label*] SUBFWB f [,d [,a]

Operands: 0 ≤ f ≤ 255
d ∈ [0,1]
a ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (W) – (f) – ($\overline{C}$) → dest

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0101	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: Subtract register 'f' and carry flag (borrow) from W (2's complement method). If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: SUBFWB REG, 1, 0

Before Instruction
REG = 3
W = 2
C = 1
After Instruction
REG = FF
W = 2
C = 0
Z = 0
N = 1 ; result is negative

Example 2: SUBFWB REG, 0, 0

Before Instruction
REG = 2
W = 5
C = 1
After Instruction
REG = 2
W = 3
C = 1
Z = 0
N = 0 ; result is positive

Example 3: SUBFWB REG, 1, 0

Before Instruction
REG = 1
W = 2
C = 0
After Instruction
REG = 0
W = 2
C = 1
Z = 1 ; result is zero
N = 0

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

SUBLW **Subtract W from literal**

Syntax: [*label*] SUBLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: $k - (W) \rightarrow W$

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0000	1000	kkkk	kkkk

Description: W is subtracted from the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example 1: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
W = 1
C = ?

After Instruction
W = 1
C = 1 ; result is positive
Z = 0
N = 0

Example 2: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
W = 0
C = 1 ; result is zero
Z = 1
N = 0

Example 3: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
W = 3
C = ?

After Instruction
W = FF ; (2's complement)
C = 0 ; result is negative
Z = 0
N = 1

SUBWF **Subtract W from f**

Syntax: [*label*] SUBWF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – (W) → dest

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0101	11da	ffff	ffff

Description: Subtract W from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBWF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 3
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
REG = 1
W = 2
C = 1 ; result is positive
Z = 0
N = 0

Example 2: `SUBWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 2
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
REG = 2
W = 0
C = 1 ; result is zero
Z = 1
N = 0

Example 3: `SUBWF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 1
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
REG = FFh ;(2's complement)
W = 2
C = 0 ; result is negative
Z = 0
N = 1

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

SUBWFB **Subtract W from f with Borrow**

Syntax: [*label*] SUBWFB f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – (W) – ($\overline{C}$) → dest

Status Affected: N, OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0101	10da	ffff	ffff

Description: Subtract W and the carry flag (borrow) from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1:
```
SUBWFB  REG, 1, 0
```
Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x19    (0001 1001)
W    =  0x0D    (0000 1101)
C    =  1
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0x0C    (0000 1011)
W    =  0x0D    (0000 1101)
C    =  1
Z    =  0
N    =  0       ; result is positive
```

Example 2:
```
SUBWFB  REG, 0, 0
```
Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x1B    (0001 1011)
W    =  0x1A    (0001 1010)
C    =  0
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0x1B    (0001 1011)
W    =  0x00
C    =  1
Z    =  1       ; result is zero
N    =  0
```

Example 3:
```
SUBWFB  REG, 1, 0
```
Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x03    (0000 0011)
W    =  0x0E    (0000 1101)
C    =  1
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0xF5    (1111 0100)
                ; [2's comp]
W    =  0x0E    (0000 1101)
C    =  0
Z    =  0
N    =  1       ; result is negative
```

SWAPF **Swap f**

Syntax: [*label*] SWAPF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f<3:0>) → dest<7:4>,
(f<7:4>) → dest<3:0>

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0011	10da	ffff	ffff

Description: The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example:
```
SWAPF   REG, 1, 0
```
Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x53
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0x35
```


© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TBLRD **Table Read**

Syntax: [*label*] TBLRD (*; *+; *-; +*)

Operands: None

Operation: if TBLRD *,
(Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT;
TBLPTR - No Change;
if TBLRD *+,
(Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT;
(TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR;
if TBLRD *-,
(Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT;
(TBLPTR) -1 → TBLPTR;
if TBLRD +*,
(TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR;
(Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT;

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	10nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*

Description: This instruction is used to read the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). To address the program memory, a pointer called Table Pointer (TBLPTR) is used. The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2 Mbyte address range.

TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

The TBLRD instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows:

- no change
- post-increment
- post-decrement
- pre-increment

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read Program Memory)	No operation	No operation (Write TABLAT)

TBLRD **Table Read (cont'd)**

Example1:

```
TBLRD  *+ ;
```

Before Instruction
TABLAT = 0x55
TBLPTR = 0x00A356
MEMORY(0x00A356) = 0x34

After Instruction
TABLAT = 0x34
TBLPTR = 0x00A357

Example2:

```
TBLRD  +* ;
```

Before Instruction
TABLAT = 0xAA
TBLPTR = 0x01A357
MEMORY(0x01A357) = 0x12
MEMORY(0x01A358) = 0x34

After Instruction
TABLAT = 0x34
TBLPTR = 0x01A358

TBLWT **Table Write**

Syntax: [*label*] TBLWT (*; *+; *-; +*)

Operands: None

Operation: if TBLWT*,
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;
TBLPTR - No Change;
if TBLWT*+,
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;
(TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR;
if TBLWT*-,
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;
(TBLPTR) -1 → TBLPTR;
if TBLWT+*,
(TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR;
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	11nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*

Description: This instruction uses the 3 LSbs of the TBLPTR to determine which of the 8 holding registers the TABLAT data is written to. The 8 holding registers are used to program the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). See Section 5.0 for information on writing to FLASH memory.
The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2 MByte address range. The LSb of the TBLPTR selects which byte of the program memory location to access.

TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

The `TBLWT` instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows:

- no change
- post-increment
- post-decrement
- pre-increment

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read TABLAT)	No operation	No operation (Write to Holding Register or Memory)

TBLWT **Table Write (Continued)**

Example1: `TBLWT *+;`

Before Instruction
TABLAT = 0x55
TBLPTR = 0x00A356
HOLDING REGISTER (0x00A356) = 0xFF

After Instructions (table write completion)
TABLAT = 0x55
TBLPTR = 0x00A357
HOLDING REGISTER (0x00A356) = 0x55

Example 2: `TBLWT +*;`

Before Instruction
TABLAT = 0x34
TBLPTR = 0x01389A
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389A) = 0xFF
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389B) = 0xFF

After Instruction (table write completion)
TABLAT = 0x34
TBLPTR = 0x01389B
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389A) = 0xFF
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389B) = 0x34

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TSTFSZ **Test f, skip if 0**

Syntax: [*label*] TSTFSZ f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: skip if f = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	011a	ffff	ffff

Description: If 'f' = 0, the next instruction, fetched during the current instruction execution, is discarded and a NOP is executed, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE    TSTFSZ  CNT, 1
NZERO     :
ZERO    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
After Instruction
If CNT = 0x00,
PC = Address (ZERO)
If CNT ≠ 0x00,
PC = Address (NZERO)

XORLW **Exclusive OR literal with W**

Syntax: [*label*] XORLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: (W) .XOR. k → W

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0000	1010	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The contents of W are XORed with the 8-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example:
```
XORLW 0xAF
```

Before Instruction
W = 0xB5
After Instruction
W = 0x1A

XORWF	Exclusive OR W with f
Syntax:	[*label*] XORWF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .XOR. (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	0001 | 10da | ffff | ffff
Description:	Exclusive OR the contents of W with register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in the register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `XORWF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 0xAF
W = 0xB5

After Instruction
REG = 0x1A
W = 0xB5

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PICmicro® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/ MPLIB™ Object Librarian
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
  - ICEPIC™ In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
  - MPLAB ICD
- Device Programmers
  - PRO MATE® II Universal Device Programmer
  - PICSTART® Plus Entry-Level Development Programmer
- Low Cost Demonstration Boards
  - PICDEM™ 1 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 2 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 3 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board
  - KEELOQ® Demonstration Board

21.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® based application that contains:

- An interface to debugging tools
  - simulator
  - programmer (sold separately)
  - emulator (sold separately)
  - in-circuit debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor
- A project manager
- Customizable toolbar and key mapping
- A status bar
- On-line help

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or 'C')
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PICmicro emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - source files
  - absolute listing file
  - machine code

The ability to use MPLAB IDE with multiple debugging tools allows users to easily switch from the cost-effective simulator to a full-featured emulator with minimal retraining.

21.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM assembler is a full-featured universal macro assembler for all PICmicro MCU's.

The MPASM assembler has a command line interface and a Windows shell. It can be used as a stand-alone application on a Windows 3.x or greater system, or it can be used through MPLAB IDE. The MPASM assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK object linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, an absolute LST file that contains source lines and generated machine code, and a COD file for debugging.

The MPASM assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects.
- User-defined macros to streamline assembly code.
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files.
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process.

21.3 MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers

The MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI 'C' compilers for Microchip's PIC17CXXX and PIC18CXXX family of microcontrollers, respectively. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easier source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is compatible with the MPLAB IDE memory display.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK object linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM assembler and the MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C compilers. It can also link relocatable objects from pre-compiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB object librarian is a librarian for pre-compiled code to be used with the MPLINK object linker. When a routine from a library is called from another source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications. The MPLIB object librarian manages the creation and modification of library files.

The MPLINK object linker features include:

- Integration with MPASM assembler and MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C compilers.
- Allows all memory areas to be defined as sections to provide link-time flexibility.

The MPLIB object librarian features include:

- Easier linking because single libraries can be included instead of many smaller files.
- Helps keep code maintainable by grouping related modules together.
- Allows libraries to be created and modules to be added, listed, replaced, deleted or extracted.

21.5 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM software simulator allows code development in a PC-hosted environment by simulating the PICmicro series microcontrollers on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a file, or user-defined key press, to any of the pins. The execution can be performed in single step, execute until break, or trace mode.

The MPLAB SIM simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C17 and the MPLAB C18 C compilers and the MPASM assembler. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the laboratory environment, making it an excellent multi-project software development tool.

21.6 MPLAB ICE High Performance Universal In-Circuit Emulator with MPLAB IDE

The MPLAB ICE universal in-circuit emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PICmicro microcontrollers (MCUs). Software control of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator is provided by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE), which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full-featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The universal architecture of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator allows expansion to support new PICmicro microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system, with advanced features that are generally found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows environment were chosen to best make these features available to you, the end user.

21.7 ICEPIC In-Circuit Emulator

The ICEPIC low cost, in-circuit emulator is a solution for the Microchip Technology PIC16C5X, PIC16C6X, PIC16C7X and PIC16CXXX families of 8-bit One-Time-Programmable (OTP) microcontrollers. The modular system can support different subsets of PIC16C5X or PIC16CXXX products through the use of interchangeable personality modules, or daughter boards. The emulator is capable of emulating without target application circuitry being present.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.8 MPLAB ICD In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD, is a powerful, low cost, run-time development tool. This tool is based on the FLASH PICmicro MCUs and can be used to develop for this and other PICmicro microcontrollers. The MPLAB ICD utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the FLASH devices. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ protocol, offers cost-effective in-circuit FLASH debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by watching variables, single-stepping and setting break points. Running at full speed enables testing hardware in real-time.

21.9 PRO MATE II Universal Device Programmer

The PRO MATE II universal device programmer is a full-featured programmer, capable of operating in stand-alone mode, as well as PC-hosted mode. The PRO MATE II device programmer is CE compliant.

The PRO MATE II device programmer has programmable VDD and VPP supplies, which allow it to verify programmed memory at VDD min and VDD max for maximum reliability. It has an LCD display for instructions and error messages, keys to enter commands and a modular detachable socket assembly to support various package types. In stand-alone mode, the PRO MATE II device programmer can read, verify, or program PICmicro devices. It can also set code protection in this mode.

21.10 PICSTART Plus Entry Level Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus development programmer is an easy-to-use, low cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via a COM (RS-232) port. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient.

The PICSTART Plus development programmer supports all PICmicro devices with up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus development programmer is CE compliant.

21.11 PICDEM 1 Low Cost PICmicro Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 1 demonstration board is a simple board which demonstrates the capabilities of several of Microchip's microcontrollers. The microcontrollers supported are: PIC16C5X (PIC16C54 to PIC16C58A), PIC16C61, PIC16C62X, PIC16C71, PIC16C8X, PIC17C42, PIC17C43 and PIC17C44. All necessary hardware and software is included to run basic demo programs. The user can program the sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 1 demonstration board on a PRO MATE II device programmer, or a PICSTART Plus development programmer, and easily test firmware. The user can also connect the PICDEM 1 demonstration board to the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator and download the firmware to the emulator for testing. A prototype area is available for the user to build some additional hardware and connect it to the microcontroller socket(s). Some of the features include an RS-232 interface, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, push button switches and eight LEDs connected to PORTB.

21.12 PICDEM 2 Low Cost PIC16CXX Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 2 demonstration board is a simple demonstration board that supports the PIC16C62, PIC16C64, PIC16C65, PIC16C73 and PIC16C74 microcontrollers. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the basic demonstration programs. The user can program the sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board on a PRO MATE II device programmer, or a PICSTART Plus development programmer, and easily test firmware. The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator may also be used with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board to test firmware. A prototype area has been provided to the user for adding additional hardware and connecting it to the microcontroller socket(s). Some of the features include a RS-232 interface, push button switches, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, a serial EEPROM to demonstrate usage of the I^2C™ bus and separate headers for connection to an LCD module and a keypad.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.13 PICDEM 3 Low Cost PIC16CXXX Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 3 demonstration board is a simple demonstration board that supports the PIC16C923 and PIC16C924 in the PLCC package. It will also support future 44-pin PLCC microcontrollers with an LCD Module. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the basic demonstration programs. The user can program the sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 3 demonstration board on a PRO MATE II device programmer, or a PICSTART Plus development programmer with an adapter socket, and easily test firmware. The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator may also be used with the PICDEM 3 demonstration board to test firmware. A prototype area has been provided to the user for adding hardware and connecting it to the microcontroller socket(s). Some of the features include a RS-232 interface, push button switches, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, a thermistor and separate headers for connection to an external LCD module and a keypad. Also provided on the PICDEM 3 demonstration board is a LCD panel, with 4 commons and 12 segments, that is capable of displaying time, temperature and day of the week. The PICDEM 3 demonstration board provides an additional RS-232 interface and Windows software for showing the demultiplexed LCD signals on a PC. A simple serial interface allows the user to construct a hardware demultiplexer for the LCD signals.

21.14 PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 17 demonstration board is an evaluation board that demonstrates the capabilities of several Microchip microcontrollers, including PIC17C752, PIC17C756A, PIC17C762 and PIC17C766. All necessary hardware is included to run basic demo programs, which are supplied on a 3.5-inch disk. A programmed sample is included and the user may erase it and program it with the other sample programs using the PRO MATE II device programmer, or the PICSTART Plus development programmer, and easily debug and test the sample code. In addition, the PICDEM 17 demonstration board supports downloading of programs to and executing out of external FLASH memory on board. The PICDEM 17 demonstration board is also usable with the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator, or the PICMASTER emulator and all of the sample programs can be run and modified using either emulator. Additionally, a generous prototype area is available for user hardware.

21.15 KEELOQ Evaluation and Programming Tools

KEELOQ evaluation and programming tools support Microchip's HCS Secure Data Products. The HCS evaluation kit includes a LCD display to show changing codes, a decoder to decode transmissions and a programming interface to program test transmitters.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 21-1: DEVELOPMENT TOOLS FROM MICROCHIP

		PIC12CXXX	PIC14000	PIC16C5X	PIC16C6X	PIC16CXXX	PIC16F62X	PIC16C7X	PIC16C7XX	PIC16C8X/ PIC16F8X	PIC16F8XX	PIC16C9XX	PIC17C4X	PIC17C7XX	PIC18CXX2	PIC18FXXX	24CXX/ 25CXX/ 93CXX	HCSXXX	MCRFXXX	MCP2510
Software Tools	MPLAB® Integrated Development Environment	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
	MPLAB® C17 C Compiler												✓	✓						
	MPLAB® C18 C Compiler														✓	✓				
	MPASM™ Assembler/ MPLINK™ Object Linker	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Emulators	MPLAB® ICE In-Circuit Emulator	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
	ICEPIC™ In-Circuit Emulator	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓								
Debugger	MPLAB® ICD In-Circuit Debugger				✓*			✓*			✓					✓				
Programmers	PICSTART® Plus Entry Level Development Programmer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
	PRO MATE® II Universal Device Programmer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Demo Boards and Eval Kits	PICDEM™ 1 Demonstration Board			✓		✓		✓†		✓			✓							
	PICDEM™ 2 Demonstration Board				✓†			✓†							✓	✓				
	PICDEM™ 3 Demonstration Board											✓								
	PICDEM™ 14A Demonstration Board		✓																	
	PICDEM™ 17 Demonstration Board													✓						
	KEELOQ® Evaluation Kit																	✓		
	KEELOQ® Transponder Kit																	✓		
	microID™ Programmer's Kit																		✓	
	125 kHz microID™ Developer's Kit																		✓	
	125 kHz Anticollision microID™ Developer's Kit																		✓	
	13.56 MHz Anticollision microID™ Developer's Kit																		✓	
	MCP2510 CAN Developer's Kit																			✓

* Contact the Microchip Technology Inc. web site at www.microchip.com for information on how to use the MPLAB® ICD In-Circuit Debugger (DV164001) with PIC16C62, 63, 64, 65, 72, 73, 74, 76, 77.
** Contact Microchip Technology Inc. for availability date.
† Development tool is available on select devices.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Absolute Maximum Ratings (†)

Ambient temperature under bias ..... -55°C to +125°C

Storage temperature ..... -65°C to +150°C

Voltage on any pin with respect to VSS (except VDD, $\overline{MCLR}$, and RA4) ..... -0.3V to (VDD + 0.3V)

Voltage on VDD with respect to VSS ..... -0.3V to +7.5V

Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$ with respect to VSS **(Note 2)** ..... 0V to +13.25V

Voltage on RA4 with respect to Vss ..... 0V to +8.5V

Total power dissipation **(Note 1)** 1.0W

Maximum current out of VSS pin ..... 300 mA

Maximum current into VDD pin ..... 250 mA

Input clamp current, IIK (VI < 0 or VI > VDD) ..... ±20 mA

Output clamp current, IOK (VO < 0 or VO > VDD) ..... ±20 mA

Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin ..... 25 mA

Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin ..... 25 mA

Maximum current sunk by PORTA, PORTB, and PORTE **(Note 3)** (combined) ..... 200 mA

Maximum current sourced by PORTA, PORTB, and PORTE **(Note 3)** (combined) ..... 200 mA

Maximum current sunk by PORTC and PORTD **(Note 3)** (combined) ..... 200 mA

Maximum current sourced by PORTC and PORTD **(Note 3)** (combined) ..... 200 mA

Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows:
Pdis = VDD x {IDD - $\sum$ IOH} + $\sum$ {(VDD-VOH) x IOH} + $\sum$(VOl x IOL)

2: Voltage spikes below VSS at the $\overline{MCLR}$/VPP pin, inducing currents greater than 80 mA, may cause latchup. Thus, a series resistor of 50-100Ω should be used when applying a "low" level to the $\overline{MCLR}$/VPP pin, rather than pulling this pin directly to VSS.

3: PORTD and PORTE not available on the PIC18F2X2 devices.

† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

FIGURE 22-1: PIC18FXX2 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)

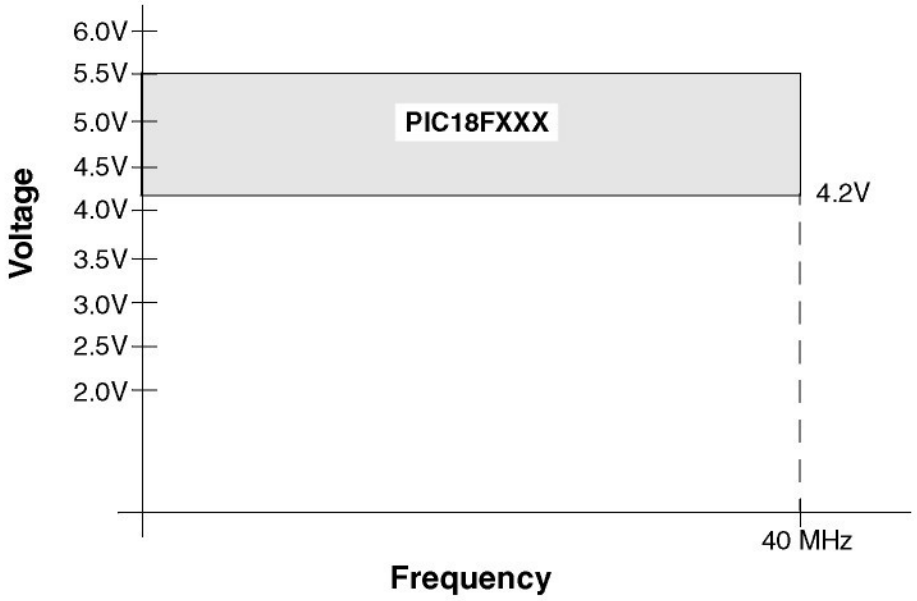
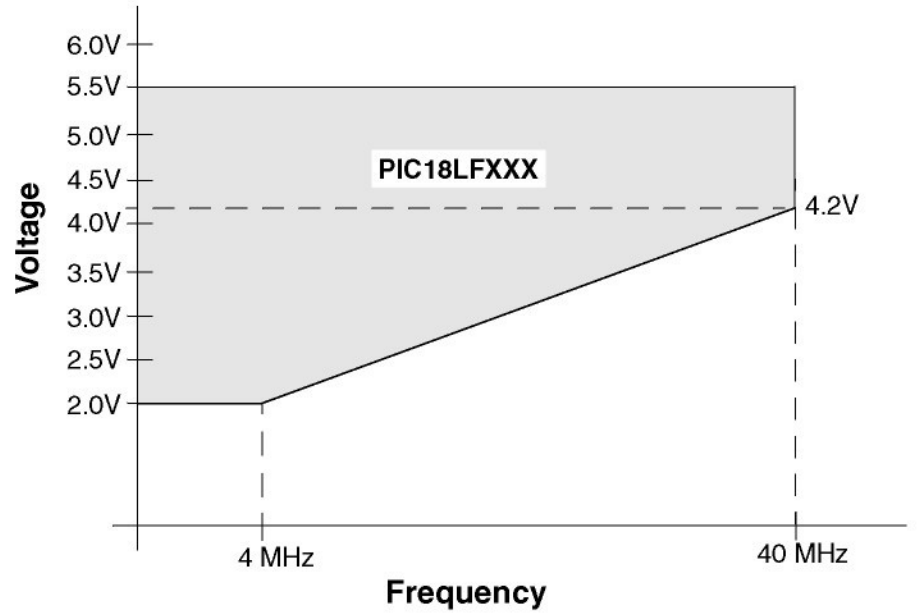


FIGURE 22-2: PIC18LFXX2 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)



F_{MAX} = (16.36 MHz/V) ($V_{DDAPPMIN}$ – 2.0V) + 4 MHz

Note: $V_{DDAPPMIN}$ is the minimum voltage of the PICmicro® device in the application.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.1 DC Characteristics: PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial)

PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VDD	**Supply Voltage**					
D001		PIC18LFXX2	2.0	—	5.5	V	HS, XT, RC and LP Osc mode
D001		PIC18FXX2	4.2	—	5.5	V	
D002	VDR	**RAM Data Retention Voltage(1)**	1.5	—	—	V	
D003	VPOR	**VDD Start Voltage** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	—	—	0.7	V	See Section 3.1 (Power-on Reset) for details
D004	SVDD	**VDD Rise Rate** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	0.05	—	—	V/ms	See Section 3.1 (Power-on Reset) for details
	VBOR	**Brown-out Reset Voltage**					
D005		PIC18LFXX2					
		BORV1:BORV0 = 11	1.98	—	2.14	V	85°C ≥ T ≥ 25°C
		BORV1:BORV0 = 10	2.67	—	2.89	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 01	4.16	—	4.5	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.45	—	4.83	V	
D005		PIC18FXX2					
		BORV1:BORV0 = 1x	N.A.	—	N.A.	V	Not in operating voltage range of device
		BORV1:BORV0 = 01	4.16	—	4.5	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.45	—	4.83	V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode, or during a device RESET, without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active Operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR,...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

5: The LVD and BOR modules share a large portion of circuitry. The ΔIBOR and ΔILVD currents are not additive. Once one of these modules is enabled, the other may also be enabled without further penalty.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.1 DC Characteristics: PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	IDD	**Supply Current(2,4)**					
D010		PIC18LFXX2					XT osc configuration
			—	.5	1	mA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	.5	1.25	mA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	1.2	2	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
							RC osc configuration
			—	.3	1	mA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	.3	1	mA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	1.5	3	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
							RCIO osc configuration
			—	.3	1	mA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	.3	1	mA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	.75	3	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
D010		PIC18FXX2					XT osc configuration
			—	1.2	1.5	mA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	1.2	2	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	1.2	3	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
							RC osc configuration
			—	1.5	3	mA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	1.5	4	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	1.6	4	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
							RCIO osc configuration
			—	.75	2	mA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	.75	3	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
			—	.8	3	mA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C, FOSC = 4 MHz
D010A		PIC18LFXX2					LP osc, FOSC = 32 kHz, WDT disabled
			—	14	30	µA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C
D010A		PIC18FXX2					LP osc, FOSC = 32 kHz, WDT disabled
			—	40	70	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	50	100	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode, or during a device RESET, without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active Operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR,...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

5: The LVD and BOR modules share a large portion of circuitry. The ΔIBOR and ΔILVD currents are not additive. Once one of these modules is enabled, the other may also be enabled without further penalty.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.1 DC Characteristics: PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	IDD	**Supply Current(2,4) (Continued)**					
D010C		PIC18LFXX2	—	10	25	mA	EC, ECIO osc configurations VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D010C		PIC18FXX2	—	10	25	mA	EC, ECIO osc configurations VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
D013		PIC18LFXX2	—	.6	2	mA	HS osc configuration FOSC = 4 MHz, VDD = 2.0V
			—	10	15	mA	FOSC = 25 MHz, VDD = 5.5V HS + PLL osc configurations
			—	15	25	mA	FOSC = 10 MHz, VDD = 5.5V
D013		PIC18FXX2	—	10	15	mA	HS osc configuration FOSC = 25 MHz, VDD = 5.5V HS + PLL osc configurations
			—	15	25	mA	FOSC = 10 MHz, VDD = 5.5V
D014		PIC18LFXX2	—	15	55	µA	Timer1 osc configuration FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 2.0V
D014		PIC18FXX2	—	—	200	µA	Timer1 osc configuration FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	—	250	µA	FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
	IPD	**Power-down Current(3)**					
D020		PIC18LFXX2	—	.08	.9	µA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C
			—	.1	4	µA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	3	10	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D020		PIC18FXX2	—	.1	.9	µA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C
			—	3	10	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D021B			—	15	25	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode, or during a device RESET, without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active Operation mode are:
$\overline{OSC1}$ = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR,...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

5: The LVD and BOR modules share a large portion of circuitry. The ΔIBOR and ΔILVD currents are not additive. Once one of these modules is enabled, the other may also be enabled without further penalty.

22.1 DC Characteristics: PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
		Module Differential Current					
D022	ΔIWDT	**Watchdog Timer**	—	.75	1.5	µA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C
		PIC18LFXX2	—	2	8	µA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	10	25	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D022		**Watchdog Timer**	—	7	15	µA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C
		PIC18FXX2	—	10	25	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	25	40	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
D022A	ΔIBOR	**Brown-out Reset(5)**	—	29	35	µA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C
		PIC18LFXX2	—	29	45	µA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	33	50	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D022A		**Brown-out Reset(5)**	—	36	40	µA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C
		PIC18FXX2	—	36	50	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	36	65	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
D022B	ΔILVD	**Low Voltage Detect(5)**	—	29	35	µA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C
		PIC18LFXX2	—	29	45	µA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	33	50	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D022B		**Low Voltage Detect(5)**	—	33	40	µA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C
		PIC18FXX2	—	33	50	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	33	65	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
D025	ΔITMR1	**Timer1 Oscillator**	—	5.2	30	µA	VDD = 2.0V, +25°C
		PIC18LFXX2	—	5.2	40	µA	VDD = 2.0V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	6.5	50	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
D025		**Timer1 Oscillator**	—	6.5	40	µA	VDD = 4.2V, +25°C
		PIC18FXX2	—	6.5	50	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	6.5	65	µA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode, or during a device RESET, without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active Operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR,...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

5: The LVD and BOR modules share a large portion of circuitry. The ΔIBOR and ΔILVD currents are not additive. Once one of these modules is enabled, the other may also be enabled without further penalty.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended			
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VIL	**Input Low Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D030		with TTL buffer	Vss	0.15 VDD	V	VDD < 4.5V
D030A			—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D031		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	Vss	0.2 VDD	V	
		RC3 and RC4	Vss	0.3 VDD	V	
D032		$\overline{MCLR}$	Vss	0.2 VDD	V	
D032A		OSC1 (in XT, HS and LP modes) and T1OSI	Vss	0.3 VDD	V	
D033		OSC1 (in RC and EC mode)(1)	Vss	0.2 VDD	V	
	VIH	**Input High Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D040		with TTL buffer	0.25 VDD + 0.8V	VDD	V	VDD < 4.5V
D040A			2.0	VDD	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D041		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	0.8 VDD	VDD	V	
		RC3 and RC4	0.7 VDD	VDD	V	
D042		$\overline{MCLR}$, OSC1 (EC mode)	0.8 VDD	VDD	V	
D042A		OSC1 (in XT, HS and LP modes) and T1OSI	0.7 VDD	VDD	V	
D043		OSC1 (RC mode)(1)	0.9 VDD	VDD	V	
	IIL	**Input Leakage Current(2,3)**				
D060		I/O ports	.02	±1	µA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, Pin at hi-impedance
D061		$\overline{MCLR}$	—	±1	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
D063		OSC1	—	±1	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
	IPU	**Weak Pull-up Current**				
D070	IPURB	PORTB weak pull-up current	50	450	µA	VDD = 5V, VPIN = VSS

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

4: Parameter is characterized but not tested.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: PIC18FXX2 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LFXX2 (Industrial) (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended			
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VOL	**Output Low Voltage**				
D080		I/O ports	—	0.6	V	IOL = 8.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D080A			—	0.6	V	IOL = 7.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D083		OSC2/CLKO (RC mode)	—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.6 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D083A			—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.2 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
	VOH	**Output High Voltage**(3)				
D090		I/O ports	VDD – 0.7	—	V	IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D090A			VDD – 0.7	—	V	IOH = -2.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D092		OSC2/CLKO (RC mode)	VDD – 0.7	—	V	IOH = -1.3 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D092A			VDD – 0.7	—	V	IOH = -1.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D150	VOD	**Open Drain High Voltage**	—	8.5	V	RA4 pin
		Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins				
D100(4)	COSC2	OSC2 pin	—	15	pF	In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1
D101	CIO	All I/O pins and OSC2 (in RC mode)	—	50	pF	To meet the AC Timing Specifications
D102	CB	SCL, SDA	—	400	pF	In I^2C mode

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

4: Parameter is characterized but not tested.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-3: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

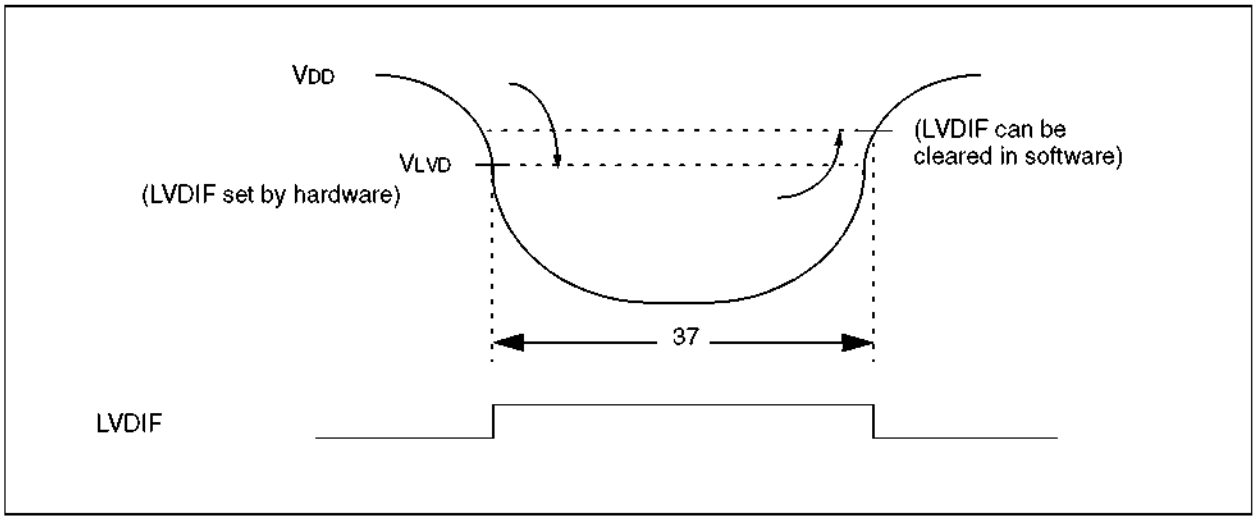


TABLE 22-1: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

				Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**		**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D420	VLVD	LVD Voltage on VDD transition high to low	LVV = 0001	1.98	2.06	2.14	V	T ≥ 25°C
			LVV = 0010	2.18	2.27	2.36	V	T ≥ 25°C
			LVV = 0011	2.37	2.47	2.57	V	T ≥ 25°C
			LVV = 0100	2.48	2.58	2.68	V	
			LVV = 0101	2.67	2.78	2.89	V	
			LVV = 0110	2.77	2.89	3.01	V	
			LVV = 0111	2.98	3.1	3.22	V	
			LVV = 1000	3.27	3.41	3.55	V	
			LVV = 1001	3.47	3.61	3.75	V	
			LVV = 1010	3.57	3.72	3.87	V	
			LVV = 1011	3.76	3.92	4.08	V	
			LVV = 1100	3.96	4.13	4.3	V	
			LVV = 1101	4.16	4.33	4.5	V	
			LVV = 1110	4.45	4.64	4.83	V	

TABLE 22-2: MEMORY PROGRAMMING REQUIREMENTS

DC Characteristics			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
		Internal Program Memory Programming Specifications					
D110	VPP	Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$/VPP pin	9.00	—	13.25	V	
D113	IDDP	Supply Current during Programming	—	—	10	mA	
		Data EEPROM Memory					
D120	ED	Cell Endurance	100K	1M	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D121	VDRW	VDD for Read/Write	VMIN	—	5.5	V	Using EECON to read/write VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D122	TDEW	Erase/Write Cycle Time	—	4	—	ms	
D123	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated
D124	TREF	Number of Total Erase/Write Cycles before Refresh(1)	1M	10M	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
		Program FLASH Memory					
D130	EP	Cell Endurance	10K	100K	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D131	VPR	VDD for Read	VMIN	—	5.5	V	VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D132	VIE	VDD for Block Erase	4.5	—	5.5	V	Using ICSP port
D132A	VIW	VDD for Externally Timed Erase or Write	4.5	—	5.5	V	Using ICSP port
D132B	VPEW	VDD for Self-timed Write	VMIN	—	5.5	V	VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D133	TIE	ICSP Block Erase Cycle Time	—	4	—	ms	VDD ≥ 4.5V
D133A	TIW	ICSP Erase or Write Cycle Time (externally timed)	1	—	—	ms	VDD ≥ 4.5V
D133A	TIW	Self-timed Write Cycle Time	—	2	—	ms	
D134	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Refer to Section 6.8 for a more detailed discussion on data EEPROM endurance.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.3 AC (Timing) Characteristics

22.3.1 TIMING PARAMETER SYMBOLOGY

The timing parameter symbols have been created following one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS
2. TppS
3. Tcc:st (I^2C specifications only)
4. Ts (I^2C specifications only)

T			
F	Frequency	T	Time

Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:

pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKO	rd	$\overline{RD}$
cs	$\overline{CS}$	rw	$\overline{RD}$ or $\overline{WR}$
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	$\overline{SS}$
dt	Data in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O port	t1	T1CKI
mc	$\overline{MCLR}$	wr	$\overline{WR}$

Uppercase letters and their meanings:

S			
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (Hi-impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	Hi-impedance
I^2C only			
AA	output access	High	High
BUF	Bus free	Low	Low

Tcc:st (I^2C specifications only)

CC			
HD	Hold	SU	Setup
ST			
DAT	DATA input hold	STO	STOP condition
STA	START condition		

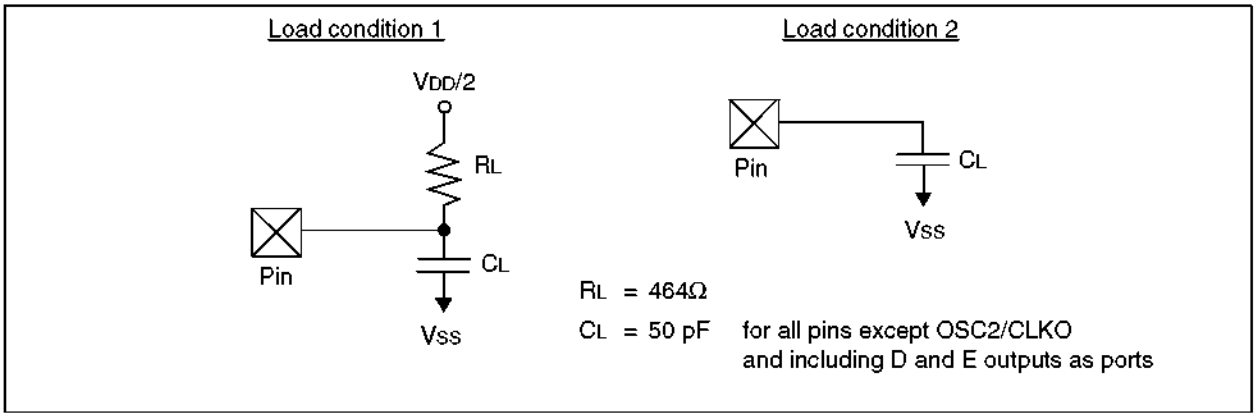
22.3.2 TIMING CONDITIONS

The temperature and voltages specified in Table 22-3 apply to all timing specifications unless otherwise noted. Figure 22-4 specifies the load conditions for the timing specifications.

TABLE 22-3: TEMPERATURE AND VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS - AC

AC CHARACTERISTICS	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended Operating voltage VDD range as described in DC spec Section 22.1 and Section 22.2. LC parts operate for industrial temperatures only.

FIGURE 22-4: LOAD CONDITIONS FOR DEVICE TIMING SPECIFICATIONS



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.3.3 TIMING DIAGRAMS AND SPECIFICATIONS

FIGURE 22-5: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING (ALL MODES EXCEPT PLL)

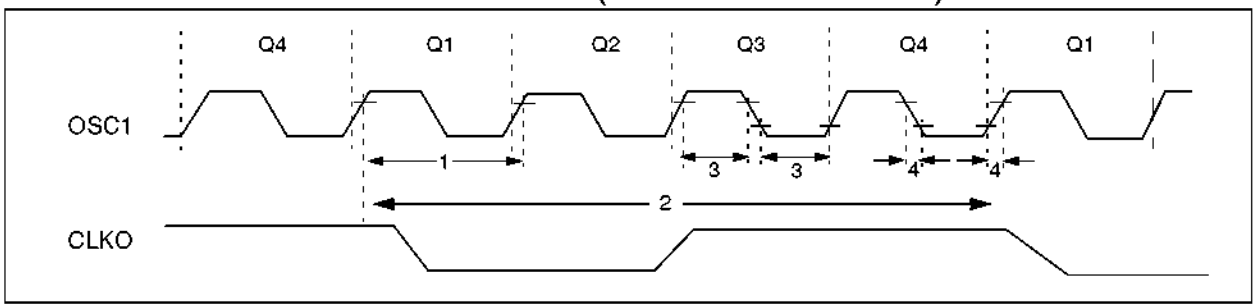


TABLE 22-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
1A	FOSC	External CLKI Frequency(1)	DC	40	MHz	EC, ECIO, -40°C to +85°C
		Oscillator Frequency(1)	DC	25	MHz	EC, ECIO, +85°C to +125°C
			DC	4	MHz	RC osc
			0.1	4	MHz	XT osc
			4	25	MHz	HS osc
			4	10	MHz	HS + PLL osc, -40°C to +85°C
			4	6.25	MHz	HS + PLL osc, +85°C to +125°C
			5	200	kHz	LP Osc mode
1	TOSC	External CLKI Period(1)	25	—	ns	EC, ECIO, -40°C to +85°C
		Oscillator Period(1)	40	—	ns	EC, ECIO, +85°C to +125°C
			250	—	ns	RC osc
			250	10,000	ns	XT osc
			40	250	ns	HS osc
			100	250	ns	HS + PLL osc, -40°C to +85°C
			160	250	ns	HS + PLL osc, +85°C to +125°C
			25	—	µs	LP osc
2	TCY	Instruction Cycle Time(1)	100	—	ns	TCY = 4/FOSC, -40°C to +85°C
			160	—	ns	TCY = 4/FOSC, +85°C to +125°C
3	TosL, TosH	External Clock in (OSC1) High or Low Time	30	—	ns	XT osc
			2.5	—	µs	LP osc
			10	—	ns	HS osc
4	TosR, TosF	External Clock in (OSC1) Rise or Fall Time	—	20	ns	XT osc
			—	50	ns	LP osc
			—	7.5	ns	HS osc

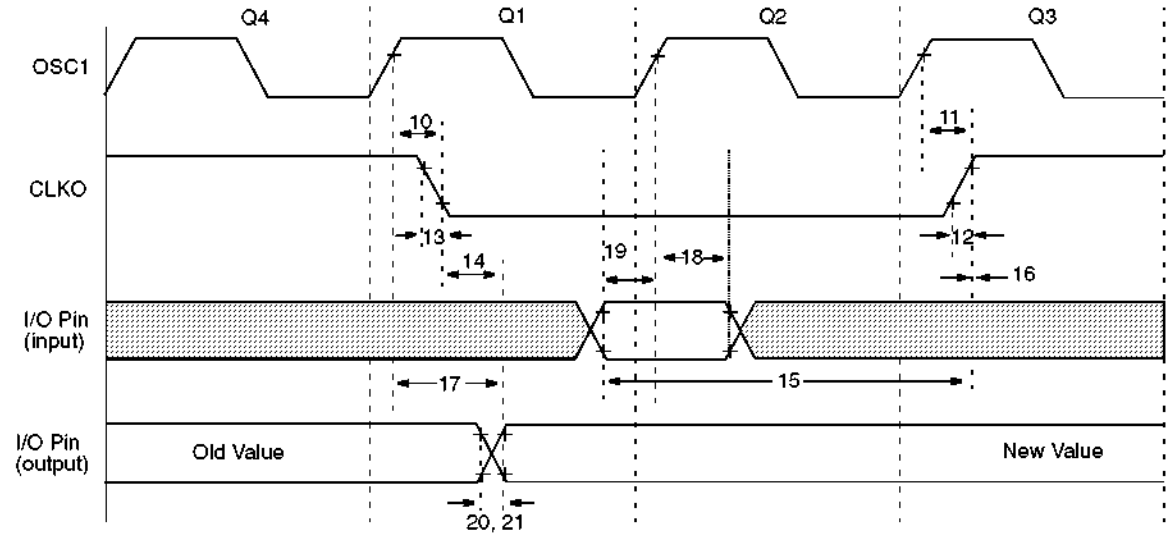
Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time-base period for all configurations except PLL. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "min." values with an external clock applied to the OSC1/CLKI pin. When an external clock input is used, the "max." cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.

TABLE 22-5: PLL CLOCK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS (V_{DD} = 4.2 TO 5.5V)

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
—	FOSC	Oscillator Frequency Range	4	—	10	MHz	HS mode only
—	FSYS	On-chip VCO System Frequency	16	—	40	MHz	HS mode only
—	t_{rc}	PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time)	—	—	2	ms	
—	ΔCLK	CLKO Stability (Jitter)	-2	—	+2	%	

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 22-6: CLKO AND I/O TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

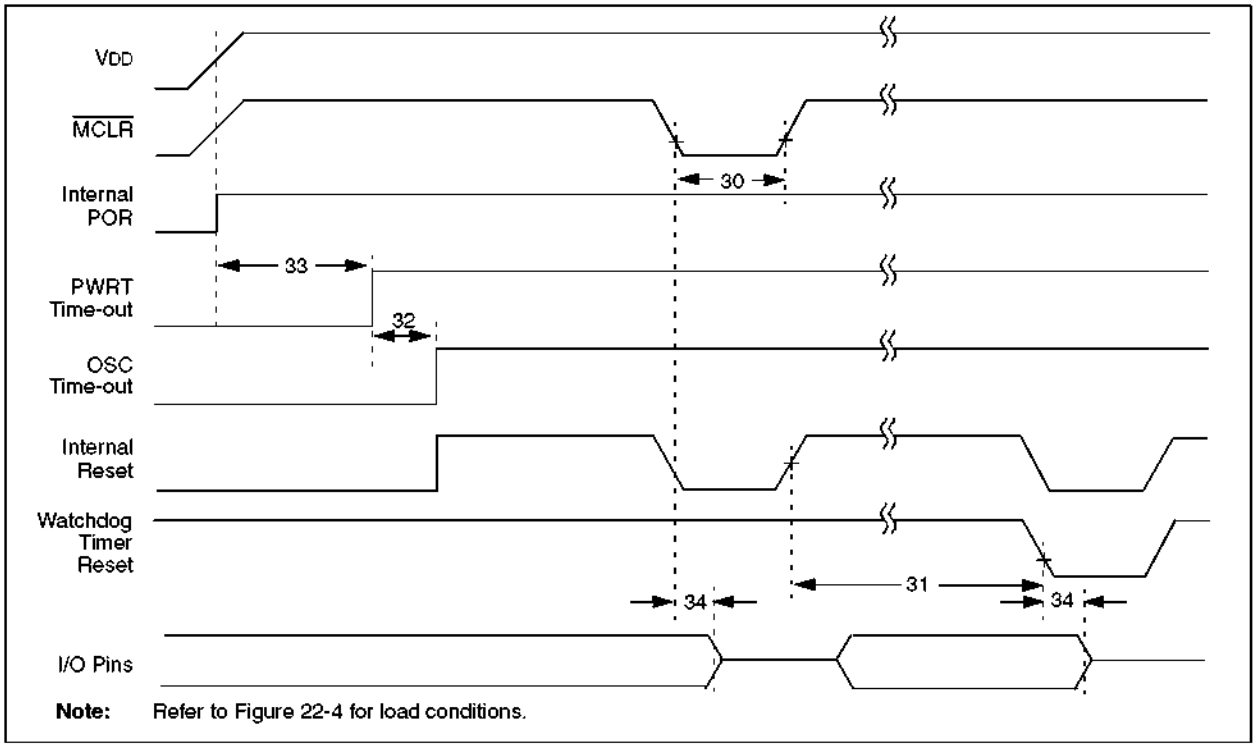
TABLE 22-6: CLKO AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
10	TosH2ckL	OSC1↑ to CLKO↓		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
11	TosH2ckH	OSC1↑ to CLKO↑		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
12	TckR	CLKO rise time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
13	TckF	CLKO fall time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
14	TckL2ioV	CLKO↓ to Port out valid		—	—	0.5 TCY + 20	ns	**(Note 1)**
15	TioV2ckH	Port in valid before CLKO ↑		0.25 TCY + 25	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
16	TckH2iol	Port in hold after CLKO ↑		0	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
17	TosH2ioV	OSC1↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port out valid		—	50	150	ns	
18	TosH2iol	OSC1↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port input invalid (I/O in hold time)	PIC18**F**XXX	100	—	—	ns	
18A			PIC18**LF**XXX	200	—	—	ns	
19	TioV2osH	Port input valid to OSC1↑ (I/O in setup time)		0	—	—	ns	
20	TioR	Port output rise time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	10	25	ns	
20A			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
21	TioF	Port output fall time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	10	25	ns	
21A			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
22††	TINP	INT pin high or low time		TCY	—	—	ns	
23††	TRBP	RB7:RB4 change INT high or low time		TCY	—	—	ns	
24††	TRCP	RC7:RC4 change INT high or low time		20			ns	

†† These parameters are asynchronous events not related to any internal clock edges.

Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode, where CLKO output is 4 x TOSC.

FIGURE 22-7: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

FIGURE 22-8: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING

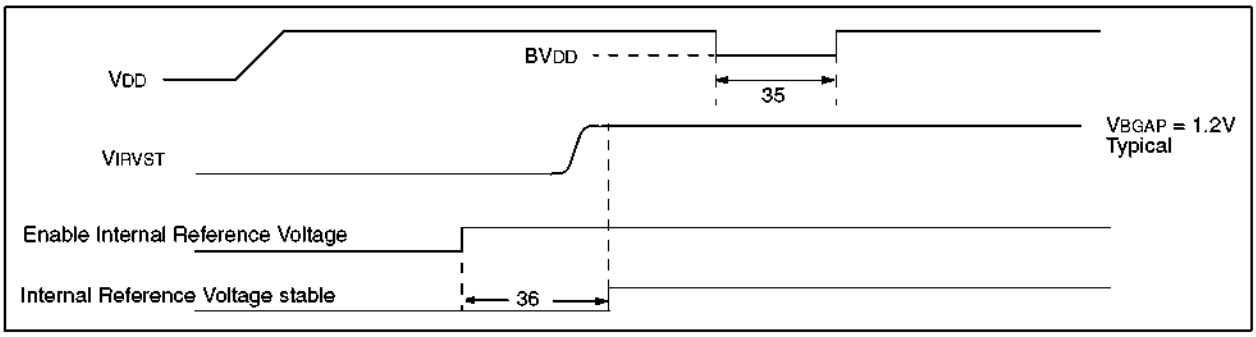
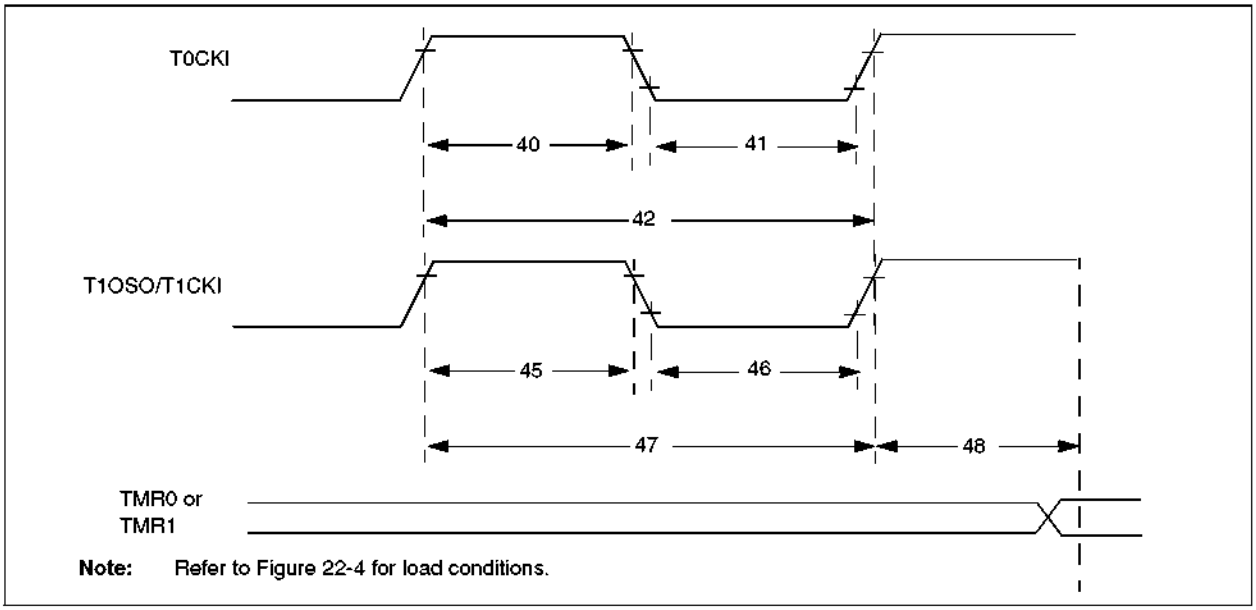


TABLE 22-7: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
30	TmcL	$\overline{MCLR}$ Pulse Width (low)	2	—	—	µs	
31	TWDT	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (No Postscaler)	7	18	33	ms	
32	TOST	Oscillation Start-up Timer Period	1024 TOSC	—	1024 TOSC	—	TOSC = OSC1 period
33	TPWRT	Power up Timer Period	28	72	132	ms	
34	Tioz	I/O Hi-impedance from $\overline{MCLR}$ Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	2	—	µs	
35	TBOR	Brown-out Reset Pulse Width	200	—	—	µs	VDD ≤ BVDD (see D005)
36	TIVRST	Time for Internal Reference Voltage to become stable	—	20	500	µs	
37	TLVD	Low Voltage Detect Pulse Width	200	—	—	µs	VDD ≤ VLVD (see D420)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-9: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS

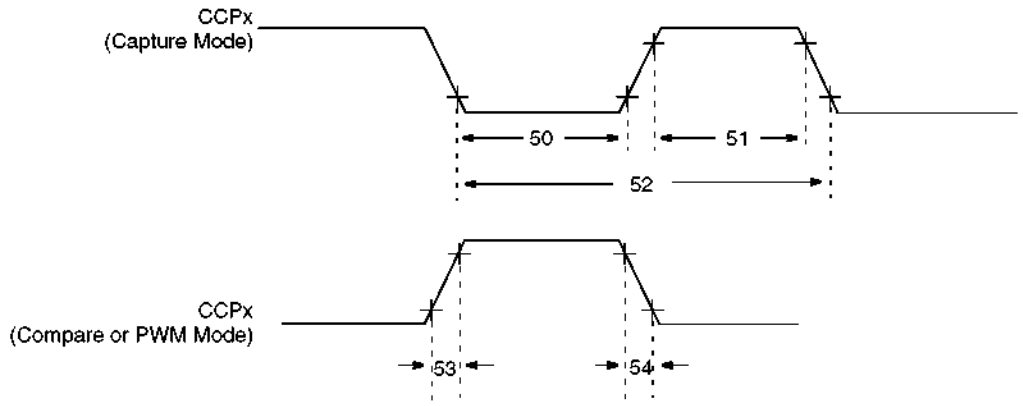


Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-8: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
40	Tt0H	T0CKI High Pulse Width		No Prescaler	0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	10	—	ns	
41	Tt0L	T0CKI Low Pulse Width		No Prescaler	0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	10	—	ns	
42	Tt0P	T0CKI Period		No Prescaler	TCY + 10	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	Greater of: 20 ns or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4,..., 256)
45	Tt1H	T1CKI High Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18FXXX	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	25	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC18FXXX	30	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	50	—	ns	
46	Tt1L	T1CKI Low Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5TCY + 5	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18FXXX	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	25	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC18FXXX	30	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	50	—	ns	
47	Tt1P	T1CKI input period	Synchronous		Greater of: 20 ns or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous		60	—	ns	
	Ft1	T1CKI oscillator input frequency range			DC	50	kHz	
48	Tcke2tmrl	Delay from external T1CKI clock edge to timer increment			2 TOSC	7 TOSC	—	

FIGURE 22-10: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS (CCP1 AND CCP2)



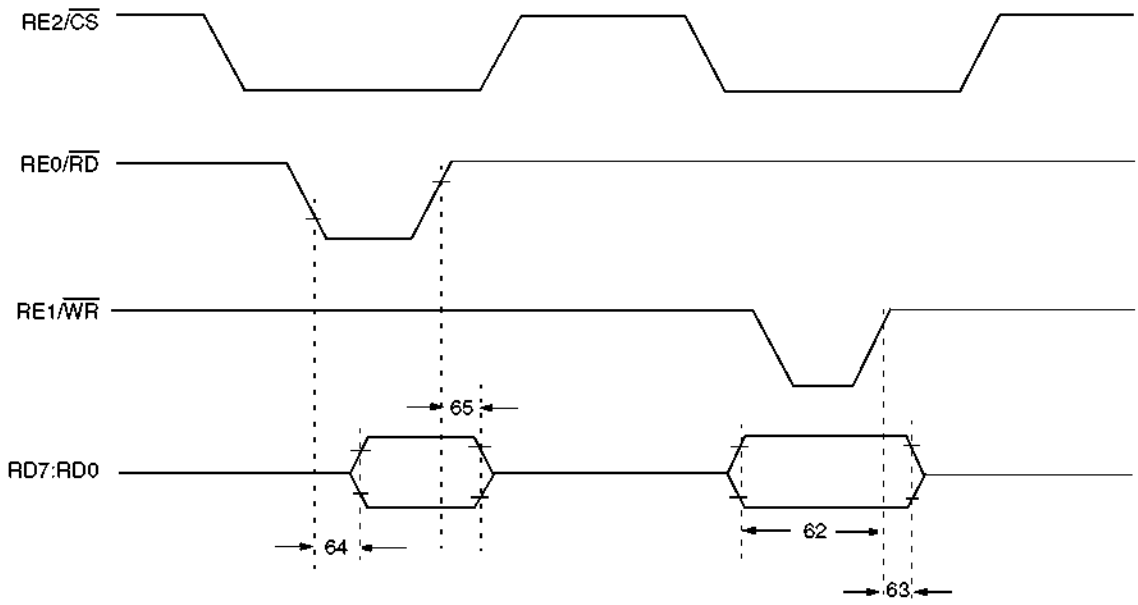
Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-9: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM REQUIREMENTS (CCP1 AND CCP2)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
50	TccL	CCPx input low time	No Prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	PIC18FXXX	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	20	—	ns	
51	TccH	CCPx input high time	No Prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	PIC18FXXX	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	20	—	ns	
52	TccP	CCPx input period			$\frac{3\ T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1,4 or 16)
53	TccR	CCPx output fall time		PIC18FXXX	—	25	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
54	TccF	CCPx output fall time		PIC18FXXX	—	25	ns	
				PIC18LFXXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-11: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT TIMING (PIC18F4X2)

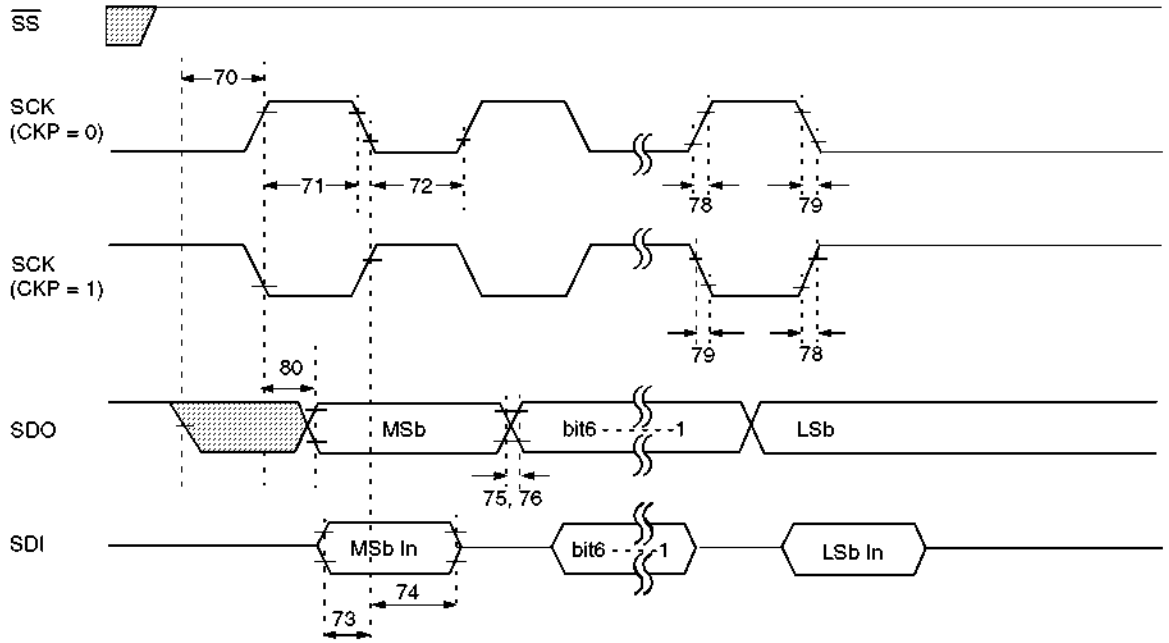


Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-10: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT REQUIREMENTS (PIC18F4X2)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
62	TdtV2wrH	Data in valid before $\overline{WR}\uparrow$ or $\overline{CS}\uparrow$ (setup time)		20 25	— —	ns ns	 Extended Temp. Range
63	TwrH2dtI	$\overline{WR}\uparrow$ or $\overline{CS}\uparrow$ to data–in invalid (hold time)	PIC18**F**XXX	20	—	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	35	—	ns	VDD = 2V
64	TrdL2dtV	$\overline{RD}\downarrow$ and $\overline{CS}\downarrow$ to data–out valid		— —	80 90	ns ns	 Extended Temp. Range
65	TrdH2dtI	$\overline{RD}\uparrow$ or $\overline{CS}\downarrow$ to data–out invalid		10	30	ns	
66	TibfINH	Inhibit of the IBF flag bit being cleared from $\overline{WR}\uparrow$ or $\overline{CS}\uparrow$		—	3 TCY		

FIGURE 22-12: EXAMPLE SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

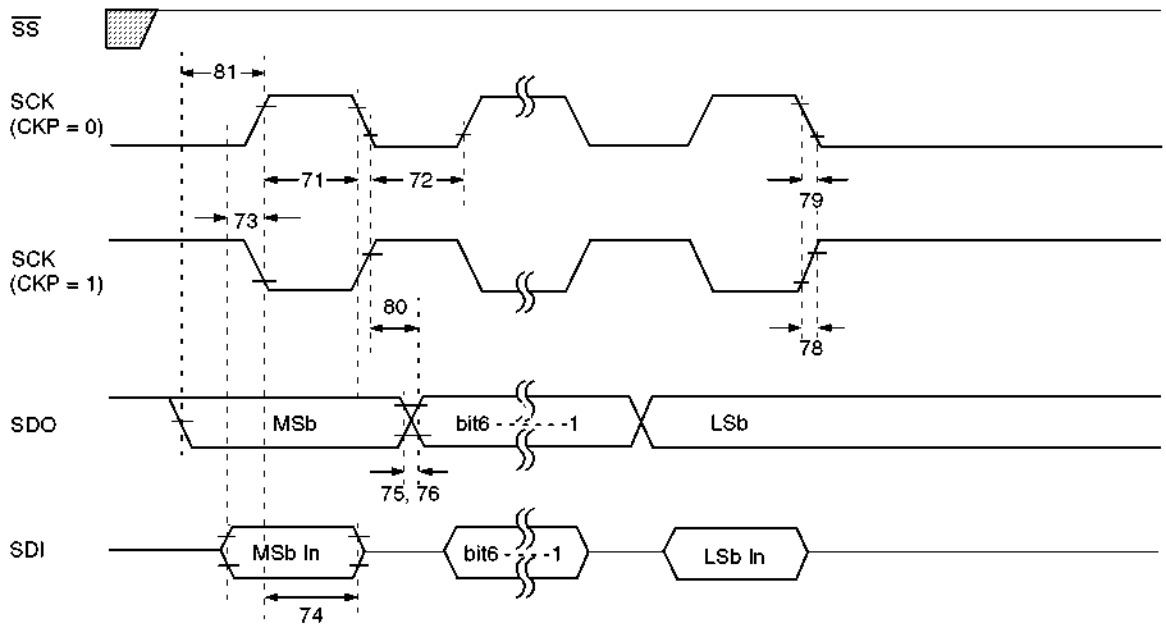
TABLE 22-11: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE, CKE = 0)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$↓ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the 1st clock edge of Byte2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**F**XXX	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	150	ns	VDD = 2V

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter # 73A.
2: Only if Parameter # 71A and # 72A are used.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-13: EXAMPLE SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



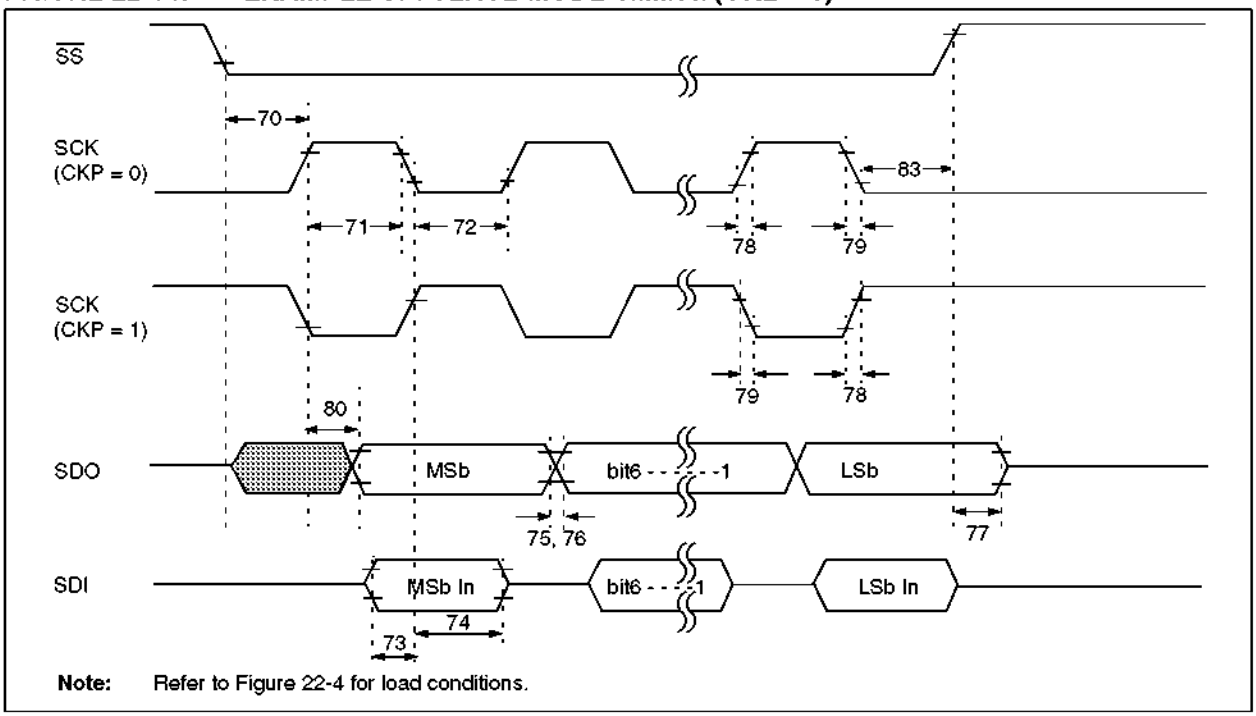
Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-12: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE, CKE = 1)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the 1st clock edge of Byte2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18FXXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time	PIC18FXXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18FXXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)	PIC18FXXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18FXXX	—	50	ns	
			PIC18LFXXX	—	150	ns	VDD = 2V
81	TdoV2scH, TdoV2scL	SDO data output setup to SCK edge		TCY	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter # 73A.
2: Only if Parameter # 71A and # 72A are used.

FIGURE 22-14: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

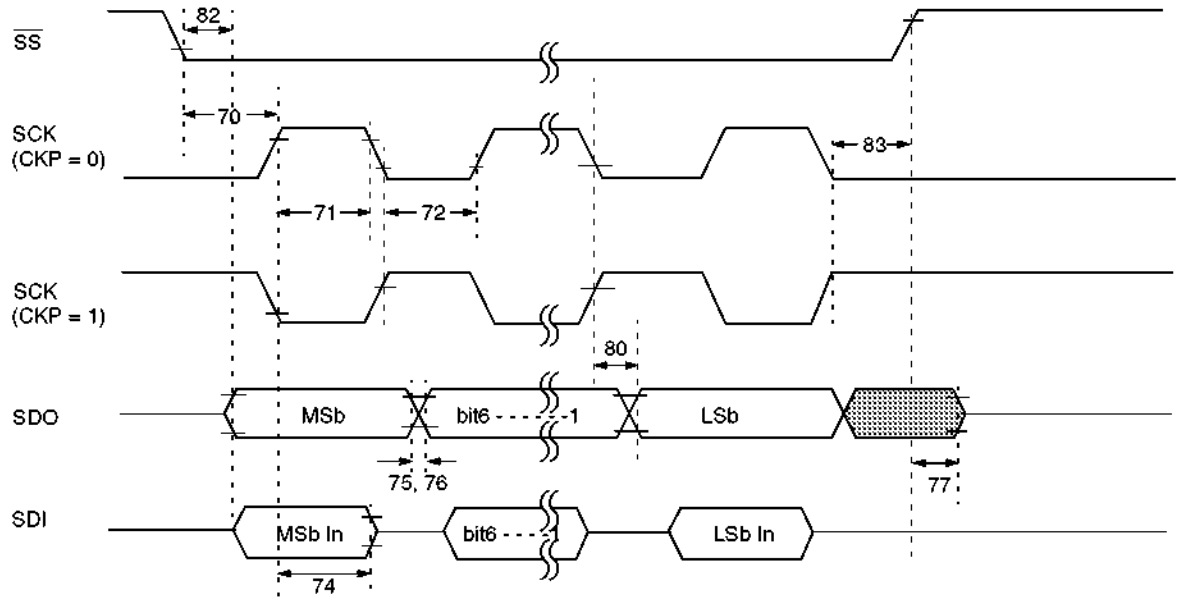
TABLE 22-13: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0))

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}\downarrow$ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the first clock edge of Byte2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
77	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}\uparrow$ to SDO output hi-impedance		10	50	ns	
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**F**XXX	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	150	ns	VDD = 2V
83	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}\uparrow$ after SCK edge		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter # 73A.
2: Only if Parameter # 71A and # 72A are used.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-15: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



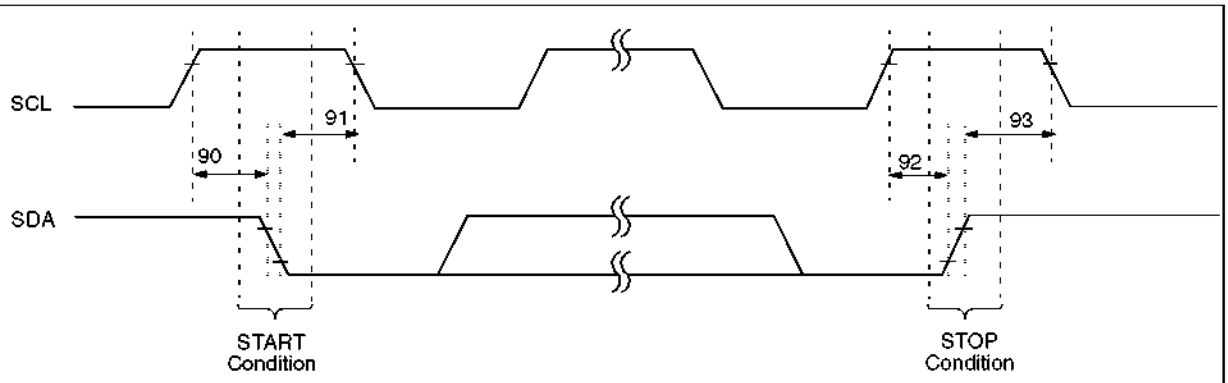
Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-14: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE REQUIREMENTS (CKE = 1)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$↓ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the first clock edge of Byte2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
77	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}$↑ to SDO output hi-impedance		10	50	ns	
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**F**XXX	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	150	ns	VDD = 2V
82	TssL2doV	SDO data output valid after $\overline{SS}$↓ edge	PIC18**F**XXX	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	150	ns	VDD = 2V
83	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ after SCK edge		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter # 73A.
2: Only if Parameter # 71A and # 72A are used.

FIGURE 22-16: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING

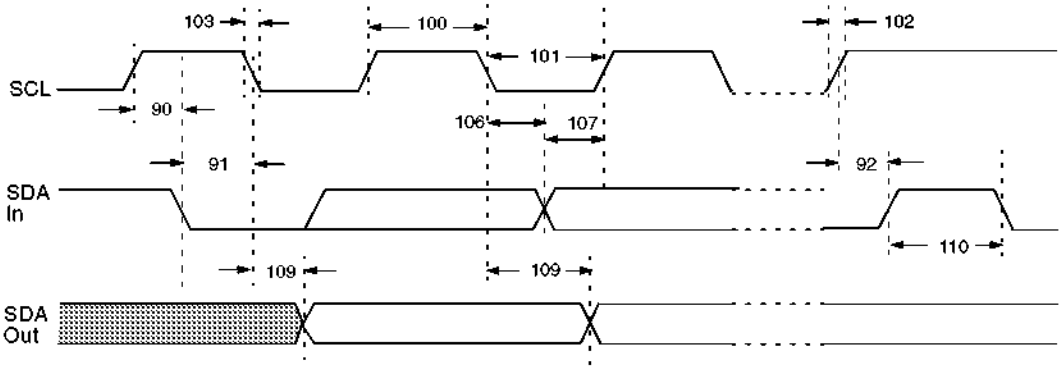


Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-15: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
90	TSU:STA	START condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	4700	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	600	—		
91	THD:STA	START condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	4000	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	600	—		
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	4700	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	600	—		
93	THD:STO	STOP condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	4000	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	600	—		

FIGURE 22-17: I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 22-16: I^2C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)

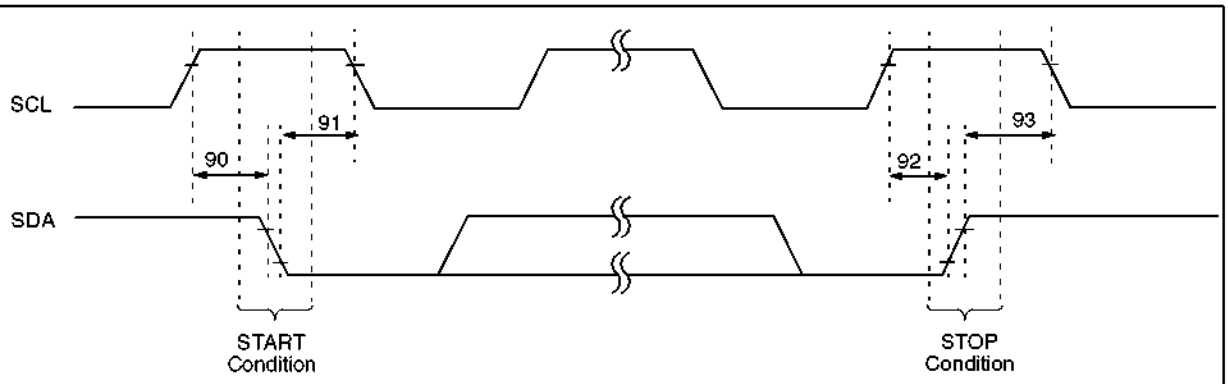
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100	THIGH	Clock high time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	µs	PIC18FXXX must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	PIC18FXXX must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP Module	1.5 TCY	—		
101	TLOW	Clock low time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	PIC18FXXX must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	µs	PIC18FXXX must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP Module	1.5 TCY	—		
102	TR	SDA and SCL rise time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
103	TF	SDA and SCL fall time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	VDD ≥ 4.2V
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	VDD ≥ 4.2V
90	TSU:STA	START condition setup time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
91	THD:STA	START condition hold time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	µs	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
106	THD:DAT	Data input hold time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	µs	
107	TSU:DAT	Data input setup time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition setup time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
109	TAA	Output valid from clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	**(Note 1)**
			400 kHz mode	—	—	ns	
110	TBUF	Bus free time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	µs	
D102	CB	Bus capacitive loading		—	400	pF	

Note 1: As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of START or STOP conditions.

2: A Fast mode I^2C bus device can be used in a Standard mode I^2C bus system, but the requirement TSU:DAT ≥ 250 ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line. TR max. + TSU:DAT = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (according to the Standard mode I^2C bus specification) before the SCL line is released.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-18: MASTER SSP I²C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING WAVEFORMS



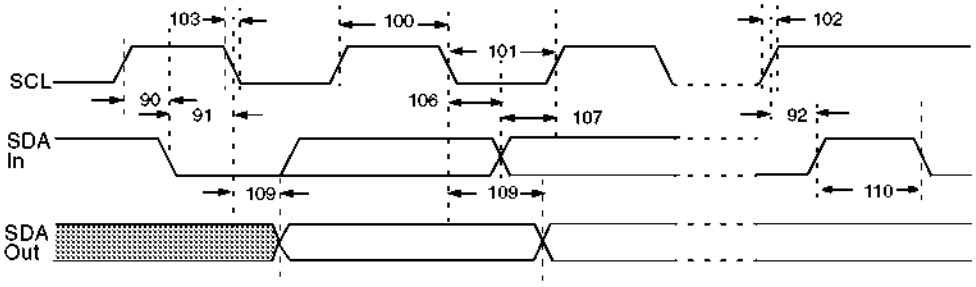
Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-17: MASTER SSP I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
90	TSU:STA	START condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
91	THD:STA	START condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
93	THD:STO	STOP condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		

Note 1: Maximum pin capacitance = 10 pF for all I²C pins.

FIGURE 22-19: MASTER SSP I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 22-18: MASTER SSP I^2C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS

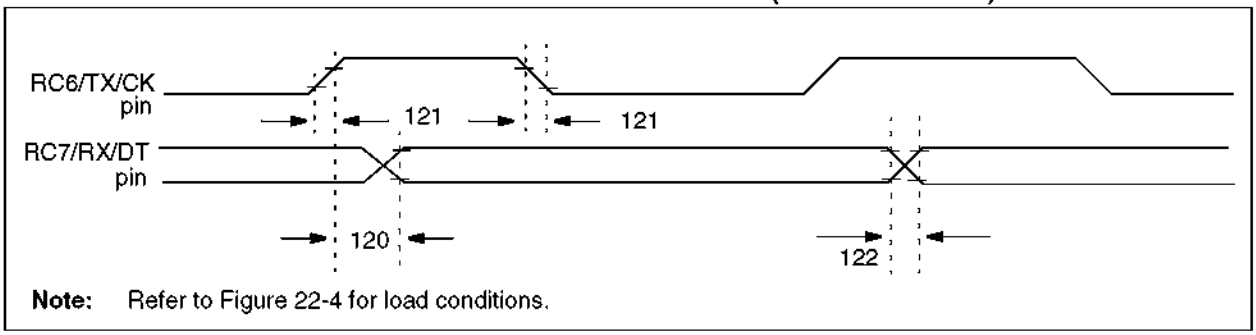
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100	THIGH	Clock high time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
101	TLOW	Clock low time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
102	TR	SDA and SCL rise time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	CB is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	300	ns	
103	TF	SDA and SCL fall time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	VDD ≥ 4.2V
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	VDD ≥ 4.2V
90	TSU:STA	START condition setup time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
91	THD:STA	START condition hold time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
106	THD:DAT	Data input hold time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	ms	
107	TSU:DAT	Data input setup time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition setup time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
109	TAA	Output valid from clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	
			400 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	—	ns	
110	TBUF	Bus free time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	ms	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	ms	
D102	CB	Bus capacitive loading		—	400	pF	

Note 1: Maximum pin capacitance = 10 pF for all I^2C pins.

2: A Fast mode I^2C bus device can be used in a Standard mode I^2C bus system, but parameter #107 ≥ 250 ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line, parameter #102 + parameter #107 = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (for 100 kHz mode) before the SCL line is released.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-20: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

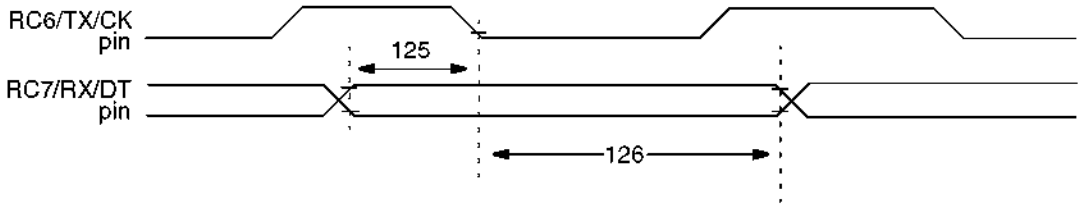


Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-19: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
120	TckH2dtV	SYNC XMIT (MASTER & SLAVE) Clock high to data out valid	PIC18**F**XXX	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	150	ns	VDD = 2V
121	Tckr	Clock out rise time and fall time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V
122	Tdtr	Data out rise time and fall time	PIC18**F**XXX	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	—	60	ns	VDD = 2V

FIGURE 22-21: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-20: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
125	TdtV2ckl	SYNC RCV (MASTER & SLAVE) Data hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time)		10	—	ns	
126	TckL2dtl	Data hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	PIC18**F**XXX	15	—	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXX	20	—	ns	VDD = 2V

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 22-21: A/D CONVERTER CHARACTERISTICS: PIC18FXX2 (INDUSTRIAL, EXTENDED) PIC18LFXX2 (INDUSTRIAL)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
A01	NR	Resolution	—	—	10	bit	
A03	EIL	Integral linearity error	—	—	<±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A04	EDL	Differential linearity error	—	—	<±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A05	EG	Gain error	—	—	<±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A06	EOFF	Offset error	—	—	<±1.5	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A10	—	Monotonicity	guaranteed(2)			—	VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A20 A20A	VREF	Reference Voltage (VREFH – VREFL)	1.8V 3V	— —	— —	V V	VDD < 3.0V VDD ≥ 3.0V
A21	VREFH	Reference voltage High	AVSS	—	AVDD + 0.3V	V	
A22	VREFL	Reference voltage Low	AVSS – 0.3V	—	VREFH	V	
A25	VAIN	Analog input voltage	AVSS – 0.3V	—	AVDD + 0.3V	V	VDD ≥ 2.5V **(Note 3)**
A30	ZAIN	Recommended impedance of analog voltage source	—	—	2.5	kΩ	**(Note 4)**
A50	IREF	VREF input current **(Note 1)**	— —	— —	5 150	µA µA	During VAIN acquisition During A/D conversion cycle

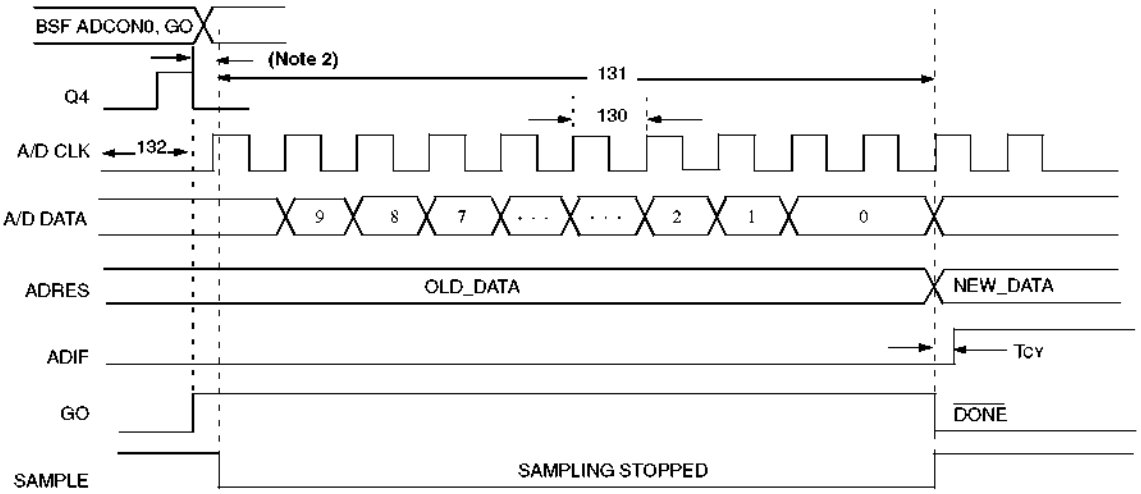
Note 1: VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF

2: The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the Input Voltage, and has no missing codes.

3: For VDD < 2.5V, VAIN should be limited to < .5 VDD.

4: Maximum allowed impedance for analog voltage source is 10 kΩ. This requires higher acquisition times.

FIGURE 22-22: A/D CONVERSION TIMING



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

2: This is a minimal RC delay (typically 100 nS), which also disconnects the holding capacitor from the analog input.

TABLE 22-22: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
130	TAD	A/D clock period	PIC18FXXX	1.6	20(4)	µs	TOSC based
			PIC18FXXX	2.0	6.0	µs	A/D RC mode
131	TCNV	Conversion time (not including acquisition time) **(Note 1)**		11	12	TAD	
132	TACQ	Acquisition time **(Note 2)**		5 10	— —	µs µs	VREF = VDD = 5.0V VREF = VDD = 2.5V
135	TSWC	Switching Time from convert → sample		—	**(Note 3)**		

Note 1: ADRES register may be read on the following TCY cycle.

2: The time for the holding capacitor to acquire the "New" input voltage, when the new input value has not changed by more than 1 LSB from the last sampled voltage. The source impedance (*RS*) on the input channels is 50Ω. See Section 17.0 for more information on acquisition time consideration.

3: On the next Q4 cycle of the device clock.

4: The time of the A/D clock period is dependent on the device frequency and the TAD clock divider.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

23.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

Note: The graphs and tables provided following this note are a statistical summary based on a limited number of samples and are provided for informational purposes only. The performance characteristics listed herein are not tested or guaranteed. In some graphs or tables, the data presented may be outside the specified operating range (e.g., outside specified power supply range) and therefore, outside the warranted range.

"Typical" represents the mean of the distribution at 25°C. "Maximum" or "minimum" represents (mean + 3σ) or (mean - 3σ) respectively, where σ is a standard deviation, over the whole temperature range.

FIGURE 23-1: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE)

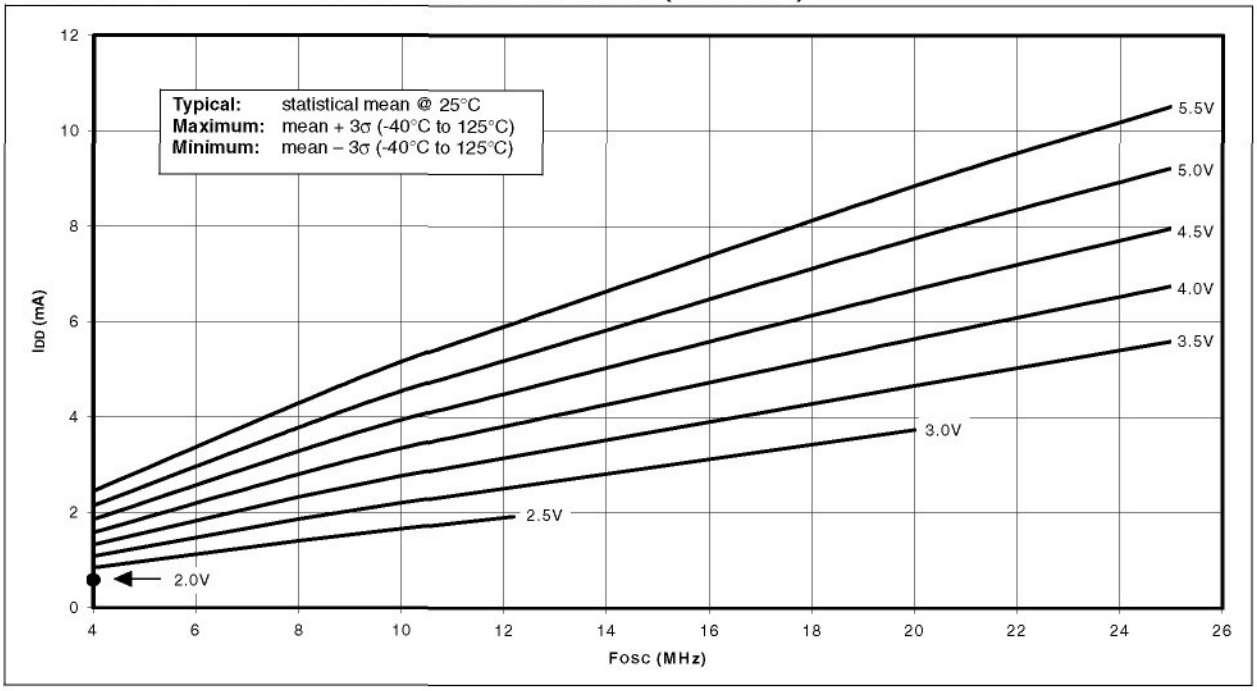


FIGURE 23-2: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE)

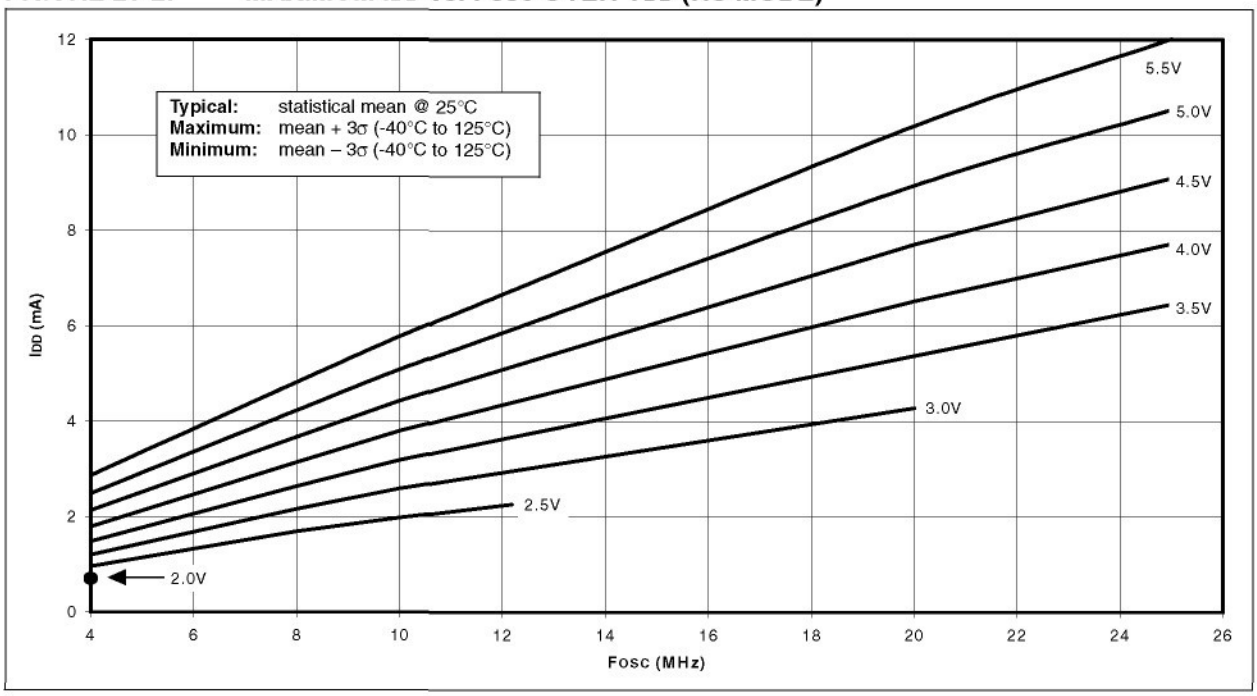


FIGURE 23-3: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS/PLL MODE)

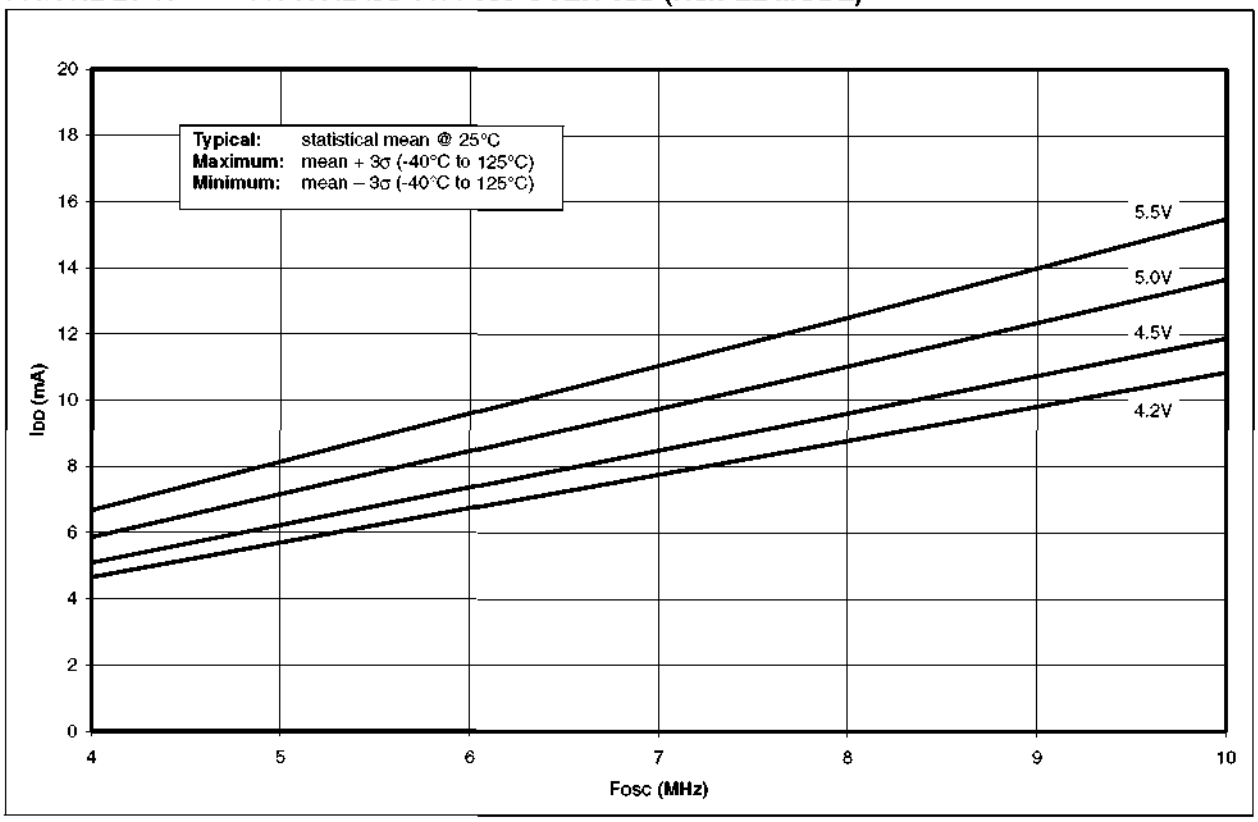
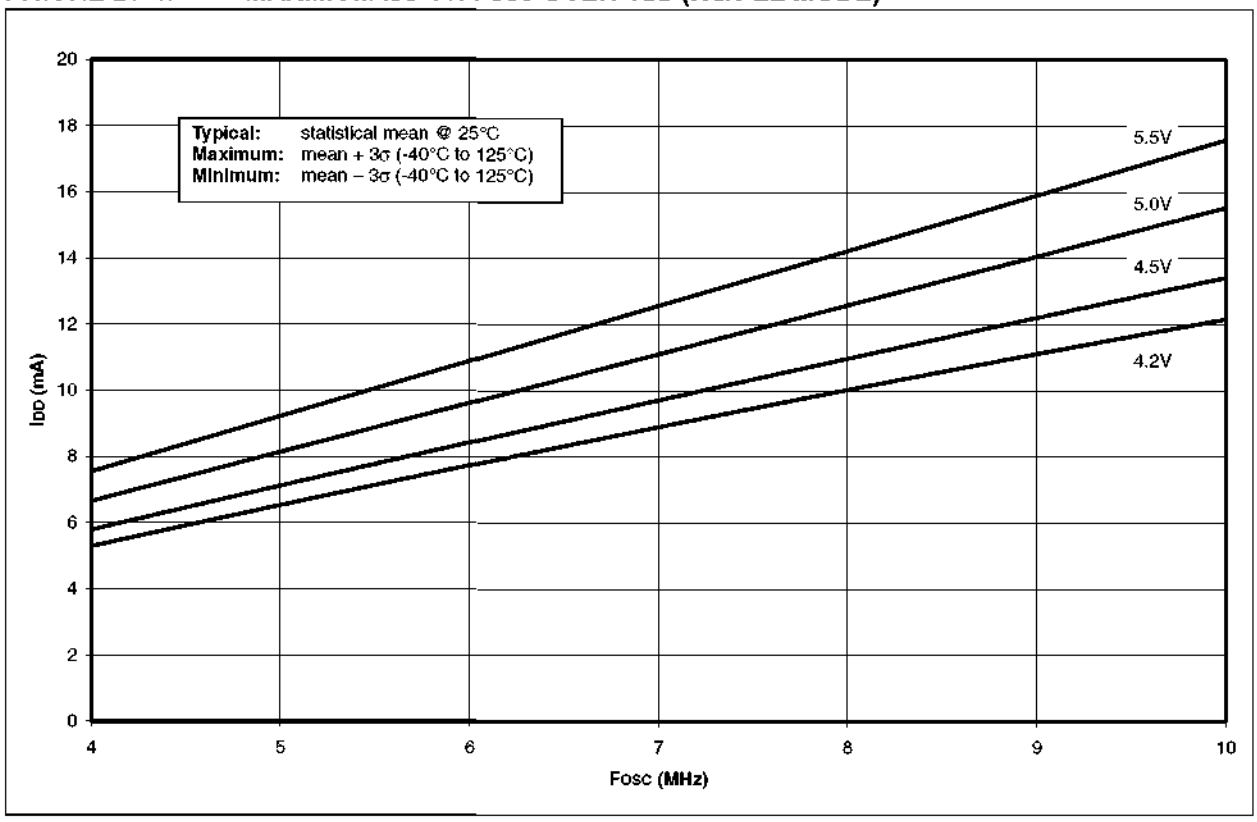


FIGURE 23-4: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS/PLL MODE)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-5: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (XT MODE)

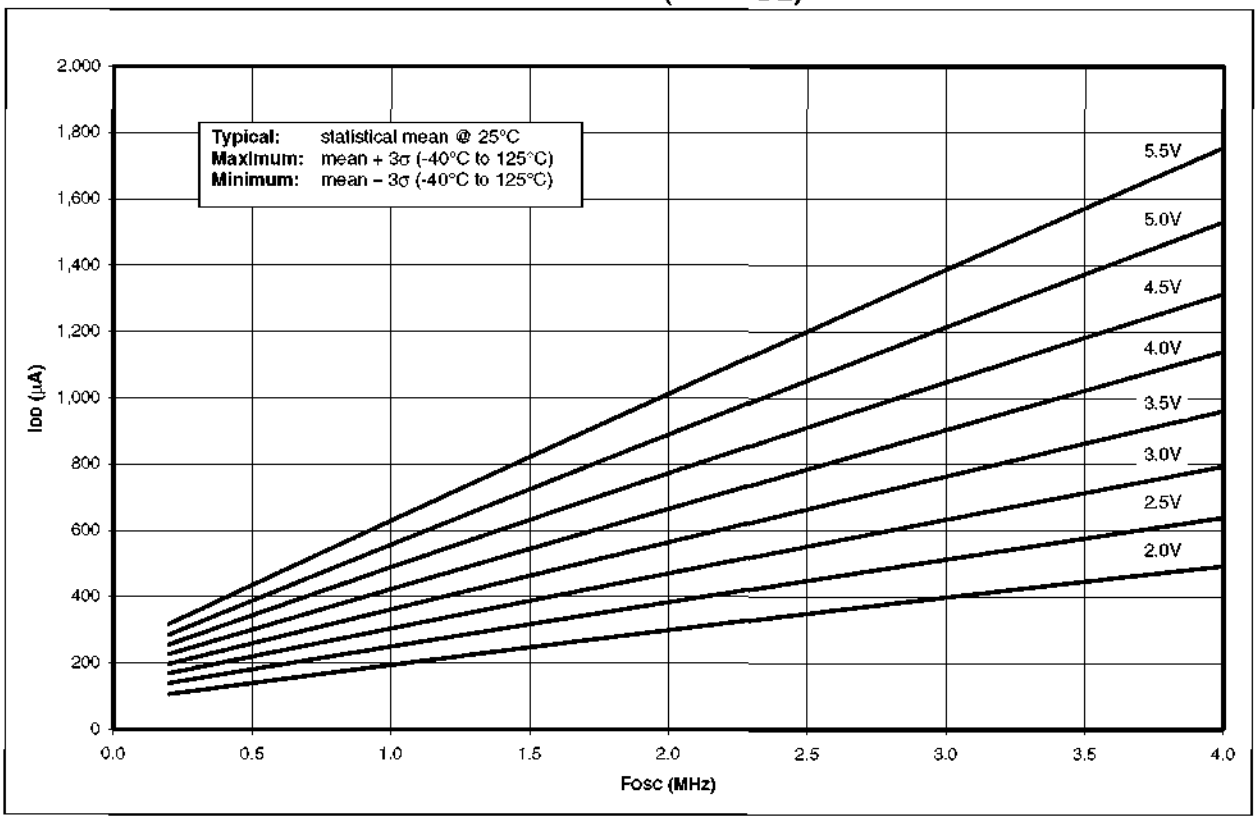


FIGURE 23-6: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (XT MODE)

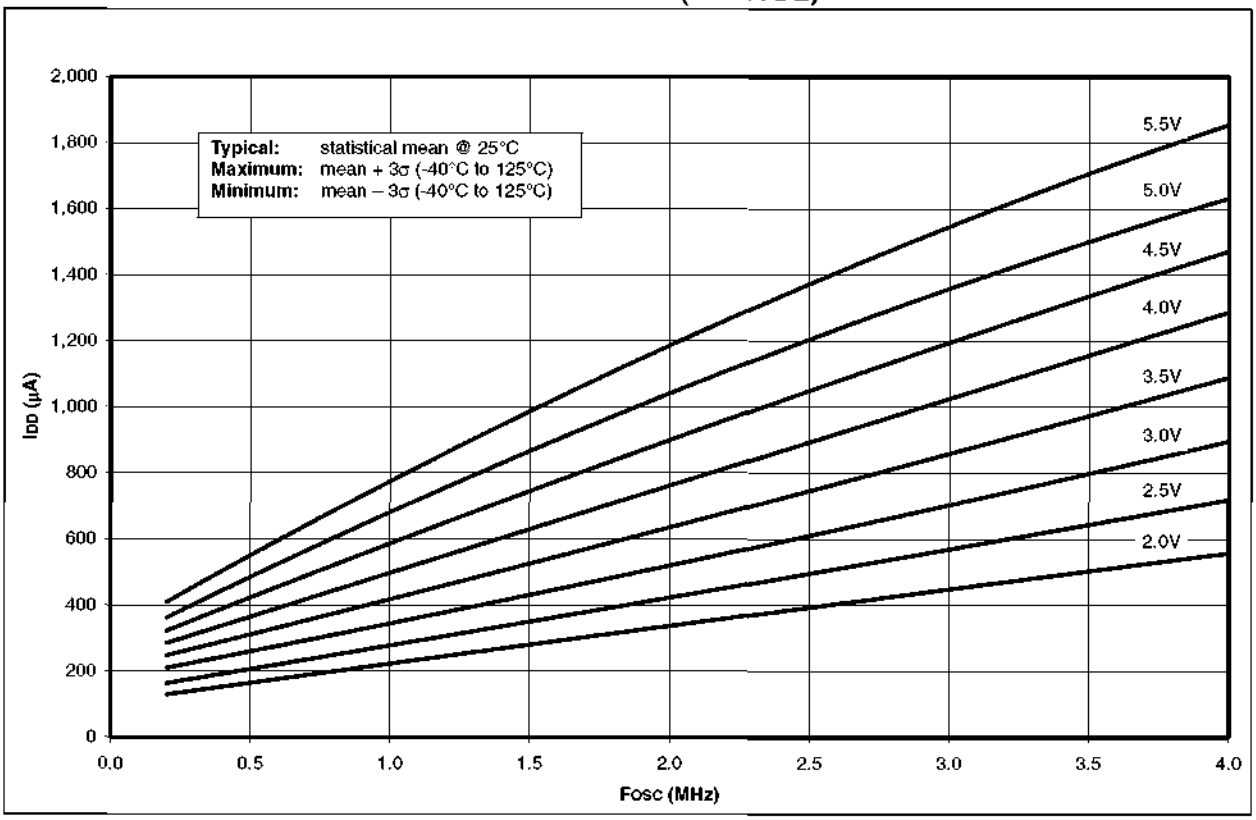


FIGURE 23-7: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (LP MODE)

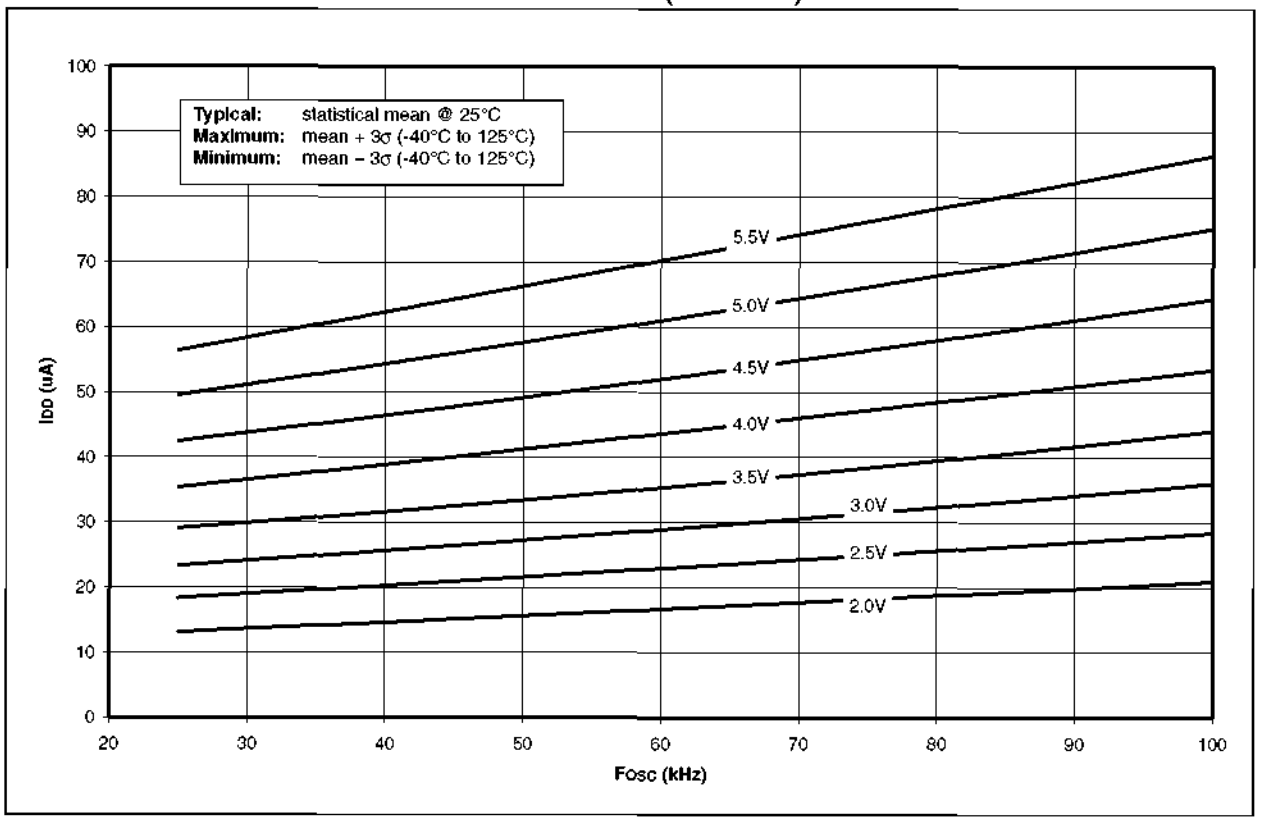
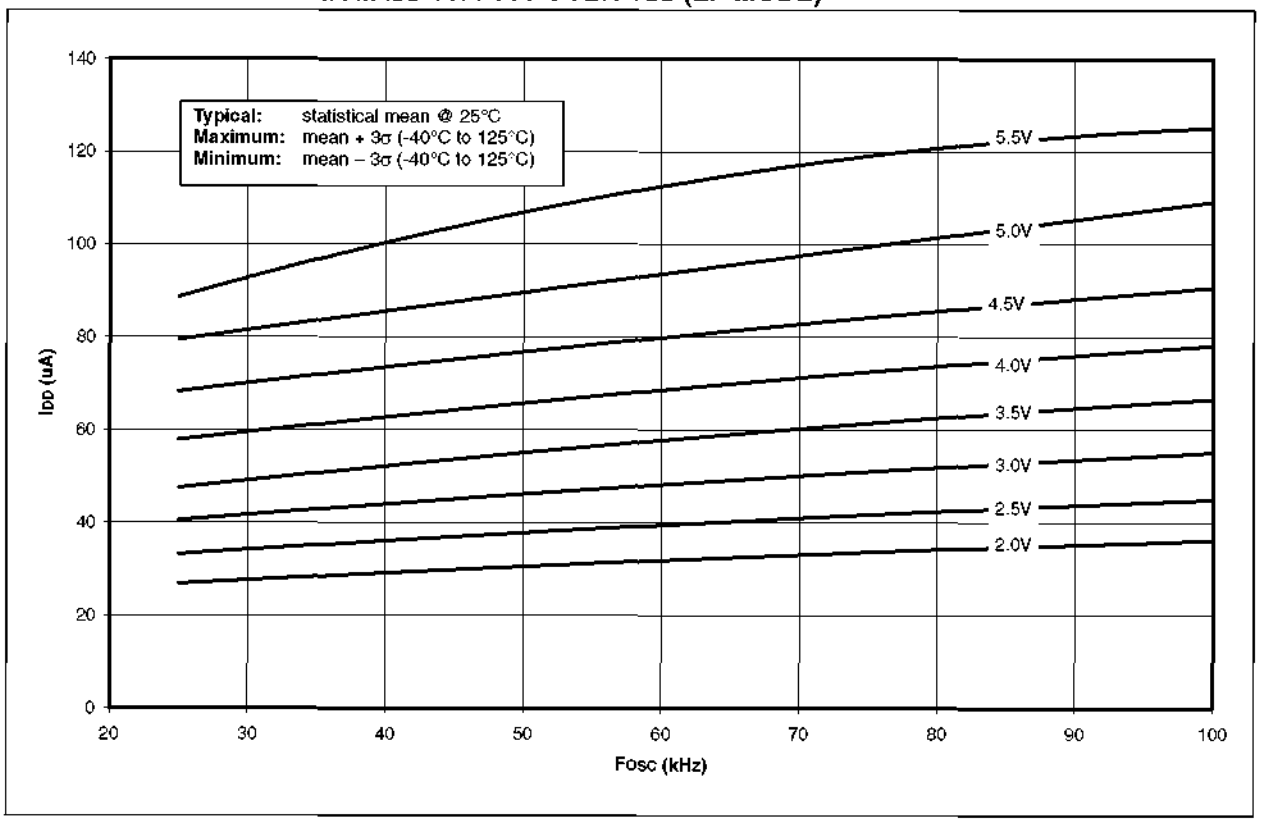


FIGURE 23-8: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (LP MODE)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-9: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

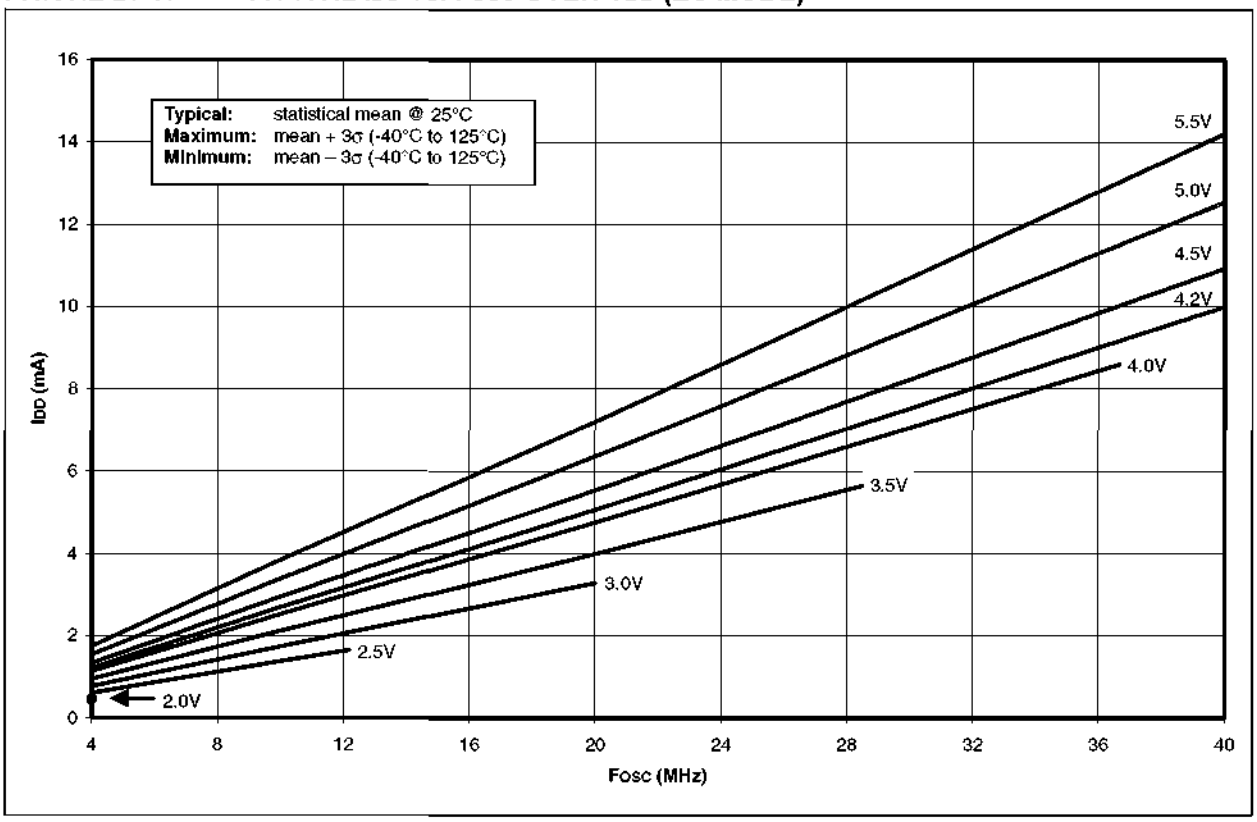


FIGURE 23-10: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

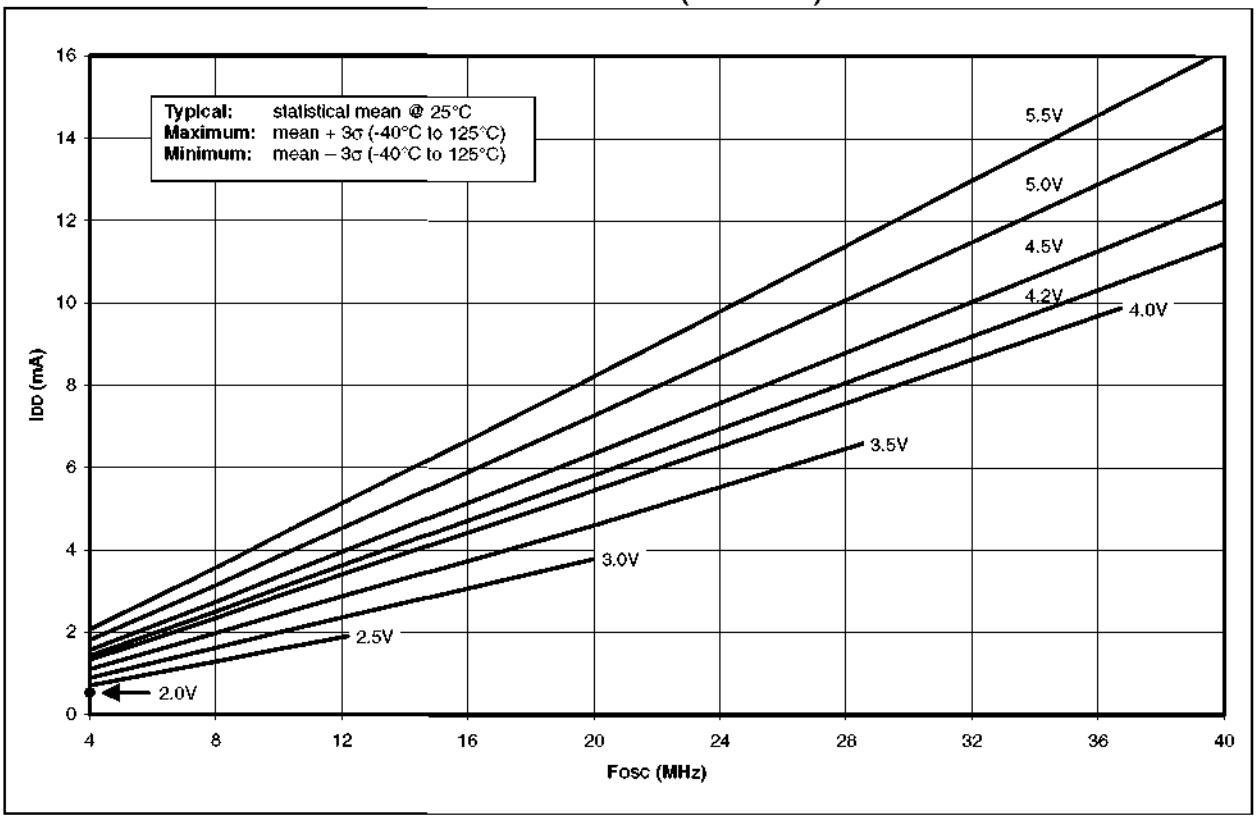


FIGURE 23-11: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM IDD vs. VDD (TIMER1 AS MAIN OSCILLATOR, 32.768 kHz, C1 AND C2 = 47 pF)

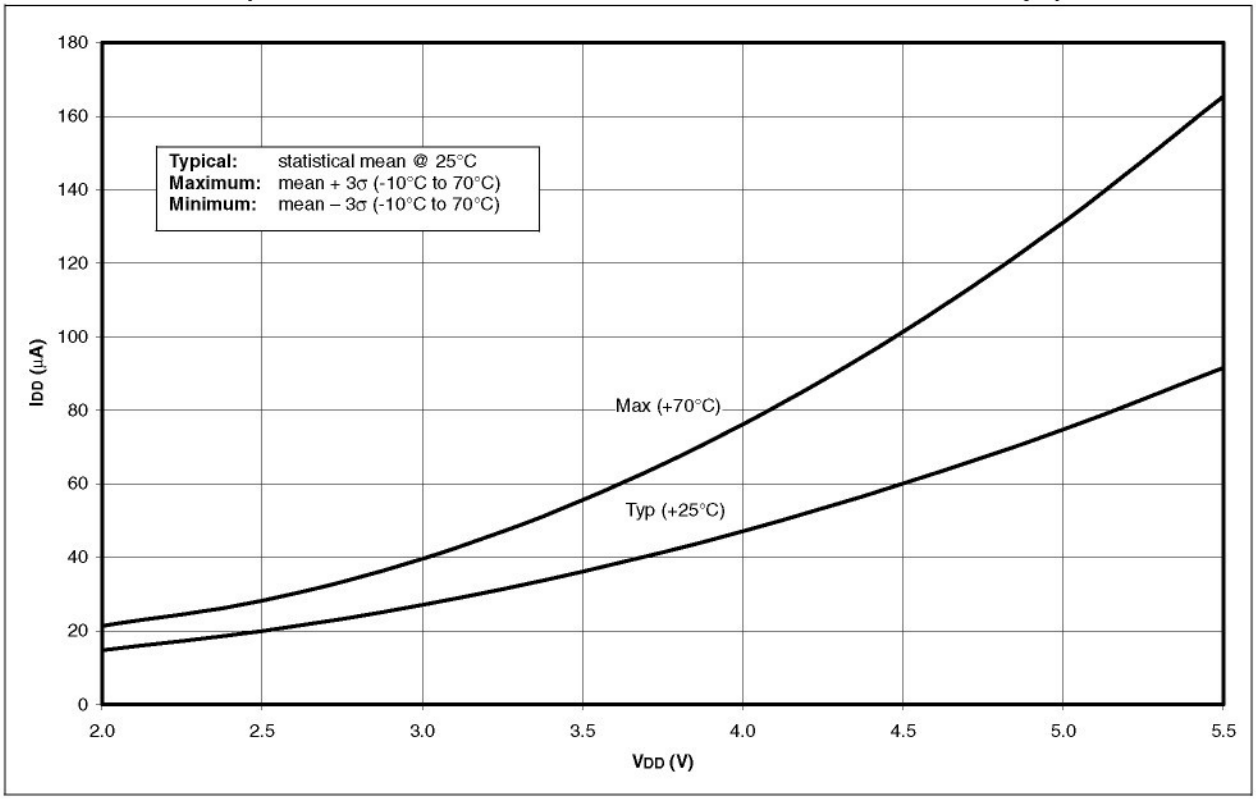
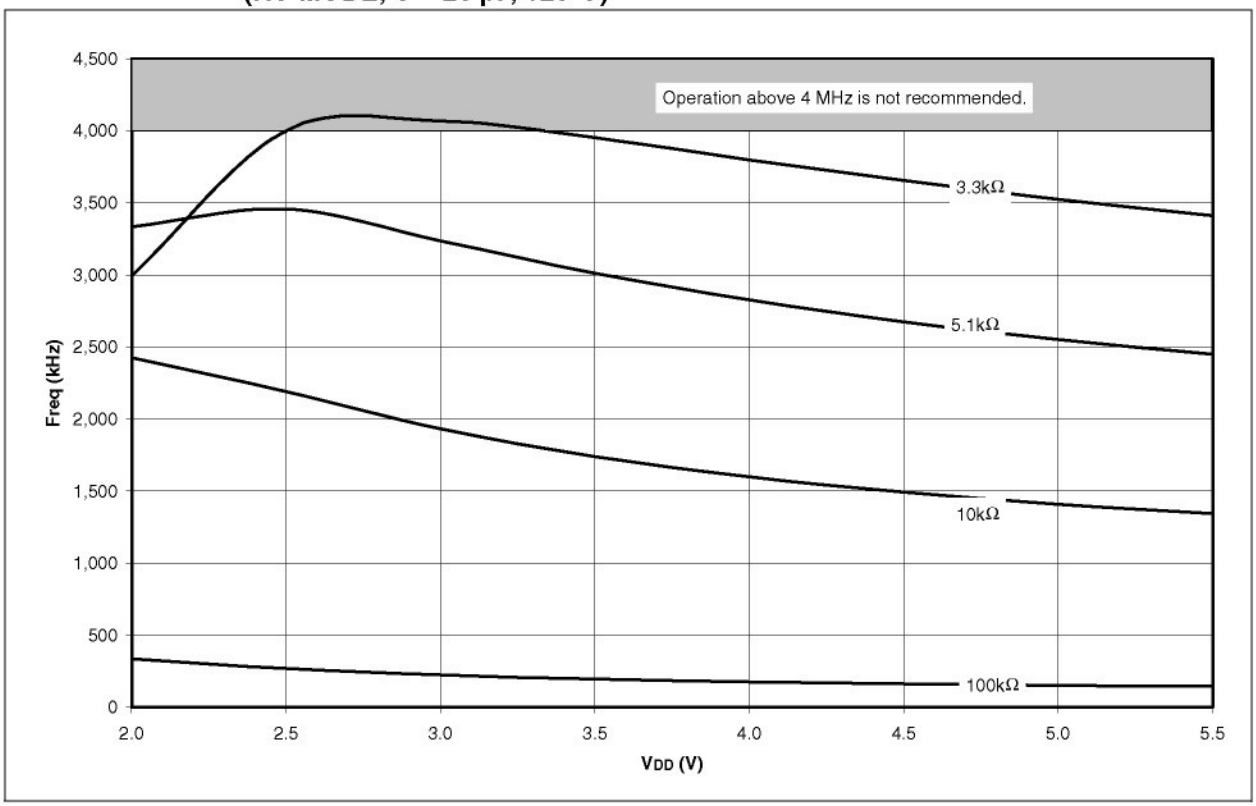


FIGURE 23-12: AVERAGE FOSC vs. VDD FOR VARIOUS VALUES OF R (RC MODE, C = 20 pF, +25°C)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-13: AVERAGE FOSC vs. VDD FOR VARIOUS VALUES OF R (RC MODE, C = 100 pF, +25°C)

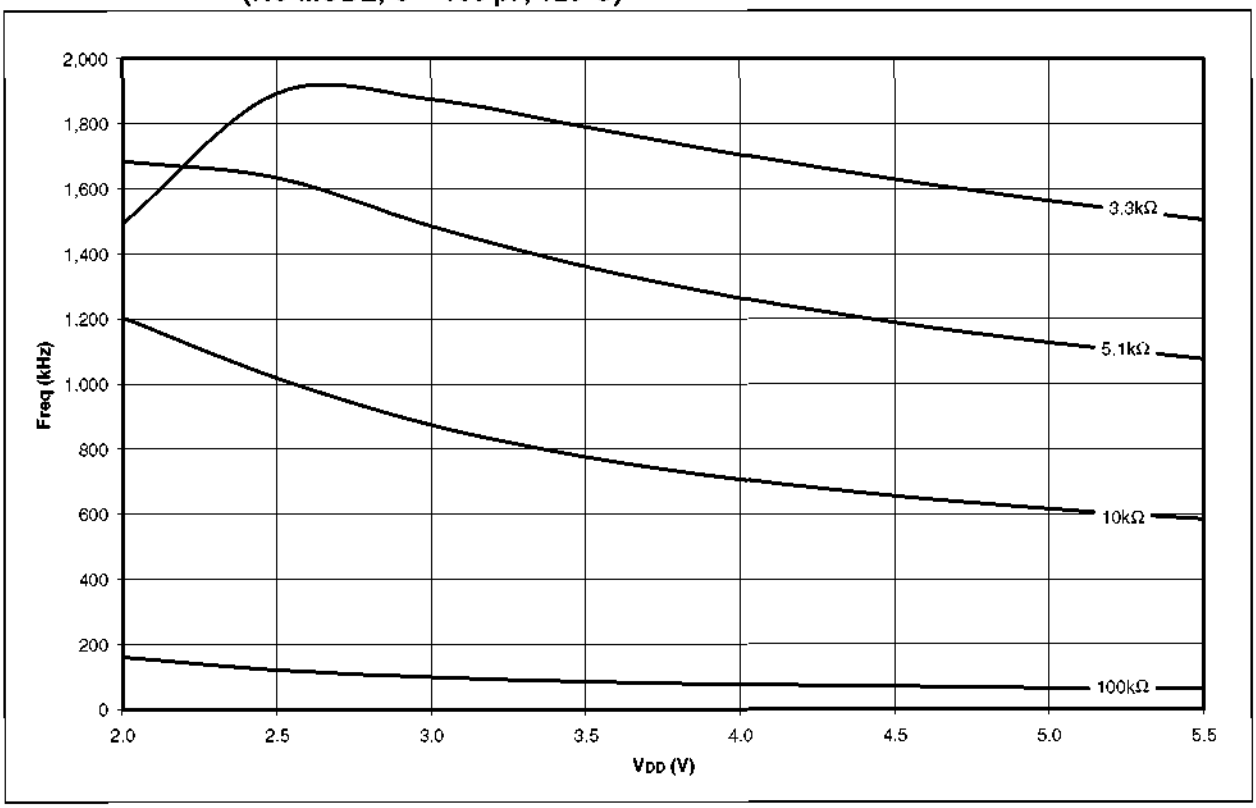


FIGURE 23-14: AVERAGE FOSC vs. VDD FOR VARIOUS VALUES OF R (RC MODE, C = 300 pF, +25°C)

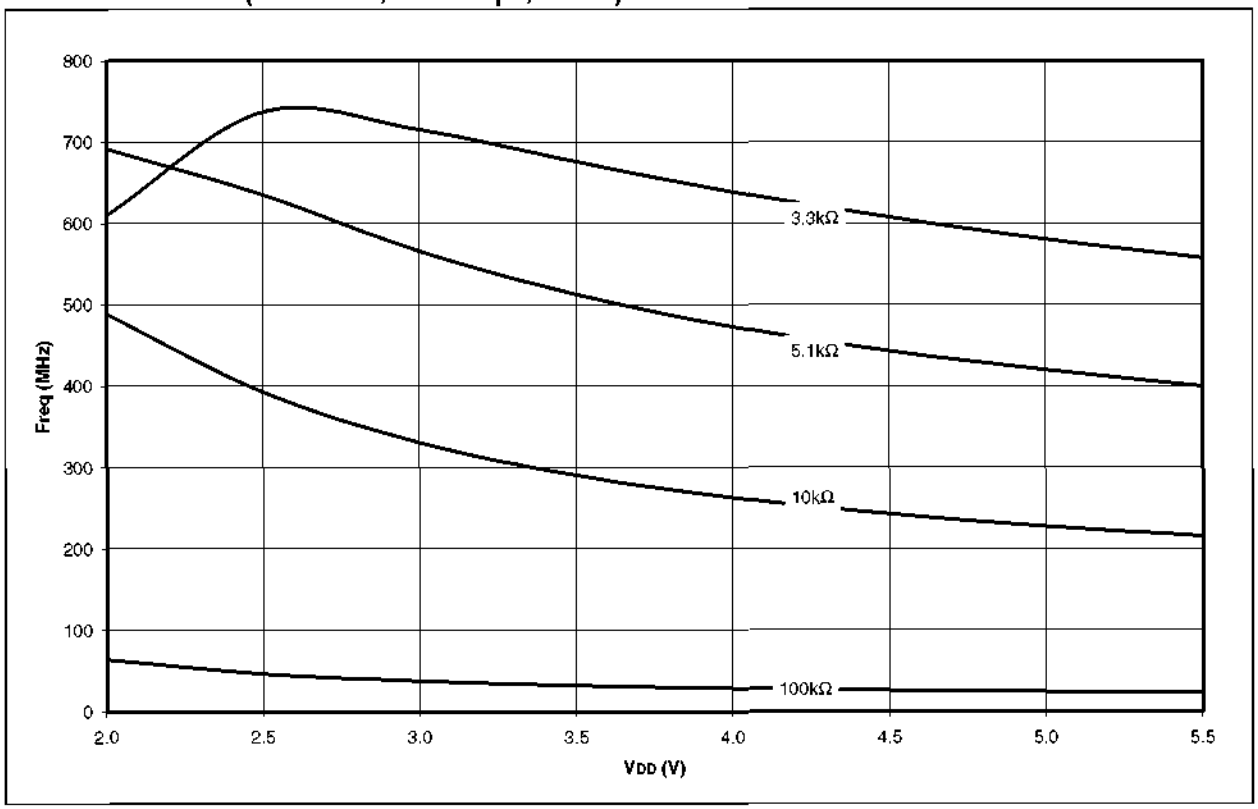


FIGURE 23-15: IPD vs. VDD, -40°C TO +125°C (SLEEP MODE, ALL PERIPHERALS DISABLED)

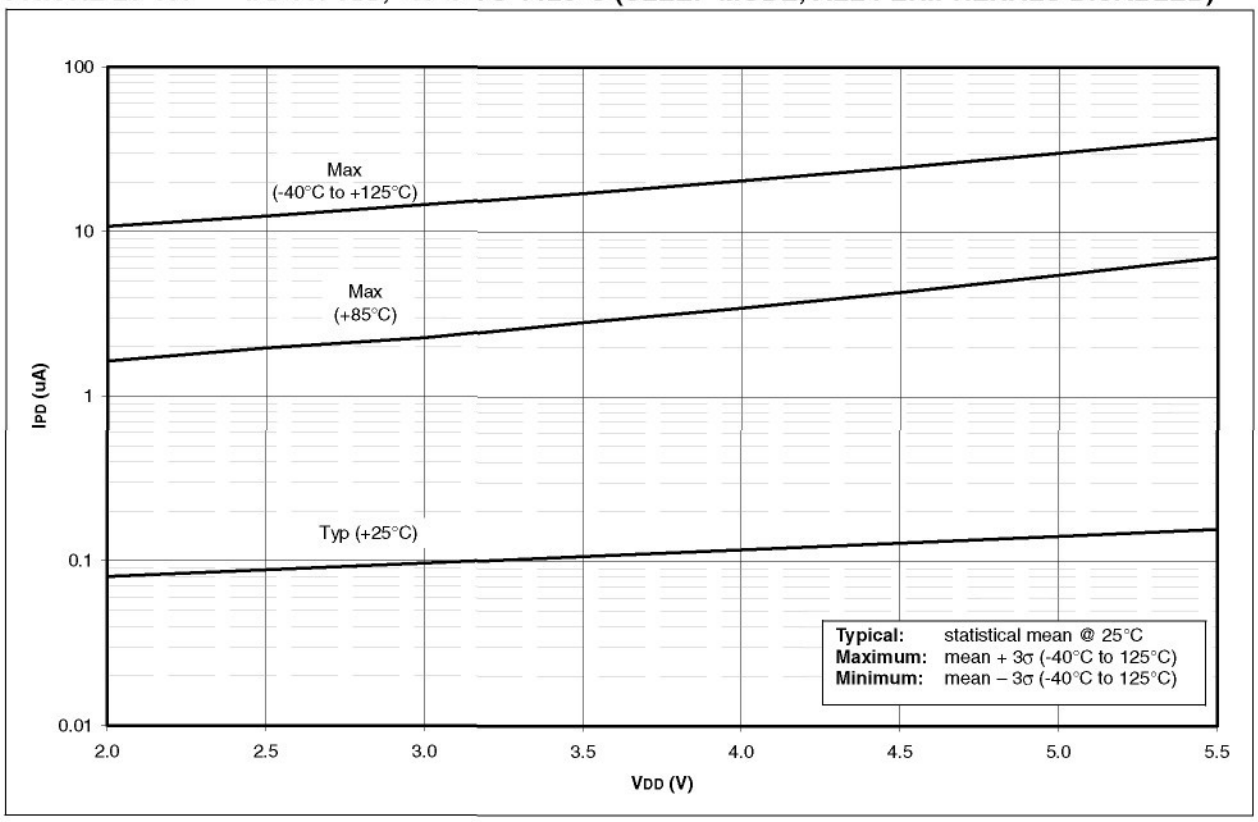
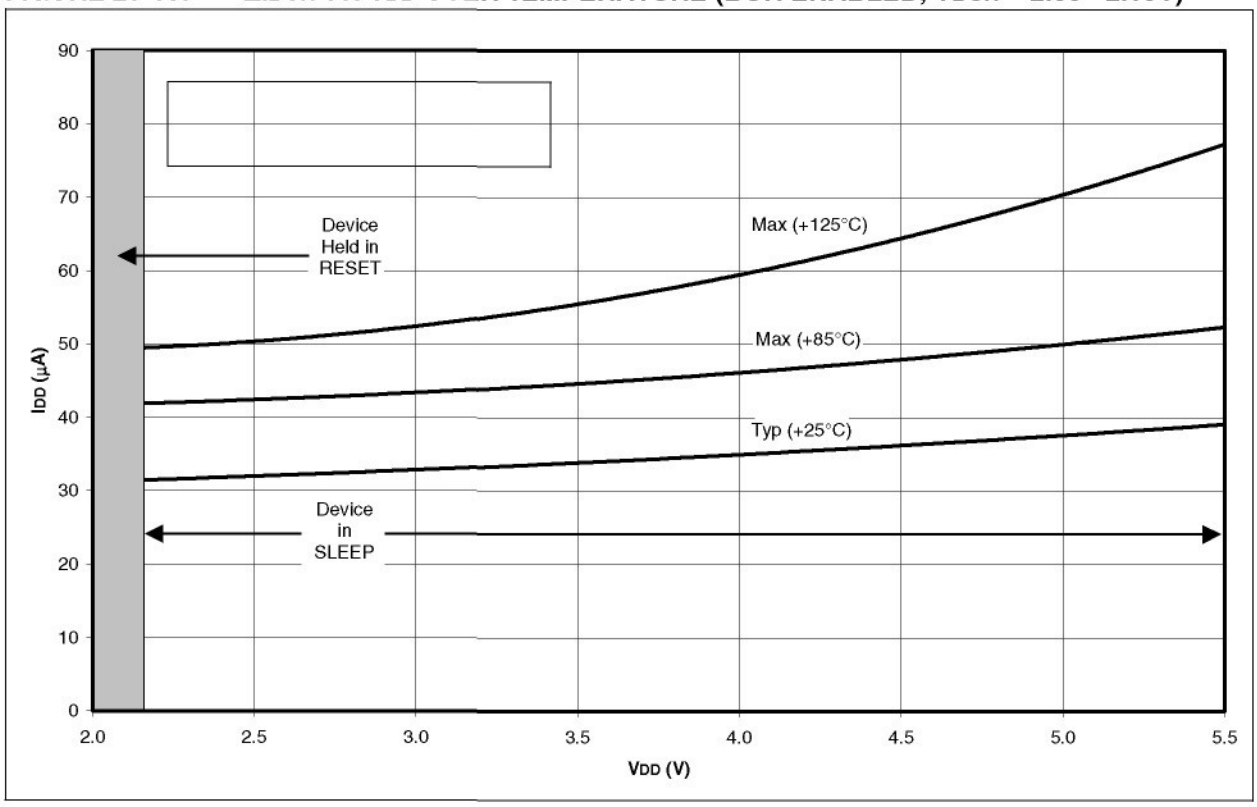


FIGURE 23-16: ΔIBOR vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (BOR ENABLED, VBOR = 2.00 - 2.16V)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-17: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM ΔITMR1 vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (-10°C TO +70°C, TIMER1 WITH OSCILLATOR, XTAL = 32 kHz, C1 AND C2 = 47 pF)

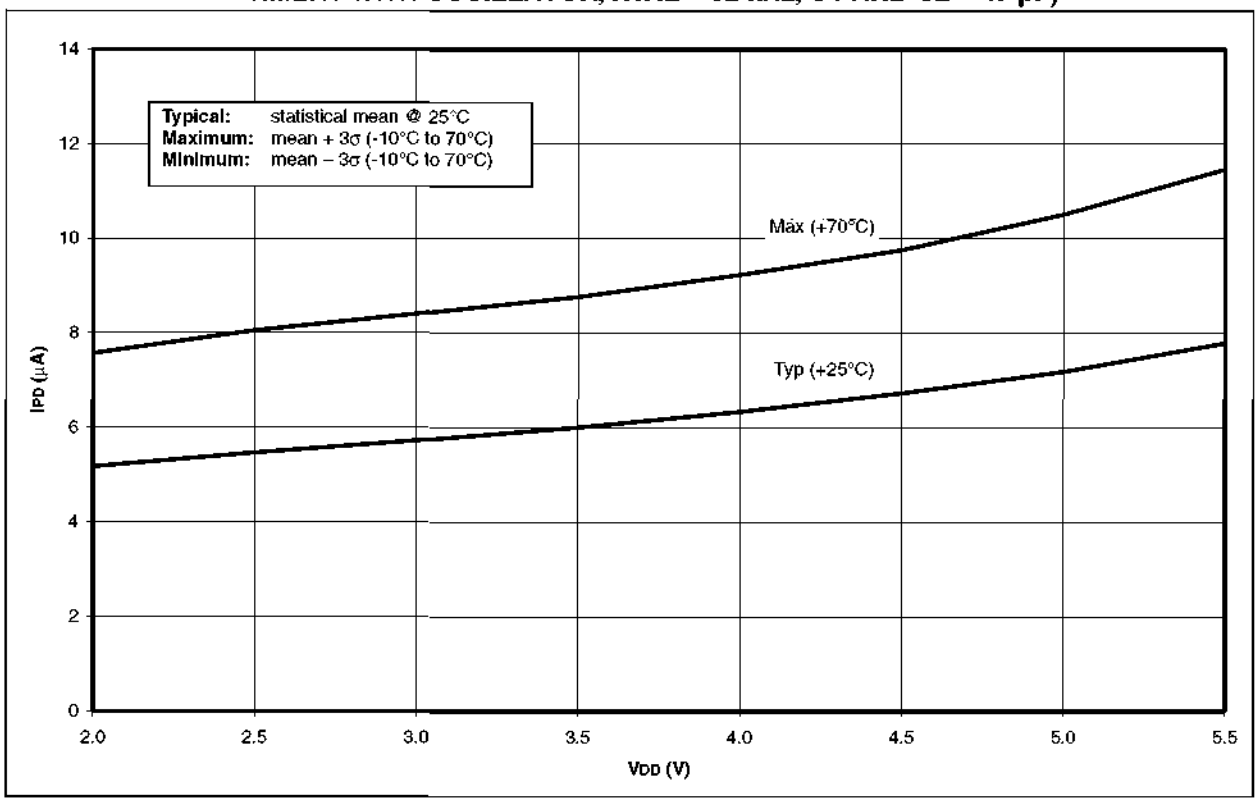


FIGURE 23-18: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM ΔIWDT vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (WDT ENABLED)

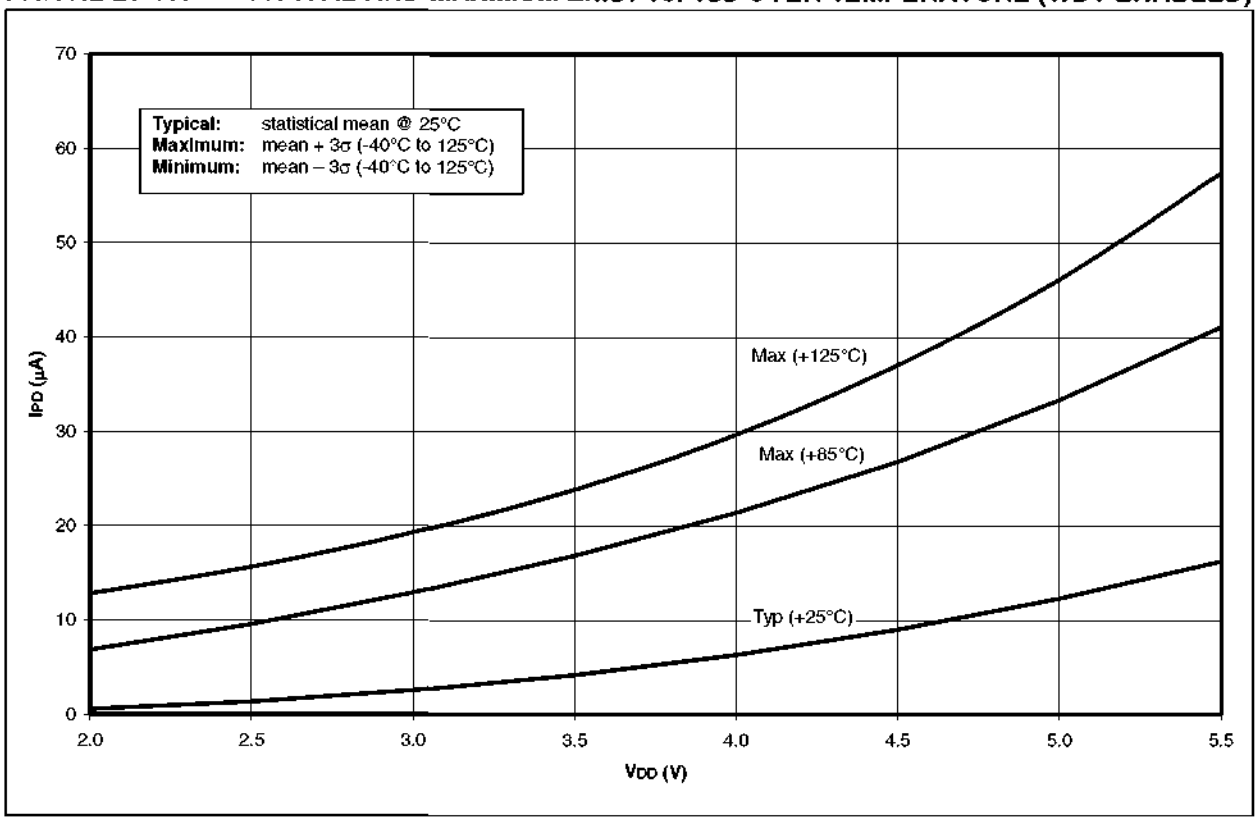


FIGURE 23-19: TYPICAL, MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM WDT PERIOD vs. VDD (-40°C TO +125°C)

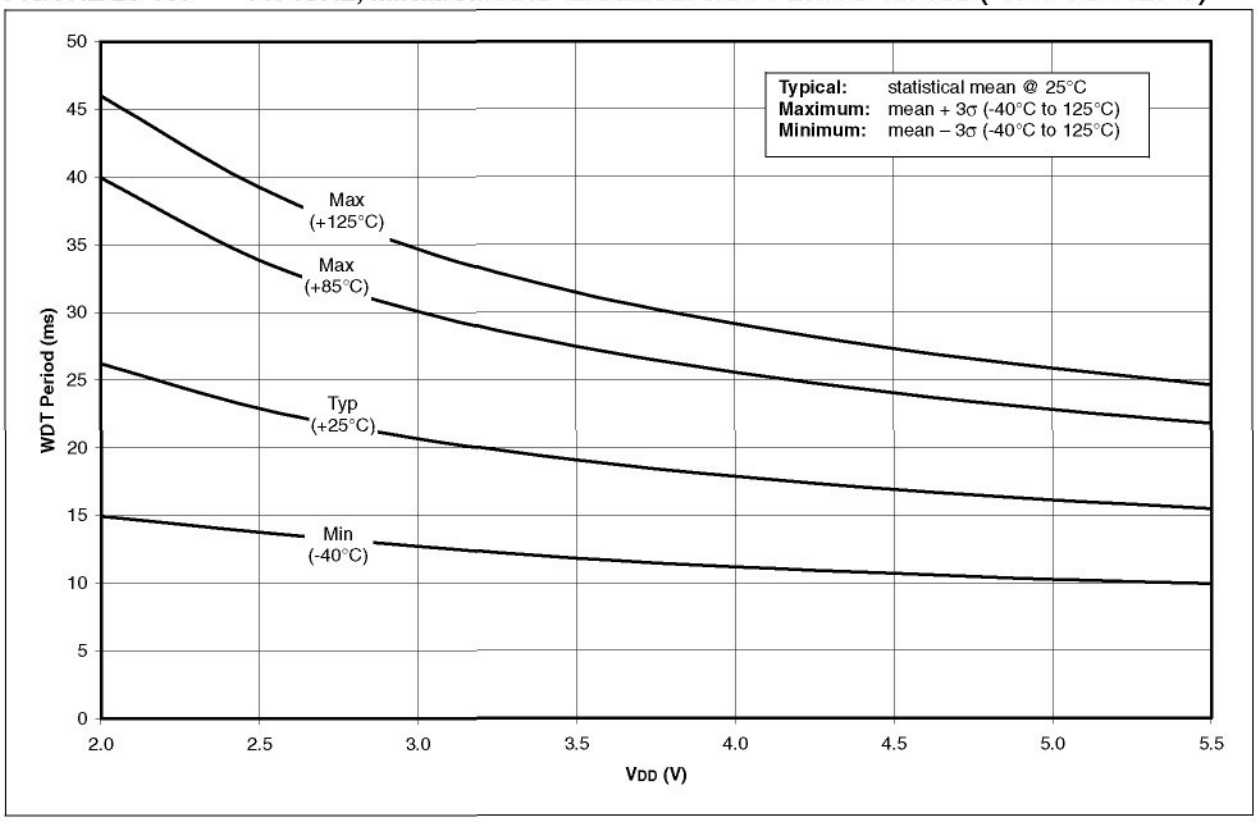
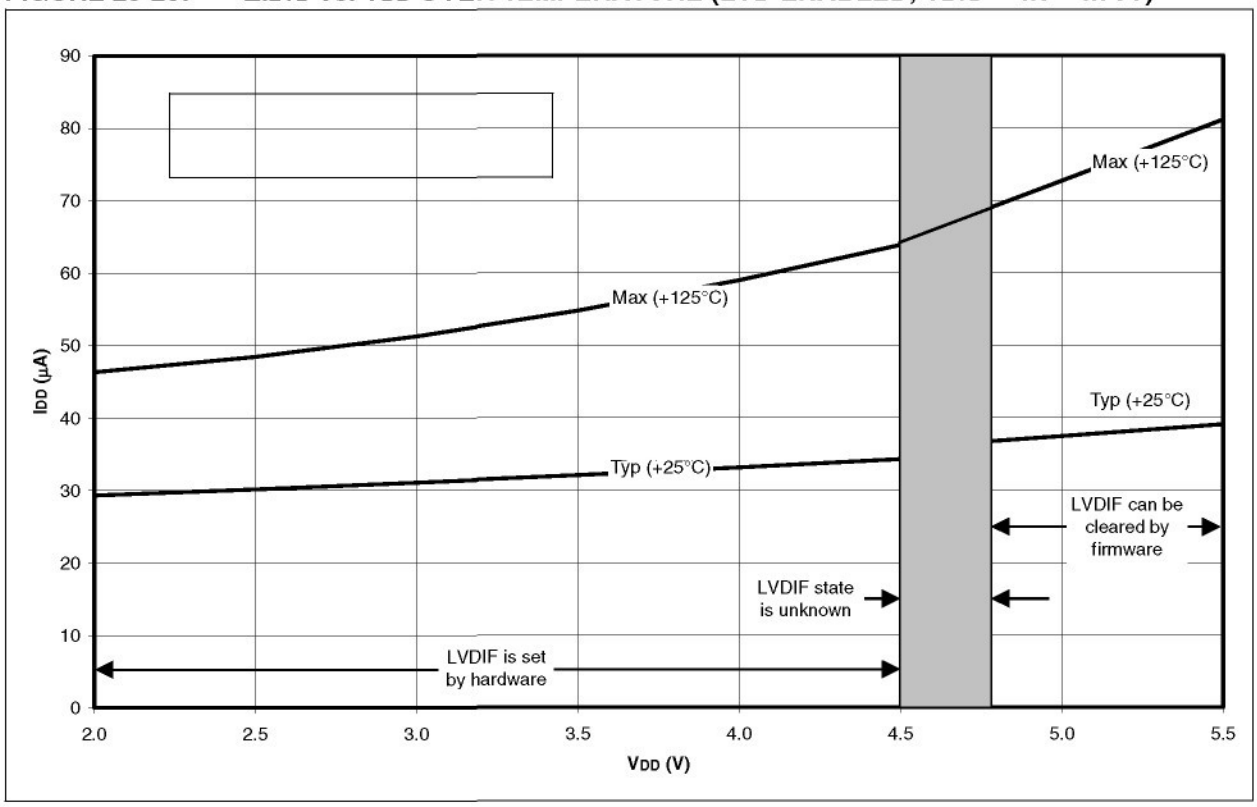


FIGURE 23-20: ΔILVD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (LVD ENABLED, VLVD = 4.5 - 4.78V)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-21: TYPICAL, MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM VOH vs. IOH (VDD = 5V, -40°C TO +125°C)

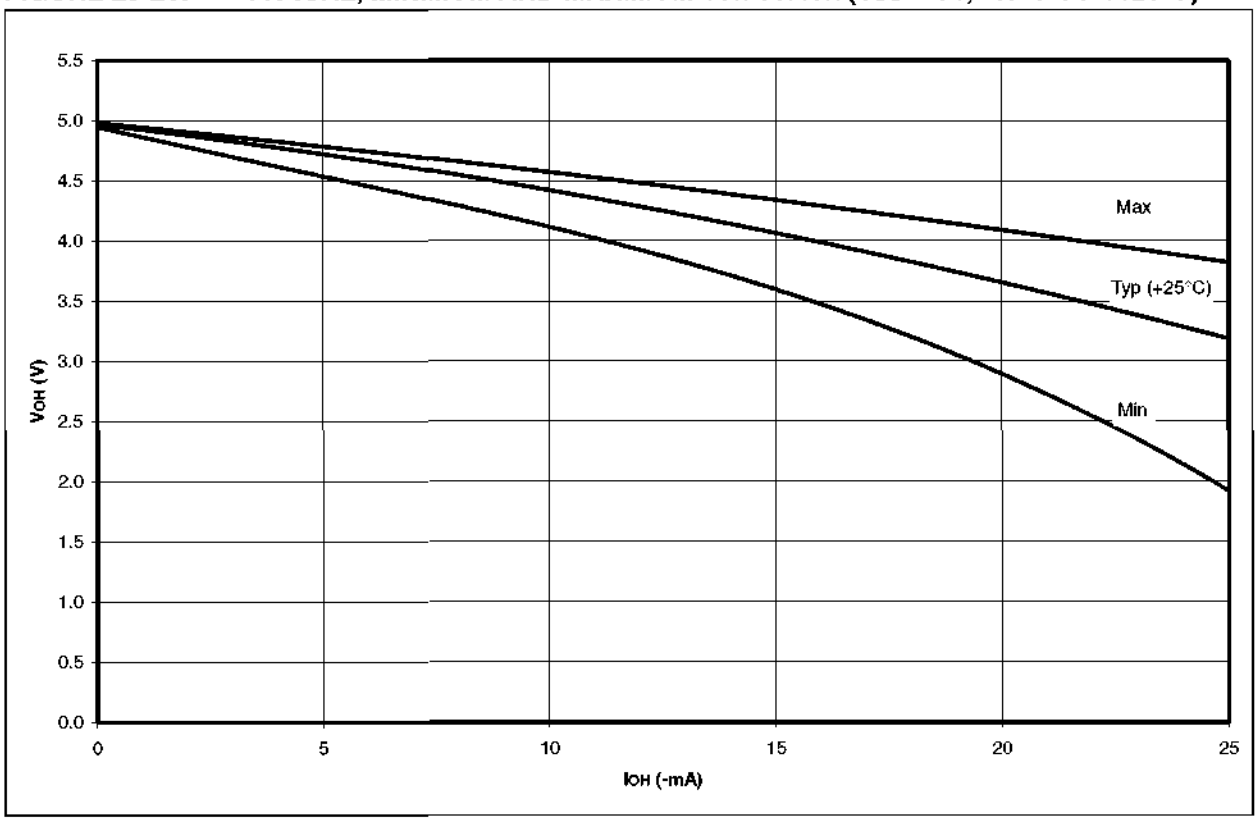


FIGURE 23-22: TYPICAL, MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM VOH vs. IOH (VDD = 3V, -40°C TO +125°C)

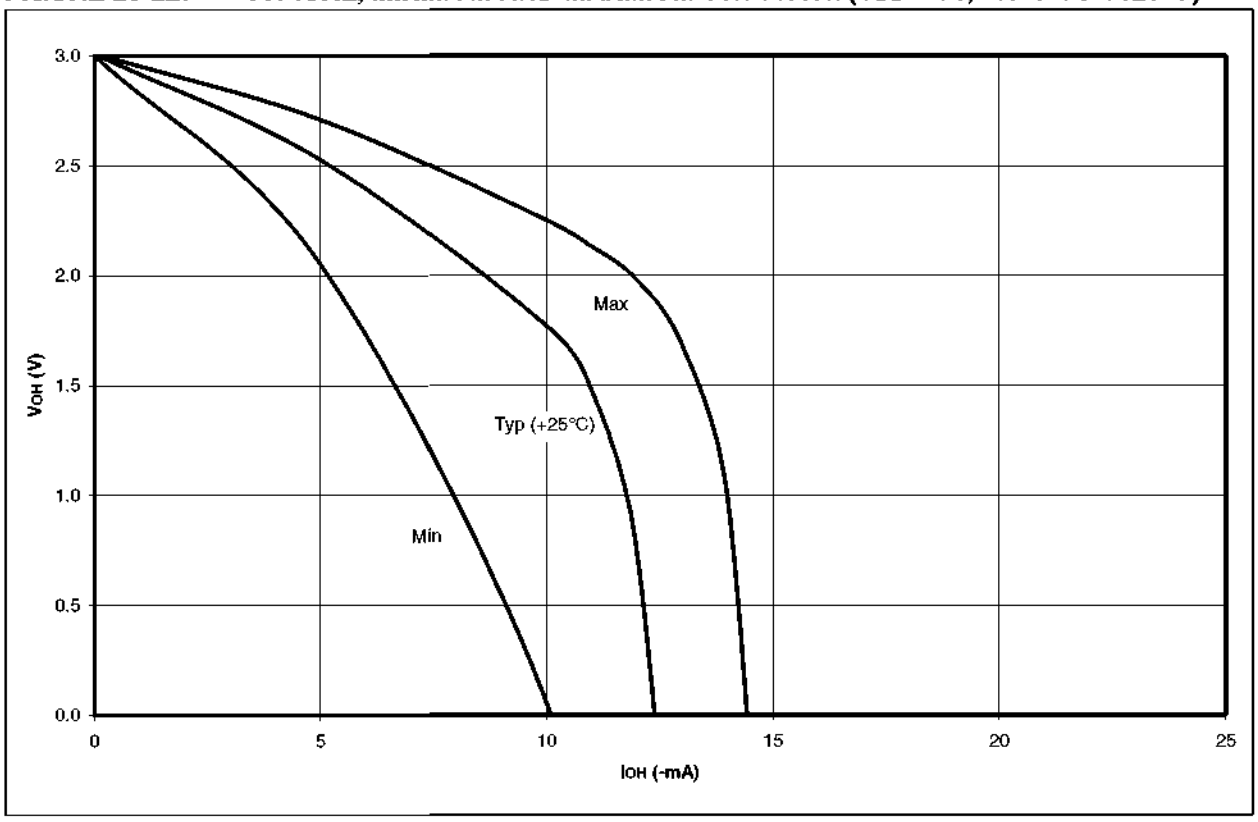


FIGURE 23-23: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM VOL vs. IOL (VDD = 5V, -40°C TO +125°C)

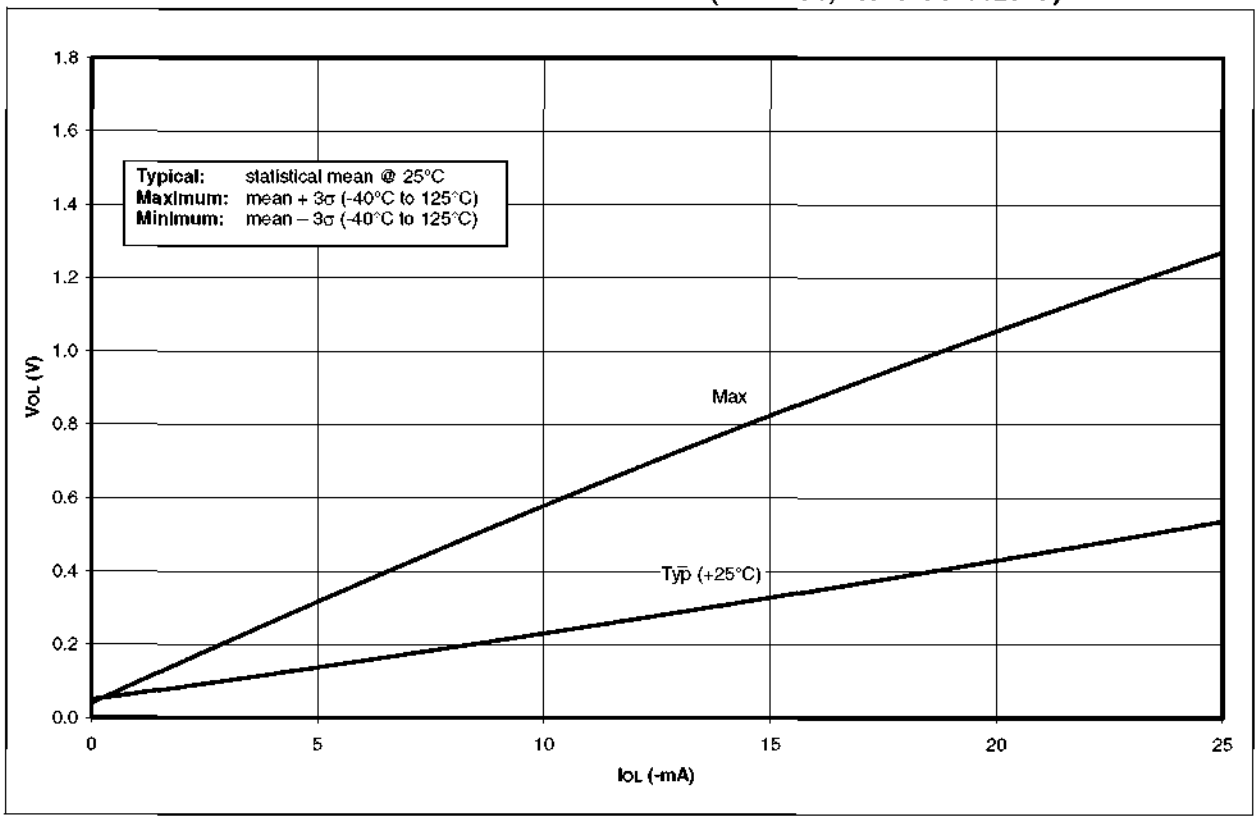
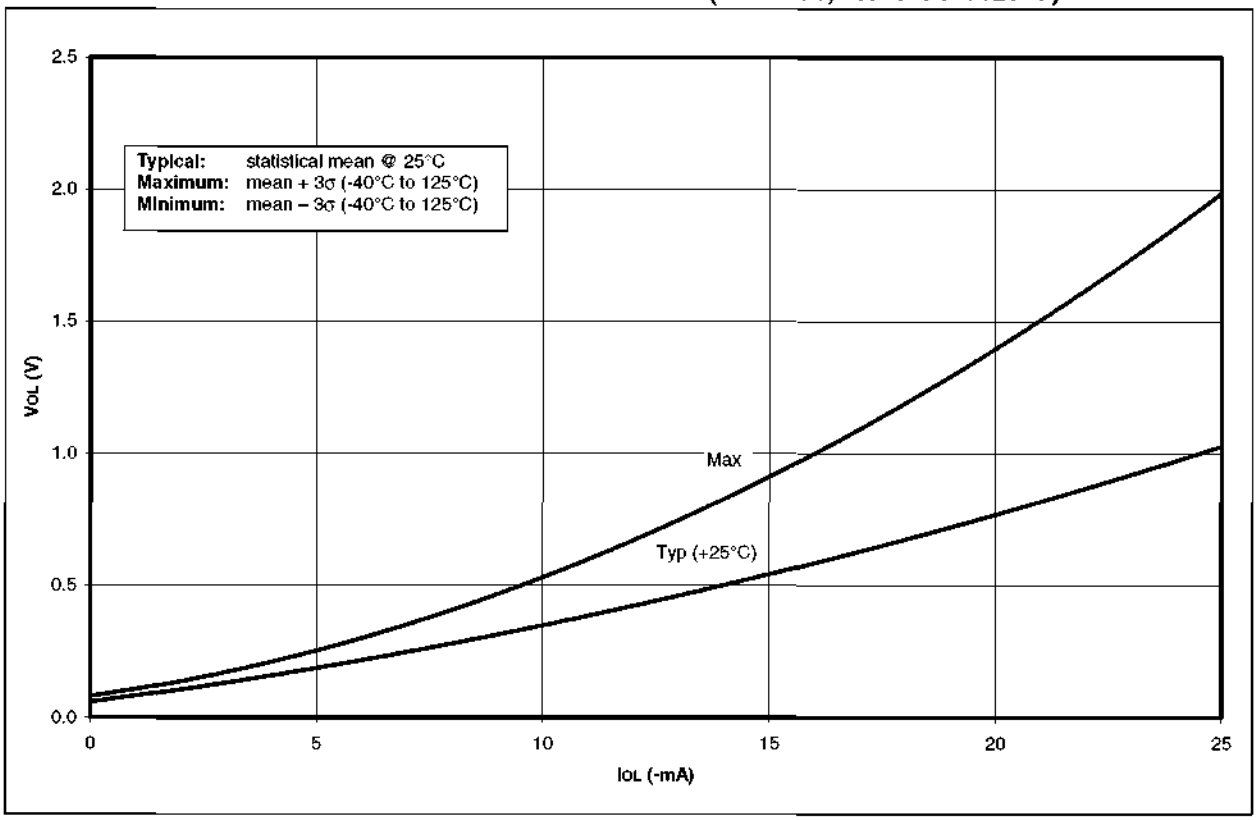


FIGURE 23-24: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM VOL vs. IOL (VDD = 3V, -40°C TO +125°C)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-25: MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM VIN vs. VDD (ST INPUT, -40°C TO +125°C)

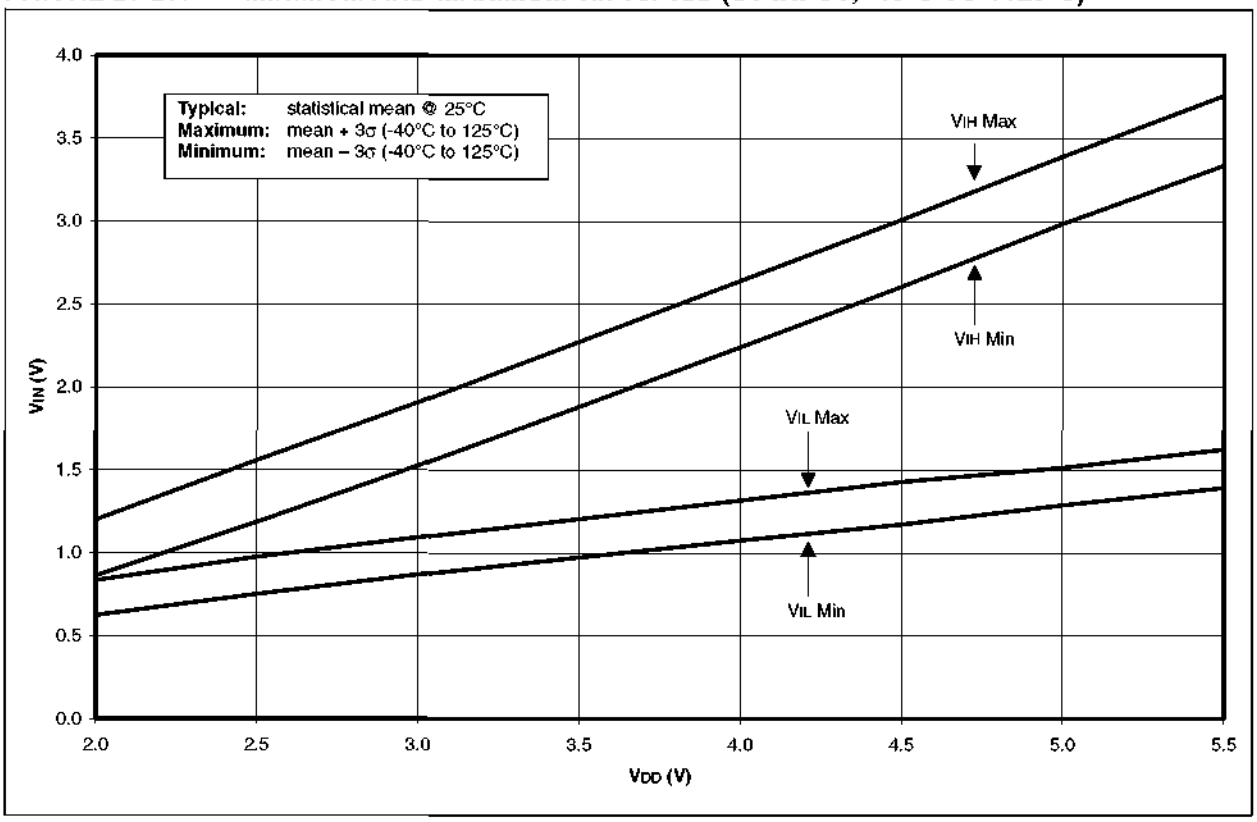


FIGURE 23-26: MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM VIN vs. VDD (TTL INPUT, -40°C TO +125°C)

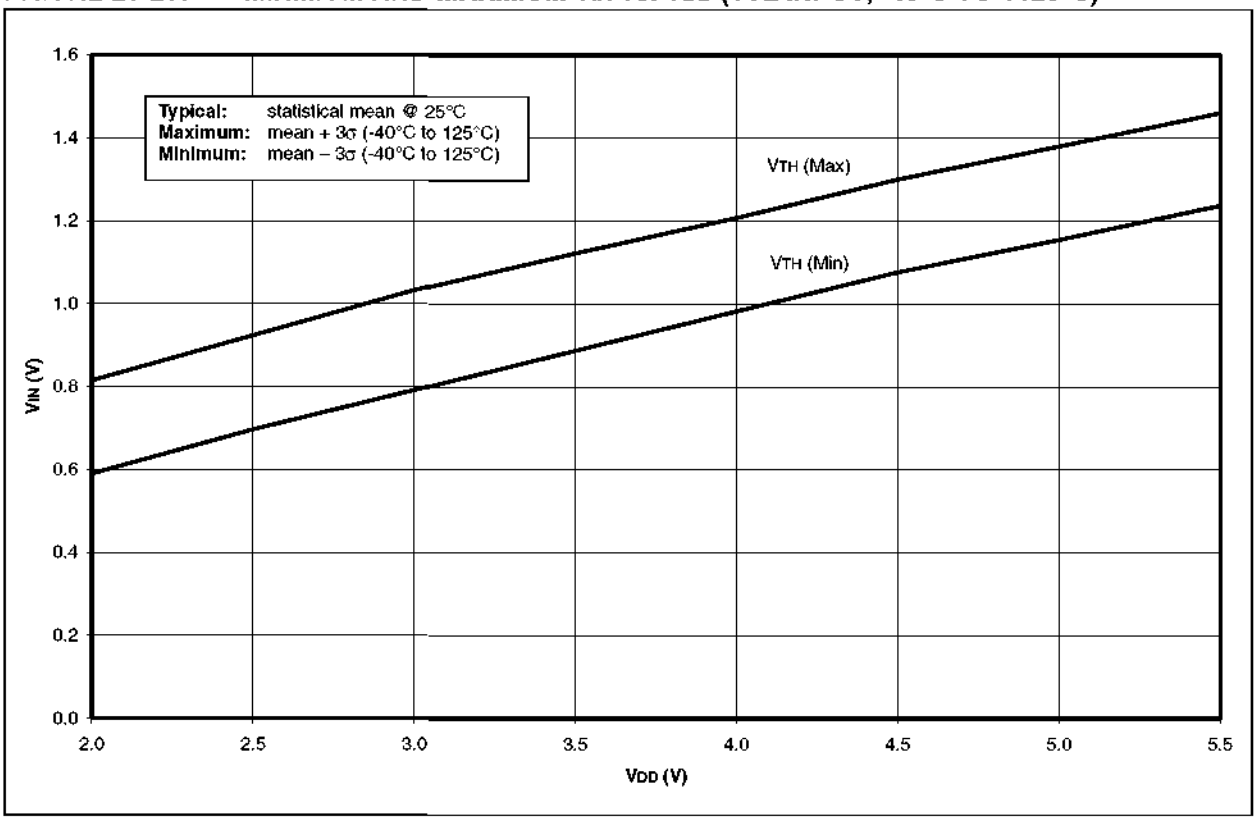


FIGURE 23-27: MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM VIN vs. VDD (I2C INPUT, -40°C TO +125°C)

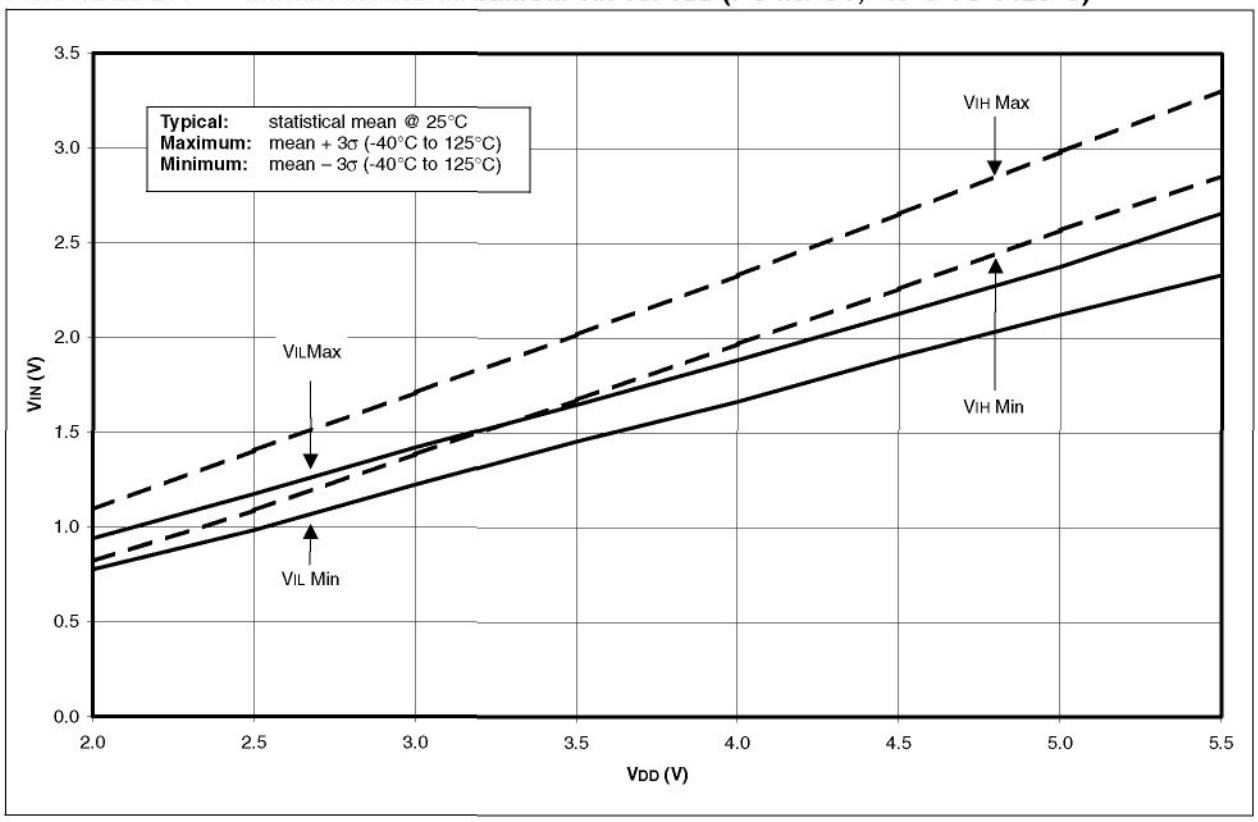
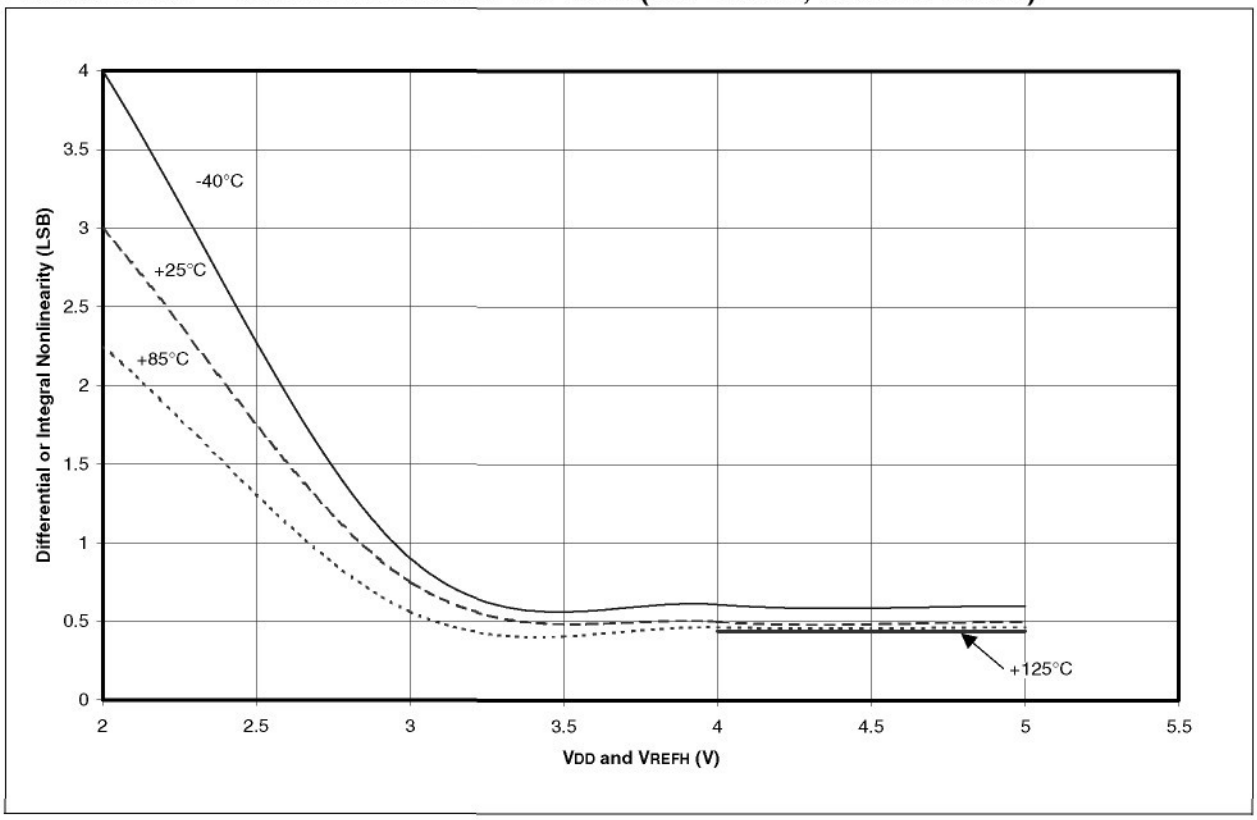
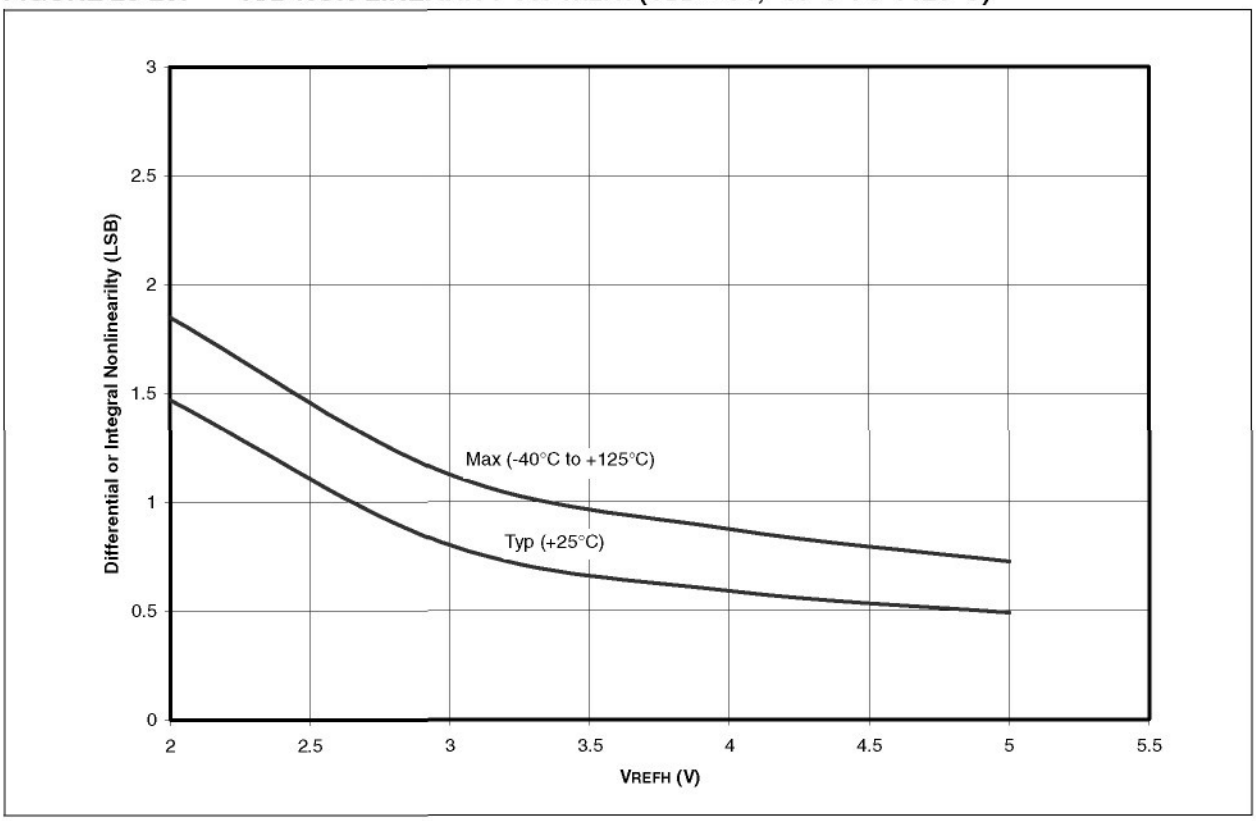


FIGURE 23-28: A/D NON-LINEARITY vs. VREFH (VDD = VREFH, -40°C TO +125°C)



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-29: A/D NON-LINEARITY vs. VREFH (VDD = 5V, -40°C TO +125°C)



NOTES:

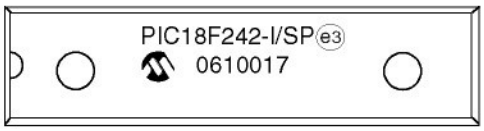
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

24.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

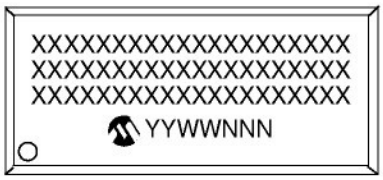
24.1 Package Marking Information

28-Lead SPDIP

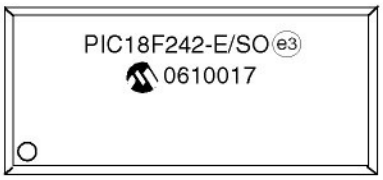
Example



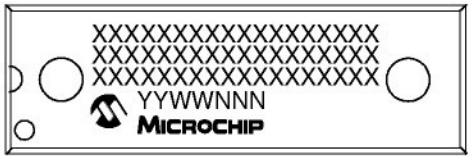
28-Lead SOIC



Example



40-Lead PDIP



Example

Legend:	XX...X	Customer-specific information
	Y	Year code (last digit of calendar year)
	YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
	WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week '01')
	NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code
	(e3)	Pb-free JEDEC designator for Matte Tin (Sn)
	*	This package is Pb-free. The Pb-free JEDEC designator ((e3)) can be found on the outer packaging for this package.

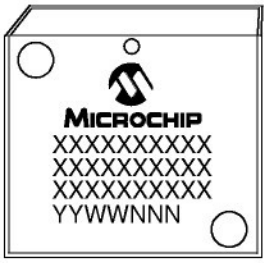
Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line, thus limiting the number of available characters for customer-specific information.

Package Marking Information (Cont'd)

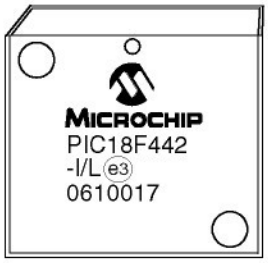
44-Lead TQFP

Example

44-Lead PLCC



Example



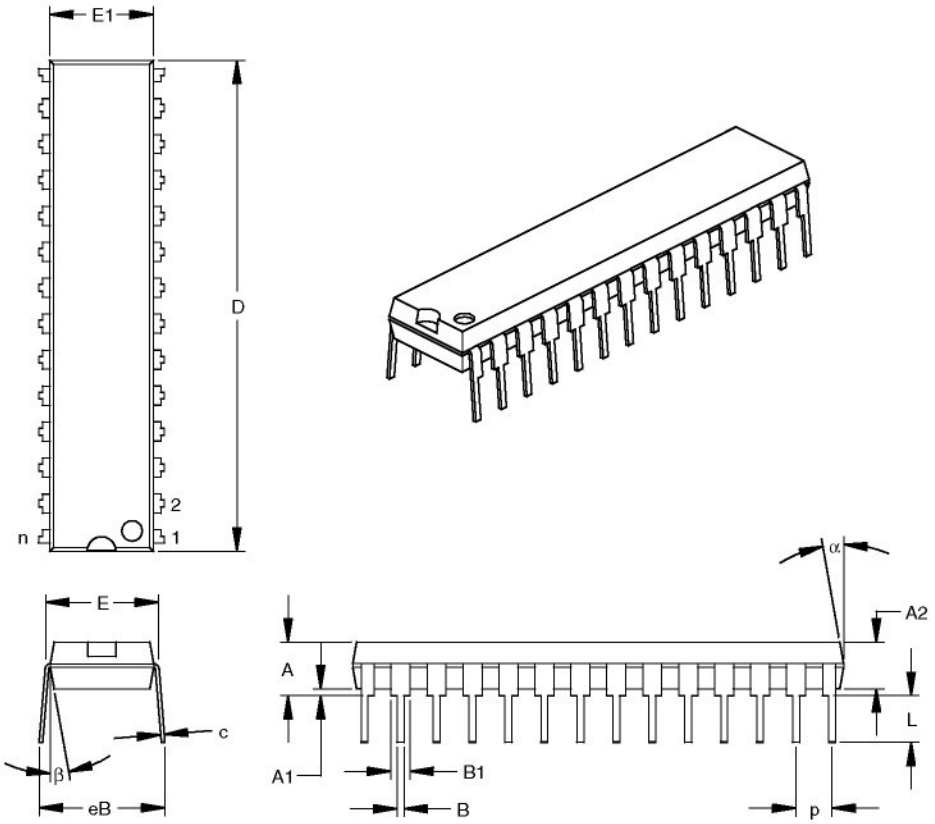
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

24.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

28-Lead Skinny Plastic Dual In-line (SP) – 300 mil Body (PDIP)

Note: For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging

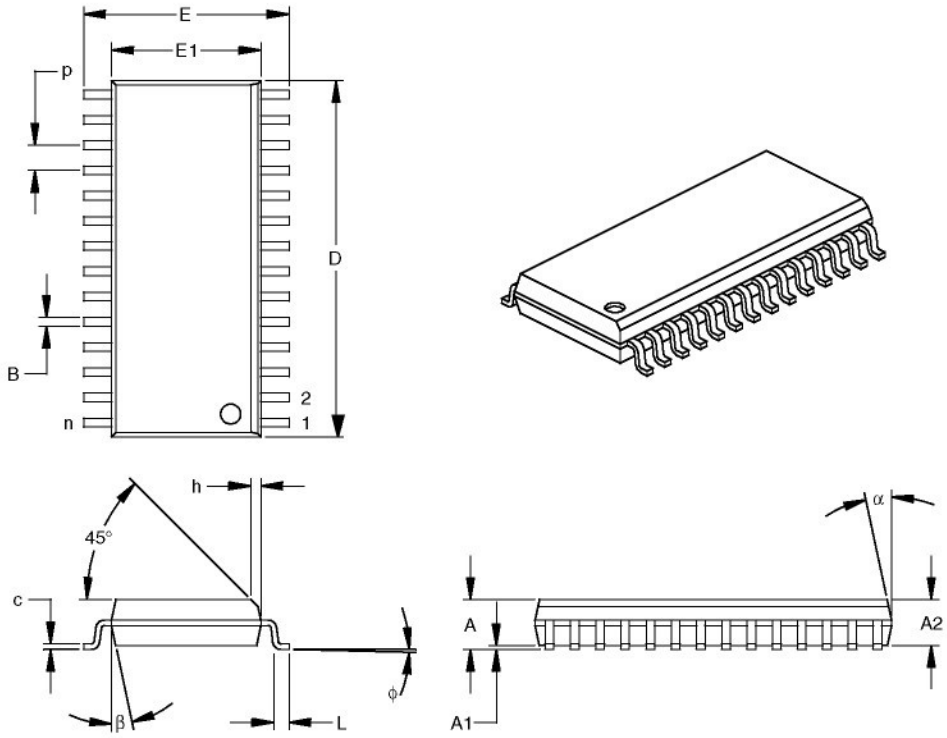


Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	p		.100			2.54	
Top to Seating Plane	A	.140	.150	.160	3.56	3.81	4.06
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.125	.130	.135	3.18	3.30	3.43
Base to Seating Plane	A1	.015			0.38		
Shoulder to Shoulder Width	E	.300	.310	.325	7.62	7.87	8.26
Molded Package Width	E1	.275	.285	.295	6.99	7.24	7.49
Overall Length	D	1.345	1.365	1.385	34.16	34.67	35.18
Tip to Seating Plane	L	.125	.130	.135	3.18	3.30	3.43
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.012	.015	0.20	0.29	0.38
Upper Lead Width	B1	.040	.053	.065	1.02	1.33	1.65
Lower Lead Width	B	.016	.019	.022	0.41	0.48	0.56
Overall Row Spacing §	eB	.320	.350	.430	8.13	8.89	10.92
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic
Notes:
Dimension D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-095
Drawing No. C04-070

28-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) – Wide, 300 mil Body (SOIC)

Note: For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Overall Height	A	.093	.099	.104	2.36	2.50	2.64
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.088	.091	.094	2.24	2.31	2.39
Standoff §	A1	.004	.008	.012	0.10	0.20	0.30
Overall Width	E	.394	.407	.420	10.01	10.34	10.67
Molded Package Width	E1	.288	.295	.299	7.32	7.49	7.59
Overall Length	D	.695	.704	.712	17.65	17.87	18.08
Chamfer Distance	h	.010	.020	.029	0.25	0.50	0.74
Foot Length	L	.016	.033	.050	0.41	0.84	1.27
Foot Angle Top	φ	0	4	8	0	4	8
Lead Thickness	c	.009	.011	.013	0.23	0.28	0.33
Lead Width	B	.014	.017	.020	0.36	0.42	0.51
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	12	15	0	12	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	12	15	0	12	15

* Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:

Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.

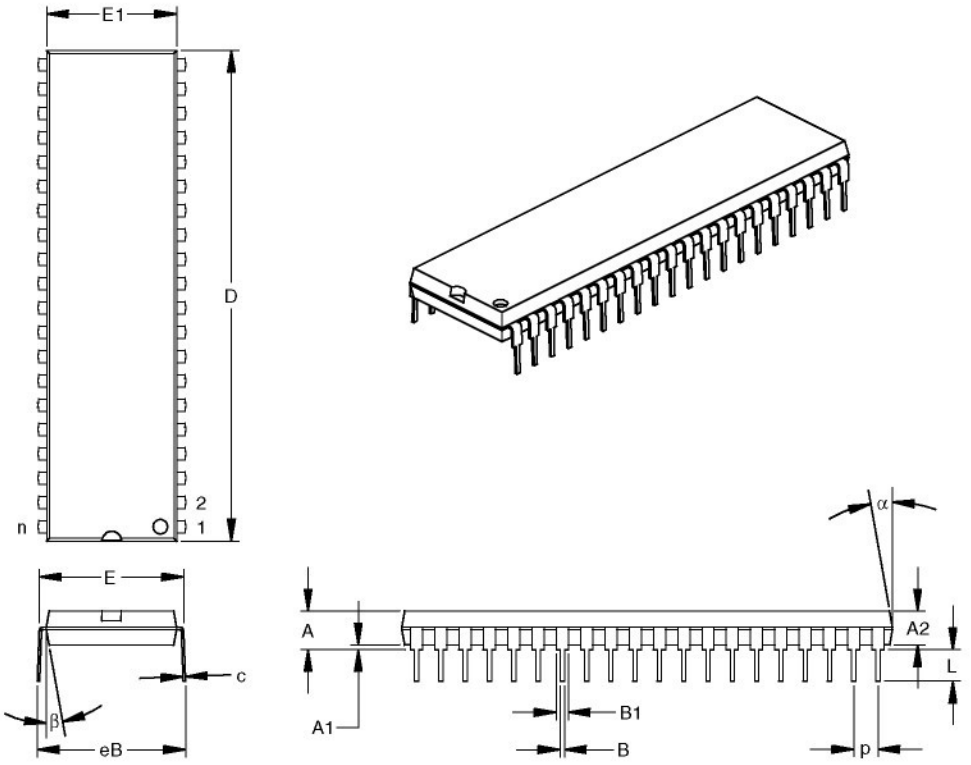
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-013

Drawing No. C04-052

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

40-Lead Plastic Dual In-line (P) – 600 mil Body (PDIP)

Note: For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging

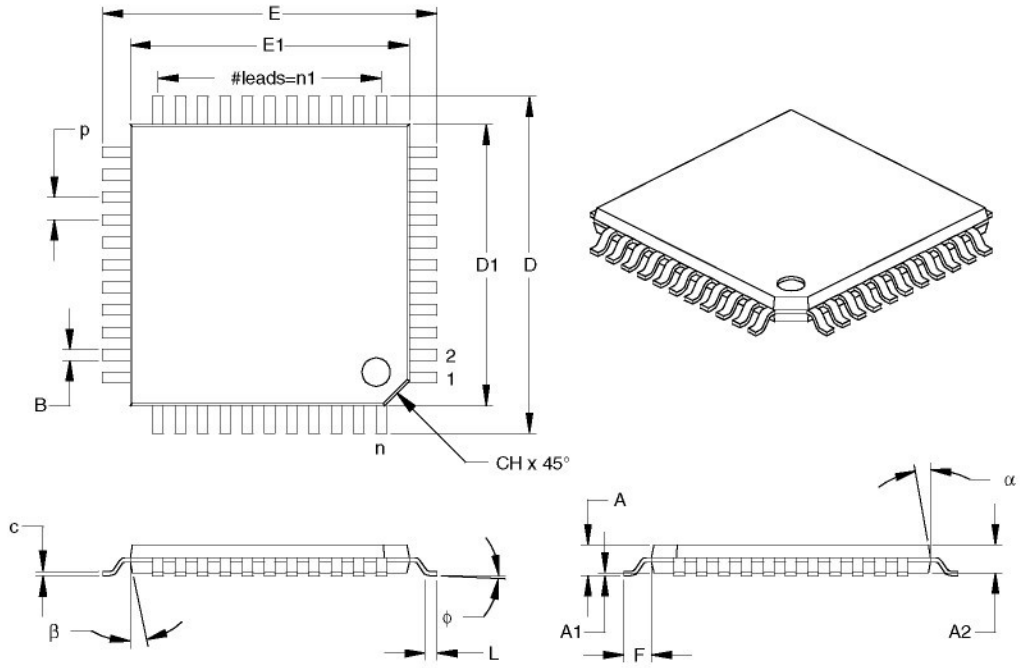


Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		40			40	
Pitch	p		.100			2.54	
Top to Seating Plane	A	.160	.175	.190	4.06	4.45	4.83
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.140	.150	.160	3.56	3.81	4.06
Base to Seating Plane	A1	.015			0.38		
Shoulder to Shoulder Width	E	.595	.600	.625	15.11	15.24	15.88
Molded Package Width	E1	.530	.545	.560	13.46	13.84	14.22
Overall Length	D	2.045	2.058	2.065	51.94	52.26	52.45
Tip to Seating Plane	L	.120	.130	.135	3.05	3.30	3.43
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.012	.015	0.20	0.29	0.38
Upper Lead Width	B1	.030	.050	.070	0.76	1.27	1.78
Lower Lead Width	B	.014	.018	.022	0.36	0.46	0.56
Overall Row Spacing §	eB	.620	.650	.680	15.75	16.51	17.27
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic
Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-011
Drawing No. C04-016

44-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 10x10x1 mm Body, 1.0/0.10 mm Lead Form (TQFP)

Note: For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		44			44	
Pitch	p		.031			0.80	
Pins per Side	n1		11			11	
Overall Height	A	.039	.043	.047	1.00	1.10	1.20
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.037	.039	.041	0.95	1.00	1.05
Standoff	A1	.002	.004	.006	0.05	0.10	0.15
Foot Length	L	.018	.024	.030	0.45	0.60	0.75
Footprint (Reference)	F		.039 REF.			1.00 REF.	
Foot Angle	ϕ	0	3.5	7	0	3.5	7
Overall Width	E	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Overall Length	D	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Molded Package Width	E1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Molded Package Length	D1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Lead Thickness	c	.004	.006	.008	0.09	0.15	0.20
Lead Width	B	.012	.015	.017	0.30	0.38	0.44
Pin 1 Corner Chamfer	CH	.025	.035	.045	0.64	0.89	1.14
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter

Notes:

Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.

REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

See ASME Y14.5M

JEDEC Equivalent: MS-026

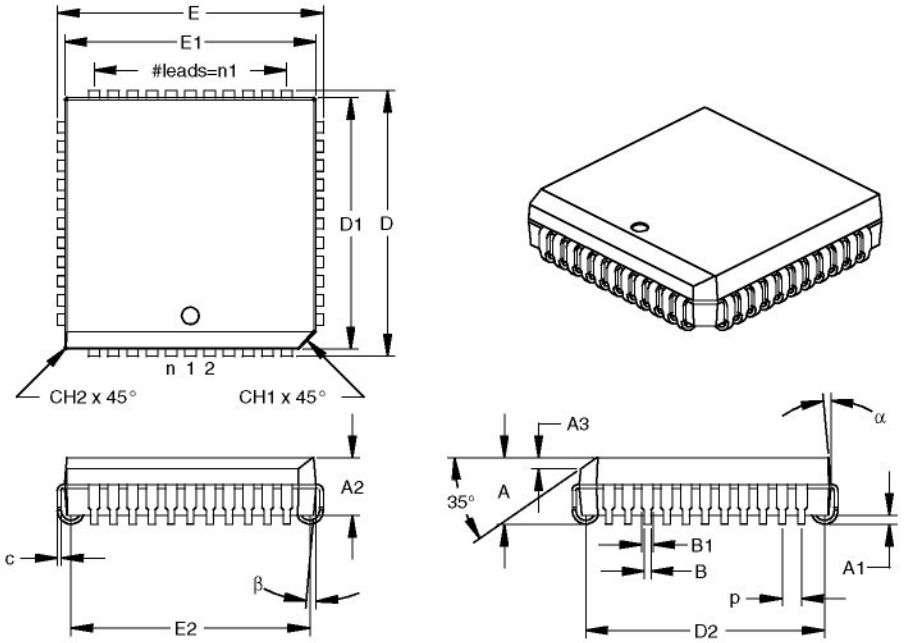
Drawing No. C04-076

Revised 07-22-05

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

44-Lead Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier (L) – Square (PLCC)

Note: For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		44			44	
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Pins per Side	n1		11			11	
Overall Height	A	.165	.173	.180	4.19	4.39	4.57
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.145	.153	.160	3.68	3.87	4.06
Standoff §	A1	.020	.028	.035	0.51	0.71	0.89
Side 1 Chamfer Height	A3	.024	.029	.034	0.61	0.74	0.86
Corner Chamfer 1	CH1	.040	.045	.050	1.02	1.14	1.27
Corner Chamfer (others)	CH2	.000	.005	.010	0.00	0.13	0.25
Overall Width	E	.685	.690	.695	17.40	17.53	17.65
Overall Length	D	.685	.690	.695	17.40	17.53	17.65
Molded Package Width	E1	.650	.653	.656	16.51	16.59	16.66
Molded Package Length	D1	.650	.653	.656	16.51	16.59	16.66
Footprint Width	E2	.590	.620	.630	14.99	15.75	16.00
Footprint Length	D2	.590	.620	.630	14.99	15.75	16.00
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.011	.013	0.20	0.27	0.33
Upper Lead Width	B1	.026	.029	.032	0.66	0.74	0.81
Lower Lead Width	B	.013	.020	.021	0.33	0.51	0.53
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	5	10	0	5	10
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	5	10	0	5	10

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic
Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-047
Drawing No. C04-048

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

APPENDIX A: REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (June 2001)

Original data sheet for the PIC18FXX2 family.

Revision B (August 2002)

This revision includes the DC and AC Characteristics Graphs and Tables. The Electrical Specifications in Section 22.0 have been updated and there have been minor corrections to the data sheet text.

Revision C (October 2006)

Packaging diagrams updated.

APPENDIX B: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

The differences between the devices listed in this data sheet are shown in Table B-1.

TABLE B-1: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

Feature	PIC18F242	PIC18F252	PIC18F442	PIC18F452
Program Memory (Kbytes)	16	32	16	32
Data Memory (Bytes)	768	1536	768	1536
A/D Channels	5	5	8	8
Parallel Slave Port (PSP)	No	No	Yes	Yes
Package Types	28-pin DIP 28-pin SOIC	28-pin DIP 28-pin SOIC	40-pin DIP 44-pin PLCC 44-pin TQFP	40-pin DIP 44-pin PLCC 44-pin TQFP

APPENDIX C: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS

This appendix discusses the considerations for converting from previous versions of a device to the ones listed in this data sheet. Typically, these changes are due to the differences in the process technology used. An example of this type of conversion is from a PIC16C74A to a PIC16C74B.

Not Applicable

APPENDIX D: MIGRATION FROM BASELINE TO ENHANCED DEVICES

This section discusses how to migrate from a Baseline device (i.e., PIC16C5X) to an Enhanced MCU device (i.e., PIC18FXXX).

The following are the list of modifications over the PIC16C5X microcontroller family:

Not Currently Available

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

APPENDIX E: MIGRATION FROM MID-RANGE TO ENHANCED DEVICES

A detailed discussion of the differences between the mid-range MCU devices (i.e., PIC16CXXX) and the enhanced devices (i.e., PIC18FXXX) is provided in AN716, "Migrating Designs from PIC16C74A/74B to PIC18F442". The changes discussed, while device specific, are generally applicable to all mid-range to enhanced device migrations.

This Application Note is available as Literature Number DS00716.

APPENDIX F: MIGRATION FROM HIGH-END TO ENHANCED DEVICES

A detailed discussion of the migration pathway and differences between the high-end MCU devices (i.e., PIC17CXXX) and the enhanced devices (i.e., PIC18FXXX) is provided in AN726, "PIC17CXXX to PIC18FXXX Migration". This Application Note is available as Literature Number DS00726.

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

INDEX

A

A/D 181
A/D Converter Flag (ADIF Bit) 183
A/D Converter Interrupt, Configuring 184
Acquisition Requirements 184
ADCON0 Register 181
ADCON1 Register 181
ADRESH Register 181
ADRESH/ADRESL Registers 183
ADRESL Register 181
Analog Port Pins 99, 100
Analog Port Pins, Configuring 186
Associated Registers 188
Configuring the Module 184
Conversion Clock (TAD) 186
Conversion Status (GO/DONE Bit) 183
Conversions 187
Converter Characteristics 287
Equations
Acquisition Time 185
Minimum Charging Time 185
Examples
Calculating the Minimum Required
Acquisition Time 185
Result Registers 187
Special Event Trigger (CCP) 120, 188
TAD vs. Device Operating Frequencies 186
Use of the CCP2 Trigger 188
Absolute Maximum Ratings 259
AC (Timing) Characteristics 269
Load Conditions for Device Timing
Specifications 270
Parameter Symbology 269
Temperature and Voltage Specifications - AC 270
Timing Conditions 270
ACKSTAT Status Flag 155
ADCON0 Register 181
GO/DONE Bit 183
ADCON1 Register 181
ADDLW 217
ADDWF 217
ADDWFC 218
ADRESH Register 181
ADRESH/ADRESL Registers 183
ADRESL Register 181
Analog-to-Digital Converter. *See* A/D
ANDLW 218
ANDWF 219
Assembler
MPASM Assembler 253

B

Baud Rate Generator 151
BC 219
BCF 220
BF Status Flag 155
Block Diagrams
A/D Converter 183
Analog Input Model 184
Baud Rate Generator 151
Capture Mode Operation 119
Compare Mode Operation 120
Low Voltage Detect
External Reference Source 190
Internal Reference Source 190
MSSP
I^2C Mode 134
MSSP (SPI Mode) 125
On-Chip Reset Circuit 25
Parallel Slave Port (PORTD and PORTE) 100
PIC18F2X2 8
PIC18F4X2 9
PLL 19
PORTC (Peripheral Output Override) 93
PORTD (I/O Mode) 95
PORTE (I/O Mode) 97
PWM Operation (Simplified) 122
RA3:RA0 and RA5 Port Pins 87
RA4/T0CKI Pin 88
RA6 Pin 88
RB2:RB0 Port Pins 91
RB3 Pin 91
RB7:RB4 Port Pins 90
Table Read Operation 55
Table Write Operation 56
Table Writes to FLASH Program Memory 61
Timer0 in 16-bit Mode 104
Timer0 in 8-bit Mode 104
Timer1 108
Timer1 (16-bit R/W Mode) 108
Timer2 112
Timer3 114
Timer3 (16-bit R/W Mode) 114
USART
Asynchronous Receive 174
Asynchronous Transmit 172
Watchdog Timer 204
BN 220
BNC 221
BNN 221
BNOV 222
BNZ 222
BOR. *See* Brown-out Reset
BOV 225
BRA 223
BRG. *See* Baud Rate Generator
Brown-out Reset (BOR) 26
BSF 223
BTFSC 224
BTFSS 224
BTG 225
Bus Collision During a STOP Condition 163
BZ 226

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

C

CALL 226
Capture (CCP Module) 119
  Associated Registers 121
  CCP Pin Configuration 119
  CCPR1H:CCPR1L Registers 119
  Software Interrupt 119
  Timer1/Timer3 Mode Selection 119
Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) 117
  Capture Mode. *See* Capture
  CCP1 118
    CCPR1H Register 118
    CCPR1L Register 118
  CCP2 118
    CCPR2H Register 118
    CCPR2L Register 118
  Compare Mode. *See* Compare
  Interaction of Two CCP Modules 118
  PWM Mode. *See* PWM
  Timer Resources 118
Clocking Scheme/Instruction Cycle 39
CLRF 227
CLRWDT 227
Code Examples
  16 x 16 Signed Multiply Routine 72
  16 x 16 Unsigned Multiply Routine 72
  8 x 8 Signed Multiply Routine 71
  8 x 8 Unsigned Multiply Routine 71
  Changing Between Capture Prescalers 119
  Data EEPROM Read 67
  Data EEPROM Refresh Routine 68
  Data EEPROM Write 67
  Erasing a FLASH Program Memory Row 60
  Fast Register Stack 39
  How to Clear RAM (Bank1) Using
    Indirect Addressing 50
  Initializing PORTA 87
  Initializing PORTB 90
  Initializing PORTC 93
  Initializing PORTD 95
  Initializing PORTE 97
  Loading the SSPBUF (SSPSR) Register 128
  Reading a FLASH Program Memory Word 59
  Saving STATUS, WREG and BSR
    Registers in RAM 85
  Writing to FLASH Program Memory 62–63
Code Protection 195
COMF 228
Compare (CCP Module) 120
  Associated Registers 121
  CCP Pin Configuration 120
  CCPR1 Register 120
  Software Interrupt 120
  Special Event Trigger 109, 115, 120, 188
  Timer1/Timer3 Mode Selection 120
Configuration Bits 195
Context Saving During Interrupts 85
Conversion Considerations 314
CPFSEQ 228
CPFSGT 229
CPFSLT 229

D

Data EEPROM Memory
  Associated Registers 69
  EEADR Register 65
  EECON1 Register 65
  EECON2 Register 65
  Operation During Code Protect 68
  Protection Against Spurious Write 68
  Reading 67
  Using 68
  Write Verify 68
  Writing 67
Data Memory 42
  General Purpose Registers 42
  Map for PIC18F242/442 43
  Map for PIC18F252/452 44
  Special Function Registers 42
DAW 230
DC and AC Characteristics
  Graphs and Tables 289
DC Characteristics 261, 265
DCFSNZ 231
DECF 230
DECFSZ 231
Development Support 253
Device Differences 313
Device Overview 7
  Features 7
Direct Addressing 51
  Example 49

E

Electrical Characteristics 259
Errata 5

F

Firmware Instructions 211
FLASH Program Memory 55
  Associated Registers 63
  Control Registers 56
  Erase Sequence 60
  Erasing 60
  Operation During Code Protect 63
  Reading 59
  TABLAT Register 58
  Table Pointer 58
    Boundaries Based on Operation 58
  Table Pointer Boundaries 58
  Table Reads and Table Writes 55
    Block Diagrams
      Reads from FLASH Program Memory 59
  Writing to 61
    Protection Against Spurious Writes 63
    Unexpected Termination 63
    Write Verify 63

G

General Call Address Support 148
GOTO 232

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

I

I/O Ports 87
I²C (MSSP Module)
  ACK Pulse 139
  Read/Write Bit Information (R/W Bit) 139
I²C (SSP Module)
  ACK Pulse 138
I²C Master Mode Reception 155
I²C Mode
  Clock Stretching 144
I²C Mode (MSSP Module) 134
  Registers 134
I²C Module
  ACK Pulse 138, 139
  Acknowledge Sequence Timing 158
  Baud Rate Generator 151
  Bus Collision
    Repeated START Condition 162
    START Condition 160
  Clock Arbitration 152
  Effect of a RESET 159
  General Call Address Support 148
  Master Mode 149
    Operation 150
    Repeated START Condition Timing 154
  Master Mode START Condition 153
  Master Mode Transmission 155
  Multi-Master Communication, Bus Collision
    and Arbitration 159
  Multi-Master Mode 159
  Operation 138
  Read/Write Bit Information (R/W Bit) 138, 139
  Serial Clock (RC3/SCK/SCL) 139
  Slave Mode 138
    Addressing 138
    Reception 139
    Transmission 139
  Slave Mode Timing (10-bit Reception,
    SEN = 0) 142
  Slave Mode Timing (10-bit Reception,
    SEN = 1) 147
  Slave Mode Timing (10-bit Transmission) 143
  Slave Mode Timing (7-bit Reception,
    SEN = 0) 140
  Slave Mode Timing (7-bit Reception,
    SEN = 1) 146
  Slave Mode Timing (7-bit Transmission) 141
  SLEEP Operation 159
  STOP Condition Timing 158
ICEPIC In-Circuit Emulator 254
ID Locations 195, 210
INCF 232
INCFSZ 233
In-Circuit Debugger 210
In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP) 195, 210
Indirect Addressing 51
  INDF and FSR Registers 50
Indirect Addressing Operation 51
Indirect File Operand 42
INFSNZ 233
Instruction Cycle 39
Instruction Flow/Pipelining 40
Instruction Format 213
Instruction Set 211
  ADDLW 217
  ADDWF 217
  ADDWFC 218
  ANDLW 218
  ANDWF 219
  BC 219
  BCF 220
  BN 220
  BNC 221
  BNN 221
  BNOV 222
  BNZ 222
  BOV 225
  BRA 223
  BSF 223
  BTFSC 224
  BTFSS 224
  BTG 225
  BZ 226
  CALL 226
  CLRF 227
  CLRWDT 227
  COMF 228
  CPFSEQ 228
  CPFSGT 229
  CPFSLT 229
  DAW 230
  DCFSNZ 231
  DECF 230
  DECFSZ 231
  GOTO 232
  INCF 232
  INCFSZ 233
  INFSNZ 233
  IORLW 234
  IORWF 234
  LFSR 235
  MOVF 235
  MOVFF 236
  MOVLB 236
  MOVLW 237
  MOVWF 237
  MULLW 238
  MULWF 238
  NEGF 239
  NOP 239
  POP 240
  PUSH 240
  RCALL 241
  RESET 241
  RETFIE 242
  RETLW 242
  RETURN 243
  RLCF 243
  RLNCF 244
  RRCF 244
  RRNCF 245
  SETF 245
  SLEEP 246
  SUBFWB 246
  SUBLW 247
  SUBWF 247
  SUBWFB 248
  SWAPF 248

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TBLRD 249
TBLWT 250
TSTFSZ 251
XORLW 251
XORWF 252
Summary Table 214
Instructions in Program Memory 40
Two-Word Instructions 41
INT Interrupt (RB0/INT). *See* Interrupt Sources
INTCON Register
RBIF Bit 90
INTCON Registers 75–77
Inter-Integrated Circuit. *See* I^2C
Interrupt Sources 195
A/D Conversion Complete 184
Capture Complete (CCP) 119
Compare Complete (CCP) 120
INT0 85
Interrupt-on-Change (RB7:RB4) 90
PORTB, Interrupt-on-Change 85
RB0/INT Pin, External 85
TMR0 85
TMR0 Overflow 105
TMR1 Overflow 107, 109
TMR2 to PR2 Match 112
TMR2 to PR2 Match (PWM) 111, 122
TMR3 Overflow 113, 115
USART Receive/Transmit Complete 165
Interrupts 73
Logic 74
Interrupts, Enable Bits
CCP1 Enable (CCP1IE Bit) 119
Interrupts, Flag Bits
A/D Converter Flag (ADIF Bit) 183
CCP1 Flag (CCP1IF Bit) 119
CCP1IF Flag (CCP1IF Bit) 120
Interrupt-on-Change (RB7:RB4) Flag
(RBIF Bit) 90
IORLW 234
IORWF 234
IPR Registers 82–83

K

KEELOQ Evaluation and Programming Tools 256

L

LFSR 235
Lookup Tables
Computed GOTO 41
Table Reads, Table Writes 41
Low Voltage Detect 189
Converter Characteristics 267
Effects of a RESET 193
Operation 192
Current Consumption 193
During SLEEP 193
Reference Voltage Set Point 193
Typical Application 189
LVD. *See* Low Voltage Detect. 189

M

Master SSP (MSSP) Module Overview 125
Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP). *See* MSSP.
Master Synchronous Serial Port. *See* MSSP
Memory Organization
Data Memory 42
Program Memory 35
Memory Programming Requirements 268
Migration from Baseline to Enhanced Devices 314
Migration from High-End to Enhanced Devices 315
Migration from Mid-Range to Enhanced Devices 315
MOVF 235
MOVFF 236
MOVLB 236
MOVLW 237
MOVWF 237
MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers 253
MPLAB ICD In-Circuit Debugger 255
MPLAB ICE High Performance Universal In-Circuit
Emulator with MPLAB IDE 254
MPLAB Integrated Development
Environment Software 253
MPLINK Object Linker/MPLIB Object Librarian 254
MSSP 125
Control Registers (general) 125
Enabling SPI I/O 129
Operation 128
Typical Connection 129
MSSP Module
SPI Master Mode 130
SPI Master./Slave Connection 129
SPI Slave Mode 131
MULLW 238
MULWF 238

N

NEGF 239
NOP 239

O

Opcode Field Descriptions 212
OPTION_REG Register
PSA Bit 105
T0CS Bit 105
T0PS2:T0PS0 Bits 105
T0SE Bit 105
Oscillator Configuration 17
EC 17
ECIO 17
HS 17
HS + PLL 17
LP 17
RC 17
RCIO 17
XT 17
Oscillator Selection 195
Oscillator, Timer1 ..... 107, 109, 115
Oscillator, Timer3 113
Oscillator, WDT 203

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

P

Packaging 305
  Details 307
  Marking Information 305
Parallel Slave Port
  PORTD 100
Parallel Slave Port (PSP) 95, 100
  Associated Registers 101
  RE0/RD/AN5 Pin 99, 100
  RE1/WR/AN6 Pin 99, 100
  RE2/CS/AN7 Pin 99, 100
  Select (PSPMODE Bit) 95, 100
PIC18F2X2 Pin Functions
  MCLR/VPP 10
  OSC1/CLKI 10
  OSC2/CLKO/RA6 10
  RA0/AN0 10
  RA1/AN1 10
  RA2/AN2/VREF- 10
  RA3/AN3/VREF+ 10
  RA4/T0CKI 10
  RA5/AN4/SS/LVDIN 10
  RB0/INT0 11
  RB1/INT1 11
  RB2/INT2 11
  RB3/CCP2 11
  RB4 11
  RB5/PGM 11
  RB6/PGC 11
  RB7/PGD 11
  RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI 12
  RC1/T1OSI/CCP2 12
  RC2/CCP1 12
  RC3/SCK/SCL 12
  RC4/SDI/SDA 12
  RC5/SDO 12
  RC6/TX/CK 12
  RC7/RX/DT 12
  VDD 12
  VSS 12
PIC18F4X2 Pin Functions
  MCLR/VPP 13
  OSC1/CLKI 13
  OSC2/CLKO 13
  RA0/AN0 13
  RA1/AN1 13
  RA2/AN2/VREF- 13
  RA3/AN3/VREF+ 13
  RA4/T0CKI 13
  RA5/AN4/SS/LVDIN 13
  RB0/INT 14
  RB1 14
  RB2 14
  RB3 14
  RB4 14
  RB5/PGM 14
  RB6/PGC 14
  RB7/PGD 14
  RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI 15
  RC1/T1OSI/CCP2 15
  RC2/CCP1 15
  RC3/SCK/SCL 15
  RC4/SDI/SDA 15
  RC5/SDO 15
  RC6/TX/CK 15
  RC7/RX/DT 15
  RD0/PSP0 16
  RD1/PSP1 16
  RD2/PSP2 16
  RD3/PSP3 16
  RD4/PSP4 16
  RD5/PSP5 16
  RD6/PSP6 16
  RD7/PSP7 16
  RE0/RD/AN5 16
  RE1/WR/AN6 16
  RE2/CS/AN7 16
  VDD 16
  VSS 16
PIC18FXX2 Voltage-Frequency Graph
  (Industrial) 260
PIC18LFXX2 Voltage-Frequency Graph
  (Industrial) 260
PICDEM 1 Low Cost PICmicro
  Demonstration Board 255
PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board 256
PICDEM 2 Low Cost PIC16CXX
  Demonstration Board 255
PICDEM 3 Low Cost PIC16CXXX
  Demonstration Board 256
PICSTART Plus Entry Level Development
  Programmer 255
PIE Registers 80–81
Pinout I/O Descriptions
  PIC18F2X2 10
PIR Registers 78–79
PLL Lock Time-out 26
Pointer, FSR 50
POP 240
POR. *See* Power-on Reset
PORTA
  Associated Registers 89
  LATA Register 87
  PORTA Register 87
  TRISA Register 87
PORTB
  Associated Registers 92
  LATB Register 90
  PORTB Register 90
  RB0/INT Pin, External 85
  RB7:RB4 Interrupt-on-Change Flag (RBIF Bit) 90
  TRISB Register 90
PORTC
  Associated Registers 94
  LATC Register 93
  PORTC Register 93
  RC3/SCK/SCL Pin 139
  RC7/RX/DT Pin 168
  TRISC Register 93, 165
PORTD
  Associated Registers 96
  LATD Register 95
  Parallel Slave Port (PSP) Function 95
  PORTD Register 95
  TRISD Register 95

PORTE
Analog Port Pins 99, 100
Associated Registers 99
LATE Register 97
PORTE Register 97
PSP Mode Select (PSPMODE Bit) 95, 100
RE0/RD/AN5 Pin 99, 100
RE1/WR/AN6 Pin 99, 100
RE2/CS/AN7 Pin 99, 100
TRISE Register 97
Postscaler, WDT
Assignment (PSA Bit) 105
Rate Select (T0PS2:T0PS0 Bits) 105
Switching Between Timer0 and WDT 105
Power-down Mode. *See* SLEEP
Power-on Reset (POR) 26
Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) 26
Power-up Timer (PWRT) 26
Prescaler, Capture 119
Prescaler, Timer0 105
Assignment (PSA Bit) 105
Rate Select (T0PS2:T0PS0 Bits) 105
Switching Between Timer0 and WDT 105
Prescaler, Timer2 122
PRO MATE II Universal Device Programmer 255
Product Identification System 327
Program Counter
PCL Register 39
PCLATH Register 39
PCLATU Register 39
Program Memory
Interrupt Vector 35
Map and Stack for PIC18F442/242 36
Map and Stack for PIC18F452/252 36
RESET Vector 35
Program Verification and Code Protection 207
Associated Registers 207
Programming, Device Instructions 211
PSP. *See* Parallel Slave Port.
Pulse Width Modulation. *See* PWM (CCP Module).
PUSH 240
PWM (CCP Module) 122
Associated Registers 123
CCPR1H:CCPR1L Registers 122
Duty Cycle 122
Example Frequencies/Resolutions 123
Period 122
Setup for PWM Operation 123
TMR2 to PR2 Match 111, 122

Q

Q Clock 122

R

RAM. *See* Data Memory
RC Oscillator 18
RCALL 241
RCSTA Register
SPEN Bit 165
Register File 42
Registers
ADCON0 (A/D Control 0) 181
ADCON1 (A/D Control 1) 182
CCP1CON and CCP2CON
(Capture/Compare/PWM Control) 117
CONFIG1H (Configuration 1 High) 196
CONFIG2H (Configuration 2 High) 197
CONFIG2L (Configuration 2 Low) 197
CONFIG3H (Configuration 3 High) 198
CONFIG4L (Configuration 4 Low) 198
CONFIG5H (Configuration 5 High) 199
CONFIG5L (Configuration 5 Low) 199
CONFIG6H (Configuration 6 High) 200
CONFIG6L (Configuration 6 Low) 200
CONFIG7H (Configuration 7 High) 201
CONFIG7L (Configuration 7 Low) 201
DEVID1 (Device ID Register 1) 202
DEVID2 (Device ID Register 2) 202
EECON1 (Data EEPROM Control 1) 57, 66
File Summary 46–48
INTCON (Interrupt Control) 75
INTCON2 (Interrupt Control 2) 76
INTCON3 (Interrupt Control 3) 77
IPR1 (Peripheral Interrupt Priority 1) 82
IPR2 (Peripheral Interrupt Priority 2) 83
LVDCON (LVD Control) 191
OSCCON (Oscillator Control) 21
PIE1 (Peripheral Interrupt Enable 1) 80
PIE2 (Peripheral Interrupt Enable 2) 81
PIR1 (Peripheral Interrupt Request 1) 78
PIR2 (Peripheral Interrupt Request 2) 79
RCON (Register Control) 84
RCON (RESET Control) 53
RCSTA (Receive Status and Control) 167
SSPCON1 (MSSP Control 1)
I^2C Mode 136
SPI Mode 127
SSPCON2 (MSSP Control 2)
I^2C Mode 137
SSPSTAT (MSSP Status)
I^2C Mode 135
SPI Mode 126
STATUS 52
STKPTR (Stack Pointer) 38
T0CON (Timer0 Control) 103
T1CON (Timer 1 Control) 107
T2CON (Timer 2 Control) 111
T3CON (Timer3 Control) 113
TRISE 98
TXSTA (Transmit Status and Control) 166
WDTCON (Watchdog Timer Control) 203
RESET 25, 195, 241
Brown-out Reset (BOR) 195
MCLR Reset (During SLEEP) 25
MCLR Reset (Normal Operation) 25
Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) 195
Power-on Reset (POR) 25, 195
Power-up Timer (PWRT) 195
Programmable Brown-out Reset (BOR) 25
RESET Instruction 25
Stack Full Reset 25
Stack Underflow Reset 25
Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset 25

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RETFIE 242
RETLW 242
RETURN 243
Revision History 313
RLCF 243
RLNCF 244
RRCF 244
RRNCF 245

S

SCI. *See* USART
SCK 125
SDI 125
SDO 125
Serial Clock, SCK 125
Serial Communication Interface. *See* USART
Serial Data In, SDI 125
Serial Data Out, SDO 125
Serial Peripheral Interface. *See* SPI
SETF 245
Slave Select Synchronization 131
Slave Select, $\overline{SS}$ 125
SLEEP 195, 205, 246
Software Simulator (MPLAB SIM) 254
Special Event Trigger. *See* Compare
Special Features of the CPU 195
  Configuration Registers 196–201
Special Function Registers 42
  Map 45
SPI
  Master Mode 130
  Serial Clock 125
  Serial Data In 125
  Serial Data Out 125
  Slave Select 125
  SPI Clock 130
  SPI Mode 125
SPI Master/Slave Connection 129
SPI Module
  Associated Registers 133
  Bus Mode Compatibility 133
  Effects of a RESET 133
  Master/Slave Connection 129
  Slave Mode 131
  Slave Select Synchronization 131
  Slave Synch Timing 131
  SLEEP Operation 133
$\overline{SS}$ 125
SSP
  I^2C Mode. *See* I^2C
  SPI Mode 125
  SPI Mode. *See* SPI
  SSPBUF Register 130
  SSPSR Register 130
  TMR2 Output for Clock Shift 111, 112
SSPOV Status Flag 155
SSPSTAT Register
  R/$\overline{W}$ Bit 138, 139
Status Bits
  Significance and the Initialization Condition
    for RCON Register 27
SUBFWB 246
SUBLW 247
SUBWF 247
SUBWFB 248
SWAPF 248

T

TABLAT Register 58
Table Pointer Operations (table) 58
TBLPTR Register 58
TBLRD 249
TBLWT 250
Time-out Sequence 26
  Time-out in Various Situations 27
Timer0 103
  16-bit Mode Timer Reads and Writes 105
  Associated Registers 105
  Clock Source Edge Select (T0SE Bit) 105
  Clock Source Select (T0CS Bit) 105
  Operation 105
  Overflow Interrupt 105
  Prescaler. *See* Prescaler, Timer0
Timer1 107
  16-bit Read/Write Mode 109
  Associated Registers 110
  Operation 108
  Oscillator 107, 109
  Overflow Interrupt 107, 109
  Special Event Trigger (CCP) 109, 120
  TMR1H Register 107
  TMR1L Register 107
Timer2 111
  Associated Registers 112
  Operation 111
  Postscaler. *See* Postscaler, Timer2
  PR2 Register 111, 122
  Prescaler. *See* Prescaler, Timer2
  SSP Clock Shift 111, 112
  TMR2 Register 111
  TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt 111, 112, 122
Timer3 113
  Associated Registers 115
  Operation 114
  Oscillator 113, 115
  Overflow Interrupt 113, 115
  Special Event Trigger (CCP) 115
  TMR3H Register 113
  TMR3L Register 113
Timing Diagrams
    Bus Collision
      Transmit and Acknowledge 159
  A/D Conversion 287
  Acknowledge Sequence 158
  Baud Rate Generator with Clock Arbitration 152
  BRG Reset Due to SDA Arbitration During
    START Condition 161
  Brown-out Reset (BOR) 274
  Bus Collision
    Start Condition (SDA Only) 160
  Bus Collision During a Repeated
    START Condition (Case 1) 162
  Bus Collision During a Repeated
    START Condition (Case 2) 162
  Bus Collision During a START Condition
    (SCL = 0) 161
  Bus Collision During a STOP Condition
    (Case 1) 163
  Bus Collision During a STOP Condition
    (Case 2) 163
  Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP1 and CCP2) 276
  CLKO and I/O 272
  Clock Synchronization 145

Example SPI Master Mode (CKE = 0) 278
Example SPI Master Mode (CKE = 1) 279
Example SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 0) 280
Example SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 1) 281
External Clock (All Modes except PLL) 271
First START Bit Timing 153
I2C Bus Data 282
I2C Bus START/STOP Bits 282
I2C Master Mode (Reception, 7-bit Address) 157
I2C Master Mode (Transmission, 7 or 10-bit Address) 156
I2C Slave Mode Timing (10-bit Reception, SEN = 0) 142
I2C Slave Mode Timing (10-bit Transmission) 143
I2C Slave Mode Timing (7-bit Reception, SEN = 0) 140
I2C Slave Mode Timing (7-bit Reception, SEN = 1) 146, 147
I2C Slave Mode Timing (7-bit Transmission) 141
Low Voltage Detect 192
Master SSP I2C Bus Data 284
Master SSP I2C Bus START/STOP Bits 284
Parallel Slave Port (PIC18F4X2) 277
Parallel Slave Port (Read) 101
Parallel Slave Port (Write) 100
PWM Output 122
Repeat START Condition 154
RESET, Watchdog Timer (WDT), Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) and Power-up Timer (PWRT) 273
Slave Synchronization 131
Slaver Mode General Call Address Sequence (7 or 10-bit Address Mode) 148
Slow Rise Time (MCLR Tied to VDD) 33
SPI Mode (Master Mode) 130
SPI Mode (Slave Mode with CKE = 0) 132
SPI Mode (Slave Mode with CKE = 1) 132
Stop Condition Receive or Transmit Mode 158
Time-out Sequence on POR w/PLL Enabled (MCLR Tied to VDD) 33
Time-out Sequence on Power-up (MCLR Not Tied to VDD)
Case 1 32
Case 2 32
Time-out Sequence on Power-up (MCLR Tied to VDD) 32
Timer0 and Timer1 External Clock 275
Timing for Transition Between Timer1 and OSC1 (HS with PLL) 23
Transition Between Timer1 and OSC1 (HS, XT, LP) 22
Transition Between Timer1 and OSC1 (RC, EC) 23
Transition from OSC1 to Timer1 Oscillator 22
USART Asynchronous Master Transmission 173
USART Asynchronous Master Transmission (Back to Back) 173
USART Asynchronous Reception 175
USART Synchronous Receive (Master/Slave) 286
USART Synchronous Reception (Master Mode, SREN) 178
USART Synchronous Transmission 177
USART Synchronous Transmission (Master/Slave) 286
USART Synchronous Transmission (Through TXEN) 177
Wake-up from SLEEP via Interrupt 206
Timing Diagrams Requirements
Master SSP I2C Bus START/STOP Bits 284
Timing Requirements
A/D Conversion 288
Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP1 and CCP2) 276
CLKO and I/O 273
Example SPI Mode (Master Mode, CKE = 0) 278
Example SPI Mode (Master Mode, CKE = 1) 279
Example SPI Mode (Slave Mode, CKE = 0) 280
Example SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 1) 281
External Clock 271
I2C Bus Data (Slave Mode) 283
Master SSP I2C Bus Data 285
Parallel Slave Port (PIC18F4X2) 277
RESET, Watchdog Timer, Oscillator Start-up Timer, Power-up Timer and Brown-out Reset Requirements 274
Timer0 and Timer1 External Clock 275
USART Synchronous Receive 286
USART Synchronous Transmission 286
Timing Specifications
PLL Clock 272
TRISE Register
PSPMODE Bit 95, 100
TSTFSZ 251
Two-Word Instructions
Example Cases 41
TXSTA Register
BRGH Bit 168

U

Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter. *See* USART
USART 165
Asynchronous Mode 172
Associated Registers, Receive 175
Associated Registers, Transmit 173
Receiver 174
Transmitter 172
Baud Rate Generator (BRG) 168
Associated Registers 168
Baud Rate Error, Calculating 168
Baud Rate Formula 168
Baud Rates for Asynchronous Mode (BRGH = 0) 170
Baud Rates for Asynchronous Mode (BRGH = 1) 171
Baud Rates for Synchronous Mode 169
High Baud Rate Select (BRGH Bit) 168
Sampling 168
Serial Port Enable (SPEN Bit) 165
Synchronous Master Mode 176
Associated Registers, Reception 178
Associated Registers, Transmit 176
Reception 178
Transmission 176
Synchronous Slave Mode 179
Associated Registers, Receive 180
Associated Registers, Transmit 179
Reception 180
Transmission 179

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

W

Wake-up from SLEEP 195, 205
Using Interrupts 205
Watchdog Timer (WDT) 195, 203
Associated Registers 204
Control Register 203
Postscaler 203, 204
Programming Considerations 203
RC Oscillator 203
Time-out Period 203
WCOL 153
WCOL Status Flag 153, 155, 158
WWW, On-Line Support 5

X

XORLW 251
XORWF 252

NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support via our WWW site at www.microchip.com. This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at www.microchip.com, click on Customer Change Notification and follow the registration instructions.

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support
- Development Systems Information Line

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

Technical support is available through the web site at: http://support.microchip.com

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

To: Technical Publications Manager Total Pages Sent _____

RE: Reader Response

From: Name _____

Company _____

Address _____

City / State / ZIP / Country _____

Telephone: (_____) _____ - _____ FAX: (_____) _____ - _____

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply? ___Y ___N

Device: PIC18FXX2 Literature Number: DS39564C

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

7. How would you improve this document?

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

PIC18FXX2 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	–	X	/XX	XXX
Device		Temperature Range	Package	Pattern

Device	PIC18FXX2[1], PIC18FXX2T[2]; VDD range 4.2V to 5.5V PIC18LFXX2[1], PIC18LFXX2T[2]; VDD range 2.5V to 5.5V
Temperature Range	I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial) E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)
Package	PT = TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack) SO = SOIC SP = Skinny Plastic DIP P = PDIP L = PLCC
Pattern	QTP, SQTP, Code or Special Requirements (blank otherwise)

Examples:

a) PIC18LF452 - I/P 301 = Industrial temp., PDIP package, Extended VDD limits, QTP pattern #301.

b) PIC18LF242 - I/SO = Industrial temp., SOIC package, Extended VDD limits.

c) PIC18F442 - E/P = Extended temp., PDIP package, normal VDD limits.

Note 1: F = Standard Voltage range
LF = Wide Voltage Range

2: T = in tape and reel - SOIC, PLCC, and TQFP packages only.

WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support:
http://support.microchip.com
Web Address:
www.microchip.com

Atlanta
Alpharetta, GA
Tel: 770-640-0034
Fax: 770-640-0307

Boston
Westborough, MA
Tel: 774-760-0087
Fax: 774-760-0088

Chicago
Itasca, IL
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Dallas
Addison, TX
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Farmington Hills, MI
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Kokomo
Kokomo, IN
Tel: 765-864-8360
Fax: 765-864-8387

Los Angeles
Mission Viejo, CA
Tel: 949-462-9523
Fax: 949-462-9608

Santa Clara
Santa Clara, CA
Tel: 408-961-6444
Fax: 408-961-6445

Toronto
Mississauga, Ontario,
Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Asia Pacific Office
Suites 3707-14, 37th Floor
Tower 6, The Gateway
Habour City, Kowloon
Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

Australia - Sydney
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Tel: 86-10-8528-2100
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

China - Chengdu
Tel: 86-28-8665-5511
Fax: 86-28-8665-7889

China - Fuzhou
Tel: 86-591-8750-3506
Fax: 86-591-8750-3521

China - Hong Kong SAR
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Qingdao
Tel: 86-532-8502-7355
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

China - Shanghai
Tel: 86-21-5407-5533
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

China - Shenyang
Tel: 86-24-2334-2829
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

China - Shenzhen
Tel: 86-755-8203-2660
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

China - Shunde
Tel: 86-757-2839-5507
Fax: 86-757-2839-5571

China - Wuhan
Tel: 86-27-5980-5300
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

China - Xian
Tel: 86-29-8833-7250
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

ASIA/PACIFIC

India - Bangalore
Tel: 91-80-4182-8400
Fax: 91-80-4182-8422

India - New Delhi
Tel: 91-11-4160-8631
Fax: 91-11-4160-8632

India - Pune
Tel: 91-20-2566-1512
Fax: 91-20-2566-1513

Japan - Yokohama
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166
Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea - Gumi
Tel: 82-54-473-4301
Fax: 82-54-473-4302

Korea - Seoul
Tel: 82-2-554-7200
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Malaysia - Penang
Tel: 60-4-646-8870
Fax: 60-4-646-5086

Philippines - Manila
Tel: 63-2-634-9065
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

Singapore
Tel: 65-6334-8870
Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan - Hsin Chu
Tel: 886-3-572-9526
Fax: 886-3-572-6459

Taiwan - Kaohsiung
Tel: 886-7-536-4818
Fax: 886-7-536-4803

Taiwan - Taipei
Tel: 886-2-2500-6610
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

Thailand - Bangkok
Tel: 66-2-694-1351
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

EUROPE

Austria - Wels
Tel: 43-7242-2244-3910
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark - Copenhagen
Tel: 45-4450-2828
Fax: 45-4485-2829

France - Paris
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany - Munich
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy - Milan
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands - Drunen
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

Spain - Madrid
Tel: 34-91-708-08-90
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

UK - Wokingham
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

08/29/06

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

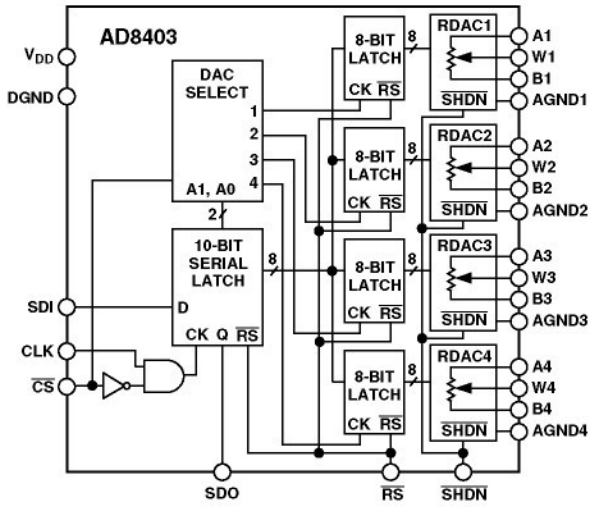
1-/2-/4-Channel Digital Potentiometers

AD8400/AD8402/AD8403

FEATURES
256-Position
Replaces 1, 2, or 4 Potentiometers
1 kΩ, 10 kΩ, 50 kΩ, 100 kΩ
Power Shutdown—Less than 5 μA
3-Wire SPI-Compatible Serial Data Input
10 MHz Update Data Loading Rate
2.7 V to 5.5 V Single-Supply Operation
Midscale Preset

APPLICATIONS
Mechanical Potentiometer Replacement
Programmable Filters, Delays, Time Constants
Volume Control, Panning
Line Impedance Matching
Power Supply Adjustment

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 provide a single, dual or quad channel, 256 position digitally controlled variable resistor (VR) device. These devices perform the same electronic adjustment function as a potentiometer or variable resistor. The AD8400 contains a single variable resistor in the compact SO-8 package. The AD8402 contains two independent variable resistors in space-saving SO-14 surface-mount packages. The AD8403 contains four independent variable resistors in 24-lead PDIP, SOIC, and TSSOP packages. Each part contains a fixed resistor with a wiper contact that taps the fixed resistor value at a point determined by a digital code loaded into the controlling serial input register. The resistance between the wiper and either endpoint of the fixed resistor varies linearly with respect to the digital code transferred into the VR latch. Each variable resistor offers a completely programmable value of resistance, between the A terminal and the wiper or the B terminal and the wiper. The fixed A to B terminal resistance of 1 kΩ, 10 kΩ, 50 kΩ, or 100 kΩ has a ±1% channel-to-channel matching tolerance with a nominal temperature coefficient of 500 ppm/°C. A unique switching circuit minimizes the high glitch inherent in traditional switched resistor designs avoiding any make-before-break or break-before-make operation.

Each VR has its own VR latch that holds its programmed resistance value. These VR latches are updated from an SPI compatible serial-to-parallel shift register that is loaded from a standard 3-wire serial-input digital interface. Ten data bits make up the data word clocked into the serial input register. The data word is decoded where the first two bits determine the address of the VR latch to be loaded, the last eight bits are data. A serial data output pin at the opposite end of the serial register allows simple daisy-chaining in multiple VR applications without additional external decoding logic.

The reset ($\overline{RS}$) pin forces the wiper to the midscale position by loading 80_H into the VR latch. The $\overline{SHDN}$ pin forces the resistor to an end-to-end open circuit condition on the A terminal and shorts the wiper to the B terminal, achieving a microwatt power shutdown state. When $\overline{SHDN}$ is returned to logic high, the previous latch settings put the wiper in the same resistance setting prior to shutdown. The digital interface is still active in shutdown so that code changes can be made that will produce new wiper positions when the device is taken out of shutdown.

The AD8400 is available in both the SO-8 surface-mount and the 8-lead plastic DIP package.

The AD8402 is available in both surface mount (SO-14) and 14-lead plastic DIP packages, while the AD8403 is available in a narrow body 24-lead plastic DIP and a 24-lead surface-mount package. The AD8402/AD8403 are also offered in the 1.1 mm thin TSSOP-14/TSSOP-24 packages for PCMCIA applications. All parts are guaranteed to operate over the extended industrial temperature range of –40°C to +125°C.

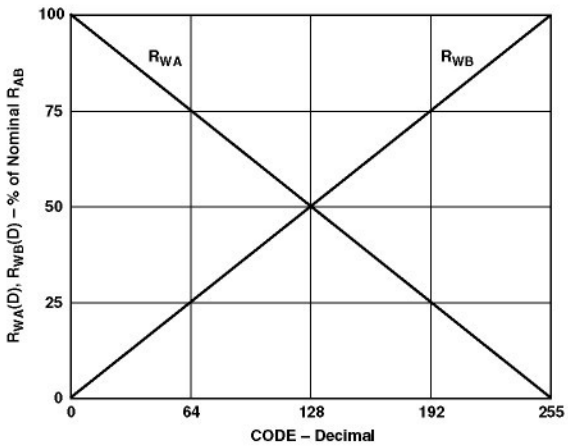


Figure 1. RWA and RWB vs. Code

REV. C

Information furnished by Analog Devices is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by Analog Devices for its use, nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties that may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent or patent rights of Analog Devices.

One Technology Way, P.O. Box 9106, Norwood, MA 02062-9106, U.S.A.
Tel: 781/329-4700 **www.analog.com**
Fax: 781/326-8703 **© Analog Devices, Inc., 2002**

AD8400/AD8402/AD8403–SPECIFICATIONS (V_{DD} = 3 V ± 10% or 5 V ± 10%, $V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, –40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C unless otherwise noted.)

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS–10 kΩ VERSION

Parameter	Symbol	Conditions	Min	Typ[1]	Max	Unit
DC CHARACTERISTICS RHEOSTAT MODE (Specifications Apply to All VRs)						
Resistor Differential NL[2]	R-DNL	R_{WB}, V_A = No Connect	–1	±1/4	+1	LSB
Resistor Nonlinearity[2]	R-INL	R_{WB}, V_A = No Connect	–2	±1/2	+2	LSB
Nominal Resistance[3]	R_{AB}	T_A = 25°C, Model: AD840XYY10	8	10	12	kΩ
Resistance Tempco	$\Delta R_{AB}/\Delta T$	$V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, Wiper = No Connect		500		ppm/°C
Wiper Resistance	R_W	I_W = 1 V/R		50	100	Ω
Nominal Resistance Match	$\Delta R/R_{AB}$	CH 1 to 2, 3, or 4, $V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, T_A = 25°C		0.2	1	%
DC CHARACTERISTICS POTENTIOMETER DIVIDER Specifications Apply to All VRs						
Resolution	N		8			Bits
Integral Nonlinearity[4]	INL		–2	±1/2	+2	LSB
Differential Nonlinearity[4]	DNL	V_{DD} = 5 V	–1	±1/4	+1	LSB
	DNL	V_{DD} = 3 V T_A = 25°C	–1	±1/4	+1	LSB
	DNL	V_{DD} = 3 V T_A = –40°C, +85°C	–1.5	±1/2	+1.5	LSB
Voltage Divider Tempco	$\Delta V_W/\Delta T$	Code = 80_H		15		ppm/°C
Full-Scale Error	V_{WFSE}	Code = FF_H	–4	–2.8	0	LSB
Zero-Scale Error	V_{WZSE}	Code = 00_H	0	1.3	2	LSB
RESISTOR TERMINALS						
Voltage Range[5]	$V_{A,B,W}$		0		V_{DD}	V
Capacitance[6] Ax, Bx	$C_{A,B}$	f = 1 MHz, Measured to GND, Code = 80_H		75		pF
Capacitance[6] Wx	C_W	f = 1 MHz, Measured to GND, Code = 80_H		120		pF
Shutdown Current[7]	I_{A_SD}	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, $\overline{SHDN}$ = 0		0.01	5	µA
Shutdown Wiper Resistance	R_{W_SD}	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, $\overline{SHDN}$ = 0, V_{DD} = 5 V		100	200	Ω
DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS						
Input Logic High	V_{IH}	V_{DD} = 5 V	2.4			V
Input Logic Low	V_{IL}	V_{DD} = 5 V			0.8	V
Input Logic High	V_{IH}	V_{DD} = 3 V	2.1			V
Input Logic Low	V_{IL}	V_{DD} = 3 V			0.6	V
Output Logic High	V_{OH}	R_L = 2.2 kΩ to V_{DD}	V_{DD} – 0.1			V
Output Logic Low	V_{OL}	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA, V_{DD} = 5 V			0.4	V
Input Current	I_{IL}	V_{IN} = 0 V or +5 V, V_{DD} = 5 V			±1	µA
Input Capacitance[6]	C_{IL}			5		pF
POWER SUPPLIES						
Power Supply Range	V_{DD} Range		2.7		5.5	V
Supply Current (CMOS)	I_{DD}	$V_{IH} = V_{DD}$ or V_{IL} = 0 V		0.01	5	µA
Supply Current (TTL)[8]	I_{DD}	V_{IH} = 2.4 V or 0.8 V, V_{DD} = 5.5 V		0.9	4	mA
Power Dissipation (CMOS)[9]	P_{DISS}	$V_{IH} = V_{DD}$ or V_{IL} = 0 V, V_{DD} = 5.5 V			27.5	µW
Power Supply Sensitivity	PSS	V_{DD} = 5 V ± 10%		0.0002	0.001	%/%
	PSS	V_{DD} = 3 V ± 10%		0.006	0.03	%/%
DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS[6, 10]						
Bandwidth –3 dB	BW_10K	R = 10 kΩ		600		kHz
Total Harmonic Distortion	THD_W	V_A = 1 V rms + 2 V dc, V_B = 2 V dc, f = 1 kHz		0.003		%
V_W Settling Time	t_S	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, ±1% Error Band		2		µs
Resistor Noise Voltage	e_{NWB}	R_{WB} = 5 kΩ, f = 1 kHz, $\overline{RS}$ = 0		9		nV/√Hz
Crosstalk[11]	C_T	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V		–65		dB

NOTES

[1]Typicals represent average readings at 25°C and V_{DD} = 5 V.

[2]Resistor position nonlinearity error R-INL is the deviation from an ideal value measured between the maximum resistance and the minimum resistance wiper positions. R-DNL measures the relative step change from ideal between successive tap positions. Parts are guaranteed monotonic. See TPC 29 test circuit. I_W = 50 µA for V_{DD} = 3 V and I_W = 400 µA for V_{DD} = 5 V for the 10 kΩ versions.

[3]$V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, Wiper (V_W) = No Connect.

[4]INL and DNL are measured at V_W with the RDAC configured as a potentiometer divider similar to a voltage output D/A converter. $V_A = V_{DD}$ and V_B = 0 V. DNL Specification limits of ±1 LSB maximum are Guaranteed Monotonic operating conditions. See TPC 28 test circuit.

[5]Resistor terminals A, B, W have no limitations on polarity with respect to each other.

[6]Guaranteed by design and not subject to production test. Resistor-terminal capacitance tests are measured with 2.5 V bias on the measured terminal. The remaining resistor terminals are left open circuit.

[7]Measured at the Ax terminals. All Ax terminals are open circuited in shutdown mode.

[8]Worst-case supply current consumed when input logic level at 2.4 V, standard characteristic of CMOS logic. See TPC 20 for a plot of I_{DD} versus logic voltage.

[9]P_{DISS} is calculated from ($I_{DD} \times V_{DD}$). CMOS logic level inputs result in minimum power dissipation.

[10]All Dynamic Characteristics use V_{DD} = 5 V.

[11]Measured at a V_W pin where an adjacent V_W pin is making a full-scale voltage change.

Specifications subject to change without notice.

SPECIFICATIONS (V_{DD} = 3 V ± 10% or 5 V ± 10%, $V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, –40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C unless otherwise noted.)

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS–50 kΩ and 100 kΩ VERSIONS

Parameter	Symbol	Conditions	Min	Typ[1]	Max	Unit
DC CHARACTERISTICS RHEOSTAT MODE (Specifications Apply to All VRs)						
Resistor Differential NL[2]	R-DNL	R_{WB}, V_A = No Connect	–1	±1/4	+1	LSB
Resistor Nonlinearity[2]	R-INL	R_{WB}, V_A = No Connect	–2	±1/2	+2	LSB
Nominal Resistance[3]	R_{AB}	T_A = 25°C, Model: AD840XYY50	35	50	65	kΩ
	R_{AB}	T_A = 25°C, Model: AD840XYY100	70	100	130	kΩ
Resistance Tempco	$\Delta R_{AB}/\Delta T$	$V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, Wiper = No Connect		500		ppm/°C
Wiper Resistance	R_W	I_W = 1 V/R		53	100	Ω
Nominal Resistance Match	$\Delta R/R_{AB}$	CH 1 to 2, 3, or 4, $V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, T_A = 25°C		0.2	1	%
DC CHARACTERISTICS POTENTIOMETER DIVIDER (Specifications Apply to All VRs)						
Resolution	N		8			Bits
Integral Nonlinearity[4]	INL		–4	±1	+4	LSB
Differential Nonlinearity[4]	DNL	V_{DD} = 5 V	–1	±1/4	+1	LSB
	DNL	V_{DD} = 3 V T_A = 25°C	–1	±1/4	+1	LSB
	DNL	V_{DD} = 3 V T_A = –40°C, +85°C	–1.5	±1/2	+1.5	LSB
Voltage Divider Tempco	$\Delta V_W/\Delta T$	Code = 80_H		15		ppm/°C
Full-Scale Error	V_{WFSE}	Code = FF_H	–1	–0.25	0	LSB
Zero-Scale Error	V_{WZSE}	Code = 00_H	0	+0.1	+1	LSB
RESISTOR TERMINALS						
Voltage Range[5]	$V_{A, B, W}$		0		V_{DD}	V
Capacitance[6] Ax, Bx	$C_{A, B}$	f = 1 MHz, Measured to GND, Code = 80_H		15		pF
Capacitance[6] Wx	C_W	f = 1 MHz, Measured to GND, Code = 80_H		80		pF
Shutdown Current[7]	I_{A_SD}	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, $\overline{SHDN}$ = 0		0.01	5	µA
Shutdown Wiper Resistance	R_{W_SD}	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, $\overline{SHDN}$ = 0, V_{DD} = 5 V		100	200	Ω
DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS						
Input Logic High	V_{IH}	V_{DD} = 5 V	2.4			V
Input Logic Low	V_{IL}	V_{DD} = 5 V			0.8	V
Input Logic High	V_{IH}	V_{DD} = 3 V	2.1			V
Input Logic Low	V_{IL}	V_{DD} = 3 V			0.6	V
Output Logic High	V_{OH}	R_L = 2.2 kΩ to V_{DD}	V_{DD} – 0.1			V
Output Logic Low	V_{OL}	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA, V_{DD} = 5 V			0.4	V
Input Current	I_{IL}	V_{IN} = 0 V or 5 V, V_{DD} = 5 V			±1	µA
Input Capacitance[6]	C_{IL}			5		pF
POWER SUPPLIES						
Power Supply Range	V_{DD} Range		2.7		5.5	V
Supply Current (CMOS)	I_{DD}	$V_{IH} = V_{DD}$ or V_{IL} = 0 V		0.01	5	µA
Supply Current (TTL)[8]	I_{DD}	V_{IH} = 2.4 V or 0.8 V, V_{DD} = 5.5 V		0.9	4	mA
Power Dissipation (CMOS)[9]	P_{DISS}	$V_{IH} = V_{DD}$ or V_{IL} = 0 V, V_{DD} = 5.5 V			27.5	µW
Power Supply Sensitivity	PSS	V_{DD} = 5 V ± 10%		0.0002	0.001	%/%
	PSS	V_{DD} = 3 V ± 10%		0.006	0.03	%/%
DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS[6, 10]						
Bandwidth –3 dB	BW_50K	R = 50 kΩ		125		kHz
	BW_100K	R = 100 kΩ		71		kHz
Total Harmonic Distortion	THD_W	V_A = 1 V rms + 2 V dc, V_B = 2 V dc, f = 1 kHz		0.003		%
V_W Settling Time	t_S_50K	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, ±1% Error Band		9		µs
	t_S_100K	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, ±1% Error Band		18		µs
Resistor Noise Voltage	e_{NWB}_50K	R_{WB} = 25 kΩ, f = 1 kHz, $\overline{RS}$ = 0		20		nV/√Hz
	e_{NWB}_100K	R_{WB} = 50 kΩ, f = 1 kHz, $\overline{RS}$ = 0		29		nV/√Hz
Crosstalk[11]	C_T	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V		–65		dB

NOTES

[1]Typicals represent average readings at 25°C and V_{DD} = 5 V.

[2]Resistor position nonlinearity error R-INL is the deviation from an ideal value measured between the maximum resistance and the minimum resistance wiper positions. R-DNL measures the relative step change from ideal between successive tap positions. Parts are guaranteed monotonic. See TPC 29 test circuit. $I_W = V_{DD}/R$ for V_{DD} = 3 V or 5 V for the 50 kΩ and 100 kΩ versions.

[3]$V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, Wiper (V_W) = No Connect.

[4]INL and DNL are measured at V_W with the RDAC configured as a potentiometer divider similar to a voltage output D/A converter. $V_A = V_{DD}$ and V_B = 0 V. DNL Specification limits of ±1 LSB maximum are Guaranteed Monotonic operating conditions. See TPC 28 test circuit.

[5]Resistor terminals A, B, W have no limitations on polarity with respect to each other.

[6]Guaranteed by design and not subject to production test. Resistor-terminal capacitance tests are measured with 2.5 V bias on the measured terminal. The remaining resistor terminals are left open circuit.

[7]Measured at the Ax terminals. All Ax terminals are open circuited in shutdown mode.

[8]Worst-case supply current consumed when input logic level at 2.4 V, standard characteristic of CMOS logic. See TPC 20 for a plot of I_{DD} versus logic voltage.

[9]P_{DISS} is calculated from ($I_{DD} \times V_{DD}$). CMOS logic level inputs result in minimum power dissipation.

[10]All Dynamic Characteristics use V_{DD} = 5 V.

[11]Measured at a V_W pin where an adjacent V_W pin is making a full-scale voltage change.

Specifications subject to change without notice.

AD8400/AD8402/AD8403–SPECIFICATIONS (V_{DD} = 3 V ± 10% or 5 V ± 10%, $V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, –40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C unless otherwise noted.)

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS–1 kΩ VERSION

Parameter	Symbol	Conditions	Min	Typ[1]	Max	Unit
DC CHARACTERISTICS RHEOSTAT MODE Specifications Apply to All VRs						
Resistor Differential NL[2]	R-DNL	R_{WB}, V_A = No Connect	–5	–1	+3	LSB
Resistor Nonlinearity[2]	R-INL	R_{WB}, V_A = No Connect	–4	±1.5	+4	LSB
Nominal Resistance[3]	R_{AB}	T_A = 25°C, Model: AD840XYY1	0.8	1.2	1.6	kΩ
Resistance Tempco	$\Delta R_{AB}/\Delta T$	$V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, Wiper = No Connect		700		ppm/°C
Wiper Resistance	R_W	I_W = 1 V/R_{AB}		53	100	Ω
Nominal Resistance Match	$\Delta R/R_{AB}$	CH 1 to 2, $V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, T_A = 25°C		0.75	2	%
DC CHARACTERISTICS POTENTIOMETER DIVIDER Specifications Apply to All VRs						
Resolution	N		8			Bits
Integral Nonlinearity[4]	INL		–6	±2	+6	LSB
Differential Nonlinearity[4]	DNL	V_{DD} = 5 V	–4	–1.5	+2	LSB
	DNL	V_{DD} = 3 V, T_A = 25°C	–5	–2	+5	LSB
Voltage Divider Temperature Coefficent	$\Delta V_W/\Delta T$	Code = 80_H		25		ppm/°C
Full-Scale Error	V_{WFSE}	Code = FF_H	–20	–12	0	LSB
Zero-Scale Error	V_{WZSE}	Code = 00_H	0	6	10	LSB
RESISTOR TERMINALS						
Voltage Range[5]	$V_{A, B, W}$		0		V_{DD}	V
Capacitance[6] Ax, Bx	$C_{A, B}$	f = 1 MHz, Measured to GND, Code = 80_H		75		pF
Capacitance[6] Wx	C_W	f = 1 MHz, Measured to GND, Code = 80_H		120		pF
Shutdown Supply Current[7]	I_{A_SD}	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, $\overline{SHDN}$ = 0		0.01	5	µA
Shutdown Wiper Resistance	R_{W_SD}	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, $\overline{SHDN}$ = 0, V_{DD} = 5 V		50	100	Ω
DIGITAL INPUTS AND OUTPUTS						
Input Logic High	V_{IH}	V_{DD} = 5 V	2.4			V
Input Logic Low	V_{IL}	V_{DD} = 5 V			0.8	V
Input Logic High	V_{IH}	V_{DD} = 3 V	2.1			V
Input Logic Low	V_{IL}	V_{DD} = 3 V			0.6	V
Output Logic High	V_{OH}	R_L = 2.2 kΩ to V_{DD}	V_{DD} – 0.1			V
Output Logic Low	V_{OL}	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA, V_{DD} = 5 V			0.4	V
Input Current	I_{IL}	V_{IN} = 0 V or 5 V, V_{DD} = 5 V			±1	µA
Input Capacitance[6]	C_{IL}			5		pF
POWER SUPPLIES						
Power Supply Range	V_{DD} Range		2.7		5.5	V
Supply Current (CMOS)	I_{DD}	$V_{IH} = V_{DD}$ or V_{IL} = 0 V		0.01	5	µA
Supply Current (TTL)[8]	I_{DD}	V_{IH} = 2.4 V or 0.8 V, V_{DD} = 5.5 V		0.9	4	mA
Power Dissipation (CMOS)[9]	P_{DISS}	$V_{IH} = V_{DD}$ or V_{IL} = 0 V, V_{DD} = 5.5 V			27.5	µW
Power Supply Sensitivity	PSS	ΔV_{DD} = 5 V ± 10%		0.0035	0.008	%/%
	PSS	ΔV_{DD} = 3 V ± 10%		0.05	0.13	%/%
DYNAMIC CHARACTERISTICS[6, 10]						
Bandwidth –3 dB	BW_1K	R = 1 kΩ		5,000		kHz
Total Harmonic Distortion	THD_W	V_A = 1 V rms + 2 V dc, V_B = 2 V dc, f = 1 kHz		0.015		%
V_W Settling Time	t_S	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, ±1% Error Band		0.5		µs
Resistor Noise Voltage	e_{NWB}	R_{WB} = 500 Ω, f = 1 kHz, $\overline{RS}$ = 0		3		nV/√Hz
Crosstalk[11]	C_T	$V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V		–65		dB

NOTES

[1]Typicals represent average readings at 25°C and V_{DD} = 5 V.

[2]Resistor position nonlinearity error R-INL is the deviation from an ideal value measured between the maximum resistance and the minimum resistance wiper positions. R-DNL measures the relative step change from ideal between successive tap positions. See TPC 29 test circuit. I_W = 500 µA for V_{DD} = 3 V and I_W = 2.5 mA for V_{DD} = 5 V for 1 kΩ version.

[3]$V_{AB} = V_{DD}$, Wiper (V_W) = No Connect.

[4]INL and DNL are measured at V_W with the RDAC configured as a potentiometer divider similar to a voltage output D/A converter. $V_A = V_{DD}$ and V_B = 0 V. DNL Specification limits of ±1 LSB maximum are Guaranteed Monotonic operating conditions. See TPC 28 test circuit.

[5]Resistor terminals A, B, W have no limitations on polarity with respect to each other.

[6]Guaranteed by design and not subject to production test. Resistor-terminal capacitance tests are measured with 2.5 V bias on the measured terminal. The remaining resistor terminals are left open circuit.

[7]Measured at the Ax terminals. All Ax terminals are open circuited in shutdown mode.

[8]Worst-case supply current consumed when input logic level at 2.4 V, standard characteristic of CMOS logic. See TPC 20 for a plot of I_{DD} versus logic voltage.

[9]P_{DISS} is calculated from ($I_{DD} \times V_{DD}$). CMOS logic level inputs result in minimum power dissipation.

[10]All Dynamic Characteristics use V_{DD} = 5 V.

[11]Measured at a V_W pin where an adjacent V_W pin is making a full-scale voltage change.

Specifications subject to change without notice.

SPECIFICATIONS (V_{DD} = 3 V ± 10% or 5 V ± 10%, $V_A = V_{DD}$, V_B = 0 V, –40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C unless otherwise noted.)

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS–ALL VERSIONS

Parameter	Symbol	Conditions	Min	Typ[1]	Max	Unit
SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS[2, 3]						
Input Clock Pulsewidth	t_{CH}, t_{CL}	Clock Level High or Low	10			ns
Data Setup Time	t_{DS}		5			ns
Data Hold Time	t_{DH}		5			ns
CLK to SDO Propagation Delay[4]	t_{PD}	R_L = 1 kΩ to 5 V, C_L ≤ 20 pF	1		25	ns
$\overline{CS}$ Setup Time	t_{CSS}		10			ns
$\overline{CS}$ High Pulsewidth	t_{CSW}		10			ns
Reset Pulsewidth	t_{RS}		50			ns
CLK Fall to $\overline{CS}$ Rise Hold Time	t_{CSH}		0			ns
$\overline{CS}$ Rise to Clock Rise Setup	t_{CS1}		10			ns

NOTES

[1]Typicals represent average readings at 25°C and V_{DD} = 5 V.

[2]Guaranteed by design and not subject to production test. Resistor-terminal capacitance tests are measured with 2.5 V bias on the measured terminal. The remaining resistor terminals are left open circuit.

[3]See timing diagram for location of measured values. All input control voltages are specified with $t_R = t_F$ = 1 ns (10% to 90% of V_{DD}) and timed from a voltage level of 1.6 V. Switching characteristics are measured using V_{DD} = 3 V or 5 V. To avoid false clocking, a minimum input logic slew rate of 1 V/µs should be maintained.

[4]Propagation Delay depends on value of V_{DD}, R_L, and C_L—see Applications section.

Specifications subject to change without notice.

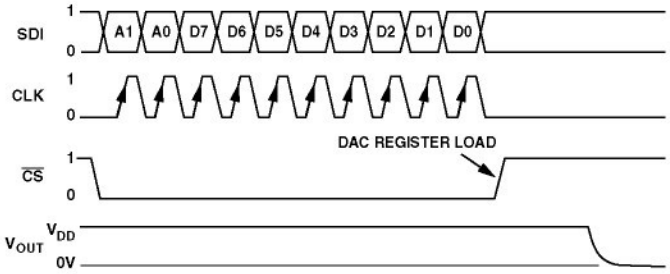


Figure 2a. Timing Diagram

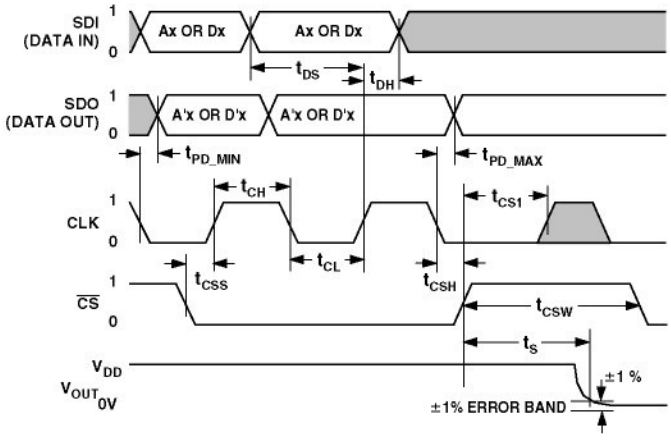


Figure 2b. Detail Timing Diagram

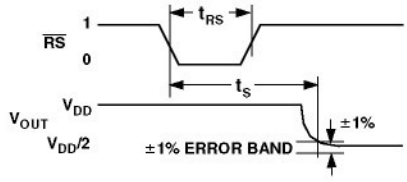


Figure 2c. Reset Timing Diagram

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

(T_A = 25°C, unless otherwise noted.)

V_{DD} to GND ..... –0.3 V, +8 V
V_A, V_B, V_W to GND ..... 0 V, V_{DD}
$A_X - B_X$, $A_X - W_X$, $B_X - W_X$ ..... ±20 mA
Digital Input and Output Voltage to GND ..... 0 V, 7 V
Operating Temperature Range ..... –40°C to +125°C
Maximum Junction Temperature (T_J max) ..... 150°C
Storage Temperature ..... –65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (Soldering, 10 sec) ..... 300°C
Package Power Dissipation ..... (T_J max – T_A)/θ_{JA}
Thermal Resistance (θ_{JA})
P-DIP (N-8) ..... 103°C/W
SOIC (SO-8) ..... 158°C/W
P-DIP (N-14) ..... 83°C/W
P-DIP (N-24) ..... 63°C/W
SOIC (SO-14) ..... 120°C/W
SOIC (SOL-24) ..... 70°C/W
TSSOP-14 (RU-14) ..... 180°C/W
TSSOP-24 (RU-24) ..... 143°C/W

*Stresses above those listed under Absolute Maximum Ratings may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only; functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those listed in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

Table I. Serial Data Word Format

ADDR		DATA							
B9	**B8**	**B7**	**B6**	**B5**	**B4**	**B3**	**B2**	**B1**	**B0**
A1	A0	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
MSB	LSB	MSB							LSB
2^9	2^8	2^7							2^0

CAUTION

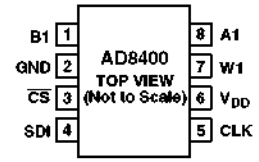
ESD (electrostatic discharge) sensitive device. Electrostatic charges as high as 4000 V readily accumulate on the human body and test equipment and can discharge without detection. Although the AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 features proprietary ESD protection circuitry, permanent damage may occur on devices subjected to high-energy electrostatic discharges. Therefore, proper ESD precautions are recommended to avoid performance degradation or loss of functionality.

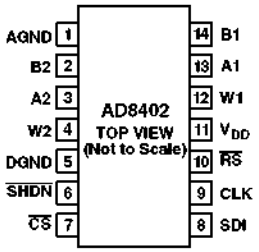
ORDERING GUIDE

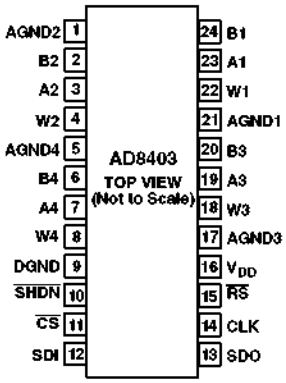
Model	Number of Channels	End-to-End R_{AB} (kΩ)	Temperature Range (°C)	Package Description	Package Option*	Number of Devices per Container	Branding Information
AD8400AN10	1	10	–40 to +125	PDIP-8	N-8	50	AD8400A10
AD8400AR10	1	10	–40 to +125	SO-8	SO-8	98	AD8400A10
AD8402AN10	2	10	–40 to +125	PDIP-14	N-14	25	AD8402A10
AD8402AR10	2	10	–40 to +125	SO-14	SO-14	56	AD8402A10
AD8402ARU10	2	10	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	96	8402A10
AD8402ARU10-REEL	2	10	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	2,500	8402A10
AD8403AN10	4	10	–40 to +125	PDIP-24	N-24	15	AD8403A10
AD8403AR10	4	10	–40 to +125	SOIC-24	SOL-24	31	AD8403A10
AD8403ARU10	4	10	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	63	8403A10
AD8403ARU10-REEL	4	10	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	2,500	8403A10
AD8400AN50	1	50	–40 to +125	PDIP-8	N-8	50	AD8400A50
AD8400AR50	1	50	–40 to +125	SO-8	SO-8	98	AD8400A50
AD8402AN50	2	50	–40 to +125	PDIP-14	N-14	25	AD8402A50
AD8402AR50	2	50	–40 to +125	SO-14	SO-14	56	AD8402A50
AD8402ARU50	2	50	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	96	8402A50
AD8402ARU50-REEL	2	50	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	2,500	8402A50
AD8403AN50	4	50	–40 to +125	PDIP-24	N-24	15	AD8403A50
AD8403AR50	4	50	–40 to +125	SOIC-24	SOL-24	31	AD8403A50
AD8403ARU50	4	50	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	63	8403A50
AD8403ARU50-REEL	4	50	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	2,500	8403A50
AD8400AN100	1	100	–40 to +125	PDIP-8	N-8	50	AD8400A100
AD8400AR100	1	100	–40 to +125	SO-8	SO-8	98	AD8400AC
AD8402AN100	2	100	–40 to +125	PDIP-14	N-14	25	AD8402A100
AD8402AR100	2	100	–40 to +125	SO-14	SO-14	56	AD8402AC
AD8402ARU100	2	100	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	96	8402A-C
AD8402ARU100-REEL	2	100	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	2,500	8402A-C
AD8403AN100	4	100	–40 to +125	PDIP-24	N-24	15	AD8403A100
AD8403AR100	4	100	–40 to +125	SOIC-24	SOL-24	31	AD8403A100
AD8403ARU100	4	100	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	63	8403A100
AD8403ARU100-REEL	4	100	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	2,500	8403A100
AD8400AN1	1	1	–40 to +125	PDIP-8	N-8	50	AD8400A1
AD8400AR1	1	1	–40 to +125	SO-8	SO-8	98	AD8400A1
AD8402AN1	2	1	–40 to +125	PDIP-14	N-14	25	AD8402A1
AD8402AR1	2	1	–40 to +125	SO-14	SO-14	56	AD8402A1
AD8402ARU1	2	1	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	96	8402A1
AD8402ARU1-REEL	2	1	–40 to +125	TSSOP-14	RU-14	2,500	8402A1
AD8403AN1	4	1	–40 to +125	PDIP-24	N-24	15	AD8403A1
AD8403AR1	4	1	–40 to +125	SOIC-24	SOL-24	31	AD8403A1
AD8403ARU1	4	1	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	63	8403A1
AD8403ARU1-REEL	4	1	–40 to +125	TSSOP-24	RU-24	2,500	8403A1

NOTES
*N = Plastic DIP; SO = Small Outline; RU = Thin Shrink SO
The AD8400, AD8402, and AD8403 contain 720 transistors.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS







AD8402 PIN FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS

Pin	Name	Description
1	AGND	Analog Ground*
2	B2	Terminal B RDAC #2
3	A2	Terminal A RDAC #2
4	W2	Wiper RDAC #2, Addr = 01_2.
5	DGND	Digital Ground*
6	$\overline{SHDN}$	Terminal A Open Circuit. Shutdown controls Variable Resistors #1 and #2.
7	$\overline{CS}$	Chip Select Input, Active Low. When $\overline{CS}$ returns high, data in the serial input register is decoded based on the address bits and loaded into the target DAC register.
8	SDI	Serial Data Input
9	CLK	Serial Clock Input, Positive Edge Triggered.
10	$\overline{RS}$	Active low reset to midscale; sets RDAC registers to 80_H.
11	V_{DD}	Positive power supply, specified for operation at both 3 V and 5 V.
12	W1	Wiper RDAC #1, Addr = 00_2.
13	A1	Terminal A RDAC #1
14	B1	Terminal B RDAC #1

*All AGNDs must be connected to DGND.

AD8400 PIN FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS

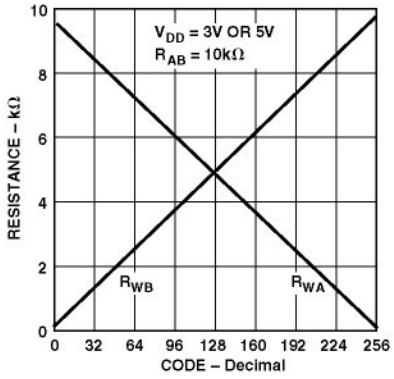
Pin	Name	Description
1	B1	Terminal B RDAC
2	GND	Ground
3	$\overline{CS}$	Chip Select Input, Active Low. When $\overline{CS}$ returns high, data in the serial input register is loaded into the DAC register.
4	SDI	Serial Data Input
5	CLK	Serial Clock Input, Positive Edge Triggered.
6	V_{DD}	Positive power supply, specified for operation at both 3 V and 5 V.
7	W1	Wiper RDAC, Addr = 00_2
8	A1	Terminal A RDAC

AD8403 PIN FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS

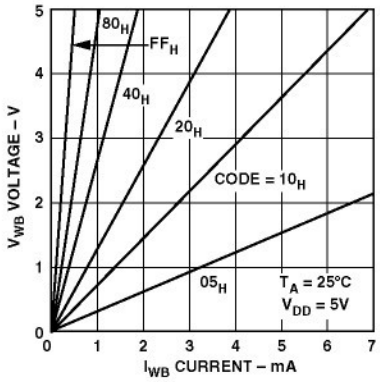
Pin	Name	Description
1	AGND2	Analog Ground #2*
2	B2	Terminal B RDAC #2
3	A2	Terminal A RDAC #2
4	W2	Wiper RDAC #2, Addr = 01_2.
5	AGND4	Analog Ground #4*
6	B4	Terminal B RDAC #4
7	A4	Terminal A RDAC #4
8	W4	Wiper RDAC #4, Addr = 11_2.
9	DGND	Digital Ground*
10	$\overline{SHDN}$	Active Low Input. Terminal A open circuit. Shutdown controls Variable Resistors #1 through #4.
11	$\overline{CS}$	Chip Select Input, Active Low. When $\overline{CS}$ returns high, data in the serial input register is decoded based on the address bits and loaded into the target DAC register.
12	SDI	Serial Data Input
13	SDO	Serial Data Output, Open Drain transistor requires pull-up resistor.
14	CLK	Serial Clock Input, Positive Edge Triggered
15	$\overline{RS}$	Active Low reset to midscale; sets RDAC registers to 80_H.
16	V_{DD}	Positive power supply, specified for operation at both 3 V and 5 V.
17	AGND3	Analog Ground #3*
18	W3	Wiper RDAC #3, Addr = 10_2
19	A3	Terminal A RDAC #3
20	B3	Terminal B RDAC #3
21	AGND1	Analog Ground #1*
22	W1	Wiper RDAC #1, Addr = 00_2
23	A1	Terminal A RDAC #1
24	B1	Terminal B RDAC #1

*All AGNDs must be connected to DGND.

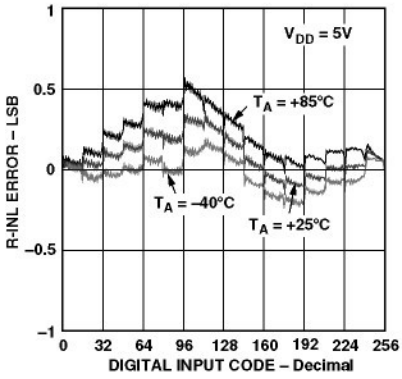
Typical Performance Characteristics–AD8400/AD8402/AD8403



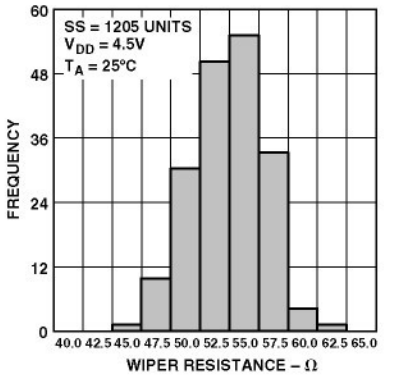
TPC 1. Wiper to End Terminal Resistance vs. Code



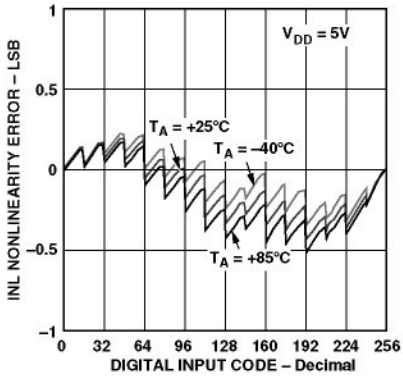
TPC 2. Resistance Linearity vs. Conduction Current



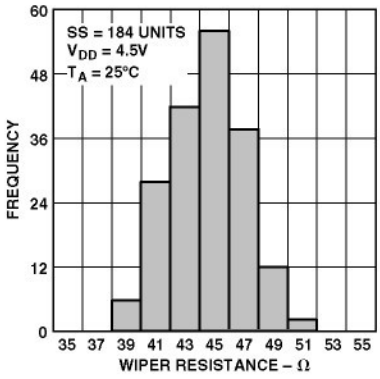
TPC 3. Resistance Step Position Nonlinearity Error vs. Code



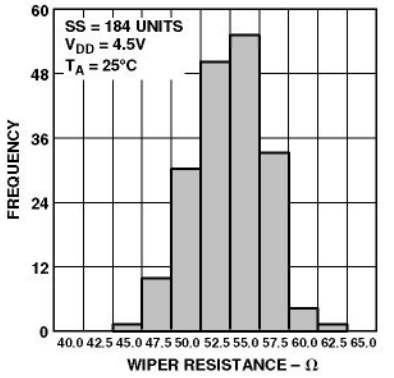
TPC 4. 10 kΩ Wiper-Contact-Resistance Histogram



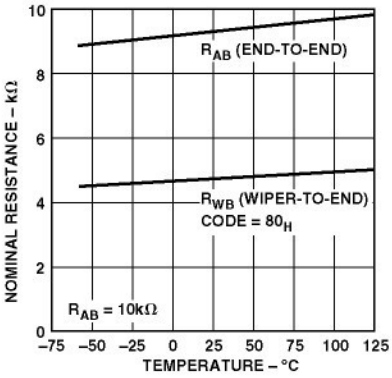
TPC 5. Potentiometer Divider Nonlinearity Error vs. Code



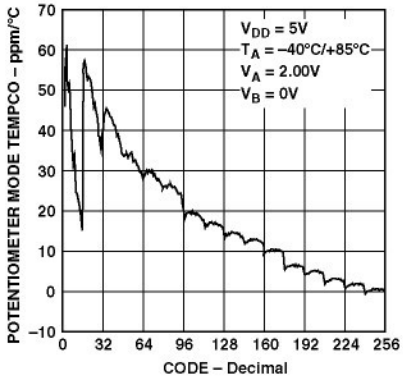
TPC 6. 50 kΩ Wiper-Contact-Resistance Histogram



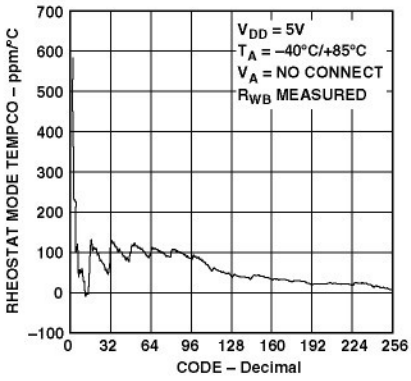
TPC 7. 100 kΩ Wiper-Contact-Resistance Histogram



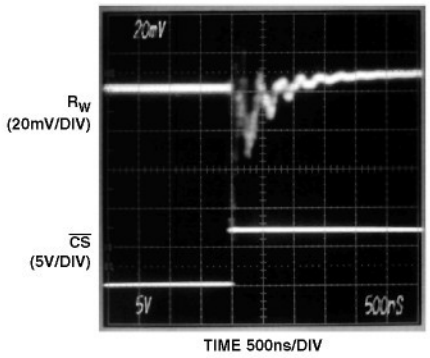
TPC 8. Nominal Resistance vs. Temperature



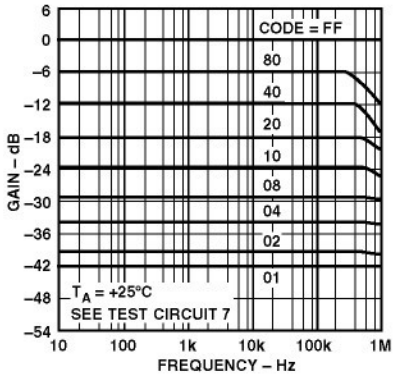
TPC 9. DV_{WB}/DT Potentiometer Mode Tempco



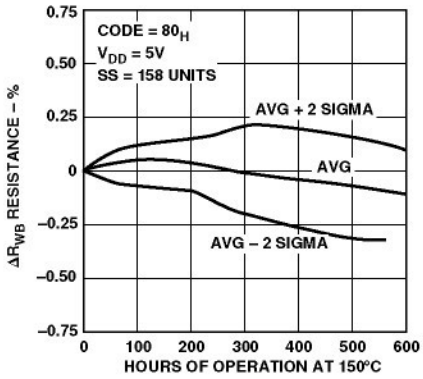
TPC 10. $\Delta R_{WB}/\Delta T$ Rheostat Mode Tempco



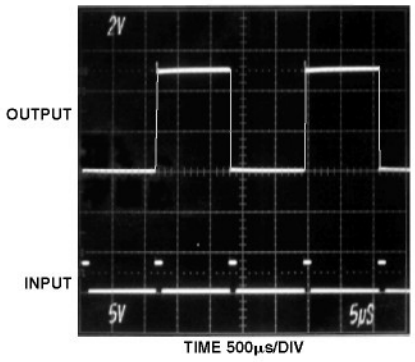
TPC 11. One Position Step Change at Half-Scale (Code $7F_H$ to 80_H)



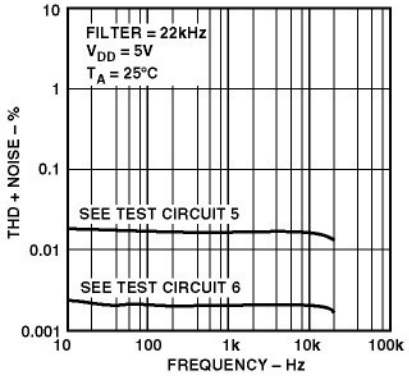
TPC 12. 10 kΩ Gain vs. Frequency



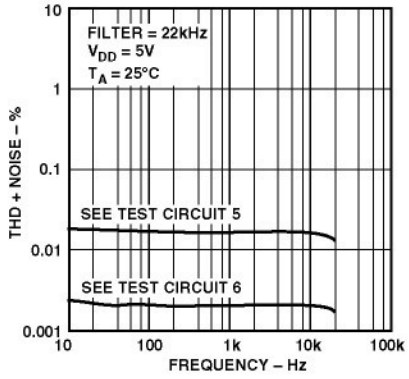
TPC 13. Long-Term Drift Accelerated by Burn-In



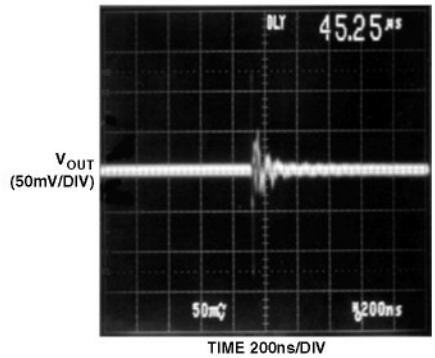
TPC 14. Large Signal Settling Time



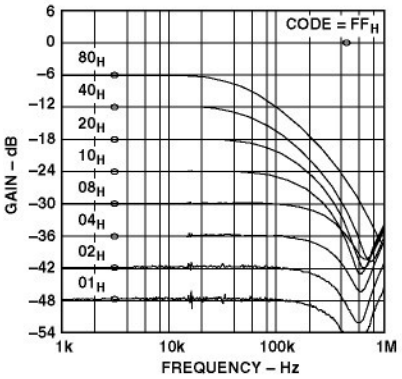
TPC 15. 50 kΩ Gain vs. Frequency vs. Code



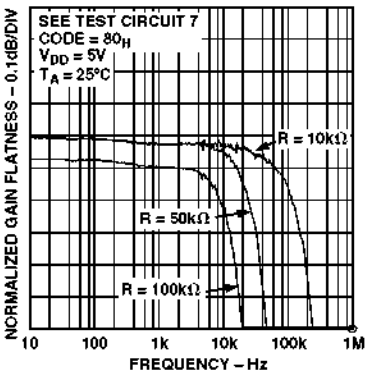
TPC 16. Total Harmonic Distortion Plus Noise vs. Frequency



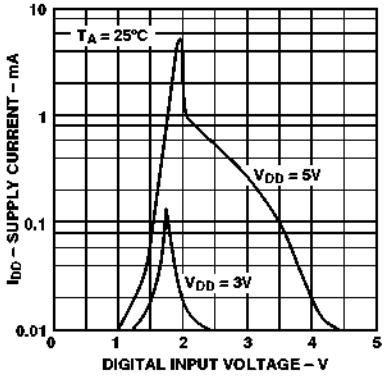
TPC 17. Digital Feedthrough vs. Time



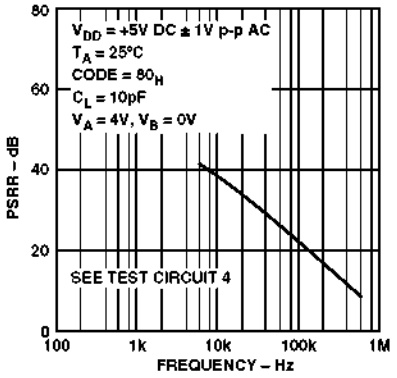
TPC 18. 100 kΩ Gain vs. Frequency vs. Code



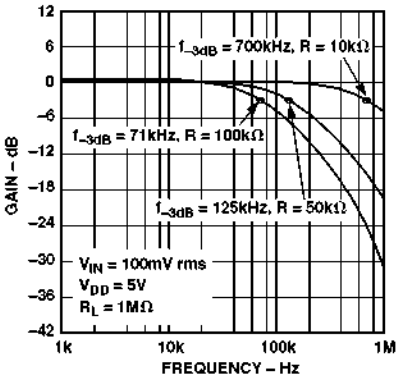
TPC 19. Normalized Gain Flatness vs. Frequency



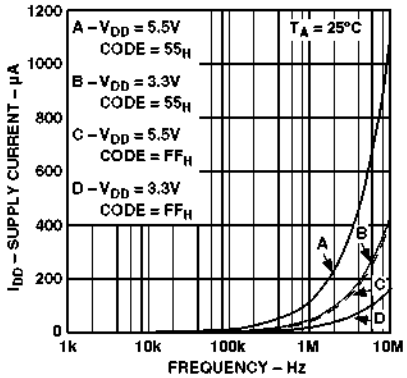
TPC 20. Supply Current vs. Digital Input Voltage



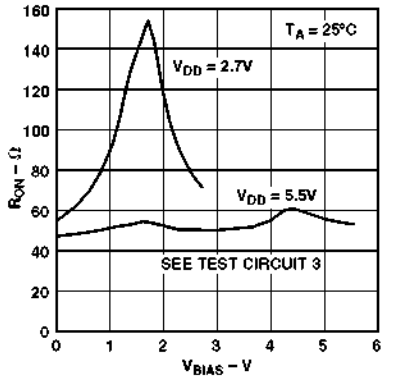
TPC 21. Power Supply Rejection vs. Frequency



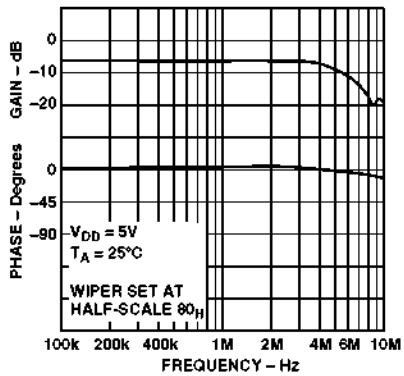
TPC 22. –3 dB Bandwidths



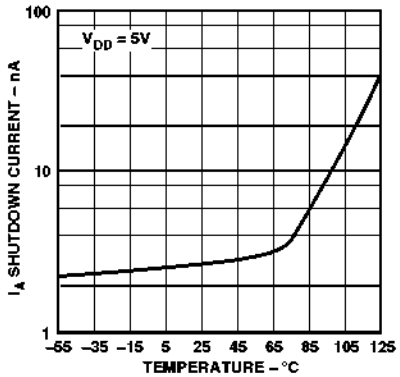
TPC 23. Supply Current vs. Clock Frequency



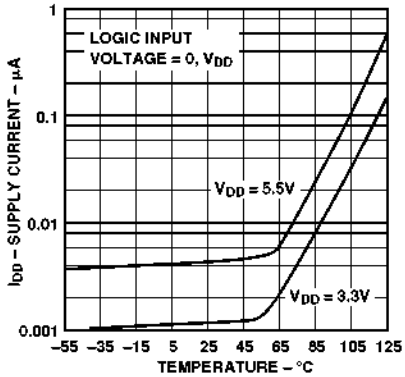
TPC 24. AD8403 Incremental Wiper ON Resistance vs. V_{DD}



TPC 25. 1 kΩ Gain and Phase vs. Frequency

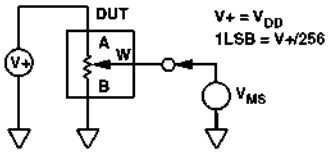


TPC 26. Shutdown Current vs. Temperature

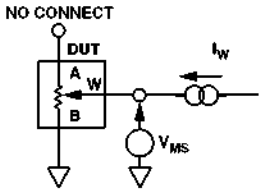


TPC 27. Supply Current vs. Temperature

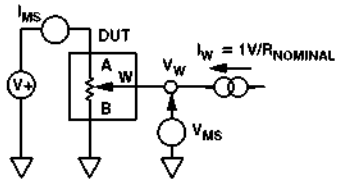
TEST CIRCUITS



Test Circuit 1. Potentiometer Divider Nonlinearity Error (INL, DNL)



Test Circuit 2. Resistor Position Nonlinearity Error (Rheostat Operation; R-INL, R-DNL)



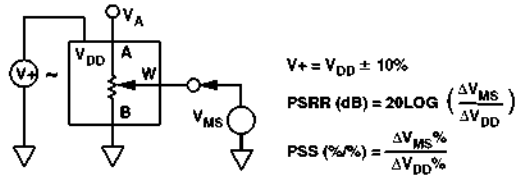
$$R_W = \frac{V_{W2} - [V_{W1} + I_W (R_{AW} \parallel R_{BW})]}{I_W}$$

V+ V_{DD}

WHERE $V_{W1} = V_{MS}$ WHEN $I_W = 0$

AND $V_{W2} = V_{MS}$ WHEN I_W = 1/R

Test Circuit 3. Wiper Resistance

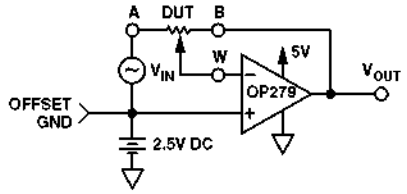


V+ = V_{DD} ± 10%

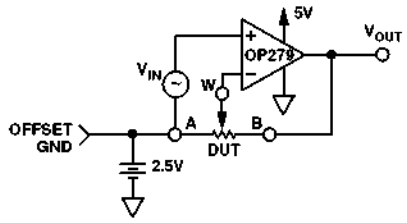
$$\text{PSRR (dB)} = 20\text{LOG}\left(\frac{\Delta V_{MS}}{\Delta V_{DD}}\right)$$

$$\text{PSS (\%/\%)} = \frac{\Delta V_{MS}\%}{\Delta V_{DD}\%}$$

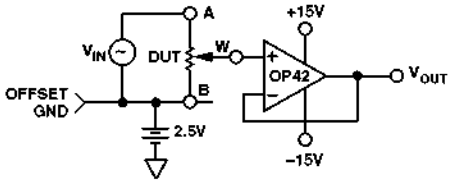
Test Circuit 4. Power Supply Sensitivity (PSS, PSRR)



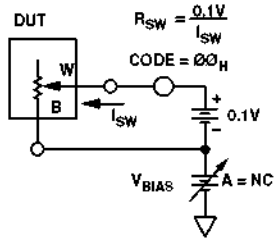
Test Circuit 5. Inverting Programmable Gain



Test Circuit 6. Noninverting Programmable Gain



Test Circuit 7. Gain vs. Frequency



Test Circuit 8. Incremental ON Resistance

OPERATION

The AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 provide a single, dual, and quad channel, 256-position digitally controlled variable resistor (VR) device. Changing the programmed VR settings is accomplished by clocking in a 10-bit serial data word into the SDI (Serial Data Input) pin. The format of this data word is two address bits, MSB first, followed by eight data bits, MSB first. Table I provides the serial register data word format. The AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 has the following address assignments for the ADDR decode, which determines the location of VR latch receiving the serial register data in Bits B7 through B0:

$$VR\# = A1 \times 2 + A0 + 1 \quad (1)$$

The single-channel AD8400 requires A1 = A0 = 0. The dual-channel AD8402 requires A1 = 0. VR settings can be changed one at a time in random sequence. The serial clock running at 10 MHz makes it possible to load all four VRs in under 4 µs ($10 \times 4 \times 100$ ns) for the AD8403. The exact timing requirements are shown in Figures 2a, 2b, and 2c.

The AD8402/AD8403 resets to midscale by asserting the $\overline{RS}$ pin, simplifying initial conditions at power up. Both parts have a power shutdown $\overline{SHDN}$ pin that places the VR in a zero power consumption state where terminals Ax are open circuited and the wiper Wx is connected to Bx resulting in only leakage currents being consumed in the VR structure. In shutdown mode the VR latch settings are maintained so that returning to operational mode from power shutdown, the VR settings return to their previous resistance values. The digital interface is still active in shutdown, except that SDO is deactivated. Code changes in the registers can be made that will produce new wiper positions when the device is taken out of shutdown.

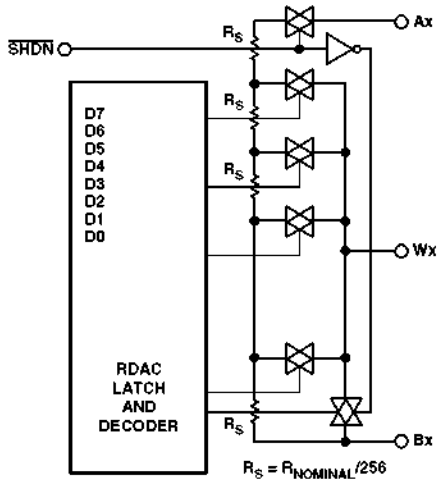


Figure 3. AD8402/AD8403 Equivalent VR (RDAC) Circuit

PROGRAMMING THE VARIABLE RESISTOR

Rheostat Operation

The nominal resistance of the VR (RDAC) between terminals A and B is available with values of 1 kΩ, 10 kΩ, 50 kΩ, and 100 kΩ. The final digits of the part number determine the nominal resistance value, e.g., 10 kΩ = 10; 100 kΩ = 100. The nominal resistance (R_{AB}) of the VR has 256 contact points accessed by the wiper terminal, plus the B terminal contact. The 8-bit data word in the RDAC latch is decoded to select one of the 256 possible settings. The wiper's first connection starts at the B terminal for data 00_H. This B terminal connection has a wiper contact resistance of 50 Ω. The second connection (10 kΩ part) is the first tap point located at 89 Ω [= R_{AB} (nominal resistance)/256 + R_W = 39 Ω + 50 Ω] for data 01_H. The third connection is the next tap point representing 78 + 50 = 128 Ω for data 02_H. Each LSB data value increase moves the wiper up the resistor ladder until the last tap point is reached at 10,011 Ω. The wiper does not directly connect to the B terminal. See Figure 3 for a simplified diagram of the equivalent RDAC circuit.

The AD8400 contains one RDAC, the AD8402 contains two independent RDACs, and the AD8403 contains four independent RDACs. The general transfer equation that determines the digitally programmed output resistance between Wx and Bx is:

$$R_{WB}(Dx) = (Dx) / 256 \times R_{AB} + R_W \quad (2)$$

where *Dx* is the data contained in the 8-bit RDAC# latch, and R_{AB} is the nominal end-to-end resistance.

For example, when V_B = 0 V and when the A terminal is open circuit, the following output resistance values will be set for the following RDAC latch codes (applies to 10 kΩ potentiometers):

D (Dec)	R_{WB} (Ω)	Output State
255	10,011	Full Scale
128	5,050	Midscale ($\overline{RS}$ = 0 Condition)
1	89	1 LSB
0	50	Zero-Scale (Wiper Contact Resistance)

Note in the zero-scale condition a finite wiper resistance of 50 Ω is present. Care should be taken to limit the current flow between W and B in this state to a maximum value of 5 mA to avoid degradation or possible destruction of the internal switch contact.

Like the mechanical potentiometer the RDAC replaces, it is totally symmetrical. The resistance between the wiper W and terminal A also produces a digitally controlled complementary resistance R_{WA}. When these terminals are used, the B terminal can be tied to the wiper or left floating. Setting the resistance value for R_{WA} starts at a maximum value of resistance and decreases as the data loaded in the RDAC latch is increased in value. The general transfer equation for this operation is:

$$R_{WA}(D_X) = (256 - D_X)/256 \times R_{AB} + R_W \quad (3)$$

where *Dx* is the data contained in the 8-bit RDAC# latch, and R_{AB} is the nominal end-to-end resistance. For example, when V_A = 0 V and B terminal is open circuit, the following output resistance values will be set for the following RDAC latch codes (applies to 10 kΩ potentiometers):

D (Dec)	R_{WA} (Ω)	Output State
255	89	Full-Scale
128	5,050	Midscale ($\overline{RS}$ = 0 Condition)
1	10,011	1 LSB
0	10,050	Zero-Scale

The typical distribution of R_{AB} from channel to channel matches within ±1%. However, device-to-device matching is process lot-dependent, having a ±20% variation. The change in R_{AB} with temperature has a positive 500 ppm/°C temperature coefficient.

The wiper-to-end-terminal resistance temperature coefficient has the best performance over the 10% to 100% of adjustment range where the internal wiper contact switches do not contribute any significant temperature related errors. The graph in TPC 10 shows the performance of R_{WB} tempco versus code. Using the trimmer with codes below 32 results in the larger temperature coefficients plotted.

PROGRAMMING THE POTENTIOMETER DIVIDER

Voltage Output Operation

The digital potentiometer easily generates an output voltage proportional to the input voltage applied to a given terminal. For example, connecting A terminal to 5 V and B terminal to ground produces an output voltage at the wiper starting at zero volts up to 1 LSB less than 5 V. Each LSB of voltage is equal to the voltage applied across terminal AB divided by the 256 position resolution of the potentiometer divider. The general equation defining the output voltage with respect to ground for any given input voltage applied to terminals AB is:

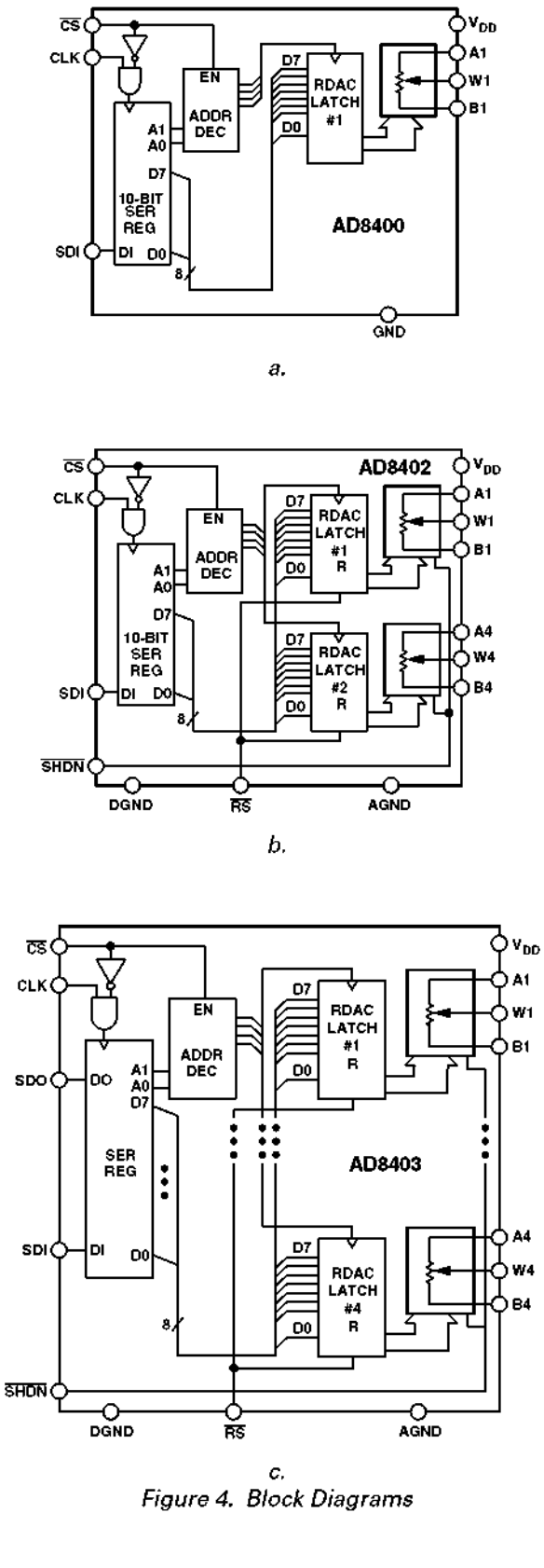
$$V_W(D_X) = D_X/256 \times V_{AB} + V_B \quad (4)$$

Operation of the digital potentiometer in the divider mode results in more accurate operation over temperature. Here the output voltage is dependent on the ratio of the internal resistors, not the absolute value; therefore, the temperature drift improves to 15 ppm/°C.

At the lower wiper position settings, the potentiometer divider temperature coefficient increases due to the contributions of the CMOS switch wiper resistance becoming an appreciable portion of the total resistance from Terminal B to the wiper. See TPC 9 for a plot of potentiometer tempco performance versus code setting.

DIGITAL INTERFACING

The AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 contain a standard SPI compatible three-wire serial input control interface. The three inputs are clock (CLK), $\overline{CS}$ and serial data input (SDI). The positive-edge sensitive CLK input requires clean transitions to avoid clocking incorrect data into the serial input register. For best results use logic transitions faster than 1 V/µs. Standard logic families work well. If mechanical switches are used for product evaluation, they should be debounced by a flip-flop or other suitable means. The Figure 4 block diagrams show more detail of the internal digital circuitry. When $\overline{CS}$ is taken active low, the clock loads data into the 10-bit serial register on each positive clock edge (see Table II).



a.

b.

c.

Figure 4. Block Diagrams

Table II. Input Logic Control Truth Table

CLK	$\overline{CS}$	$\overline{RS}$	$\overline{SHDN}$	Register Activity
L	L	H	H	No SR effect, enables SDO pin.
P	L	H	H	Shift one bit in from the SDI pin. The tenth previously entered bit is shifted out of the SDO pin.
X	P	H	H	Load SR data into RDAC latch based on A1, A0 decode (Table III).
X	H	H	H	No Operation
X	X	L	H	Sets all RDAC latches to midscale, wiper centered, and SDO latch cleared.
X	H	P	H	Latches all RDAC latches to 80_H.
X	H	H	L	Open circuits all resistor A-terminals, connects W to B, turns off SDO output transistor.

NOTE
P = positive edge, X = don't care, SR = shift register.

The serial data-output (SDO) pin contains an open drain n-channel FET. This output requires a pull-up resistor in order to transfer data to the next package's SDI pin. The pull-up resistor termination voltage may be larger than the V_{DD} supply (but less than max V_{DD} of 8 V) of the AD8403 SDO output device, e.g., the AD8403 could operate at V_{DD} = 3.3 V and the pull-up for interface to the next device could be set at 5 V. This allows for daisy-chaining several RDACs from a single processor serial data line. The clock period needs to be increased when using a pull-up resistor to the SDI pin of the following device in the series. Capacitive loading at the daisy-chain node SDO–SDI between devices must be accounted for to successfully transfer data. When daisy chaining is used, the $\overline{CS}$ should be kept low until all the bits of every package are clocked into their respective serial registers ensuring that the address bits and data bits are in the proper decoding location. This would require 20 bits of address and data complying to the word format provided in Table I if two AD8403 four-channel RDACs are daisy-chained. Note, only the AD8403 has a SDO pin. During shutdown $\overline{SHDN}$ the SDO output pin is forced to the off (logic high) state to disable power dissipation in the pull-up resistor. See Figure 6 for equivalent SDO output circuit schematic.

The data setup and data hold times in the specification table determine the data valid time requirements. The last 10 bits of the data word entered into the serial register are held when $\overline{CS}$ returns high. At the same time $\overline{CS}$ goes high it gates the address decoder, which enables one of the two (AD8402) or four (AD8403) positive edge triggered RDAC latches. See Figure 5 detail and Table III Address Decode Table.

Table III. Address Decode Table

A1	A0	Latch Decoded
0	0	RDAC#1
0	1	RDAC#2
1	0	RDAC#3 AD8403 Only
1	1	RDAC#4 AD8403 Only

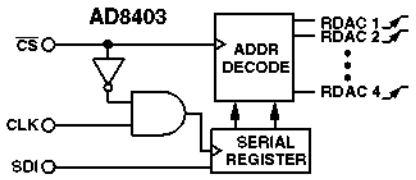


Figure 5. Equivalent Input Control Logic

The target RDAC latch is loaded with the last eight bits of the serial data word completing one DAC update. In the case of the AD8403 four separate 10-bit data words must be clocked in to change all four VR settings.

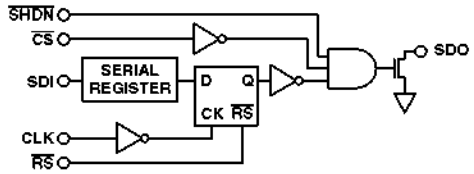


Figure 6. Detail SDO Output Schematic of the AD8403

All digital pins are protected with a series input resistor and parallel Zener ESD structure shown in Figure 7a. This structure applies to digital pins $\overline{CS}$, SDI, SDO, $\overline{RS}$, $\overline{SHDN}$, CLK. The digital input ESD protection allows for mixed power supply applications where 5 V CMOS logic can be used to drive an AD8400, AD8402, or AD8403 operating from a 3 V power supply. The analog pins A, B, and W are protected with a 20 Ω series resistor and parallel Zener (see Figure 7b).

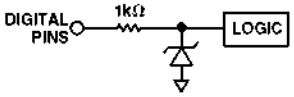


Figure 7a. Equivalent ESD Protection Circuits

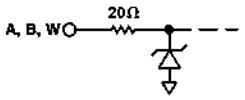
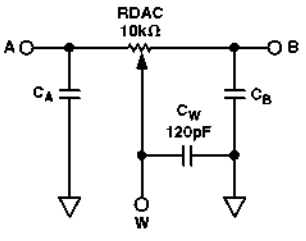


Figure 7b. Equivalent ESD Protection Circuit (Analog Pins)



$C_A = 90.4pF \times (DW / 256) + 30pF$ $C_B = 90.4pF \times [1 - (DW / 256)] + 30pF$

Figure 8. RDAC Circuit Simulation Model for RDAC = 10 kΩ

The ac characteristics of the RDACs are dominated by the internal parasitic capacitances and the external capacitive loads. The –3 dB bandwidth of the AD8403AN10 (10 kΩ resistor) measures 600 kHz at half scale as a potentiometer divider. TPC 22 provides the large signal BODE plot characteristics of the three available resistor versions 10 kΩ, 50 kΩ, and 100 kΩ. The gain flatness versus frequency graph, TPC 25, predicts filter applications performance. A parasitic simulation model has been developed, and is shown in Figure 8. Listing I provides a macro model net list for the 10 kΩ RDAC:

Listing I. Macro Model Net List for RDAC

```
.PARAM DW=255, RDAC=10E3
*
.SUBCKT DPOT (A,W,)
*
CA   A  0  {DW/256*90.4E-12+30E-12}
RAW  A  W  {(1-DW/256)*RDAC+50}
CW   W  0  120E-12
RBW  W  B  {DW/256*RDAC+50}
CB   B  0  {(1-DW/256)*90.4E-12+30E-12}
*
.ENDS DPOT
```

The total harmonic distortion plus noise (THD+N) is measured at 0.003% in an inverting op amp circuit using an offset ground and a rail-to-rail OP279 amplifier, Test Circuit 5. Thermal noise is primarily Johnson noise, typically 9 nV/$\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$ for the 10 kΩ version at f = 1 kHz. For the 100 kΩ device, thermal noise becomes 29 nV/$\sqrt{\text{Hz}}$. Channel-to-channel crosstalk measures less than –65 dB at f = 100 kHz. To achieve this isolation, the extra ground pins provided on the package to segregate the individual RDACs must be connected to circuit ground. AGND and DGND pins should be at the same voltage potential. Any unused potentiometers in a package should be connected to ground. Power supply rejection is typically –35 dB at 10 kHz. Care is needed to minimize power supply ripple in high accuracy applications.

APPLICATIONS

The digital potentiometer (RDAC) allows many of the applications of trimming potentiometers to be replaced by a solid-state solution offering compact size and freedom from vibration, shock and open contact problems encountered in hostile environments. A major advantage of the digital potentiometer is its programmability. Any settings can be saved for later recall in system memory.

The two major configurations of the RDAC include the potentiometer divider (basic 3-terminal application) and the rheostat (2-terminal configuration) connections shown in Test Circuits 1 and 2 (see page 11).

Certain boundary conditions must be satisfied for proper AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 operation. First, all analog signals must remain within the 0 to V_{DD} range used to operate the single-supply AD8400/AD8402/AD8403 products. For standard potentiometer divider applications, the wiper output can be used directly. For low resistance loads, buffer the wiper with a suitable rail-to-rail op amp such as the OP291 or the OP279. Second, for ac signals and bipolar dc adjustment applications, a virtual ground will generally be needed. Whatever method is used to create the virtual ground, the result must provide the necessary sink and source current for all connected loads, including adequate bypass capacitance. Test Circuit 5 (see page 11) shows one channel of the AD8402 connected in an inverting programmable gain amplifier circuit. The virtual ground is set at 2.5 V, which allows the circuit output to span a ±2.5 volt range with respect to virtual ground. The rail-to-rail amplifier capability is necessary for the widest output swing. As the wiper is adjusted from its midscale reset position (80_H) toward the A terminal (code FF_H), the voltage gain of the circuit is increased in successfully larger increments. Alternatively, as the wiper is adjusted toward the B terminal (code 00_H), the signal becomes attenuated. The plot in Figure 9 shows the wiper settings for a 100:1 range of voltage gain (V/V). Note the ±10 dB of pseudo-logarithmic gain around 0 dB (1 V/V). This circuit is mainly useful for gain adjustments in the range of 0.14 V/V to 4 V/V; beyond this range the step sizes become very large and the resistance of the driving circuit can become a significant term in the gain equation.

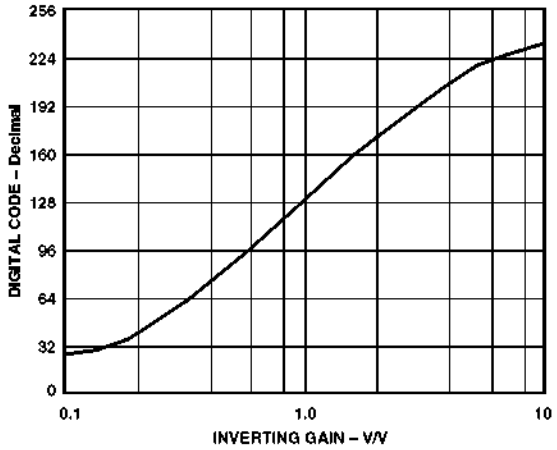


Figure 9. Inverting Programmable Gain Plot

ACTIVE FILTER

One of the standard circuits used to generate a low-pass, high-pass, or band-pass filter is the state variable active filter. The digital potentiometer allows full programmability of the frequency, gain and Q of the filter outputs. Figure 10 shows the filter circuit using a 2.5 V virtual ground, which allows a ±2.5 V_P input and output swing. RDAC2 and 3 set the LP, HP, and BP cutoff and center frequencies, respectively. These variable resistors should be programmed with the same data (as with ganged potentiometers) to maintain the best circuit Q. Figure 11 shows the measured filter response at the band-pass output as a function of the RDAC2 and RDAC3 settings which produce a range of center frequencies from 2 kHz to 20 kHz. The filter gain response at the band-pass output is shown in Figure 12. At a center frequency of 2 kHz, the gain is adjusted over a –20 dB to +20 dB range determined by RDAC1. Circuit Q is adjusted by RDAC4. For more detailed reading on the state variable active filter, see Analog Devices' application note, AN-318.

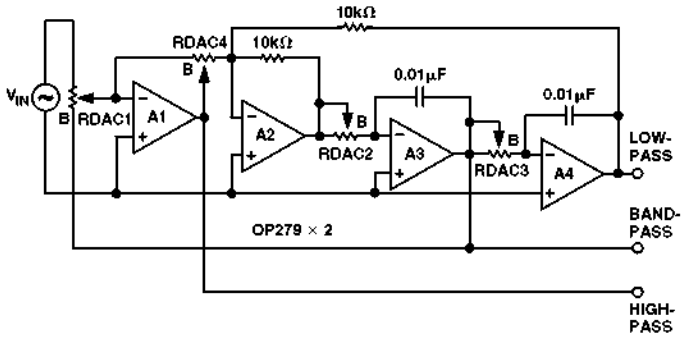


Figure 10. Programmable State Variable Active Filter

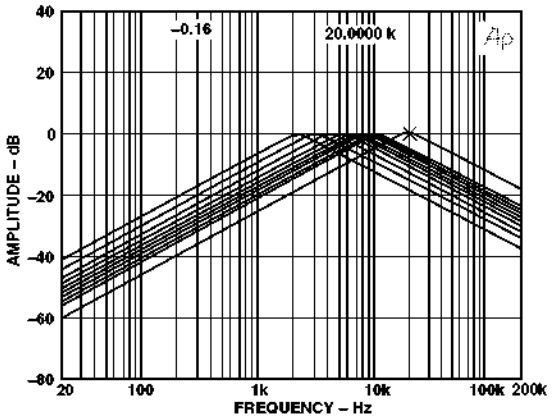


Figure 11. Programmed Center Frequency Band-Pass Response

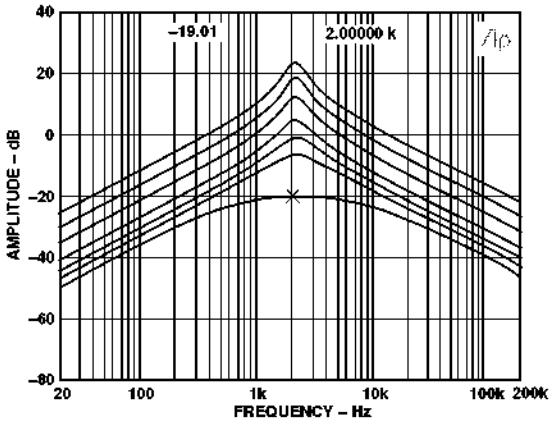
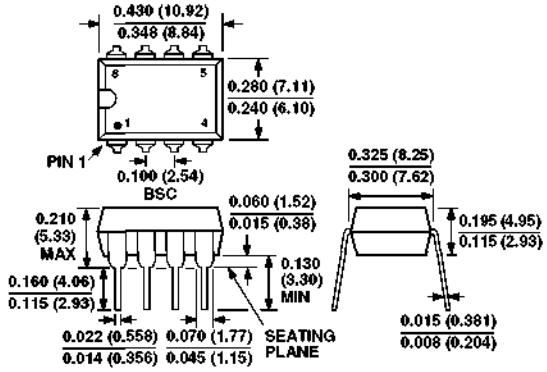


Figure 12. Programmed Amplitude Band-Pass Response

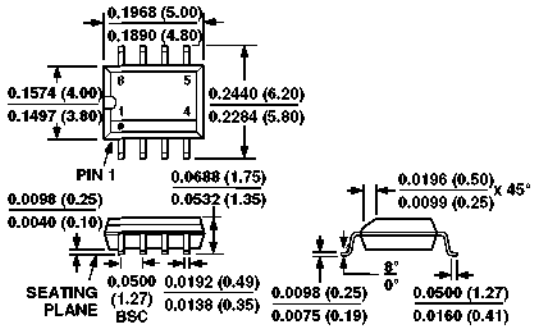
OUTLINE DIMENSIONS

Dimensions shown in inches and (mm).

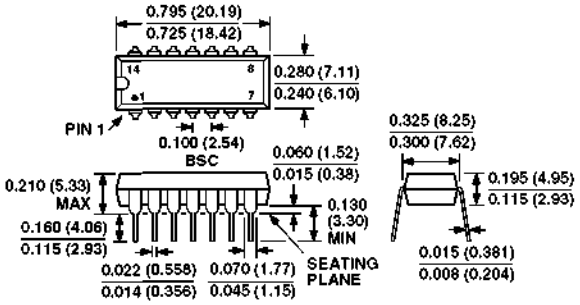
8-Lead Plastic DIP
(N-8)



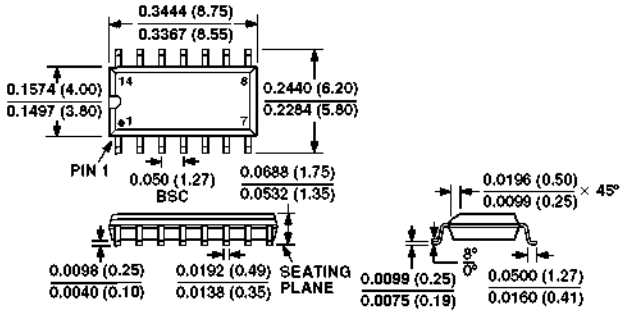
8-Lead SOIC
(R-8)



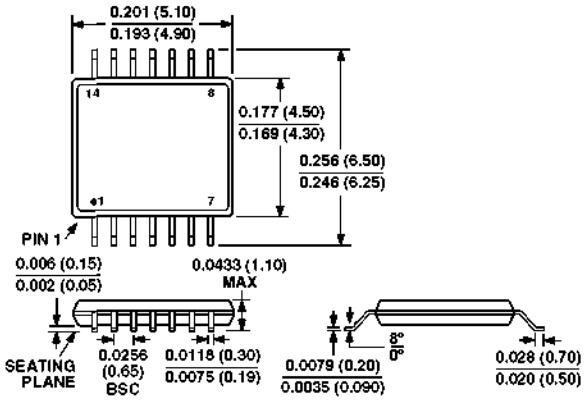
14-Lead Plastic DIP Package
(N-14)



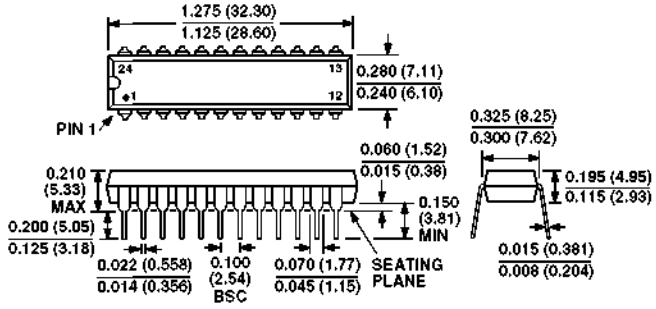
14-Lead Narrow Body SOIC Package
(SO-14)



14-Lead TSSOP
(RU-14)

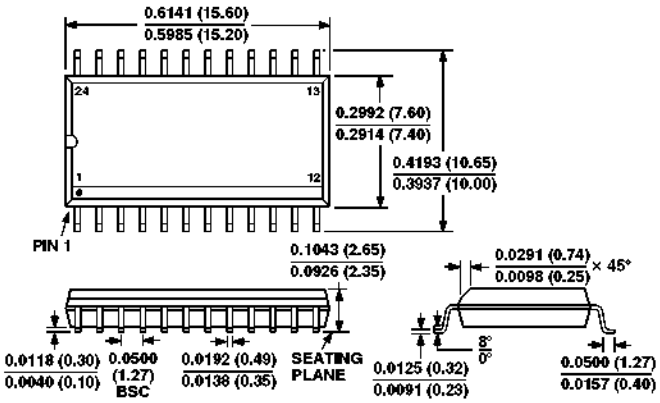


24-Lead Narrow Body Plastic DIP Package
(N-24)

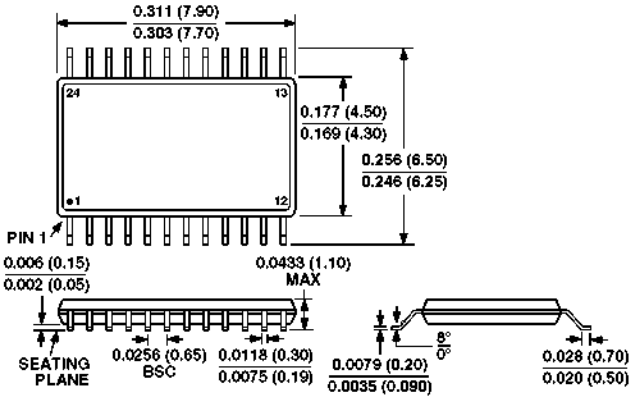


OUTLINE DIMENSIONS (continued)
Dimensions shown in inches and (mm).

24-Lead SOIC Package
(SOL-24)



24-Lead Thin Surface-Mount TSSOP Package
(RU-24)



Revision History

Location	Page
Data Sheet changed from REV. B to REV. C.	
Addition of new Figure 1	1
Edits to SPECIFICATIONS	2
Edits to ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS	6
Edits to TPCs 1, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, 35	9
Edits to PROGRAMMING THE VARIABLE RESISTOR section	13

C01092–0–2/02(C)

PRINTED IN U.S.A.

100MHz Current Feedback Amplifier with DC Gain Control

FEATURES

- Very Fast Transconductance Amplifier
  - Bandwidth: 75MHz
  - $g_m = 10 \times I_{SET}$
  - Low THD: 0.2% at 30mV$_{RMS}$ Input
  - Wide I_{SET} Range: 1µA to 1mA
- Very Fast Current Feedback Amplifier
  - Bandwidth: 100MHz
  - Slew Rate: 1000V/µs
  - Output Drive Current: 30mA
  - Differential Gain: 0.04%
  - Differential Phase: 0.1°
  - High Input Impedance: 25MΩ, 6pF
- Wide Supply Range: ±2V to ±15V
- Inputs Common Mode to Within 1.5V of Supplies
- Outputs Swing Within 0.8V of Supplies
- Supply Current: 7mA

APPLICATIONS

- Video DC Restore (Clamp) Circuits
- Video Differential Input Amplifiers
- Video Keyer/Fader Amplifiers
- AGC Amplifiers
- Tunable Filters
- Oscillators

LT, LTC and LT are registered trademarks of Linear Technology Corporation.

DESCRIPTION

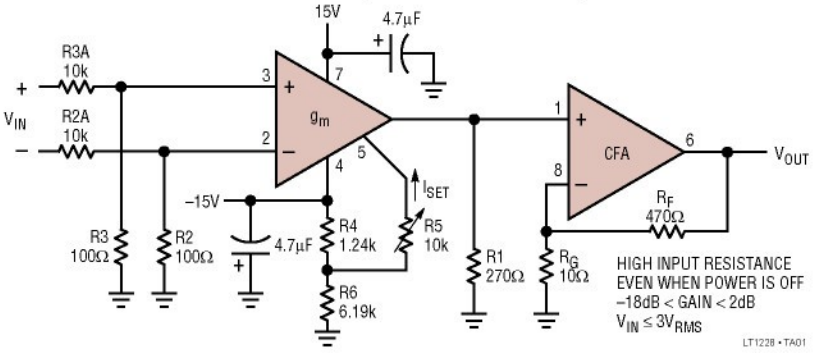
The LT®1228 makes it easy to electronically control the gain of signals from DC to video frequencies. The LT1228 implements gain control with a transconductance amplifier (voltage to current) whose gain is proportional to an externally controlled current. A resistor is typically used to convert the output current to a voltage, which is then amplified with a current feedback amplifier. The LT1228 combines both amplifiers into an 8-pin package, and operates on any supply voltage from 4V (±2V) to 30V (±15V). A complete differential input, gain controlled amplifier can be implemented with the LT1228 and just a few resistors.

The LT1228 transconductance amplifier has a high impedance differential input and a current source output with wide output voltage compliance. The transconductance, g_m, is set by the current that flows into Pin 5, I_{SET}. The small signal g_m is equal to ten times the value of I_{SET} and this relationship holds over several decades of set current. The voltage at Pin 5 is two diode drops above the negative supply, Pin 4.

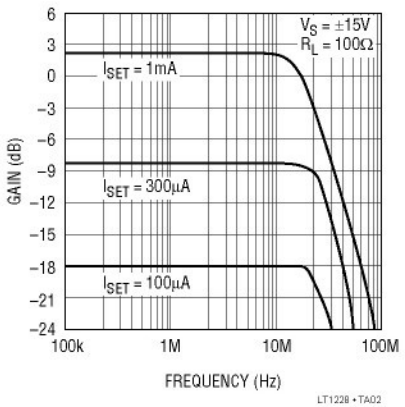
The LT1228 current feedback amplifier has very high input impedance and therefore it is an excellent buffer for the output of the transconductance amplifier. The current feedback amplifier maintains its wide bandwidth over a wide range of voltage gains making it easy to interface the transconductance amplifier output to other circuitry. The current feedback amplifier is designed to drive low impedance loads, such as cables, with excellent linearity at high frequencies.

TYPICAL APPLICATION

Differential Input Variable Gain Amp



Frequency Response

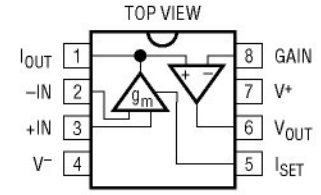


ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

(Note 1)

Supply Voltage ..... ±18V
Input Current, Pins 1, 2, 3, 5, 8 (Note 8) ..... ±15mA
Output Short Circuit Duration (Note 2) ..... Continuous
Operating Temperature Range
LT1228C ..... 0°C to 70°C
LT1228M **(OBSOLETE)** ..... –55°C to 125°C
Storage Temperature Range ..... –65°C to 150°C
Junction Temperature
Plastic Package ..... 150°C
Ceramic Package **(OBSOLETE)** ..... 175°C
Lead Temperature (Soldering, 10 sec) ..... 300°C

PACKAGE/ORDER INFORMATION



N8 PACKAGE
8-LEAD PLASTIC DIP
$T_{J\,MAX}$ = 150°C, θ_{JA} = 100°C/W (N)

S8 PACKAGE
8-LEAD PLASTIC SOIC
$T_{J\,MAX}$ = 150°C, θ_{JA} = 150°C/W (S)

ORDER PART NUMBER
LT1228CN8
LT1228CS8
S8 PART MARKING
1228

J8 PACKAGE
8-LEAD CERAMIC DIP
$T_{J\,MAX}$ = 175°C, θ_{JA} = 100°C/W (J)

ORDER PART NUMBER
LT1228MJ8
LT1228CJ8

OBSOLETE PACKAGE
Consider the N8 or S8 Packages for Alternate Source.

Consult LTC Marketing for parts specified with wider operating temperature ranges.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The ● denotes the specifications which apply over the full operating temperature range, otherwise specifications are at T_A = 25°C. Current Feedback Amplifier, Pins 1, 6, 8. ±5V ≤ V_S ≤ ±15V, I_{SET} = 0µA, V_{CM} = 0V unless otherwise noted.

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
V_{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	T_A = 25°C			±3	±10	mV
			●			±15	mV
	Input Offset Voltage Drift		●		10		µV/°C
I_{IN}^+	Noninverting Input Current	T_A = 25°C			±0.3	±3	µA
			●			±10	µA
I_{IN}^-	Inverting Input Current	T_A = 25°C			±10	±65	µA
			●			±100	µA
e_n	Input Noise Voltage Density	f = 1kHz, R_F = 1k, R_G = 10Ω, R_S = 0Ω			6		nV/√Hz
i_n	Input Noise Current Density	f = 1kHz, R_F = 1k, R_G = 10Ω, R_S = 10k			1.4		pV/√Hz
R_{IN}	Input Resistance	V_{IN} = ±13V, V_S = ±15V	●	2	25		MΩ
		V_{IN} = ±3V, V_S = ±5V	●	2	25		MΩ
C_{IN}	Input Capacitance (Note 3)	V_S = ±5V			6		pF
	Input Voltage Range	V_S = ±15V, T_A = 25°C		±13	±13.5		V
			●	±12			V
		V_S = ±5V, T_A = 25°C		±3	±3.5		V
			●	±2			V
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±13V, T_A = 25°C		55	69		dB
		V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±12V	●	55			dB
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±3V, T_A = 25°C		55	69		dB
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±2V	●	55			dB
	Inverting Input Current Common Mode Rejection	V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±13V, T_A = 25°C			2.5	10	µA/V
		V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±12V	●			10	µA/V
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±3V, T_A = 25°C			2.5	10	µA/V
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±2V	●			10	µA/V
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	V_S = ±2V to ±15V, T_A = 25°C		60	80		dB
		V_S = ±3V to ±15V	●	60			dB

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The ● denotes the specifications which apply over the full operating temperature range, otherwise specifications are at T_A = 25°C. Current Feedback Amplifier, Pins 1, 6, 8. ±5V ≤ V_S ≤ ±15V, I_{SET} = 0µA, V_{CM} = 0V unless otherwise noted.

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
	Noninverting Input Current	V_S = ±2V to ±15V, T_A = 25°C			10	50	nA/V
	Power Supply Rejection	V_S = ±3V to ±15V	●			50	nA/V
	Inverting Input Current	V_S = ±2V to ±15V, T_A = 25°C			0.1	5	µA/V
	Power Supply Rejection	V_S = ±3V to ±15V	●			5	µA/V
A_V	Large-Signal Voltage Gain	V_S = ±15V, V_{OUT} = ±10V, R_{LOAD} = 1k	●	55	65		dB
		V_S = ±5V, V_{OUT} = ±2V, R_{LOAD} = 150Ω	●	55	65		dB
R_{OL}	Transresistance, $\Delta V_{OUT}/\Delta I_{IN}^-$	V_S = ±15V, V_{OUT} = ±10V, R_{LOAD} = 1k	●	100	200		kΩ
		V_S = ±5V, V_{OUT} = ±2V, R_{LOAD} = 150Ω	●	100	200		kΩ
V_{OUT}	Maximum Output Voltage Swing	V_S = ±15V, R_{LOAD} = 400Ω, T_A = 25°C		±12	±13.5		V
			●	±10			V
		V_S = ±5V, R_{LOAD} = 150Ω, T_A = 25°C		±3	±3.7		V
			●	±2.5			V
I_{OUT}	Maximum Output Current	R_{LOAD} = 0Ω, T_A = 25°C		30	65	125	mA
			●	25		125	mA
I_S	Supply Current	V_{OUT} = 0V, I_{SET} = 0V	●		6	11	mA
SR	Slew Rate (Notes 4 and 6)	T_A = 25°C		300	500		V/µs
SR	Slew Rate	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 400Ω			3500		V/µs
t_r	Rise Time (Notes 5 and 6)	T_A = 25°C			10	20	ns
BW	Small-Signal Bandwidth	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 100Ω			100		MHz
t_r	Small-Signal Rise Time	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 100Ω			3.5		ns
	Propagation Delay	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 100Ω			3.5		ns
	Small-Signal Overshoot	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 100Ω			15		%
t_s	Settling Time	0.1%, V_{OUT} = 10V, R_F = 1k, R_G = 1k, R_L = 1k			45		ns
	Differential Gain (Note 7)	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 1k			0.01		%
	Differential Phase (Note 7)	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 1k			0.01		DEG
	Differential Gain (Note 7)	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 150Ω			0.04		%
	Differential Phase (Note 7)	V_S = ±15V, R_F = 750Ω, R_G = 750Ω, R_L = 150Ω			0.1		DEG

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The ● denotes the specifications which apply over the full operating temperature range, otherwise specifications are at T_A = 25°C. Transconductance Amplifier, Pins 1, 2, 3, 5. ±5V ≤ V_S ≤ ±15V, I_{SET} = 100µA, V_{CM} = 0V unless otherwise noted.

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
V_{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	I_{SET} = 1mA, T_A = 25°C			±0.5	±5	mV
			●			±10	mV
	Input Offset Voltage Drift		●		10		µV/°C
I_{OS}	Input Offset Current	T_A = 25°C			40	200	nA
			●			500	nA
I_B	Input Bias Current	T_A = 25°C			0.4	1	µA
			●			5	µA
e_n	Input Noise Voltage Density	f = 1kHz			20		nV/√Hz
R_{IN}	Input Resistance-Differential Mode	V_{IN} ≈ ±30mV	●	30	200		kΩ
	Input Resistance-Common Mode	V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±12V	●	50	1000		MΩ
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±2V	●	50	1000		MΩ
C_{IN}	Input Capacitance				3		pF

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The ● denotes the specifications which apply over the full operating temperature range, otherwise specifications are at T_A = 25°C. Transconductance Amplifier, Pins 1, 2, 3, 5. ±5V ≤ V_S ≤ ±15V, I_{SET} = 100µA, V_{CM} = 0V unless otherwise noted.

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
	Input Voltage Range	V_S = ±15V, T_A = 25°C		±13	±14		V
		V_S = ±15V	●	±12			V
		V_S = ±5V, T_A = 25°C		±3	±4		V
		V_S = ±5V	●	±2			V
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±13V, T_A = 25°C		60	100		dB
		V_S = ±15V, V_{CM} = ±12V	●	60			dB
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±3V, T_A = 25°C		60	100		dB
		V_S = ±5V, V_{CM} = ±2V	●	60			dB
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	V_S = ±2V to ±15V, T_A = 25°C		60	100		dB
		V_S = ±3V to ±15V	●	60			dB
g_m	Transconductance	I_{SET} = 100µA, I_{OUT} = ±30µA, T_A = 25°C		0.75	1.00	1.25	µA/mV
	Transconductance Drift		●		–0.33		%/°C
I_{OUT}	Maximum Output Current	I_{SET} = 100µA	●	70	100	130	µA
I_{OL}	Output Leakage Current	I_{SET} = 0µA (+I_{IN} of CFA), T_A = 25°C			0.3	3	µA
			●			10	µA
V_{OUT}	Maximum Output Voltage Swing	V_S = ±15V , R1 = ∞	●	±13	±14		V
		V_S = ±5V , R1 = ∞	●	±3	±4		V
R_O	Output Resistance	V_S = ±15V, V_{OUT} = ±13V	●	2	8		MΩ
		V_S = ±5V, V_{OUT} = ±3V	●	2	8		MΩ
	Output Capacitance (Note 3)	V_S = ±5V			6		pF
I_S	Supply Current, Both Amps	I_{SET} = 1mA	●		9	15	mA
THD	Total Harmonic Distortion	V_{IN} = 30mV_{RMS} at 1kHz, R1 = 100k			0.2		%
BW	Small-Signal Bandwidth	R1 = 50Ω, I_{SET} = 500µA			80		MHz
t_r	Small-Signal Rise Time	R1 = 50Ω, I_{SET} = 500µA, 10% to 90%			5		ns
	Propagation Delay	R1 = 50Ω, I_{SET} = 500µA, 50% to 50%			5		ns

Note 1: Absolute Maximum Ratings are those values beyond which the life of a device may be impaired.

Note 2: A heat sink may be required depending on the power supply voltage.

Note 3: This is the total capacitance at Pin 1. It includes the input capacitance of the current feedback amplifier and the output capacitance of the transconductance amplifier.

Note 4: Slew rate is measured at ±5V on a ±10V output signal while operating on ±15V supplies with R_F = 1k, R_G = 110Ω and R_L = 400Ω. The slew rate is much higher when the input is overdriven, see the applications section.

Note 5: Rise time is measured from 10% to 90% on a ±500mV output signal while operating on ±15V supplies with R_F = 1k, R_G = 110Ω and R_L = 100Ω. This condition is not the fastest possible, however, it does guarantee the internal capacitances are correct and it makes automatic testing practical.

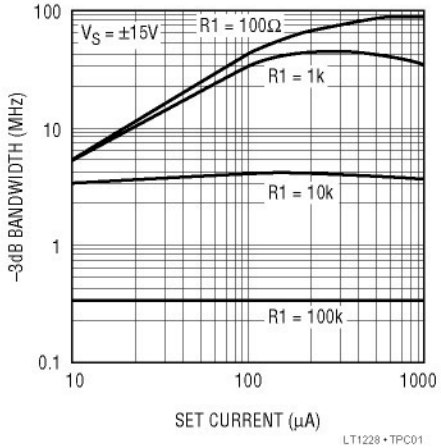
Note 6: AC parameters are 100% tested on the ceramic and plastic DIP packaged parts (J and N suffix) and are sample tested on every lot of the SO packaged parts (S suffix).

Note 7: NTSC composite video with an output level of 2V.

Note 8: Back to back 6V Zener diodes are connected between Pins 2 and 3 for ESD protection.

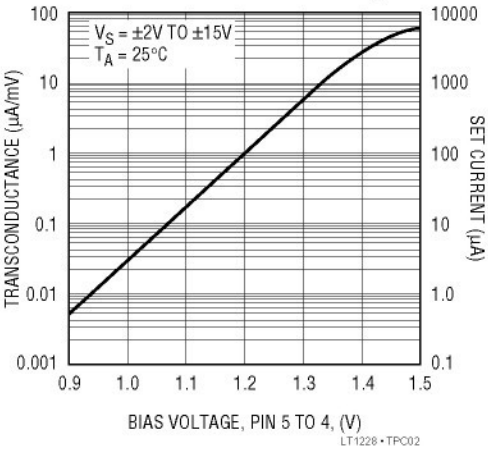
TYPICAL PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS Transconductance Amplifier, Pins 1, 2, 3 & 5

Small-Signal Bandwidth vs Set Current



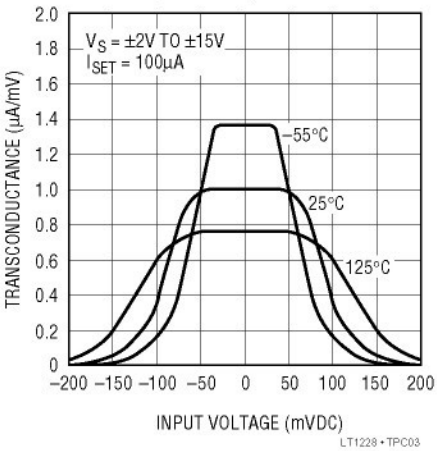
LT1228 • TPC01

Small-Signal Transconductance and Set Current vs Bias Voltage



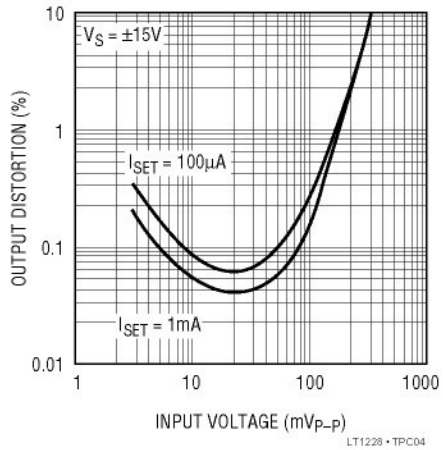
LT1228 • TPC02

Small-Signal Transconductance vs DC Input Voltage



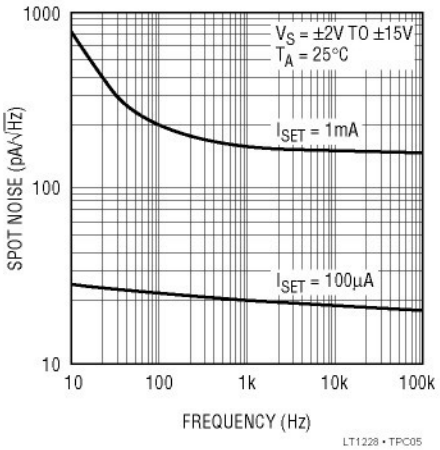
LT1228 • TPC03

Total Harmonic Distortion vs Input Voltage



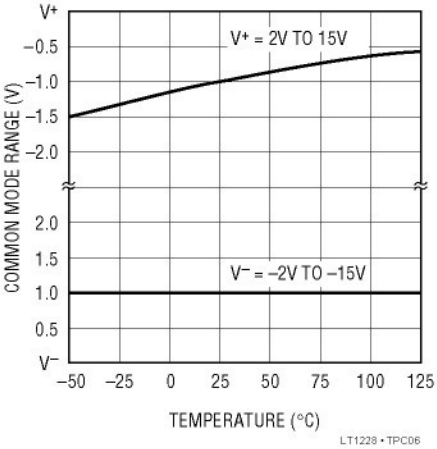
LT1228 • TPC04

Spot Output Noise Current vs Frequency



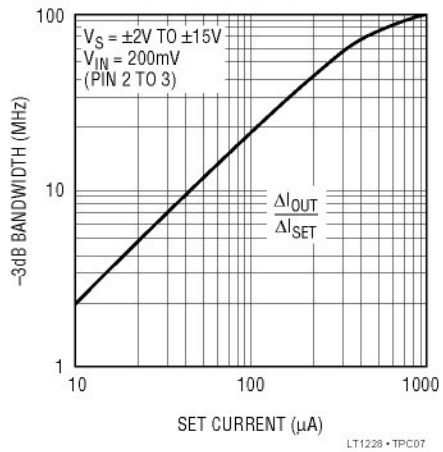
LT1228 • TPC05

Input Common Mode Limit vs Temperature



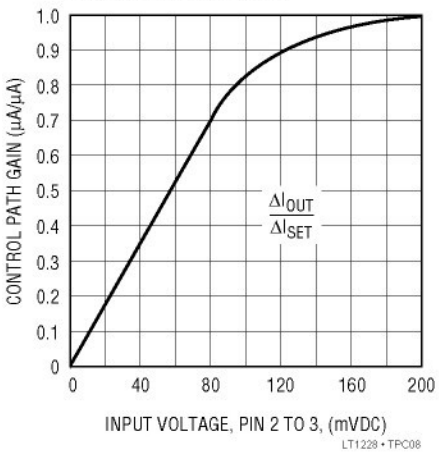
LT1228 • TPC06

Small-Signal Control Path Bandwidth vs Set Current



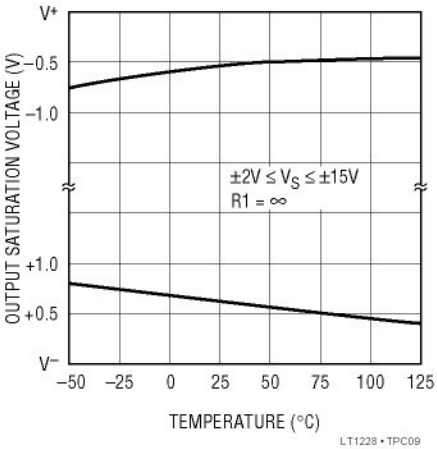
LT1228 • TPC07

Small-Signal Control Path Gain vs Input Voltage



LT1228 • TPC08

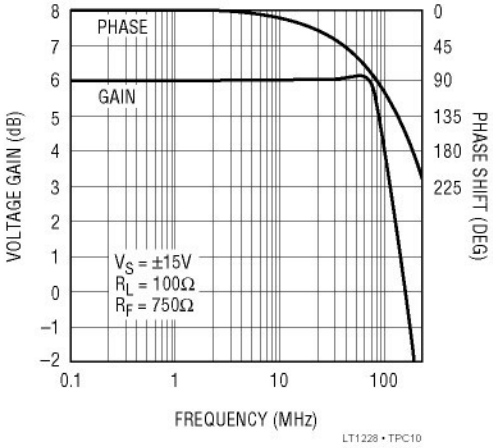
Output Saturation Voltage vs Temperature



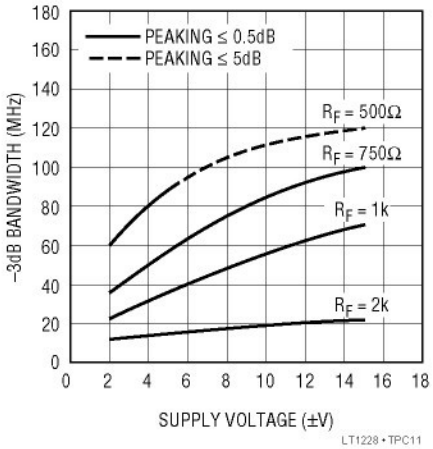
LT1228 • TPC09

TYPICAL PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS Current Feedback Amplifier, Pins 1, 6, 8

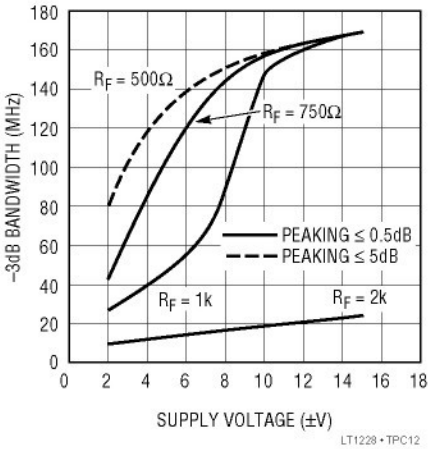
Voltage Gain and Phase vs Frequency, Gain = 6dB



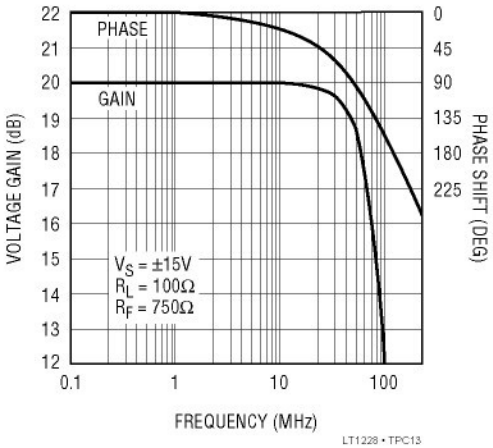
–3dB Bandwidth vs Supply Voltage, Gain = 2, R_L = 100Ω



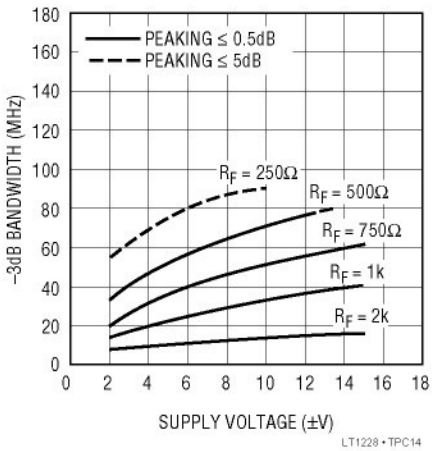
–3dB Bandwidth vs Supply Voltage, Gain = 2, R_L = 1k



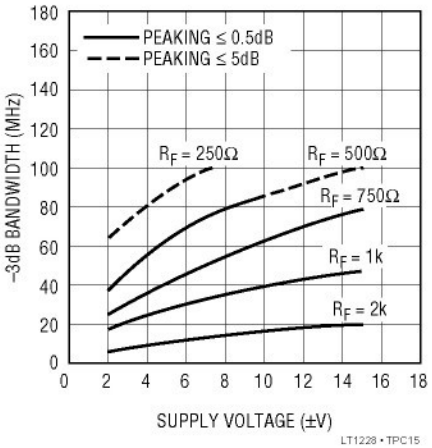
Voltage Gain and Phase vs Frequency, Gain = 20dB



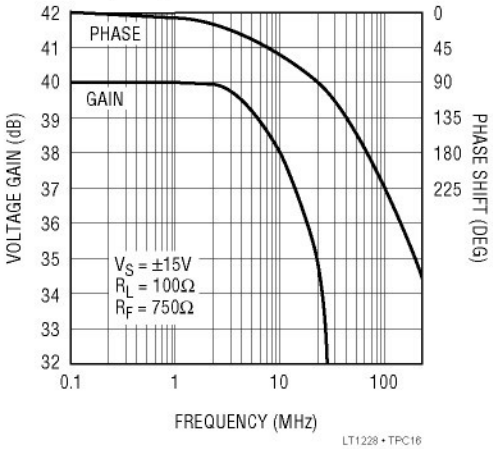
–3dB Bandwidth vs Supply Voltage, Gain = 10, R_L = 100Ω



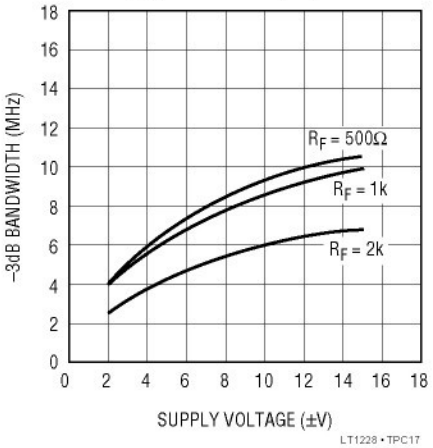
–3dB Bandwidth vs Supply Voltage, Gain = 10, R_L = 1kΩ



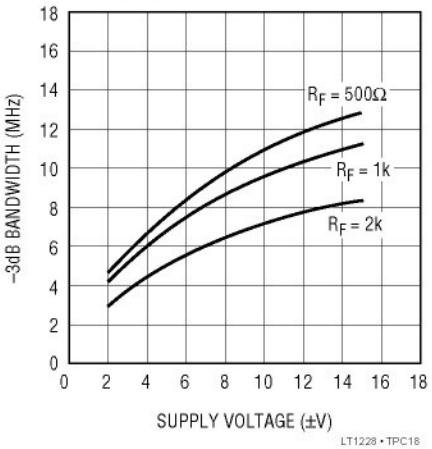
Voltage Gain and Phase vs Frequency, Gain = 40dB



–3dB Bandwidth vs Supply Voltage, Gain = 100, R_L = 100Ω

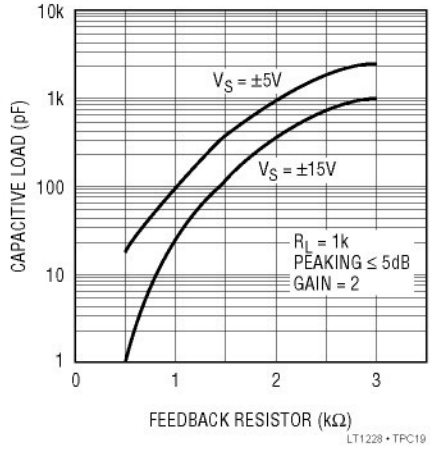


–3dB Bandwidth vs Supply Voltage, Gain = 100, R_L = 1kΩ

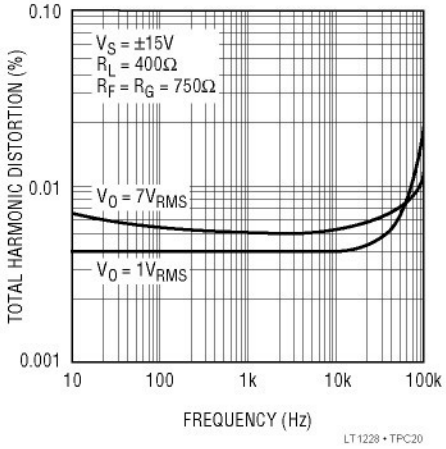


TYPICAL PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS Current Feedback Amplifier, Pins 1, 6, 8

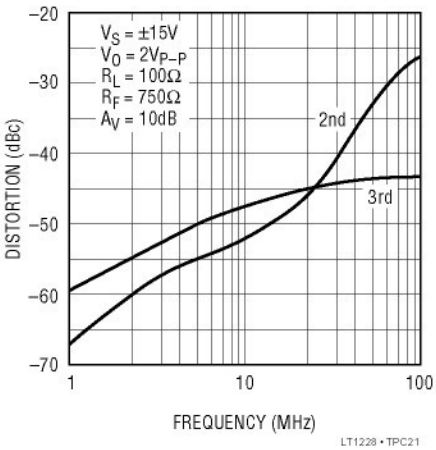
Maximum Capacitive Load vs Feedback Resistor



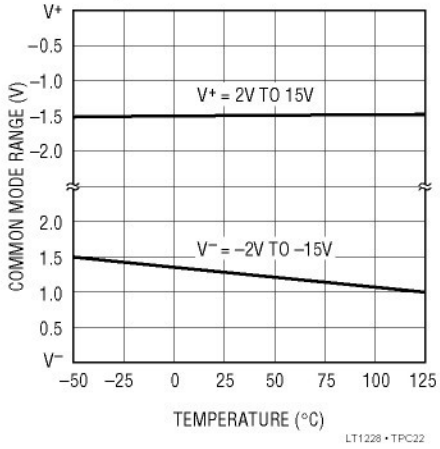
Total Harmonic Distortion vs Frequency



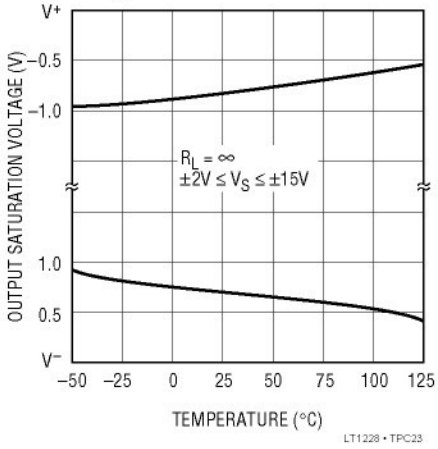
2nd and 3rd Harmonic Distortion vs Frequency



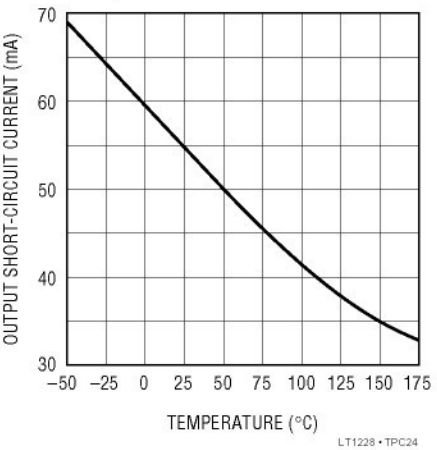
Input Common Mode Limit vs Temperature



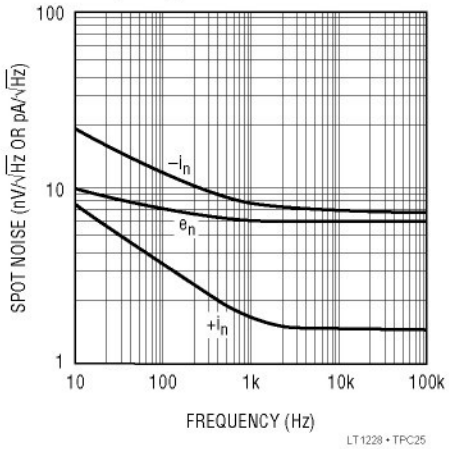
Output Saturation Voltage vs Temperature



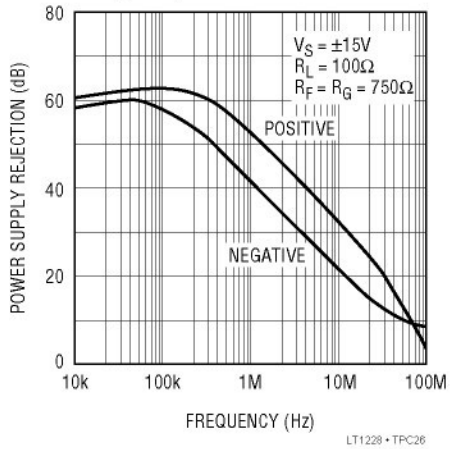
Output Short-Circuit Current vs Temperature



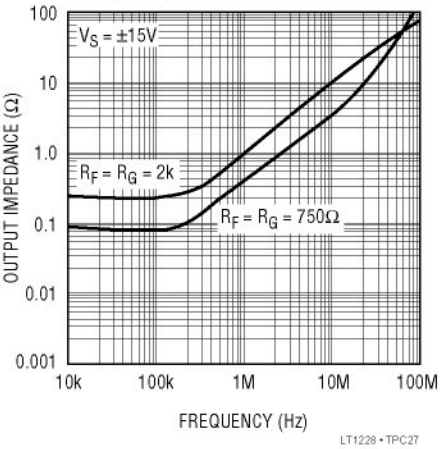
Spot Noise Voltage and Current vs Frequency



Power Supply Rejection vs Frequency

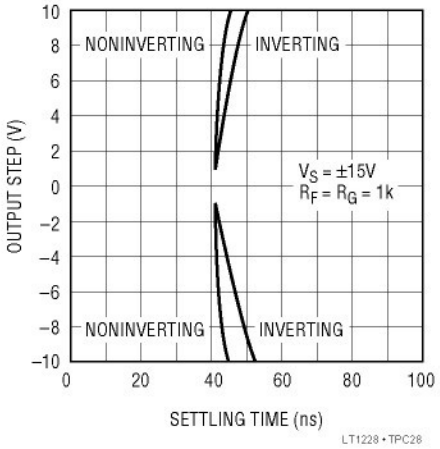


Output Impedance vs Frequency

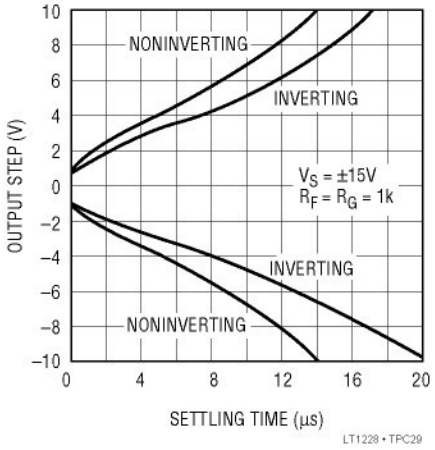


TYPICAL PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS Current Feedback Amplifier, Pins 1, 6 & 8

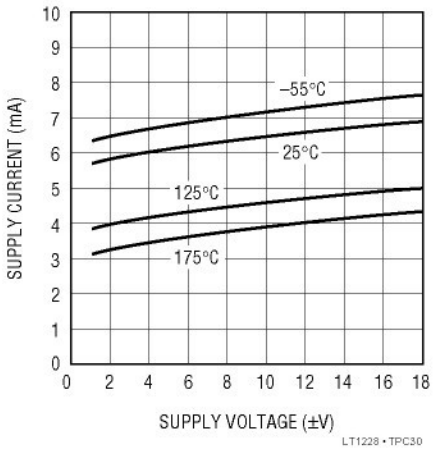
Settling Time to 10mV vs Output Step



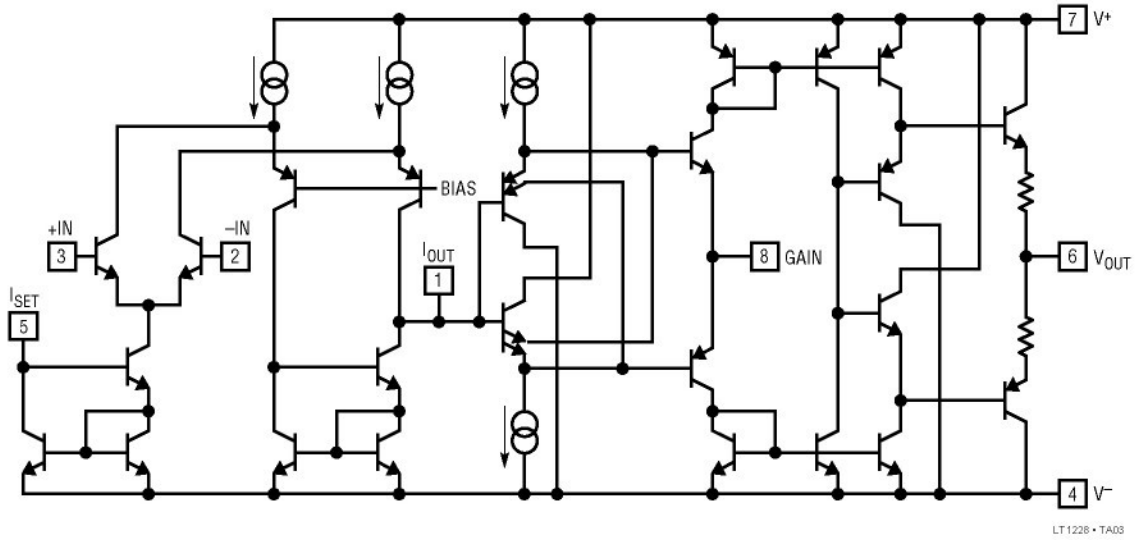
Settling Time to 1mV vs Output Step



Supply Current vs Supply Voltage



SIMPLIFIED SCHEMATIC



APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

The LT1228 contains two amplifiers, a transconductance amplifier (voltage-to-current) and a current feedback amplifier (voltage-to-voltage). The gain of the transconductance amplifier is proportional to the current that is externally programmed into Pin 5. Both amplifiers are designed to operate on almost any available supply voltage from 4V (±2V) to 30V (±15V). The output of the transconductance amplifier is connected to the noninverting input of the current feedback amplifier so that both fit into an eight pin package.

TRANSCONDUCTANCE AMPLIFIER

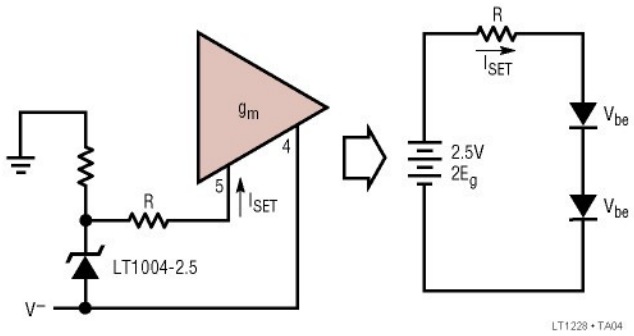
The LT1228 transconductance amplifier has a high impedance differential input (Pins 2 and 3) and a current source output (Pin 1) with wide output voltage compliance. The voltage to current gain or transconductance (g_m) is set by the current that flows into Pin 5, I_{SET}. The voltage at Pin 5 is two forward biased diode drops above the negative supply, Pin 4. Therefore the voltage at Pin 5 (with respect to V^-) is about 1.2V and changes with the log of the set current (120mV/decade), see the characteristic curves. The temperature coefficient of this voltage is about –4mV/°C (–3300ppm/°C) and the temperature coefficient of the logging characteristic is 3300ppm/°C. It is important that the current into Pin 5 be limited to less than 15mA. THE LT1228 WILL BE DESTROYED IF PIN 5 IS SHORTED TO GROUND OR TO THE POSITIVE SUPPLY. A limiting resistor (2k or so) should be used to prevent more than 15mA from flowing into Pin 5.

The small-signal transconductance (g_m) is equal to ten times the value of I_{SET} (in mA/mV) and this relationship holds over many decades of set current (see the characteristic curves). The transconductance is inversely proportional to absolute temperature (–3300ppm/°C). The input stage of the transconductance amplifier has been designed to operate with much larger signals than is possible with an ordinary diff-amp. The transconductance of the input stage varies much less than 1% for differential input signals over a ±30 mV range (see the characteristic curve Small-Signal Transconductance vs DC Input Voltage).

Resistance Controlled Gain

If the set current is to be set or varied with a resistor or potentiometer it is possible to use the negative temperature coefficient at Pin 5 (with respect to Pin 4) to compensate for the negative temperature coefficient of the transconductance. The easiest way is to use an LT1004-2.5, a 2.5V reference diode, as shown below:

Temperature Compensation of g_m with a 2.5V Reference



The current flowing into Pin 5 has a positive temperature coefficient that cancels the negative coefficient of the transconductance. The following derivation shows why a 2.5V reference results in zero gain change with temperature:

$$\text{Since } g_m = \frac{q}{kT} \times \frac{I_{SET}}{3.87} = 10 \bullet I_{SET}$$

$$\text{and } V_{be} = E_g - \frac{akT}{q} \text{ where } a = \ln\left(\frac{cT^n}{Ic}\right)$$

$$\approx 19.4 \text{ at } 27°C\left(c = 0.001, n = 3, Ic = 100\mu A\right)$$

E_g is about 1.25V so the 2.5V reference is $2E_g$. Solving the loop for the set current gives:

$$I_{SET} = \frac{2E_g - 2\left(E_g - \frac{akT}{q}\right)}{R} \text{ or } I_{SET} = \frac{2akT}{Rq}$$

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

Substituting into the equation for transconductance gives:

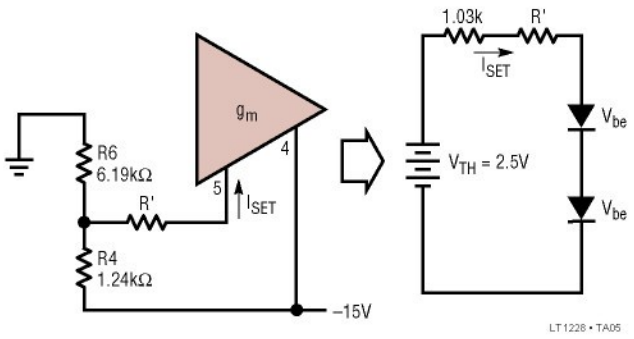
$$g_m = \frac{a}{1.94R} = \frac{10}{R}$$

The temperature variation in the term "a" can be ignored since it is much less than that of the term "T" in the equation for V_{be}. Using a 2.5V source this way will maintain the gain constant within 1% over the full temperature range of –55°C to 125°C. If the 2.5V source is off by 10%, the gain will vary only about ±6% over the same temperature range.

We can also temperature compensate the transconductance without using a 2.5V reference if the negative power supply is regulated. A Thevenin equivalent of 2.5V is generated from two resistors to replace the reference. The two resistors also determine the maximum set current, approximately $1.1V/R_{TH}$. By rearranging the Thevenin equations to solve for R4 and R6 we get the following equations in terms of R_{TH} and the negative supply, V_{EE}.

$$R4 = \frac{R_{TH}}{\left(1 - \frac{2.5V}{V_{EE}}\right)} \text{ and } R6 = \frac{R_{TH}V_{EE}}{2.5V}$$

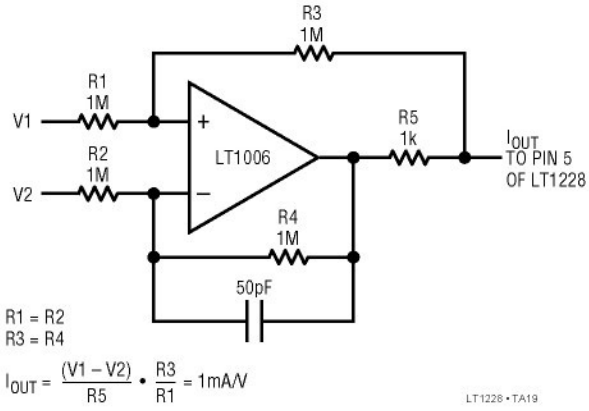
Temperature Compensation of g_m with a Thevenin Voltage



Voltage Controlled Gain

To use a voltage to control the gain of the transconductance amplifier requires converting the voltage into a current that flows into Pin 5. Because the voltage at Pin 5 is two diode drops above the negative supply, a single resistor from the control voltage source to Pin 5 will suffice in many applications. The control voltage is referenced to the negative supply and has an offset of about 900mV. The conversion will be monotonic, but the linearity is determined by the change in the voltage at Pin 5 (120mV per decade of current). The characteristic is very repeatable since the voltage at Pin 5 will vary less than ±5% from part to part. The voltage at Pin 5 also has a negative temperature coefficient as described in the previous section. When the gain of several LT1228s are to be varied together, the current can be split equally by using equal value resistors to each Pin 5.

For more accurate (and linear) control, a voltage-to-current converter circuit using one op amp can be used. The following circuit has several advantages. The input no longer has to be referenced to the negative supply and the input can be either polarity (or differential). This circuit works on both single and split supplies since the input voltage and the Pin 5 voltage are independent of each other. The temperature coefficient of the output current is set by R5.



Digital control of the transconductance amplifier gain is done by converting the output of a DAC to a current flowing into Pin 5. Unfortunately most current output DACs sink rather than source current and do not have output

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

compliance compatible with Pin 5 of the LT1228. Therefore, the easiest way to digitally control the set current is to use a voltage output DAC and a voltage-to-current circuit. The previous voltage-to-current converter will take the output of any voltage output DAC and drive Pin 5 with a proportional current. The R, 2R CMOS multiplying DACs operating in the voltage switching mode work well on both single and split supplies with the above circuit.

Logarithmic control is often easier to use than linear control. A simple circuit that doubles the set current for each additional volt of input is shown in the voltage controlled state variable filter application near the end of this data sheet.

Transconductance Amplifier Frequency Response

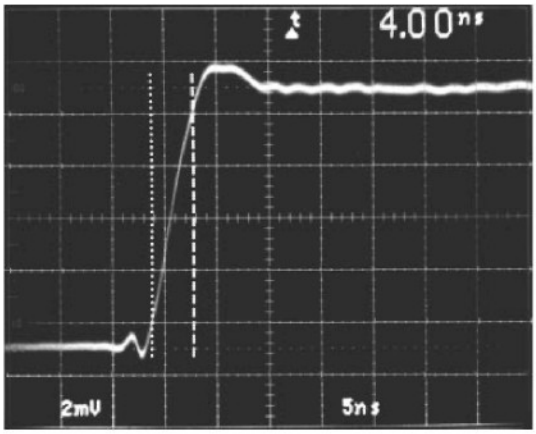
The bandwidth of the transconductance amplifier is a function of the set current as shown in the characteristic curves. At set currents below 100µA, the bandwidth is approximately:

$$-3dB\ bandwidth = 3 \bullet 10^{11}\ I_{SET}$$

The peak bandwidth is about 80MHz at 500µA. When a resistor is used to convert the output current to a voltage, the capacitance at the output forms a pole with the resistor. The best case output capacitance is about 5pF with ±15V supplies and 6pF with ±5V supplies. You must add any PC board or socket capacitance to these values to get the total output capacitance. When using a 1k resistor at the output of the transconductance amp, the output capacitance limits the bandwidth to about 25MHz.

The output slew rate of the transconductance amplifier is the set current divided by the output capacitance, which is 6pF plus board and socket capacitance. For example with the set current at 1mA, the slew rate would be over 100V/µs.

Transconductance Amp Small-Signal Response
I_{SET} = 500µA, R1 = 50Ω



CURRENT FEEDBACK AMPLIFIER

The LT1228 current feedback amplifier has very high noninverting input impedance and is therefore an excellent buffer for the output of the transconductance amplifier. The noninverting input is at Pin 1, the inverting input at Pin 8 and the output at Pin 6. The current feedback amplifier maintains its wide bandwidth for almost all voltage gains making it easy to interface the output levels of the transconductance amplifier to other circuitry. The current feedback amplifier is designed to drive low impedance loads such as cables with excellent linearity at high frequencies.

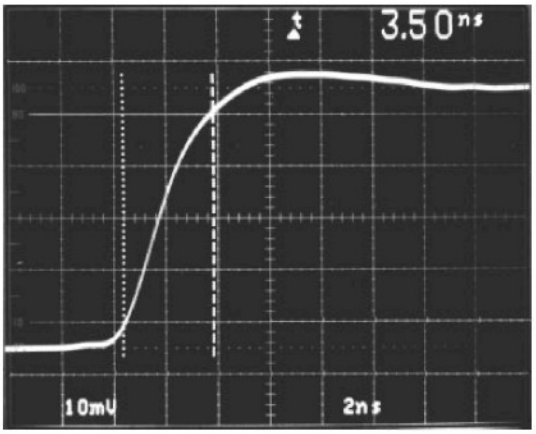
Feedback Resistor Selection

The small-signal bandwidth of the LT1228 current feedback amplifier is set by the external feedback resistors and the internal junction capacitors. As a result, the bandwidth is a function of the supply voltage, the value of the feedback resistor, the closed-loop gain and load resistor. The characteristic curves of bandwidth versus supply voltage are done with a heavy load (100Ω) and a light load (1k) to show the effect of loading. These graphs also show

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

the family of curves that result from various values of the feedback resistor. These curves use a solid line when the response has less than 0.5dB of peaking and a dashed line for the response with 0.5dB to 5dB of peaking. The curves stop where the response has more than 5dB of peaking.

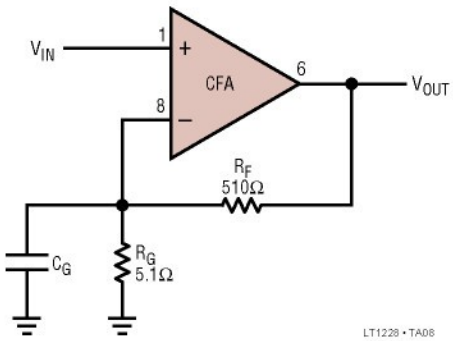
Current Feedback Amp Small-Signal Response
$V_S = \pm 15V$, $R_F = R_G = 750\Omega$, $R_L = 100\Omega$



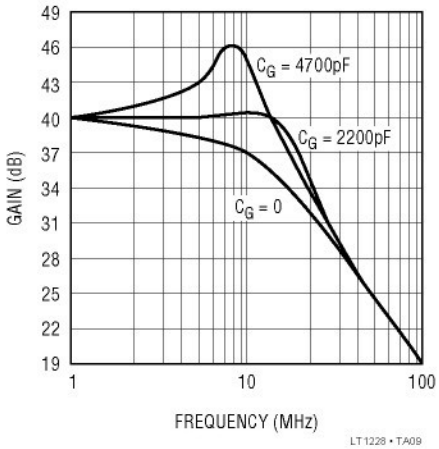
At a gain of two, on ±15V supplies with a 750Ω feedback resistor, the bandwidth into a light load is over 160MHz without peaking, but into a heavy load the bandwidth reduces to 100MHz. The loading has so much effect because there is a mild resonance in the output stage that enhances the bandwidth at light loads but has its Q reduced by the heavy load. This enhancement is only useful at low gain settings, at a gain of ten it does not boost the bandwidth. At unity gain, the enhancement is so effective the value of the feedback resistor has very little effect on the bandwidth. At very high closed-loop gains, the bandwidth is limited by the gain-bandwidth product of about 1GHz. The curves show that the bandwidth at a closed-loop gain of 100 is 10MHz, only one tenth what it is at a gain of two.

Capacitance on the Inverting Input

Current feedback amplifiers want resistive feedback from the output to the inverting input for stable operation. Take care to minimize the stray capacitance between the output and the inverting input. Capacitance on the inverting input to ground will cause peaking in the frequency response (and overshoot in the transient response), but it does not degrade the stability of the amplifier. The amount of capacitance that is necessary to cause peaking is a function of the closed-loop gain taken. The higher the gain, the more capacitance is required to cause peaking. For example, in a gain of 100 application, the bandwidth can be increased from 10MHz to 17MHz by adding a 2200pF capacitor, as shown below. C_G must have very low series resistance, such as silver mica.



Boosting Bandwidth of High Gain Amplifier with Capacitance On Inverting Input



APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

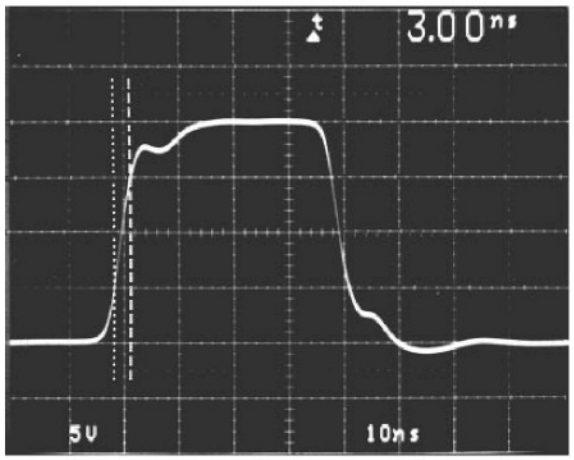
Capacitive Loads

The LT1228 current feedback amplifier can drive capacitive loads directly when the proper value of feedback resistor is used. The graph of Maximum Capacitive Load vs Feedback Resistor should be used to select the appropriate value. The value shown is for 5dB peaking when driving a 1k load, at a gain of 2. This is a worst case condition, the amplifier is more stable at higher gains, and driving heavier loads. Alternatively, a small resistor (10Ω to 20Ω) can be put in series with the output to isolate the capacitive load from the amplifier output. This has the advantage that the amplifier bandwidth is only reduced when the capacitive load is present and the disadvantage that the gain is a function of the load resistance.

Slew Rate

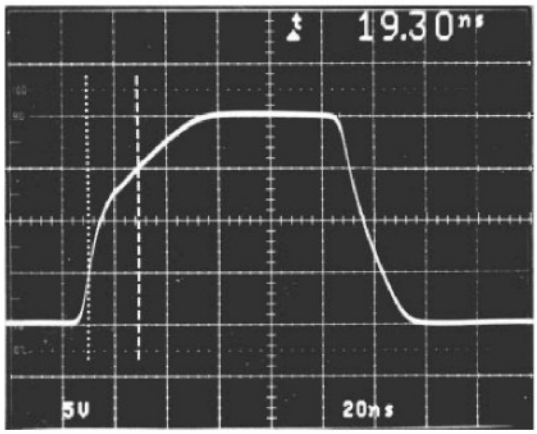
The slew rate of the current feedback amplifier is not independent of the amplifier gain configuration the way it is in a traditional op amp. This is because the input stage and the output stage both have slew rate limitations. The input stage of the LT1228 current feedback amplifier slews at about 100V/µs before it becomes nonlinear. Faster input signals will turn on the normally reverse biased emitters on the input transistors and enhance the slew rate significantly. This enhanced slew rate can be as much as 3500V/µs!

Current Feedback Amp Large-Signal Response
$V_S = \pm 15V$, $R_F = R_G = 750\Omega$ Slew Rate Enhanced



The output slew rate is set by the value of the feedback resistors and the internal capacitance. At a gain of ten with a 1k feedback resistor and ±15V supplies, the output slew rate is typically 500V/µs and –850V/µs. There is no input stage enhancement because of the high gain. Larger feedback resistors will reduce the slew rate as will lower supply voltages, similar to the way the bandwidth is reduced.

Current Feedback Amp Large-Signal Response
$V_S = \pm 15V$, $R_F = 1k$, $R_G = 110\Omega$, $R_L = 400\Omega$



Settling Time

The characteristic curves show that the LT1228 current feedback amplifier settles to within 10mV of final value in 40ns to 55ns for any output step less than 10V. The curve of settling to 1mV of final value shows that there is a slower thermal contribution up to 20µs. The thermal settling component comes from the output and the input stage. The output contributes just under 1mV/V of output change and the input contributes 300µV/V of input change. Fortunately the input thermal tends to cancel the output thermal. For this reason the noninverting gain of two configuration settles faster than the inverting gain of one.

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

Power Supplies

The LT1228 amplifiers will operate from single or split supplies from ±2V (4V total) to ±18V (36V total). It is not necessary to use equal value split supplies, however the offset voltage and inverting input bias current of the current feedback amplifier will degrade. The offset voltage changes about 350µV/V of supply mismatch, the inverting bias current changes about 2.5µA/V of supply mismatch.

Power Dissipation

The worst case amplifier power dissipation is the total of the quiescent current times the total power supply voltage plus the power in the IC due to the load. The quiescent supply current of the LT1228 transconductance amplifier is equal to 3.5 times the set current at all temperatures. The quiescent supply current of the LT1228 current feedback amplifier has a strong negative temperature coefficient and at 150°C is less than 7mA, typically only 4.5mA. The power in the IC due to the load is a function of the output voltage, the supply voltage and load resistance. The worst case occurs when the output voltage is at half supply, if it can go that far, or its maximum value if it cannot reach half supply.

For example, let's calculate the worst case power dissipation in a variable gain video cable driver operating on ±12V supplies that delivers a maximum of 2V into 150Ω. The maximum set current is 1mA.

$$P_D = 2V_S\left(I_{SMAX} + 3.5I_{SET}\right) + \left(V_S - V_{OMAX}\right)\frac{V_{OMAX}}{R_L}$$

$$P_D = 2 \bullet 12V \bullet \left[7mA + \left(3.5 \bullet 1mA\right)\right] + \left(12V - 2V\right)\frac{2V}{150\Omega}$$

$$= 0.252 + 0.133 = 0.385W$$

The total power dissipation times the thermal resistance of the package gives the temperature rise of the die above ambient. The above example in SO-8 surface mount package (thermal resistance is 150°C/W) gives:

$$\text{Temperature Rise} = P_D\theta_{JA} = 0.385W \bullet 150°C/W$$
$$= 57.75°C$$

Therefore the maximum junction temperature is 70°C +57.75°C or 127.75°C, well under the absolute maximum junction temperature for plastic packages of 150°C.

TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Basic Gain Control

The basic gain controlled amplifier is shown on the front page of the data sheet. The gain is directly proportional to the set current. The signal passes through three stages from the input to the output.

First the input signal is attenuated to match the dynamic range of the transconductance amplifier. The attenuator should reduce the signal down to less than 100mV peak. The characteristic curves can be used to estimate how much distortion there will be at maximum input signal. For single ended inputs eliminate R2A or R3A.

The signal is then amplified by the transconductance amplifier (g_m) and referred to ground. The voltage gain of the transconductance amplifier is:

$$g_m \bullet R1 = 10 \bullet I_{SET} \bullet R1$$

Lastly the signal is buffered and amplified by the current feedback amplifier (CFA). The voltage gain of the current feedback amplifier is:

$$1 + \frac{R_F}{R_G}$$

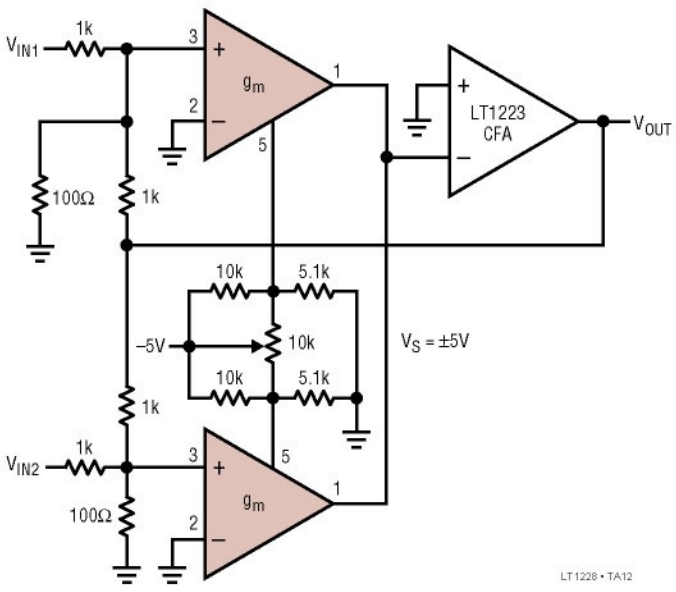
The overall gain of the gain controlled amplifier is the product of all three stages:

$$A_V = \left(\frac{R3}{R3 + R3A}\right) \bullet 10 \bullet I_{SET} \bullet R1 \bullet \left(1 + \frac{R_F}{R_G}\right)$$

More than one output can be summed into R1 because the output of the transconductance amplifier is a current. This is the simplest way to make a video mixer.

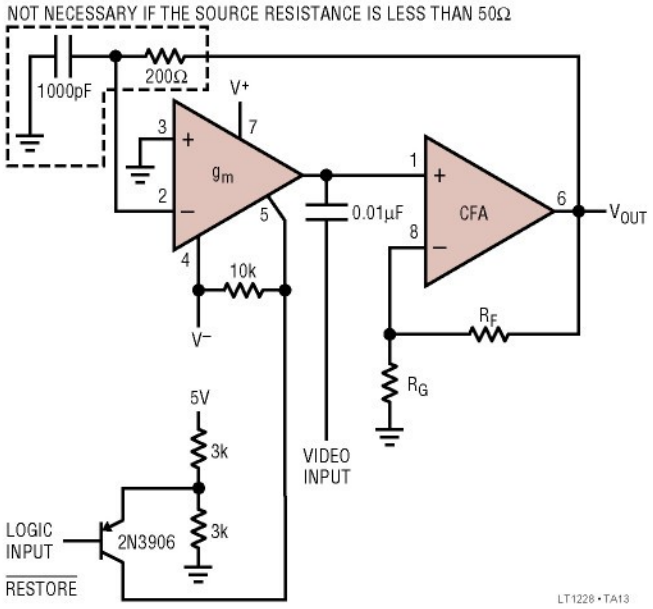
TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Video Fader



The video fader uses the transconductance amplifiers from two LT1228s in the feedback loop of another current feedback amplifier, the LT1223. The amount of signal from each input at the output is set by the ratio of the set currents of the two LT1228s, not by their absolute value. The bandwidth of the current feedback amplifier is inversely proportional to the set current in this configuration. Therefore, the set currents remain high over most of the pot's range, keeping the bandwidth over 15MHz even when the signal is attenuated 20dB. The pot is set up to completely turn off one LT1228 at each end of the rotation.

Video DC Restore (Clamp) Circuit



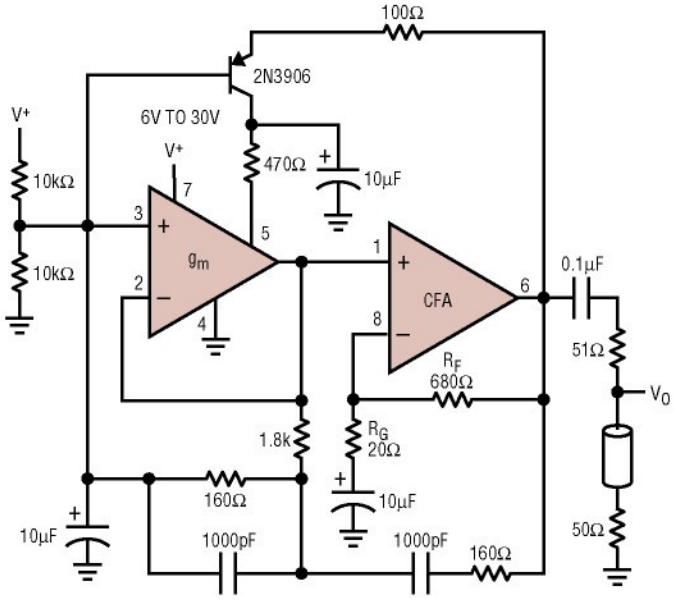
The video restore (clamp) circuit restores the black level of the composite video to zero volts at the beginning of every line. This is necessary because AC coupled video changes DC level as a function of the average brightness of the picture. DC restoration also rejects low frequency noise such as hum.

The circuit has two inputs: composite video and a logic signal. The logic signal is high except during the back porch time right after the horizontal sync pulse. While the logic is high, the PNP is off and I_{SET} is zero. With I_{SET} equal to zero the feedback to Pin 2 has no affect. The video input drives the noninverting input of the current feedback amplifier whose gain is set by R_F and R_G. When the logic signal is low, the PNP turns on and I_{SET} goes to about 1mA. Then the transconductance amplifier charges the capacitor to force the output to match the voltage at Pin 3, in this case zero volts.

This circuit can be modified so that the video is DC coupled by operating the amplifier in an inverting configuration. Just ground the video input shown and connect R_G to the video input instead of to ground.

TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Single Supply Wien Bridge Oscillator

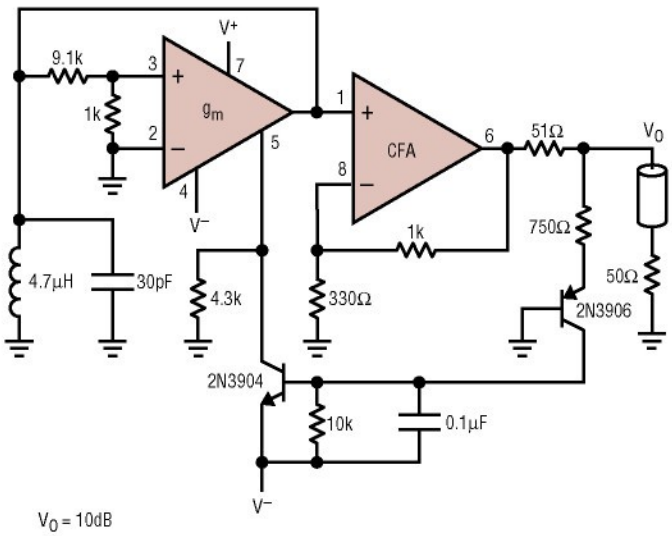


In this application the LT1228 is biased for operation from a single supply. An artificial signal ground at half supply voltage is generated with two 10k resistors and bypassed with a capacitor. A capacitor is used in series with R_G to set the DC gain of the current feedback amplifier to unity.

The transconductance amplifier is used as a variable resistor to control gain. A variable resistor is formed by driving the inverting input and connecting the output back to it. The equivalent resistor value is the inverse of the g_m. This works with the 1.8k resistor to make a variable attenuator. The 1MHz oscillation frequency is set by the Wien bridge network made up of two 1000pF capacitors and two 160Ω resistors.

For clean sine wave oscillation, the circuit needs a net gain of one around the loop. The current feedback amplifier has a gain of 34 to keep the voltage at the transconductance amplifier input low. The Wien bridge has an attenuation of 3 at resonance; therefore the attenuation of the 1.8k resistor and the transconductance amplifier must be about 11, resulting in a set current of about 600µA at oscillation. At start-up there is no set current and therefore no attenuation for a net gain of about 11 around the loop. As the output oscillation builds up it turns on the PNP transistor which generates the set current to regulate the output voltage.

12MHz Negative Resistance LC Oscillator

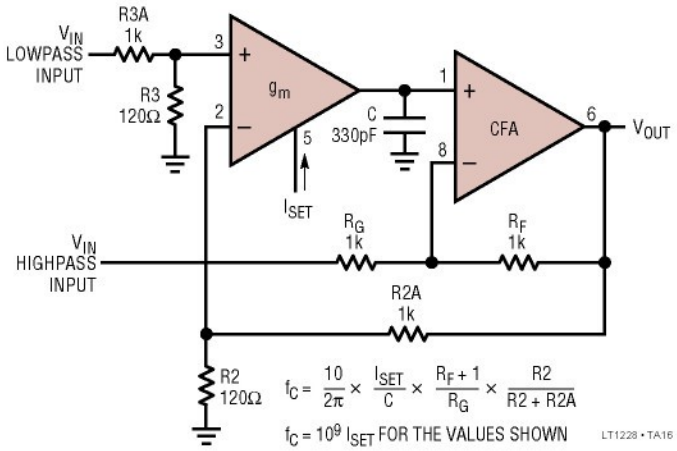


This oscillator uses the transconductance amplifier as a negative resistor to cause oscillation. A negative resistor results when the positive input of the transconductance amplifier is driven and the output is returned to it. In this example a voltage divider is used to lower the signal level at the positive input for less distortion. The negative resistor will not DC bias correctly unless the output of the transconductance amplifier drives a very low resistance. Here it sees an inductor to ground so the gain at DC is zero. The oscillator needs negative resistance to start and that is provided by the 4.3k resistor to Pin 5. As the output level rises it turns on the PNP transistor and in turn the NPN which steals current from the transconductance amplifier bias input.

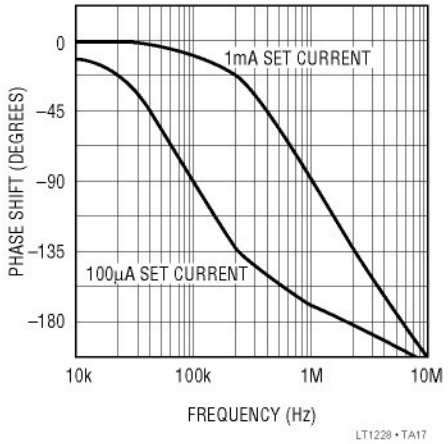
TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Filters

Single Pole Low/High/Allpass Filter



Allpass Filter Phase Response

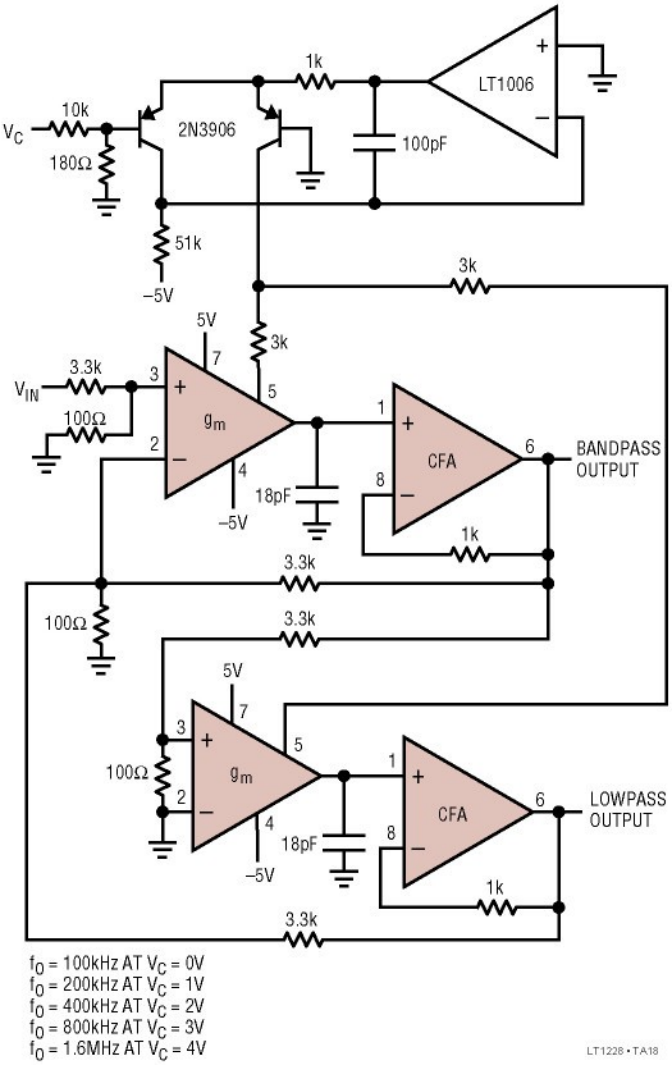


Using the variable transconductance of the LT1228 to make variable filters is easy and predictable. The most straight forward way is to make an integrator by putting a capacitor at the output of the transconductance amp and buffering it with the current feedback amplifier. Because the input bias current of the current feedback amplifier must be supplied by the transconductance amplifier, the set current should not be operated below 10µA. This limits the filters to about a 100:1 tuning range.

The Single Pole circuit realizes a single pole filter with a corner frequency (f_C) proportional to the set current. The values shown give a 100kHz corner frequency for 100µA set current. The circuit has two inputs, a lowpass filter input and a highpass filter input. To make a lowpass filter, ground the highpass input and drive the lowpass input. Conversely for a highpass filter, ground the lowpass input and drive the highpass input. If both inputs are driven, the result is an allpass filter or phase shifter. The allpass has flat amplitude response and 0° phase shift at low frequencies, going to –180° at high frequencies. The allpass filter has –90° phase shift at the corner frequency.

TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Voltage Controlled State Variable Filter

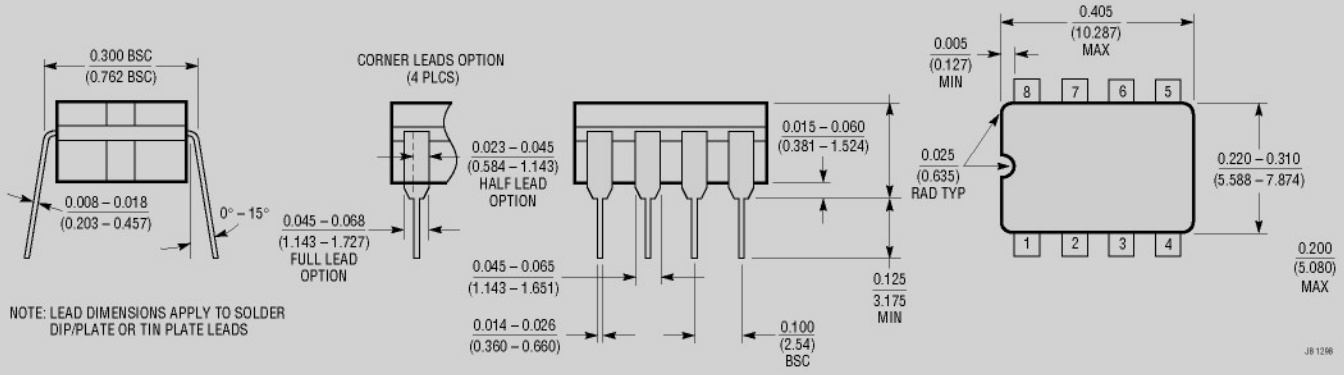


The state variable filter has both lowpass and bandpass outputs. Each LT1228 is configured as a variable integrator whose frequency is set by the attenuators, the capacitors and the set current. Because the integrators have both positive and negative inputs, the additional op amp normally required is not needed. The input attenuators set the circuit up to handle $3V_{P-P}$ signals.

The set current is generated with a simple circuit that gives logarithmic voltage to current control. The two PNP transistors should be a matched pair in the same package for best accuracy. If discrete transistors are used, the 51k resistor should be trimmed to give proper frequency response with V_C equal zero. The circuit generates 100µA for V_C equal zero volts and doubles the current for every additional volt. The two 3k resistors divide the current between the two LT1228s. Therefore the set current of each amplifier goes from 50µA to 800µA for a control voltage of 0V to 4V. The resulting filter is at 100kHz for V_C equal zero, and changes it one octave/V of control input.

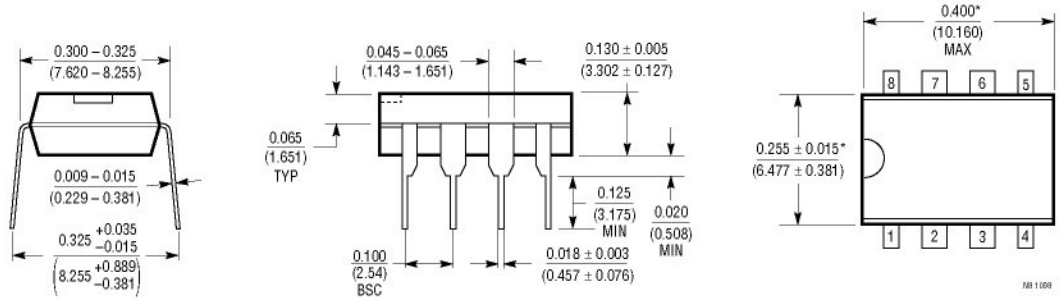
PACKAGE DESCRIPTION

J8 Package
8-Lead CERDIP (Narrow .300 Inch, Hermetic)
(Reference LTC DWG # 05-08-1110)



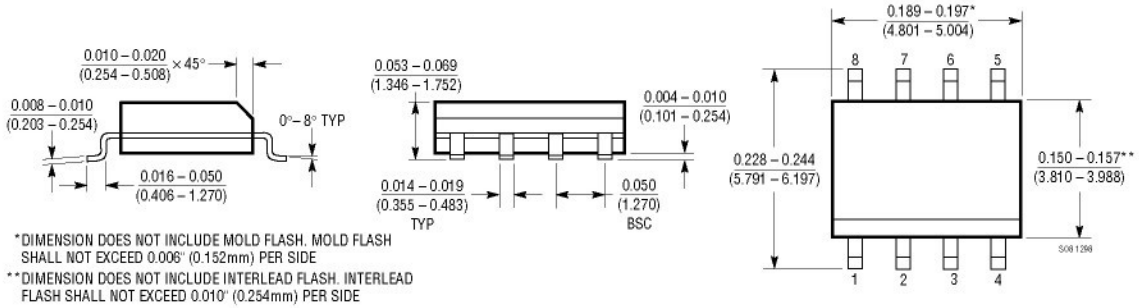
OBSOLETE PACKAGE

N8 Package
8-Lead PDIP (Narrow .300 Inch)
(Reference LTC DWG # 05-08-1510)



*THESE DIMENSIONS DO NOT INCLUDE MOLD FLASH OR PROTRUSIONS.
MOLD FLASH OR PROTRUSIONS SHALL NOT EXCEED 0.010 INCH (0.254mm)

S8 Package
8-Lead Plastic Small Outline (Narrow .150 Inch)
(Reference LTC DWG # 05-08-1610)

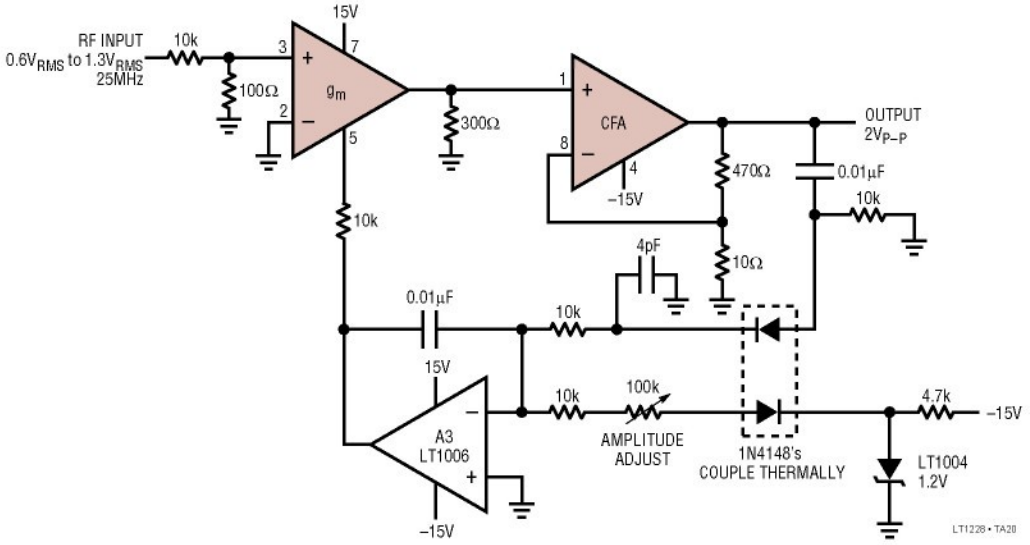


*DIMENSION DOES NOT INCLUDE MOLD FLASH. MOLD FLASH
SHALL NOT EXCEED 0.006" (0.152mm) PER SIDE
**DIMENSION DOES NOT INCLUDE INTERLEAD FLASH. INTERLEAD
FLASH SHALL NOT EXCEED 0.010" (0.254mm) PER SIDE

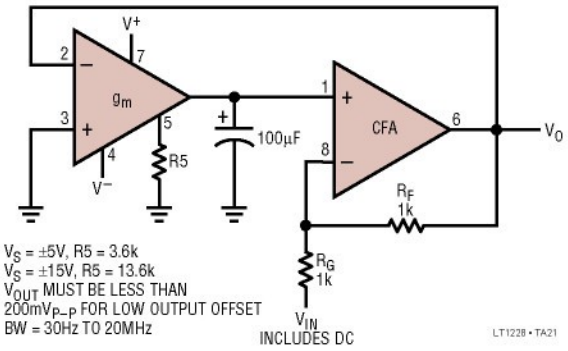
Information furnished by Linear Technology Corporation is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed for its use. Linear Technology Corporation makes no representation that the interconnection of its circuits as described herein will not infringe on existing patent rights.

TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

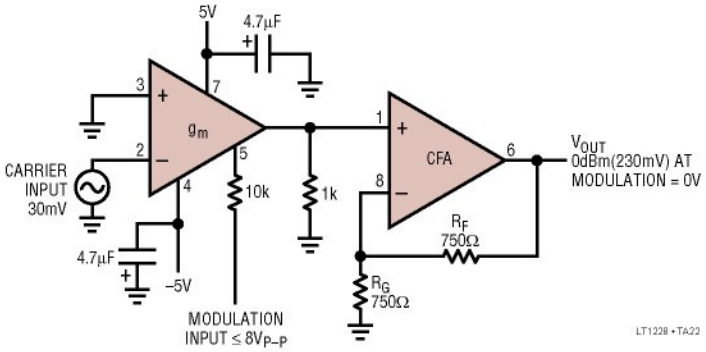
RF AGC Amplifier (Leveling Loop)



Inverting Amplifier with DC Output Less Than 5mV



Amplitude Modulator



RELATED PARTS

PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	COMMENTS
LT1227	140MHz Current Feedback Amplifier	1100V/µs Slew Rate, 0.01% Differential Gain, 0.03% Differential Phase
LT1251/LT1256	40MHz Video Fader	Accurate Linear Gain Control: ±1% Typ, ±3% Max
LT1399	400MHz Current Feedback Amplifier	800V/µs Slew Rate, 80mA Output Current

Linear Technology Corporation
1630 McCarthy Blvd., Milpitas, CA 95035-7417
(408)432-1900 • FAX: (408) 434-0507 • www.linear-tech.com
1228fbs sn1228 LT/CP 0801 1.5K REV B • PRINTED IN USA
© LINEAR TECHNOLOGY CORPORATION 1994

This datasheet has been download from:

www.datasheetcatalog.com

Datasheets for electronics components.